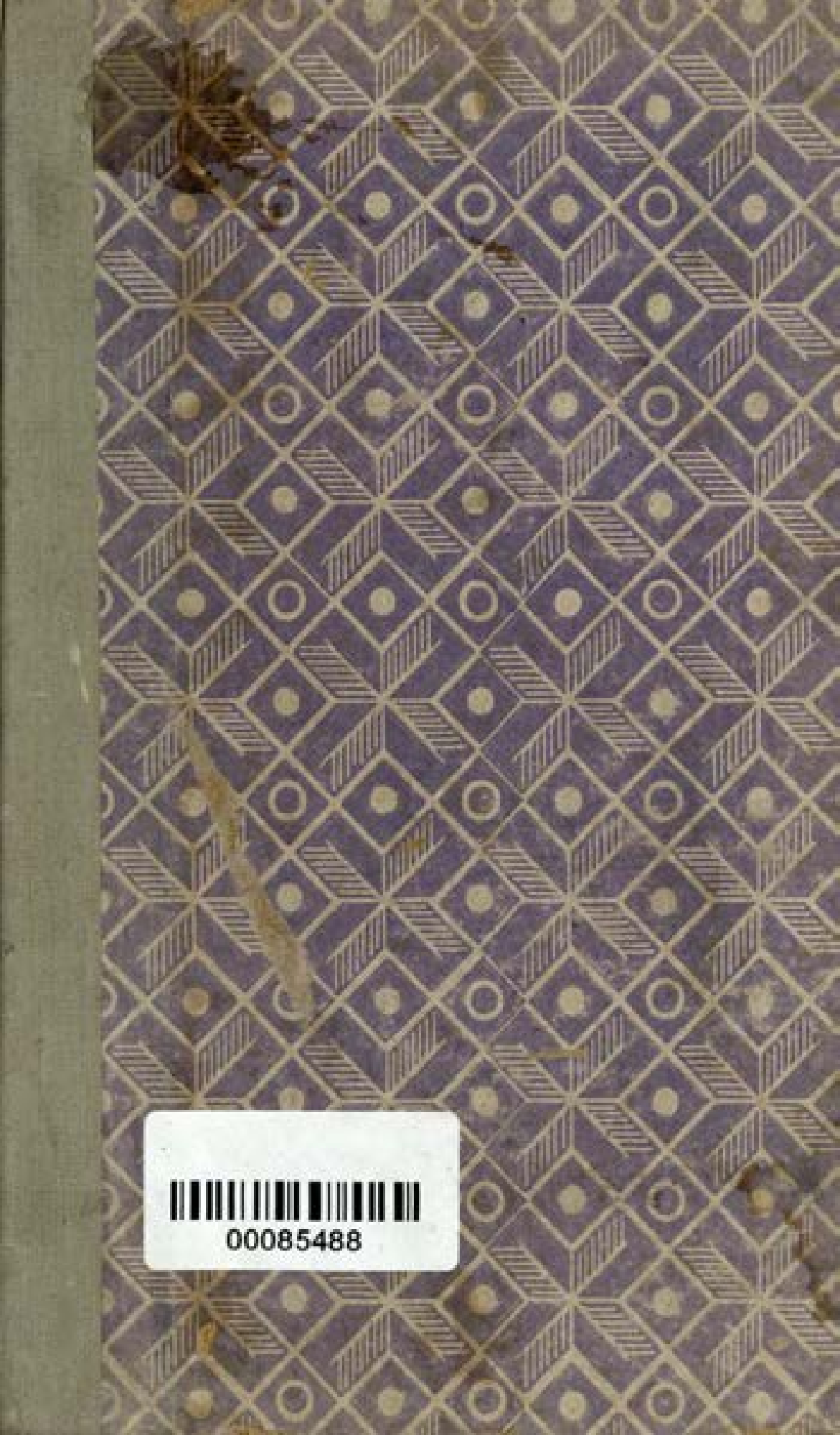

00085488

THE
ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BOMBAY
TOWN HALL, BOMBAY-400 023.

Digitized with financial assistance from
Hermes India
oject facilitated by the Rotary Club of Bom
on 10 August, 2018

Hakluytus Posthumus
or
Purchas His Pilgrimes

In Twenty Volumes

Volume XIII

GLASGOW
PRINTED AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS BY
ROBERT MACLEHOSE & COMPANY LTD. FOR
JAMES MACLEHOSE AND SONS, PUBLISHERS
TO THE UNIVERSITY OF GLASGOW

MACMILLAN AND CO. LTD.	LONDON
THE MACMILLAN CO.	NEW YORK
THE MACMILLAN CO. OF CANADA	TORONTO
SIMPKIN, HAMILTON AND CO.	LONDON
MACMILLAN AND BOWES	CAMBRIDGE
DOUGLAS AND FOULIS	EDINBURGH

MCMVI

Hakluytus Posthumus

or

Purchas His Pilgrimes

Contayning a History of the World
in Sea Voyages and Lande Travells
by Englishmen and others

By

SAMUEL PURCHAS, B.D.

85488 ac

VOLUME XIII

Glasgow
James MacLehose and Sons
Publishers to the University
MCMVI

00085488

THE TABLE

PAGE

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the third Booke of the second part of Purchas his Pilgrims.

To the Reader. 1

Sebastian Cabota first Author of all certaine Northerne discoveries.

CHAP. II.

A briefe discoverie of the Northerne discoveries of Seas, Coasts, and Countries, delivered in order as they were hopefully begun, and have ever since happily beene continued by the singular industrie and charge of the Worshipfull Societie of Muscovia Merchants of London, with the ten severall Voyages of Captaine Thomas Edge the Authour. 4

§ 1. Greenland first discovered by Sir Hugh Willoughby: the Voyages of Frobisher, Pet, and Jackman, Davis, the Dutch; First Morse and Whale-killing, with further discoveries. 4

Northerne inundations. Hans Societie. Sir H. Willoughbie. Greenland discovered by Sir H. Willoughbie, Borough, &c. English and Dutch Discoveries to the North. Capt. Edge. Sea Unicornes horne. Whale Voyage. Shipwracke. Hull Ship.

THE TABLE

The Contents of the Chapters—*Continued.* PAGE

§ 2. Dutch, Spanish, Danish disturbance; also by Hull men, and by a new Patent, with the succeeding successe and further discoveries till this present. . 15

Greenland Voyage disturbed by English and others. Discovery, &c. Of the Discoverie of Greenland by the English. Greenland businesse embroiled by new Societie and Zelanders. Losse and hindrance by Dutch and Danes, wracke, hunger, cold.

§ 3. The description of the severall sorts of Whales, with the manner of killing them: Whereto is added the description of Greenland. 26

Of huge great Whales, and the manner of killing them. Of the making of Oyle. Severall kinds of Whales.

The description of Greenland. 31

The description of Greenland by Ro. Fotherby.

CHAP. III.

The first Navigation of William Barents, alias Bernards, into the North Seas; Written by Gerart de Veer. . 35

The first Voyage of William Barents to the North Seas. The Discoverie of the Northerne Seas by the Dutch. The wonderfull strength of a white Beare. Cape Nassaw. Stones glistering like Gold. Orange Ilands, &c. Navigations into the North-Seas, by William Barents.

CHAP. IIII.

A briefe declaration of Barents his second Navigation, made in Anno 1595. behind Norway, Muscovia, and Tartaria, written by Gerart de Veer. 49

Barents his second Navigation behind Norway, Muscovia, &c. Image point. Samoyeds Land. Traen-bay. Images. Samoyeds; their haire, apparell, stature, sleds, shooting. Beelt-hooke, so called of certaine Images there found. Wey-gates. Twist-point. Matfloe and Delgoy Ilands.

THE TABLE

The Contents of the Chapters—*Continued.* PAGE

CHAP. V.

The third voyage Northward to the Kingdoms of Cathaia, and China, in Anno 1596. Written by Gerart de Veer. 61

§ 1. What happened to them at Sea, before they came to build their House. 61

Three Sunnes and foure Raine-bowes. Ice. Danger escaped. Beare fights. Dead Whale. Red Geese. Barnacles. Greenland. Low-land. Beare-Iland. Cherie-Iland. Willoughbies Map-conceited Land. Admirals Iland. Variation. Point Nassaw. Beares assault. Icie thunder. Orange Iland. Nova Zembla. Point Desire. Flushingers head. Mergates. Dangerous frosts. Strange escape. Ice Haven. Icy Hills. The great providence of God in preserving our men from danger. Violent and incredible freezing. Ground not to be thawed.

§ 2. Their cold, comfortlesse, darke and dreadfull winter: the Sunnes absence, Moones light, Sunnes unexpected returne with miraculous speed. Of Beares, Foxes, and many many wonders. 88

A May-pole of Frozen Snow. Northerne Tides and Sea. Beere melted. Sea covered with Ice. A Beare assaults the Ship. White Foxes. Darknesse. Allowance of Bread and Beere. Foxe-trap. Wine sharing. Bathing. Foxe skinne Caps. Ice cracking frights. Cold stronger then fire. Sacke frozen. Cold blisters. Sunnes comfort. Foxes daintie as Venison. Burne before and Freeze behind. Snow higher then their House. Day-light espied. Beares in the Ship. The Sunne appeareth. Sunnes appearance. Cape de Tabin. Streight of Anian. Tempestuous, foule, cloudy, mystie, snowy and dismall weather. Sunnes heate. Beares grease usefull for Lamps. Tartarian Sea. Shooes of Felt and Rugge. Shooes frozen. A Beare assault our house. A Beares Denne.

§ 3. Their preparation to goe from thence: they depart in a Boat and Scute both open, and come to Cola, 1143. miles. Their many dangers by Beares, Ice, Famine, Scorbute, in the way. 125

THE TABLE

The Contents of the Chapters—*Continued.*

PAGE

Their many dangers by Beares, Ice, Famine, Scorbute. They mend their Boat. Beares Liver venomous. They prepare to depart from Nova Zembla; and leave a Letter. Point Desire. Search for Birds and Egges. Ice-point. Computation of miles from Nova Zembla to the Coast of Russia. Miraculous Deliverance. Losse of Goods. One Beare eate another. Beare eight foot thicke. Crosse Iland. Search for stones. Crosse Iland. Blacke Point. Admirals Iland. Sea-horses. Cape Plancio. Strange breeding of Birds. S. Laurence Bay. Leple leaves cure the scowring Scorbuticall Disease. Russian Compasse. Lapland. Russian Houses. Laplanders. Slutterie a Fast-breaker. Kilduin. Quasse drinke. Friends meeting together cause of great Joy.

This was written by William Barentson in a loose Paper, which was lent mee by the Reverend Peter Plantius in Amsterdam, March the seven and twentieth, 1609. 161

Intelligence from the Samoieds.

CHAP. VI.

A Treatise of Iver Boty a Gronlander, translated out of the Norsh language into High Dutch. H. . . 163

The Journall of Iver Boty, &c. Fishing for Whales. Hunting of white Beares. Hot waters. Stone that Fire cannot hurt. Wildernesse. Punnus and Potharse.

The Course from Island to Groneland. 169

Gronland Commodities. Counsell for Gronland Travellers.

CHAP. VII.

A description of the Countries of Siberia, Samoieda, and Tingoesia. Together with the Journeyes leading unto the same Countries toward the East and North-east, as they are daily frequented by the Moscovites. . 171

§ 1. Discoverie of Siberia, and the subjecting of the same to the Russes. 171

THE TABLE

The Contents of the Chapters—*Continued.*

PAGE

The Discoverie of Siberia. The Trade to the River Obi. Osoil. Imperiall Priviledge. River Wichida. Oneekos. Raine Deere. Swift Dogs. Samoieds shooting. Malefactors.

§ 2. A briefe description of the Wayes and Rivers, leading out of Moscovia toward the East and North-east into Siberia, Samoiedia, and Tingoesia, as they are daily frequented by the Russes: with further discoveries towards Tartaria and China. 180

Rivers Petsora, Soiba, Cosna, and Toera. Mountaines. Churches. Greekish Religion exercised among the Russes. Tartar King. Tara Towne. Comgof-scoi Castle. Tingoesies. Pisida. The plesantnesse of those Countries. The towling of Bells. Mountaines casting out flames of fire.

§ 3. A Note of the travels of the Russes over Land, and by water from Mezen, neere the Bay of Saint Nicholas to Pechora, to Obi, to Yenisse, and to the River Geta, even unto the Frontiers of Cataia; brought into England by Master John Mericke, the English Agent for Moscovie, and translated out of the Russe by Richard Finch. H. 193

Discoverie of Pechora to Ob.

CHAP. VIII.

A voyage made to Pechora 1611. Written by William Gourdon of Hull, appointed chiefe Pilot, for discoverie to Ob, &c. H. 194

Excellent Whale-killers. Bigs Hole. Cape Comfort. Hakluyts River. Flote-wood. Russe Crosses. Store of Muskitos. The Dry Sea. River Pechora. Courteous entertainment. Chiefe Customer. Fishing for Salmons.

THE TABLE

The Contents of the Chapters—*Continued.* PAGE

CHAP. IX.

A Letter of Richard Finch to the Right Worshipfull Sir Thomas Smith, Governour; and to the rest of the Worshipfull Companie of English Merchants, trading into Russia: touching the former voyage, and other observations. H. 205

Crosses standing on the Sand. Emperours Priviledges. Pewter dishes great commodities. Fish Omeli. Geese, Hawkes, Swannes great store. Travelling Deere. Russe Merchants. Commodities, Provisions. Elephants Teeth, how sold. Mezen Commodities. Towne Pechora.

The names of the places that the Russes sayle by, from Pechorskoie Zavorot, to Mongozey: with the manner of their travell, and distance betweene each place, or time of Sayling, Halling, and Rowing unto the same. 217

Greene Ilands. Thicke or troubled River. Greene Lake. Mezen, a Towne of great trafficke for Furres. Peoza reca.

CHAP. X.

The Voyage of Master Josias Logan to Pechora, and his wintering there, with Master William Pursglove, and Marmaduke Wilson. Anno 1611. H. . . . 222

Iland of Toxar. Ducke hunting. Sables, Beavers, white Foxes. Arkania. Frost in August. Traffique and merchandise beneficiall. A generall Fast for three dayes. The Samoieds quarrell at Slobodca. Stones resembling Gold. Tobolsco a Citie of great trade. Mowtnoy River. Indiga River; deepe water, good Harbour. Knocke John.

Extracts taken out of two Letters of Josias Logan from Pechora, to Master Hakluyt Prebend of Westminster. 236

Blacke River. White Citie. Horses. Armour.

THE TABLE

The Contents of the Chapters—*Continuea.* PAGE

CHAP. XI.

A briefe relation of a Voyage to Pechora, and wintering there, began in the yeere 1611. Written by William Pursglove. H. 239

Voyage over Land. Mountaynes, Rocks; Marish ground. Sleds drawne by Deere. Manner of travelling. Dangerous Wolves. Fishing for Bealugos, how taken. Commodious Rivers. Traffique. Danilo Stolb in Lapland.

Other observations of the said William Pursglove. . . 249

William Pursgloves Observations. Molgomsey a great Mart Towne. Assembly of Hunters.

The travell from Pechora to Permia, Ougoria, and to the River Ob, and the Townes situated thereupon, over Land. 252

King Alteene. White and speckled Hawkes. Blacke Foxes.

Commodities for Pechora, Siberia, Permia, Ougoria, and among the Tingussies. 254

Commodities for the Tingussies. 254

CHAP. XII.

Later observations of William Gourdon, in his wintering at Pustozera, in the yeeres 1614. and 1615. with a description of the Samoyeds life. H. . . . 255

The River Coy. Shapkina. Novgorotka. Habeaga, &c. Rivers, Azua, Ouse, Mensha, Bolsha, Hoseda, Haryena, Habeaga. Samoyeds apparell, Sleds, Deere, Women, Polygamie. Religion, &c. Samoyeds buriall, Yeere, Oath, Divinations, stature, hardinesse, trade.

CHAP. XIII.

Divers Voyages to Cherie Iland, in the yeeres 1604, 1605, 1606, 1608, 1609. Written by Jonas Poole. H. . 265

Store of Fowles. Sea-Fowles found on Shoare. Small Foxes. Cherie Iland, why so called. Assumption

The Contents of the Chapters—*Continued.* PAGE

point. Leaden Myne. Extreame cold. Driving Ice. Mount Miserie. Unholesome fogge. Beares. Morses. Abundance of beasts slayne in short time. Cowardly Beares cruell to Cowards. Beares skin thirteene foot long. Young white Beares brought home. Seales. Much Ice: no fog, &c. Possession taken of Cherie Iland. Beares eaten. Foxes: drift wood. Mynes of Lead found on Gull-Land. Good Sea-coales. Ship endangered by Ice. Many Morses slaine. Their Oile and teeth. Chery Iland Voyages. First Discovery thereof by St. Bennet.

CHAP. XIIII.

Divers Voyages and Northerne discoveries of that worthy irrecoverable Discoverer Master Henrie Hudson. His Discoverie toward the North Pole, set forth at the charge of certaine Worshipfull Merchants of London, in May 1607. Written partly by John Playse one of the Companie, and partly by H. Hudson. H. . 294

Passage sought to the East Indies by the Pole by H. Hudson. Whales. High Mountaynes. Youngs Cape. Temperate Land. Flocks of Birds. Mount of Gods Mercy. Vogel hooke. Their Shroudes and Sayles frozen. A Blacke and Blue Sea. The Greene Sea. Collins Cape. Whale dangerous, &c. Seales in abundance. Collins Cape. Newland. Ilands. Gods mercifull deliverance. Whales Bay. Davis Streights.

CHAP. XV.

A second voyage or employment of Master Henrie Hudson, for finding a passage to the East Indies by the North-east: written by himselfe. H. 313

Hudsons seeking Passage to the East Indies by the North-east. Sea colours. Sight and description of a Mermaide. Needles inclination. Sunnes variation. Beares, Seales, Mid-night Sun. Swart Cliffe in Nova Zembla. Beares, Deere, Foxes. White Deere. Store of Drift wood. Many good Bayes. Cause of the Ice in Nova Zembla. Costing Sarch. Brunell. Greene Sea. Thunder. No night in ten weekes.

THE TABLE

The Contents of the Chapters—*Continued.* PAGE

CHAP. XVI.

The third voyage of Master Henrie Hudson toward Nova Zembla, and at his returne, his passing from Farre Ilands, to New-found-Land, and along to fortie foure degrees and ten minutes, and thence to Cape Cod, and so to thirtie three degrees; and along the Coast to the Northward, to fortie two degrees and an halfe, and up the River neere to fortie three degrees. Written by Robert Juet of Lime-house. H. . . 333

Master Hudsons third Voyage to Nova Zembla, &c. Farre Ilands. Busse Iland. Stars seene and water changed. Currents. Current to the South. Great storme. Variations of the Compasse. New-found Land. French-men Fishing. Store of Cods taken. Scoales of Herrings. Salvages come aboord, &c. Hudsons River. French Trade. Savages Houses spoyled. A current to the South-west, and South-west by West. B. Gosnold. Cape Cod. The Flats. Current and variation. A white Sandie shoare. The Barre of Virginia. Kings river. The banke of Virginia. Great Bay and Rivers. Many Ilands. Deceitfull streames. Three great Rivers. Salmons. Mullets. Rayes. Colman slaine. Colmans Point. Treacherous Savages. The Savages bring Oysters, Beanes, Grapes, Pompions, &c. The Savages Oration. Chest-nut trees, Wal-nut trees, &c. Treacherie of the Savages. Myne of Copper or Silver.

CHAP. XVII.

An Abstract of the Journall of Master Henrie Hudson, for the discoverie of the North-west passage, begun the 17. of Aprill, 1610. ended with his end, being treacherously exposed by some of the Companie. H. 374

Master Henrie Hudsons Discoverie of the North-west Passage. Cape Worsenholme. Cape Digs.

A larger discourse of the same voyage, and the successe thereof, written by Abacuk Pricket. . . . 377

The Contents of the Chapters—*Continued.* PAGE

Lousie Bay. Store of Whales. Hudsons discoverie further then any Englishman had beene. King James Cape. Queen Annes Cape. Prince Henries Cape. Fowles hanged. Michaelmasse Bay. Sea of two colours. Ship frozen in, hard wintring. Greenes lewdnesse. Hudsons wintring and diet. Midicinable bud. Savages bartering. Greene and Wilson conspire with Juet against Hudson. Greenes Conspiracy. Hudson, the Carpenter and others exposed. Discord and Division, dangerous in Voyages. Ebbe from East; Floud from West. Vengeance pursueth villeny. Trecherous Savages repay Savage Trecherie. Murtherers murthered. Misery, Danger of some; Death of some. Arrivall. Widhouses Letter and notes.

A Note found in the Deske of Thomas Widhouse, Student in the Mathematikes, he being one of them who was put into the Shallop. 411

Articles against Juet, &c.

CHAP. XVIII.

The discoveries of M. M. Nicolo, and Antonio Zeni, gathered out of their Letters by Francisco Marcolino: whereto is added Quirino his shipwracke. H. P. . 413

Travels of Zeni into Frisland, Groenland, Estotiland. Canibals of Drogio. Icaria. Zichmnis Citie.

The shipwracke of Master Piero Quirino, described by Christophoro Fioravanti, and Nicolo di Michiel, who were present there: here contracted. H. P. . . 417

Quirino. Terrible tempest and shipwracke. Ship forsaken. Schiffe lost. Cold, Hunger, Thirst, Diseases, ill Steerers in a hard Voyage. Shipwracke attended by Famine, Cold, Discord, Lice, &c. Hunger good sauce. Ilands of Saints and Rustene. Releese by a Priest. Rostene bartering, dyet, sincerítie. Norwegian simplicitie and customes. Long nights and dayes. Returne from Norway to Venice by London. Francos franknesse.

THE TABLE

The Contents of the Chapters—*Continued.*

PAGE

CHAP. XIX.

Ancient commerce betwixt England and Norway, and other Northerne Regions. 437

Liars reward. Arthurs Conquests. Edgars great Navie and Titile. Danes who; when first infested England; their Customs. Thurs sacrifice. Danes spoyling, massacre, revenge. Hocktide. Canutus. S. Olave. Cnutos Pilgrimage to Rome. Cunildas champions victory. Suanus. Two Haralds Hacon. Olave and Lewis. King-Saints. Monkes of Norway reformed by M. Paris. Nic. de Lynna.

CHAP. XX.

A briefe Memoriall of the great travels by Sea and Land, of Master George Barkley, Merchant of London, in Europe, Asia, Africa, and America, and their Ilands. 451

700. sayle at once at Elsenore. Danske building. Amber. Amber-frog. Swallow-story. High walls of Vistula. Kreitzherne. Ladie Knights order in Prussia dissolved. Savage Momeses. Sacs. Leave-rites. Peibus. Narve. Letto. Serpent-superstition. Poles and Tartars Customes. Jewish Sorcery, or Christians Imposture. Torne. Norway gentlemen. Sweden villenage. Loretto Ladies Legend, rich vestries, &c.

CHAP. XXI.

Collections out of Martin Broniovius de Biezerfedea sent Ambassadour from Stephen King of Poland, to the Crim Tartar: Contayning a description of Tartaria, or Chersonesus Taurica, and the Regions subject to the Perecop or Crim Tartars, with their Customes private and publike in peace and warre. . . . 461

Long miles: great Frost: Borders next the Crim Tartar. Tartars Houses, progresse, regresse, Beasts. Perecopia. Skul-forts. Water-pipes. Ruines Ethnike and Christian; Admirable Vaults. Crim-Tartars Cities and Villages. Genuois Acts and valour. Capha described.

The Contents of the Chapters—*Continued.* PAGE

Colchis, Deepe wels, Salt Lake, Plentie of Taurica. Taurica seasons, soyle, bounds, originall, Princes. Election of the Chan and Galga. Counsellors, Religion, Government. Tartars obedience and agreement; diet and life. Embassadors. Turkes power in Taurica. Chans Money, Provision, Warre. Tartarian invasions. The Chans Tenth. Captives miserie. Tartars armie, armes, horses, slight-fight, Captives. Discipline, honour.

CHAP. XXII.

Dithmar Blefkens his Voyages, and History of Island and Groenland. 492

Island described, first peopled. Gronland and Islland first found; peopled from Norway.

Of the Islanders Religion. 494

Iseland Bishops. Reformation of Religion. Tadde Bonde.

The Life and Manners of the Islanders. . . . 497

Islanders dispositions good and evill. Old Men. No Bread. Lousie love, common Lodging, long Nights pastime.

Of the wonderfull standing Pooles, Lakes, and Fountaines in Island. 502

Stone water. Strange waters.

Of the wonderfull Mountaines in Island. . . . 503

Stranger fires. Strangest tales of Hecla. Ice-wonder.

Of the Riches of the Islanders. 506

The creatures of Island, Woods, Mines, Whale-bones. Island Monsters and various Sea-formes.

Of the Judgement of the Islanders. 510

Place of Judicature. Trials, sentence, execution. Pigmie-fancy.

Of Groneland. 512

S. Thomas fountaine. Voyage of Gronland. Boats of leather and of barke. The Authors survey of Hecla, and sickness thereupon.

THE TABLE

The Contents of the Chapters—*Continued.*

PAGE

CHAP XXIII.

Extracts of Arngrim Jonas, an Islander, his Chrymogæa or History of Island: published Anno Dom. 1609. H. P. 519

First names and Discoveries of Island.

§ 1. Of Island, the Situation, Discoverie, Plantation and Language. 519

First Names and Discoveries of Island. Island so called of Ice. It is not Thule. Length and Breadth. Bounds and Division of Island; first plantation, when and how. First habitation and habitations, condition and conditions of Island. Islanders retaine the Gottish language: the letters thereof.

§ 2. A discourse of the first Inhabitants of the Northerne World, supposed to be Giants expelled from Canaan. Of the Islanders Houses, Fewell, Victuall. . . 533

Letters and Grammer of Island. First Northerne Inhabitants. First peoplers of the North: Fermotus, Norus, Gorus, Thorro, etc. Giants first inhabitants of the North, etc. Procopius testimonie of Giants. Islanders ancient manners. Houses, stoves, tillage, beasts, fowle, fish, drinkes. Island bankets, money.

§ 3. Of their Politie, and Religion in old times. . . 546

Ancient Religion, founders and politie. Ethnike rites and humane sacrifices. Devill-circle. Christianitie. Magistrates and Courts: provisions for Poore, against Beggars. Office of the Reppagogi, and of the superiour Magistrates. Hoffsgodar, Reppagogies, Logman. Island Officers.

ILLUSTRATIONS

PAGE

Map of Greenland, with the manner of killing Whales, Morses and Beares, ... 32

Hondius His Map of Norwegia and Suetia, . 440

Hondius His Map of Denmarke, . . . 448

Hondius His Map of the Arctike Pole, or Northerne World, ... 456

Hondius His Map of Borussia or Prussia, . . 464

Hondius His Map of Livonia or Leifland, . 472

Hondius His Map of Lithuania, . . . 480

Hondius His Map of Polonia, ... 488

Hondius His Map of Taurica Chersonesus, . 496

Hondius His Map of Island, ... 512

Ancient Gottish Letters, ... 531

THE THIRTEENTH VOLUME

OF

Purchas His Pilgrimes

Contayning the Northerne Discoveries of Seas, Coasts and Countries towards the West and East; with Collections of Siberia, Tartaria, Greenland and Iceland by Englishmen and others

To the Reader. [III.iii.461.]

I Thought good here to give an account of my course. Having spent much time in that other World, so little known to This (Tartaria and China) that the parts least known might be made best known: I have comne neerer home, to Russia, and her neighbours, the neerer, or Chrim Tartars, the Samoyeds, and others; whereof Doctor Fletchers Story being so elaborate (where, though the centre bee Russia, yet his circumference is more generall) and by men judicious which have in those parts enjoyed most honourable employment, and exactest intelligence, commended; I have given him the first place. And if some terme bee mollified, or some few things omitted, it is not to defraud Thee of the Historie (which for substance is whole, as by perusall is found) but not to defraud our industrious Countrymen in their merchandizing mysterie, wherein some perhaps would hence seeke occasion of undermining. For like cause I have given the next place to Captaine Edge, (the one our gowned Generall by Land, the other in his generall Historie also by Sea) as deserved by his ten yeeres Voyages, and his other Merits. As for the question of Willoughbies Land, I list not to dispute it; but I thinke, neither Hollander (as is also confessed by the French Booke, called, The Historie of Spitsberghe [a]

[a] *H. G. A. in confutation of the English assertion for Willoughby, sayth, Il est bien vray que nos Mariniers n'ont trouve au dit lieu de 72. degrees aulcun Pays. 72. in Sir Hugh Willoughbies Booke perhaps was mistaken for 77. their figure of 7. and that of 2. in old writing, being very like each other, so that the last 7. with a little touch of the running Pen might appeare. 2. His hand, I am sure, is of the old fashion of that time, as appears by a Will I have with his hand, and perhaps all of his hand. Some English Maps have made an Iland in that height where none is: and the Dutch Willebord Iles: (which they say are eight in 73.) have small likelihood: perhaps Sir Hugh Willoughbie might misreckon, by not knowing the variation of the Compas and Sea rules: which I take to be most likely, and H. G. A. confesseth also.*

on the Dutch behalfe) nor any other have found any such Lands as his Storie describes, but some part of those which now with a generall name wee call, Greenland (howsoever the makers of Maps and Globes may create Lands and Ilands at pleasure, especially in unknowne places) and the first setled, ordinary, and orderly Voyages for the Whale-killing, and the most for discoverie in those parts have beene made by the English, their gaynes awakening the Hollander to that enterprise, and that also (as elsewhere in the World) by English guides. That which I most grieve at in this contention, is the detention of further discovery to the Pole and beyond (where it is not likely to be colder then here, and at the Arctike circle: as in the Red Sea, Ormus, and the Countrey about Balsara on this side the Tropike, is found greater heat then under the Line it selfe) the desire of gayne every where causing debate, and consequently losse of the best gaine both in Earth and Heaven. Merchants might get the World, and give us the World better, if Charitie were their Needle; Grace, their Compas; Heaven their Haven, and if they would take their height by observing the Sunne of Righteousnesse in the Scripture-astrolabe, and sounding their depth by a Leading Faith, and not by a Leadden bottomlesse Covetousnesse: that is, if they would seeke the Kingdome of Heaven first, all things should bee added; they should finde World enough in the Indian, and Polare Worlds, and wee and they should arrive at better knowledge of the Creator and Creatures. And of all men (that I may a little further answere that Historie of Spitsberghe) I would be glad to see agreement betwixt the English and Dutch, both because I honour that Nation, as hath appeared in this whole worke of Voyages, in which and of which the Dutch are so great a part: and because in Region, Religion, Originall Nation, ingenious and ingenuous disposition, and (that which here brings both on our Stage) the glory of Navigation, they are so neere us, and worthie to be honored. It is true that every where the English hath beene the elder Brother,

a Doctor, and Ductor, to the Hollanders, in their Martiall feats at home, and Neptunian exploits abroad, (that I mention not their permitted wealthie fishing on the English shoare) whom had they followed with as true and due respect, as with happie successe; quarrels had not so distracted and distorted both sides. I appeale to Dutch ingenuitie, if ever they did any thing wholly New (but give names) in remotest Navigations, without English lights. Columbus an Italian had the honour of finding America, and the Spaniards the happinesse. But for the North America, and the whole Northern New World, Cabota [b] borne or bred at least in England, was either Actor or Author. For the Dutch, I have shewed, for the compassing of the World, and for the East Indies before, that our Drake, Candish, Mellis, Davis, Adams, &c. were their Fore-runners, Pilots, and Guides: Yea, their New-found Land Voyages, and all the Northerne coast of America were discovered by Sebastian Cabota, and other Englishmen. I adde their New Straights Southwards from those of Magelane were discovered before by Drake,* as in the Map of Sir Francis Drakes Voyage presented to Queene Elizabeth, still hanging in His Majesties Gallerie at White Hall, neere the Privie Chamber, and by that Map (wherein is Cabotas Picture, the first and great Columbus for the Northerne World) may be seene. In which Map, the South of the Magelane Straits is not a Continent, but many Ilands, and the very same which they have stiled in their Straits, Barnevels Ilands had long before beene named by the most auspicate of Earthly Names, and let themselves be Judges, with which the other is as little worthie to be mentioned, as a kind Mother, and an unkind Traitor. The Name Elizabeth [c] is expressed in golden Letters, with a golden Crowne, Garter, and Armes affixed: The words ascribed thereunto are these, Cum omnes ferè hanc partem Australem Continentem esse putent, pro certo sciant Insulas esse Navigantibus pervias, earumque australissimam Elizabetham à D. Francisco Draco Inventore dictam esse. The same

[b] *Sebastian Cabota the English Columbus, sonne of John a Venetian, bred heere, and Discoverer for Henry the Seventh, of America; and first Governour of the Moscovie Companie.*

* *Sir F. Drake first finder of the S. Streights, called Maires.*

[c] *In the said Map is Queene Elizabeths Picture, with Neptune yeelding his Trident, and Triton sounding her Fame, with these Verses, Te Deus æquor eus donat Regina Tridente, Et Triton laudes efflat ubique tuas.*

height of 57. degrees, and South-easterly situation from the Magelan Westerne Mouth give further evidence. And my learned friend Master Brigges told me, that he [III.iii.462.] hath seene this plot of Drakes Voyage cut in Silver by a Dutchman (Michael Mercator, Nephew to Gerardus) many yeeres before Scouten or Maire intended that Voyage. As for Nova Zemla by Stephen Burrough, and others, long before discovered, they also have given new names, which I envie not: onely I feare a væ soli, and hate ingratitude both ours and theirs. But too much of this. Next to this more generall Discourse shall follow the Dutch Northerne Voyages, and the English North-easterne: after which wee will take a more complementall leave of that Continent, and from thence visite the Northerly and North-westerne Discoveries; at once hunting for a New World and a New passage to This.

Chap. II.

A briefe Discoverie of the Northerne Discoveries of Seas, Coasts, and Countries, delivered in order as they were hopefully begunne, and have ever since happily beene continued by the singular industrie and charge of the Worshipfull Society of Muscovia Merchants of London, with the ten severall Voyages of Captaine Thomas Edge the Authour.

§. I.

Greenland first discovered by Sir Hugh Willoughbie; the Voyages of Frobisher, Pet and Jackman, Davis, the Dutch; First Morse and Whale-killing, with further Discoveries.

W. Gemeticensis de Ducib. Norman.

THe Northerne parts of the World have ever beene held to be Officina Gentium & velut Vagina Nationum, Natures Shop and Store-house of Men, better furnished then any other part of the

Earth, and from whence those notable Inundations came first of the Cymbrians and Teutons, in the time of the antient Romans; and secondly of the Gothes and Vandals under Attila, to the confusion of things both Divine and Humane in all the Southerne parts of Europe, as farre as Barbarisme could prevaile against Civilitie and Religion. For remedie whereof the Townes alongst the Baltick Sea entred into a confederacy under the names of the Hans Townes, and undertooke the keeping of those Northerne people, and the securing of these Southerne Kingdomes from any the like overflowings, upon such Priviledges and Immunities as were granted and agreed unto them by all the Southerne Princes, and according to such Lawes as were made and provided for the maintenance and strength of the said Hans Townes, amongst which the supreme and fundamentall Lawe was that none of these Nations so secured should have trade or commerce in any parts beyond the Baltike Seas, to the end the barbarous people might not bee enabled thereby to practise or move against the Hans Townes: which was the cause together also with the extremitie of cold, that those Northerne Seas were never looked unto untill the yeere 1553. At which time the trade of this Kingdome waxing cold and in decay, and the Merchants incited with the fame of the great masse of riches which the Portugals and Spaniards brought home yeerely from both the Indies, entred into a resolution, notwithstanding the prohibition of the Hans Law to discover the Northerne Seas, which so long had beene frozen and shut up; and to see whether they could not affoord a passage to Cathay and the East Indies, and accordingly provided three ships, and sent them forth under the command of Sir Hugh Willoughbie, Knight, who embarqued himselfe in a ship called, the Bona Esperança, Admirall of that Voyage, with Richard Chancellor Captaine of the Edward Bonaventure, together with a third ship, called the Bona Confidentia. These three ships falling downe from Ratcliffe, the tenth of May in the foresaid yeere

Hans Townes.

Cathay. See l. 2. cap. 1. of this whole Voyage. 212.

A.D. 1553.

went on their Voyage, and proceeding as farre as the Cape of Norway, they were severed by a tempest. Chancellor after he had stayed at Ward-house seven dayes, expecting the Admirall and the other ships, according to a former appointment upon any such casualtie, and hearing nothing of them, went on, and discovered the Bay of Saint Nicolas, and setled a trade there, which hath continued to these times.

Sir Hugh Willoughbie was driven to the height of 72. * where hee fell upon an Iland, now knowne by the name of Willoughbie Land, and lieth from Sinam (upon the Continent of Norway) East and by North an hundred and sixtie leagues or thereabouts, from thence he went North and North-west, and within eight dayes after he fell upon a Land which lay West South-west, and East North-east, betweene 74. and 75. degrees of latitude, and plying Westward along by the Land, he was driven by the wind to put to Sea againe, untill the wind came about. Then they made towards the Land againe, and bare with it, but finding that place unfit for landing, they haled out againe, running along the Land sixteene leagues North-west, where they found a faire Bay, went on Land and found the place inhabited. From thence they put to Sea againe, runne alongst the coast for fortie leagues together, till at length they came to an anchor within two leagues of the shoare, where they landed, and found two or three good Harbours.

**An errour in the latitude, the Land stands in 77.*

[III.iii.463.] *Greenland discovered by Sir Hugh Willoughbie. This Voyage was written by Sir H. Will. and found in his ship. In Januarie after he was alive, as appeares by a Will of Gab. Will. his kinsman, subscribed by Sir Hug. Willoughbie which Will I now have, and keepe as a Relike of that worthie discoverer and first finder of King James his New-land.*

Afterwards they entred into the Haven which ranne up into the Maine about two leagues, where they remained for the space of a weeke upon the maine Land. They found Beares, great Deere, Foxes, and other beasts. They sent out three men three dayes journey to the South-west, and three others also full West, all which returned after divers dayes travelling, and found no people nor any likelihood of habitation. And this is that Land which now is called Greenland, or King James his New-land, and is knowne to the Hollanders by the name of Spitsbergen. Sir Hugh Willoughbie returned into Lapland,

where he and his companie were frozen to death, in the Haven called Arzina, neere Kegor.

The Muscovia Merchants having thus setled a trade in Russia, and being incorporated by the name of, The Merchants of England, for the discoverie of new trades, pursued their first resolutions for finding a way to Cathay by the North-east, and in the yeere 1556. sent out Stephen Burrough, for discoverie of the River Obb, who proceeding forwards in that Voyage discovered the River Pechora, the Streights of Vaigats and Novazembla *; went on shoare upon the Iland of Vaigats, and upon the North Continent of Russia; met with the Samoeds, observed their manner of life, their Religion, their Sacrifices to their rude and ill shaped Idols; and the yeere being spent, returned into Russia.

*See Hackl. V. tom. 1. pag. 274.

The Companie having sought for the North-east passage, and finding such difficulties as are mentioned in their particular Journals, resolved to make triall, if the North-west part could not affoord a passage to the Indies, which was the first and maine scope of their Northerne Discoveries. And in the yeere 1576. they sent forth Sir Martin Frobisher with two Barkes, who comming into the height of 62. or thereabouts, found a great Inlet, now knowne by the name of Frobishers Streights, into which he put himselfe, and sayled sixtie leagues with a mayne Land on each side, and so for that yeere returned.

1576. *Sir M. Frobisher. Hakl. tom. 3. 25. & seqq.*

The next yeere following he made a second Voyage to that place, purposely to lade himselfe with a kind of Oare, which the yeere before he had found there, and gave hope by the colour to yeeld Gold, and being laden with some quantitie, returned.

The yeere following, being 1578. having made tryall here of that Oare, and finding it not to fall out according to his expectation, hee was furnished out to proceed in the further discoverie of those Streights, and entring into the same, made way so farre as hee thought fit, and then returned backe, having first taken possession thereof in

1578.

the name of Queene Elizabeth of famous memorie, who called the place Meta incognita: he brought home some of the Natives, and left some of his men there.

1580. *Pet and Jackman. Hak. to. 1. p. 445.* In the yeere 1580. the Companie sent out a second Voyage for the discoverie of the River Obb, and thence to goe on to Cathay; furnishing forth two ships under the command of Arthur Pet, and Charles Jackman, who following their instructions, arrived at Vaigats, passed those Streights with a particular observation of those Ilands and places therein, plyed along the East part of Novazembla, and the North of Russia, and the Samoeds Countrey, so farre as the Ice would give them leave, and finding no possibilitie of passage by reason of the Ice, returned backe in the latter end of the yeere. By this time the Voyage of Saint Nicolas was knowne, and become a beaten trade. And the Companie sent out yeerely thither ten or twelve ships, which returned fraighted with the commodities of that Countrey.

1583. *Sir H. Gilbert. Hak. to. 3. p. 143.* In the yeere 1583. by the leave and admittance of the Moscovia Companie, Sir Humfrey Gilbert went out for the discoverie of the North part of Terra Florida, came into the great River called, Saint Laurence in Canada, tooke possession of the Countrey, setled the government of the fishing there which is so well knowne in these times.

1585. *MasterDavis. Hak. to. 3. p. 98. & seq.* In the yeere 1585. Master John Davis was furnished out at Dartmouth with two Barkes, for the discoverie of the North-west, came into the height of 66. plyed along the coast, observed the probabilitie of a passage, and in the end of the yeere returned.

1586. In the yeere following, being 1586. hee went on againe in the further discoverie thereof, found a great Inlet betweene 55. and 56. of latitude, which gave him great hope of a passage, traded with the people there, and so returned.

1587. In the yeere 1587. hee made a third Voyage to those places, followed his course to the North and North-west, to the Latitude of 67. degrees, having the Continent

(which hee called America) on the West side and Groineland, which hee named Desolation on the East, and going on the height of 86. degrees, the passage enlarged so that hee could not see the Westerne shoare. Thus he continued in the Latitude of 73. degrees in a great Sea free from Ice, of an unmeasurable depth, but by the occasion of the departure of two Ships which were in company with him, which hee left Fishing at a place, he returned [III.iii.464.] home. This passage continueth the Name and memorie of the first Discoverer, and is called Fretum Davis. *Fretum Davis.* And thus the Discoverie of the Northern Seas proceeded on from time to time, by the endeavour and charge of the Muscovia Companie, untill they had particularly discovered the Lands, Coasts, Ilands, Straights, Havens, Bayes, Rivers and other places therein, and measured every part thereof, by their often tracing to and fro: Together also with the observation of the Commodities and Advantages, arising from every part of the same, continuing even unto these times to haunt and frequent the parts which they had formerly found out; As by their yeerely Reportaries and Journals may appeare, and that either without emulation or competition of any other Nation, that ever came into those parts or enterprised any Discoverie there untill of late yeeres, as appeares by this that followeth.

When Richard Chancelor had setled a trade with John Vasilowich then Emperour of Russia, and his Ambassadours had beene heere in England, to accomplish matters requisite for maintenance of the Amitie and Entercourse made and agreed upon betweene these two Crownes; King Philip, Queene Marie, Dukes also at that time of Burgundie, and Soveraignes of all the Netherlands, made a grant of Priviledge unto the Muscovia Merchants for the sole Trade of those Seas, prohibiting all others to haunt and frequent the same, without speciall Licence and consent of the sayd Companie: which grant of Priviledge was accordingly enjoyed without disturbance or interloping of the Hollanders, who out of obedience either *Hak. Tom.* 1. *pag.* 297.

1553. to the Prohibition made by their Soveraigne, or for that they durst not adventure into these Seas, did not any way attempt to bee seene or appeare there, either for Discoverie
25. or trade of Merchandize, for the space of five and twentie yeeres, after the Port of Saint Nicholas was first Discovered and found out by the English. For the Company having as is above mentioned, made their first Discoverie
1553. in the yeere 1553. there was never heard of any Nether-
1578. lander that frequented those Seas, untill the yeere 1578. At which time they first began to come to Cola, and within a yeere or two after, one John de Whale a Netherlander, came to the Bay of Saint Nicholas, being drawne thither by the perswasion of some English for their better meane of Interloping, which was the first man of that Nation that ever was seene there. And this as is formerly noted
25. was five and twentie yeeres after it was Discovered by the Muscovia Merchants.

1594. *These Voiages follow.* Afterwards the Hollanders crept in more and more, and in the yeere 1594. they made out foure Ships for Discoverie of the North-east passage to China, the Master Pylot whereof was William Barrents, these came upon the Coast of Novazembla to the Latitude of 77. degrees, drew backe againe towards the Straights of Vaigats, and then returned giving Names unto some places and Promontories upon that Land.

1595. In the yeere 1595. They sent out a second Voyage,
1596. tracing the way through the Straights of Vaigats in the same steps, as Pet and Jackman had formerly passed, and so returned.

I have by me a French Storie of Spitzbergh, published 1613 *by a Dutchman which writeth against this English allegation, &c. but hotter arguments then I am willing to answer.* In the yeere 1596. They set out a third Voyage with two Ships, the one of which shaped her course from the Cape of Norway, to an Iland in the Latitude of 74. degrees, which wee call Cherie Iland, and they call Beare Iland, and from thence to Greenland, where Sir Hugh Willoughbie had beene two and fortie yeeres before, for so long time there is betweene the first Discoverie thereof and the yeere 1596. And from thence to the North-east part of Novazembla, in the Latitude of 76. degrees, where

they Wintred and lost their Ship, and came home with much difficultie.

In the yeere 1603. Stephen Bennet was imployed by the Companie, in a Ship called the Grace, to those parts Northwards of the Cape, and was at Cherie Iland and killed some Sea-horses, and brought home Lead Oare from thence.

In the yeere 1608. the said fellowship set foorth a Ship called the Hope-well, whereof William Hudson was Master, to discover to the Pole, where it appeareth by his Journall, that hee came to the height of 81. degrees, where he gave Names to certayne places, upon the Continent of Greenland formerly discovered, which continue to this day, namely, Whale Bay, and Hackluit Headland, and being hindred with Ice, returned home without any further use made of the Countrey, and in ranging homewards, hee discovered an Iland lying in 71. degrees, which hee named Hudsons Tutches.

William Hudson Discovereth to 81. Degrees.

Whale Bay.

Hackluits Headland.

Hudsons Toutches.

Heere it is to bee understood, that the Companie having by often resort and imployment to those parts, observed the great number of Sea-horses at Cherie Iland, and likewise the multitude of Whales, that shewed themselves upon the coast of Greenland; They first applyed themselves to the killing of the Morces, which they continued from yeere to yeere with a Ship or two yeerely; in which Ships the Companie appointed Thomas Welden Commander, and in the yeere 1609. the Companie imployed one Thomas Edge their Apprentice, for their Northerne Voyage, and joyned him in Commission with the fore sayd Welden. Now the often using of Cherie Iland, did make the Sea-horse grow scarse and decay, which made the Companie looke out for further Discoveries.

Thomas Welden.

1609.

Thomas Edge the Author.

In the yeere 1610. the Companie set out two Ships, viz. the Lionesse for Cherie Iland, Thomas Edge Commander; and the Amitie, for a Northerne Discoverie, the Master of which Ship was Jonas Poole: who in the moneth of May fell with a Land, and called it Greenland, this is the Land [III.iii.465.]

1610.

Jonas Poole first Namer of Greenland.

that was discovered by Sir Hugh Willoughby long before, which Ship Amitie continued upon the coast of Greenland, discovering the Harbours and killing of Morces, untill the moneth of August, and so returned for England, having gotten about some twelve Tunnes of goods, and an Unicornes * horne.

**See Baffins North-west Discoverie. Unicorne, a Sea fishes Horne.*

1611. In the yeere 1611. the Companie set foorth two Ships for Greenland, the Marie Margaret Admirall, burthen one hundred and sixtie tunnes, Thomas Edge Commander; and the Elizabeth, burthen sixtie tunnes, Jonas Poole Master, well manned and furnished with all necessarie Provisions, they departed from Blackwall the twentieth of Aprill, and arrived at the Foreland in Greenland in the Latitude of 79. degrees, the twentieth of May following, the Admirall had in her six Biskayners expert men for the killing of the Whale: this was the first yeere the Companie set out for the killing of Whales in Greenland, and about the twelfth of June the Biskayners killed a small Whale, which yeelded twelve Tunnes of Oyle, being the first Oyle that ever was made in Greenland. The Companies two Shalops looking about the Harbour for Whales, about the five and twentieth of June rowing into Sir Thomas Smith his Bay, on the East side of the Sound saw on the shoare great store of Sea-horses; after they had found the Morses they presently rowed unto the Ship, being in crosse Road seven leagues off, and acquainted the Captayne what they had found. The Captayne understanding of it, gave order to the Master, Stephen Bennet, that he should take into his Ship fiftie tunnes of emptie Caske, and set sayle with the Ship to goe into Foule Sound. The Captayne went presently away in one Shallop with sixe men unto the Seamorse, and tooke with him Lances, and comming to them they set on them and killed five hundred Morses, and kept one thousand Morses living on shoare, because it is not profitable to kill them all at one time. The next day the Ship being gone unto the place & well mored where the Morse were killed, all the men belonging to the Ship went on

First Whale-killing. Biscayners used.

500. *Morses killed.*

shoare, to worke and make Oyle of the Morses; and when they had wrought two or three dayes, it fortuned that a small quantitie of Ice came out of Foule Sound, and put the Ship from her Moring. The Master and ten men being a board of the Ship, let fall their Sheat anchor which brought the Ship up to ride; the Ice comming upon her againe, brought her Anchor home and ranne the Ship ashoare, where shee by the Masters weake Judgement was cast away, and all their Bread spoyled not fit to eate. The Ship being cast away without hope of recoverie, the Commander Thomas Edge gave order, that all the Morse living on shoare should be let goe into the Sea, and so gave over making of Oyle, and presently haled up ashoare all his Shallops and Boates, being five, setting the Carpenter to trim them, the Saylers to make Sayles and Wastcloathes for the Boates, fit to serve them at Sea. Having fitted their Boates as well as they could with the small provision they had, being in number foure small Shallops and the ships Boate, they divided their men into them equally with what provisions of victuals they could well carrie, and after they had sayd Prayers all together on Land; being fiftie men they departed from the place where they lost their Ship, on the fifteenth of July with the winde Southerly, and rowed thirtie or fortie leagues to the Southward, and then they lost companie of one Shallop and their ships Boate of Horne Sound, which two Boates met with a Hull Ship, and acquainted him with the losse of the London Ship, and that shee had left on land goods woorth fifteene hundred pounds: So our men carryed the Hull Ship into Foule Sound, to take in the Companies goods and to kill some Sea-horses for her selfe at that place. The Captayne and two other Shallops put from the Coast of Greenland in the height of 77.⅔. Degrees, and set their course for Cherie Iland, which lyeth in 74. Degrees (—) sometimes Sayling and sometimes Rowing and made Cherie Iland the nine and twentieth of July, having beene in their Shallops at Sea fourteene dayes, and comming into the Iland with a great storme at North-

Shipwracke by Ice.

Hull Ship.

Cherie Iland.

west, with much difficultie they landed on the South side of the Iland.

Being on shoare, the Captayne sent three of his Saylers over land unto the North roade, being three miles distant from that place, to see if the Elizabeth was there, and they saw a Ship riding in the North roade, and being over-joyed they returned backe unto the Captayne to acquaint him, without staying to speake with any of the Ships companie, and by good hap the Master of the Elizabeth espyed men on the Shoare, being at that time weighing Anchor to set sayle for England, upon which hee stayed and sent the Boate ashoare to see what men they were, and when the men of the Elizabeth came ashoare, they found them to bee men of the Mary Margaret, and so went aboard unto the Master to acquaint him; whereupon the Master caused Anchor to bee weighed and went to the South side of the Iland, and there tooke in the Captayne, and hee being aboard understanding what a poore Voyage the Elizabeth had made, gave order to the Master to goe for Greenland, there to take in such Goods as the sayd Edge had left in Foule Sound. They departed from Cherie Iland the first of August, and arrived at Foule Sound the Fourteenth Dicto: where they found two Boates which they had lost companie of before, and all their men being come thither with a Hull Ship which they met with, and brought to that place; which Ship had spent all the yeere in Horne Sound, and got little goods. The Elizabeth being mored, the Captayne gave order unto the Master to deliver out of his Ship, all the goods hee had got at Cherie Iland, which was Sea-horse hydes and Blubber, being of little woorth, And to take in the Oyle and Whale-finnes, which were
[III.iii.466.] gotten by the Marie Margarets companie, the Master in unlading of his Ship brought her so light, that unfortun-
Ship over-set. atly hee over-set her, having goods in her worth seven hundred pounds. This ill chance happening unto the two London Ships, the Captayne of them agreed with Thomas Marmaduke Master of the Hull Ship, to take in the goods

which was saved, at the rate of five pounds the Tunne, which was a great rate (notwithstanding they had beene a meanes to get him goods worth five hundred pounds for the Hull Ship) and upon the one and twentieth of August, 1611. they departed from Greenland in the Hope-well, being ninetie nine men in all, and arrived at Hull the sixth of September, where the sayd Edge tooke out the Companies goods, and Shipped them for London by order from the Companie. This yeere, Edge in coasting in the Shallops, discovered all the Harbours on the West side of Greenland.

§. II.

Dutch, Spanish, Danish disturbance; also by Hull men, and by a new Patent, with the succeeding Successe and further Discoveries till this present.

IN the yeere 1612. the Companie set forth two Ships, viz. The Whale, burthen one hundred and sixtie Tunnes, and the Sea-horse, burthen one hundred and eightie tunnes, under the Command of John Russell, and Thomas Edge, for discovering and killing of the Whale. They discovered that yeere nothing worth writing of, by reason of some falling out betwixt Russell and Edge; yet they killed that yeere seventeene Whales, and some Sea-horses, of which they made one hundred and eightie Tunnes of Oyle with much difficultie; as not being experimented in the businesse. This yeere the Hollanders (to keepe their wont in following of the English steps) came to Greenland with one Ship, being brought thither by an English man, and not out of any knowledge of their owne Discoveries, but by the direction of one Allen Sallowes, a man imployed by the Muscovia Companie in the Northerne Seas for the space of twentie yeeres before; who leaving his Countrey for Debt, was entertayned by the Hollanders, and imployed by them to bring them to Greenland for their Pylot. At which time 1612. *Hollanders.* *Allen Sallowes.*

being met withall by the Companies Ships, they were commanded to depart, and forbidden to haunt or frequent those parts any more by mee Thomas Edge. There was *Spanish Ship.* also a Spanish Ship brought thither, by one Nicholas Woodcocke this yeere, a man formerly imployed by the sayd Companie; which Spanish Ship made a full Voyage in Green-harbour. But Woodcocke at his returne into *Woodcocke Imprisoned.* England, being complained of by the Companie, was Imprisoned in the Gatehouse and Tower, sixteene Moneths, for carrying the Spanish Ship thither.

1613. In the yeere 1613. the Companie set out for Greenland *Benjamin Joseph.* seven sayle of Ships, under the Command of Benjamin Joseph, and Thomas Edge, the Ships departed from Gravesend the six and twentieth of Aprill, and arrived in Greenland the fourteenth of May. This yeere the English had the Kings Patent under the broad Seale of England, to forbid all Strangers and others, but the Muscovia Companie to use the Coast of Greenland. The *Fifteene ships Interlopers.* English met with fifteene sayle of great Ships, two of them were Dutch Ships, the rest were French, Spanish, and of the Archdukes, besides foure English Interlopers. The Companies Ships forced them all from the Coast of Greenland, not suffering any of them to make a Voyage; they tooke from the two Dutch Ships certayne goods, but in going to take it, they neglected their owne voyage, which was damnified thereby to the value of three or foure thousand pounds. For their Ships came home dead Fraight two or three hundred Tunnes by that meanes. *Hope Island.* This yeere was Hope Iland and other Ilands discovered, to the Eastward by the Companie.

1614. In the yeere following, which was 1614. the Companie *Thirteen Ships and two Pinnasses armed.* set out for Greenland, thirteene great Ships and two Pinnasses, under the Command of Benjamin Joseph, and Thomas Edge, all which Ships were well appointed with all manner of Artillerie for defence, and other necessaries for the making of their Voyage and for Discoverie. This yeere the Hollanders set out for Greenland eighteene great *Eighteene Dutch ships.* Ships, whereof foure of them were of the States men of

Warre, Ships with thirtie pieces of Ordnance a piece. This yeere the Dutch stayed and fished for the Whale perforce, they were farre stronger then the English, which was a cause that the English Ships came home halfe laden, and the Dutch with a poore Voyage. This yeere the Companie Discovered unto the Northwards of Greenland, as farre as 80. Degrees odde Minuts, in the Ship Thomazen, as by her daily Journall doth appeare at large; in which Ship was imployed Thomas Sherwin, and William Baffin, being the second Voyage they were imployed into those parts. And some Ilands to the Eastwards of Greenland, were Discovered by foure Ships imployed in that service, as by their Journall more at large appeareth.

80. *Degrees discovered.*

Sherwin and Baffin.

In the yeere 1615. the Companie set out for Greenland, two sayle of great Ships and two Pinnasses, under the Command of Benjamin Joseph, and Thomas Edge, who following their Instructions, arrived upon the Coast of Greenland the sixth of June, which they found to bee much pestered with Ice, and being foggie weather, they runne into the Ice, so farre, that they were fast in it fourteene dayes before they could cleare themselves of it. This yeere also the Hollanders set out fourteene sayle of ships, whereof three of them were States Men of warre of great force; they killed Whales in Horn-sound, Bel-sound, and Faire-haven, and stayed upon the coast of Greenland perforce, as they did the former yeere; whereby the English came home halfe laden. This yeere also the King of Denmarke sent unto Greenland three of his ships, Men of warre, to demand a toll of the English; but they had none payd them: for they fell with the Foreland in 79. degrees, where Captaine Edge was, and he denyed payment of any toll, alledging that the Countrey of Greenland belonged to the King of England. These were the first Danish ships that ever came to Greenland, who had for their Pilot one James Vaden, an Englishman to bring them thither.

1615.

[III.iii.467.]

Fast in Ice, in June fourteene dayes.

King of Denmarke demands Toll.

Un-English English to serve Dutch, Spanish, Dane, against their owne.

In the yeere 1616. the Company set out for Greenland eight Sayle of great ships, and two Pinnasses under the 1616.

command of Thomas Edge, who following his course, arrived in Greenland about the fourth of June, having formerly appointed all his ships for their severall Harbours, for their making of their Voyage upon the Whale, and having in every Harbour a sufficient number of expert men, and all provisions fitting for such a Voyage. This yeere it pleased God to blesse them by their labours, that they full laded all their ships with Oyle, and left an over-plus in the Countrey, which their ships could not take in. They imployed this yeere a small Pinnasse unto the East-ward, whith discovered the East-ward part of *Edges Iland.* Greenland, Namely, the Iland called now Edges Iland, and other Ilands lying to the North-wards as farre as seventie eight degrees, this Pinnasse was some twentie tunnes, and had twelve men in her, who killed one thousand Sea-horses on Edges Iland, and brought all their Teeth home for London. This was the first yeere that ever the Company full laded all their ships sent to Greenland, and this yeere they made twelve or thirteene hundred tunnes of Oyle in Greenland by the fourteenth of August. All the ships arrived in safety in the River of Thames, in the moneth of September. The Hollanders had this yeere in Greenland foure ships, and those kept together in odde places, not easily to bee found, and made a poore Voyage.

1617. In the yeare 1617. the Company set out for Greenland fourteene Sayle of ships, and their two Pinnasses furnished and manned with a sufficient number of men and all other provisions fitting for that Voyage, under the command of Thomas Edge. They departed from Gravesend, about the foure and twentieth of Aprill, and arrived upon the Coast of Greenland, the eight and twentieth of May all in safety.

At our first comming upon the Coast this yeere, I met with a Dutch shippe of two hundred tunnes, which I commanded aboard, the Captaynes name was Cocke, who told mee there were ten Sayle of Dutch upon the Coast, and two men of Warre, and that he came to make a

Voyage upon the Whale. I shewed him the Kings Commission, and commanded him by vertue thereof to depart from the Coast, willing him to acquaint the rest of his Countrey-men with it. And further, I told him that if I met with him or any Dutch ships heereafter, I would take from them what they had gotten, and thus having entertayned him aboord with me courteously, I let him goe without taking any provisions from him. At his departure from mee, hee promised hee would but stay to meet with two of his Consorts, which hee had lost company with the day before, and then hee would directly goe for Flushing, and acquaint his Merchants, that the English Captayne would not suffer him to stay upon the Coast of Greenland; but it seemeth at his meeting with his Consorts, they agreed altogether to goe into Horne-sound, and there they killed some few Whales which they saved in Blubber. I understanding of it, gave order to my Vice-admirall when he was laden, that he should goe into Horne-sound, and put the Flemmings from thence, and take what they had gotten, which he did accordingly: but the goods he tooke from the Dutch ships, were not worth to the English twentie pounds, for it was but Blubber and Finnes, which they had no need of, in regard they had killed as many Whales as would lade their ships, and more then they could carry or save. This yeere the English made nineteene hundred tunnes of Oyle in Greenland, and all their ships arrived at home in the moneths of August and September in safetie. They also employed a ship of sixtie tunnes, with twenty men in her, who discovered to the Eastward of Greenland, as farre to the North-wards as seventie nine degrees, and an Iland which he named Witches Iland, and divers other Ilands as by the Map appeareth, and killed store of Sea-horses there, and then came into Bel-sound: where hee found his lading of Oyle, left by the Captayne which he tooke in. This yeere the Hull men set a small ship or two to the East-wards of Greenland, for the Hull men still followed the steps of the Londoners, and in a yeere or two called it their Discovery,

Witches Iland.

Hull men.

which is false and untrue, as by Oath in the Admiraltie doth appeare. The Dutch likewise practise the same course.

1618. *Zealanders.* In the yeere 1618. some difference having passed betweene the English and some Zelanders, the yeere before, in King James his Newland, alias Greenland (which Zelanders were never in those parts before,) and upon promise of the present departure were permitted to passe else-where with their provisions which they had, and comming to Cherrie Iland, and meeting with one English Interloper of Hull; namely Marmaduke, he animated the said Zelanders to returne back for Greenland, alleaging unto them, that the Companies ships were in each severall Harbour busied about their Voyage, and that none would stirre from his Harbours to molest them, and that they being three ships of force, might returne to a Harbour in that Countrey, called Hornsound, and there make a Voyage perforce, which the said Zelanders did attempt, and there manned out divers Shallops, having many Biskainers, and killed store of Whales, setting those English at nought. Whereupon Captayne Thomas Edge, chiefe Commander of the English Fleet, having laden those ships that were in Harbour with him, and presently sent for William Hely, his Vice-admirall, giving him order (who was not then full laden, but in good forwardnesse) to fit the ship he was in, and goe to Horne-sound afore-said, and put the said Zelanders from thence: which the said Hely presently put in execution. But before his comming thither, the Zelanders had notice by an English Surgeon, that if they did not depart, the English Vice-admiral would come presently and force them from thence. Whereupon the Zelanders laded all the goods they had in two ships, and sent them away before the comming of the English Vice-admirall, leaving one ship behind, with certaine caske of Blubber, and two Whales and an halfe uncut up, in a bravado to trye if the English would meddle with them or not, which said ship and goods there left, were surprized by the said English Vice-admirall; the goods detayned

Marmaduke. [III.iii.468.]

to the Companies use; and the ship restored there to the Zelanders; which ship having in her ten cast Peeces, and sixtie men, and having intelligence of one of the Companies ships, at that time laden in the Countrey with one hundred and eightie tunnes of Oyle, the Zelander gave out he would lie in waite and take that ship of the Companies and her lading, and carrie her to Zeland. For prevention whereof, the said Vice-admirall tooke sixe Peeces of Ordnance, and some Powder from the ship of Zeland, which were in England restored to the owners.

In which said yeere 1618. the Zelanders sending over for restitution of the goods taken from them. A new Company commixt of English, Scottish and Zelanders, through the meanes of one Sir John Conningham Knight, procured a grant for setting forth of shipping to those parts, which might utterly have overthrowne and spoiled the trade of the first discoveries thereof: and to that end divers of the chiefe men were hired by the new Company that had been servants to the first discoverie, and much shipping and provisions agreed for. Whereupon there was an agreement, that the East India Adventurers should joyne stocke with the Moscovia Adventurers, and be one joynt Companie for that trade of King James his Newland. The Scottish Companies Patent thereupon dissolved, to the Moscovia Companies great trouble and cost, in taking of all the provisions they had bespoken, and paying ready money for the same, having no use thereof, but great part spoyled, and came to little good, and in joyning unfortunately with the East India Companie, in which yeere, and the next yeere after, their Voyages proved very ill, and they were losers, and much vexed and crossed in their proceedings, to the great disheartning and detriment of the Moscovia Companie: yet that yeere 1618. they set forth thirteene ships and two Pinnasses, under the command of the said Captaine Thomas Edge, who arriving upon the coast of King James his Newland, in the beginning of June separated themselves to severall Harbours, for accomplishing of their

Sir John Cunningham.

East India Adventurers joyne.

Voyages, the most part being ships of no force. Presently after in all Harbours where the English were, arrived great store of ships of Zeland, in warlike manner, being ships of great force, who continued in the same Harbours amongst the English, setting two boats to the English one, with Biskainers, with a full purpose to drive the English from their Harbours, and to revenge the injurie (as they termed it) done them the yeere before: and for that the Scottish Patent was dissolved; wherein many Flemmings were to be interested. And to that purpose towards the latter end of July, ten Saile of the said Zelanders, being at a Harbour called the Foreland, where the said William Heley, Vice-admirall of the English Fleet that yeere, was in the ship Pleasure, Master Robert Salmon, with one English ship and a Pinnasse there of no force, set upon the said English Vice-admirall, threatning, if hee would not yeeld presently, to dispoyle him of ship and goods, not permitting to take his men aboord. And with two of their chiefest ships layd the English Vice-admirall aboord, there being but seven English aboord the ship, which they detayned for foure and twentie houres, the Zelanders not daring to enter, making many bravadoes and attempts, thinking to make the English to yeeld, and stand to their mercy, which was refused. And thereupon five of those Zelanders ships; namely, the Fortune of Camphire, burthen foure hundred tunnes, with eighteene cast Peeces, besides brasse Bases and Murtherers, Captaine Hubreght Cornelisson; the Saint Peter of Flushing, burthen three hundred tunnes, with eighteene cast Peeces, Captaine Cornelius Cooke; the Salamander of Flushing, two hundred tunnes, fourteene cast Peeces, Captaine Adrian Peeterson; the Cat of Delph Haven, with sixteene cast Peeces, Abraham Leverstick being Captaine and Generall of the Zelanders, and William Johnson of Milliworth, in a ship with fourteene cast Peeces: all which, after much conference passed betwixt the said Zelanders and William Hely: which said Zelanders gave out many uncivill speeches against

the Kings Majestie, not esteeming his Commission; alledging that there was good law in Flanders for what they did. And on Sunday the nineteenth of July, 1618. did forcibly set upon the said English Vice-admirall, five together plying their great Ordnance, small Shot, and Murderers, seeking what in them lay to kill and spoile all the English that were aboord: who resisted their force, and in spite of all their opposers set sayle, saluting them with their Ordnance, and maintayning fight against them till their Sayles were shot downe, some of their chiefe men slaine, others hurt, and their ship forced either to anchor, or run ashoare. The Zelanders used the English very unkindly, rifling their ship of all their goods, and taking away all their munition and artillery, not leaving any goods ashoare, but burning up the Caske, not permitting the English to take in fresh water, but shot their Boat thorow in going ashoare, and minding, as they protested and swore unto the said William Hely, that they would take and ransacke all the English ships in the Countrey, and carrie the English Captaine to Zeland: having as they said, that yeere in those parts 23. sayle of well appointed ships, onely to overthrow all the English, all which were to meet in Scotland outward bound. After the surprising of the said English Vice-admirall, all the rest of the English ships being dispersed farre asunder, could not joyne together, being in all places hindred by the Flemmings: and by that meanes the English Voyage utterly overthrowne, to the extraordinary great losse and charge of the Companie, the most part of their ships returning home without any goods.

Dutch assault the English.

[III.iii.469.]

The next yeere 1619. the said Moscovia and East India Companies set out nine ships, and two Pinnasses, under the command of the said Captaine Edge, in which yeere, divers Hollanders being in the Northermost Harbour in the Countrey, employing great quantitie of Boats in chasing the Whale there, off into the Sea, put them by their usuall course, so that the Companies ships, being five of the nine, in the two Northermost Harbours, were

1619.

disappointed of their Voyage in those Harbours; and thinking to better it in the other Harbours; the foresaid William Heley sending a Shallop with ten men in her, with Letters to the said Captaine Edge, of their ill successe to the Northwards, the said Shallop was cast away, and all the men lost: and the said Captaine being laden, sent a Pinnasse to the said Heley in August, advertising him of his departure, thinking all the ships to the Northward had been laden, wishing them to haste home. By meanes of which Shallops casting away, the Voyage was greatly hindred to the Companies exceeding great losse; in that the Hollanders did as then bring over great quantitie of Whale-oyle, and sold it at under rates, so that the Companie was forced to keepe theirs on their hands twelve moneths, and sell it afterwards at a very small price, and lost one ship in her returne homewards neere Yarmouth: which did so much dishearten the said Companie, that they dissolved againe, and thought verily to have adventured no more thither (their successe those two yeeres past, in which the East India Companie joyned with them was so bad, that any that would buy their provision might enjoy the benefit of the Trade there.) At which time, the worthie and famous Merchants Adventurers; namely, Ralph Freeman, Benjamin Deicrowe, George Strowd, with Captaine Thomas Edge, all brethren of the Moscovia Companie, pitying the down-fall of so worthie a Trafficke, in which yeerely so many poore Land-men received great comfort, and breeding of Mariners, at their owne charge compounded with the said Companies, and tooke that
1620. Trade into their hands. In which yeere 1620. they set out seven sayle of ships, under the command of William Goodlad, and the said William Heley; in which said yeere, by reason of great store of Flemmings and Danes in the foresaid Northermost Harbours, their ships had ill successe to the Northwards, and were forced to passe from Harbour to Harbour to seeke to make a Voyage, but could not, and so returned home halfe laden, with seven hundred tunnes of Oyle.

The next yeere 1621. the foresaid Adventurers hired, and set forth eight ships, seven for the Whale Voyage, and one to the South-eastwards upon Discoverie, under the command aforesaid, which yeere in one of their chiefest Harbours their Voyage was overthrowne, by reason of the foresaid Flemmings and Danes, being to the Northward, as aforesaid, putting the Whale by her course, and in all places in the Countrey generally disheartned, and out of hope to have made any Voyage that yeere, whereby to have earned their bread. Yet it pleased God afterwards in some Harbours, Whales hitting in, a Voyage was performed, and 1100. tunnes of Oyle brought home, to the great encouragement of the said Adventurers: otherwise that Trade had beene utterly overthrowne. 1621.

The yeere following 1622. the said Adventurers at their owne charge set forth nine ships, under the command aforesaid, and therein employed divers Land-men, many of which afterwards prove good Sea-men, and are fit for any Sea service. Eight of which ships were appointed to make their Voyage upon the Whale, and one to goe on discoverie to the South-eastwards. But ill successe happening, one of their greatest ships of burthen, whereof John Masson was Master, having in her two hundred tuns of Caske, Coppers, and divers provisions, was unfortunatly cast away against a piece of Ice, upon the coast of King James Newland, foure leagues from the shoare, in which ship perished nine and twentie men, and the remainder being three and twenty, were by the providence of the Almightie miraculously saved in a Shallop, coasting thirtie leagues afterwards to meet with some other ships to find some succour, having neither bread nor drinke, nor any meanes whereby to get any food: and so remayned three dayes in extreme cold weather, being in a small Boat ready to bee swallowed up of every wave, but that God provided better for them. Many of which people their hands and feet rotted off, being frozen, and they died in the Countrey. The rest of the ships returned [III.iii.470.] 1622. *Shipwracke.*

home laden, bringing in them 1300. tuns of Oyle, yet the foresaid chiefe Harbour could not performe their full lading there, by reason of the Flemmings and Danes being to the Northwards, as aforesaid, which doth yeerely hinder the Companies ships from making a Voyage.

§. III.

The Description of the severall sorts of Whales, with the manner of killing them: Whereto is added the Description of Greenland.

THe Whale is a Fish or Sea-beast of a huge bignesse, about sixtie five * foot long, and thirtie five foot thicke, his head is a third part of all his bodies quantitie, his spacious mouth contayning a very great tongue, and all his finnes, which we call Whale finnes. These finnes are fastned or rooted in his upper chap, and spread over his tongue on both sides his mouth, being in number about two hundred and fiftie on one side, and as many on the other side. The longest finnes are placed in the midst of his mouth, and the rest doe shorten by their proportionable degrees, backward and forwards, from ten or eleven foot long to foure inches in length, his eyes are not much bigger then an Oxes eyes, his body is in fashion almost round forwards, growing on still narrower towards his tayle from his bellie, his tayle is about twentie foot broad, and of a tough solid substance, which we use for blockes to chop the Blubber on (which yeelds Oyle) and of like nature are his two swimming finnes (and they grow forward on him.)

**The ordinarie growne Whale.*

Finnes.

Small eyes. Some kinds have greater. Stow mentions one taken on Tenet shoare, the eye of which was a Cart-loade, a man might stand in the hole upright: The like wee may ghesse of the throat, &c. Nature being herein luxuriant, and diversified.

This creature commeth oftentimes above water, spouting eight or nine times before he goeth downe againe, whereby he may be descried two or three leagues off. Then our Whale-killers presently rowe forth from the place where they stand to watch for him, making what haste they can to meet him: but commonly before they come neere him, he will be gone downe againe, and continue a good while before he riseth; so that sometimes

they rowe past him. Yet are they very circumspect, ever looking round where they may espie him risen, or discerne his way under water, which they call his Walke. When he is up and the Shallops neere him, they rowe towards him very resolutely, as if they would force the Shallop upon him, if hee went downe under water: but the Harponyre, who standeth up in the head of the Boat, darteth his Harping-iron at the Whale with both his hands, so soone as he commeth within his reach; wherewith the Whale being strucken, presently descendeth to the bottome, and therefore doe they reare out a rope of two hundred fathome, which is fastned to the Harping-iron, and lieth coyled in the Boat: And they let him have as much of the rope as reacheth to the bottome, and when they perceive him rising they hale in the rope to get neere him, and when the Whale commeth up above water, then do the men lance him with their lances, either out of one Shallop or the other; for most commonly there bee two Shallops about the killing of one Whale. In lancing him they strike neere to the finnes he swimmeth withall, and as lowe under water neere his bellie as conveniently they can: but when he is lanced, he friskes and strikes with his tayle so forcibly, that many times when hee hitteth a Shallop hee splitteth her in pieces; so that the men are relieved and taken in by another Shallop: and sometimes he striketh so fully upon them, that some of the men are either maymed, or killed with his stroke. Therefore they who undertake this businesse which is the principall thing in the Voyage, must not onely bee bold and resolute, but also discreet and wary; otherwise their rash forwardnesse may prevent them of their expected conquest; considering they have no shield to withstand the offended beast their enemy, but onely by a heedfull warinesse to avoide the receiving of his dangerous stroke. Swimming is also requisite for a Whale-killer to be expert in, for it may be a meanes to save his life, when he hath lost his Boat, and another is not neere presently to helpe him.

You may see this Story of the Whale-killing presented lively in the Map, which Captaine Edge hath liberally added to this Relation.

The Whale having received his deadly wound, then he spouteth bloud (whereas formerly he cast forth water) and his strength beginneth to fayle him; but before he dieth, hee will sometimes draw the Shallop three or foure miles from the place where he was first stricken: and as he is a dying, he turneth his bellie upwards, which lieth uppermost being dead. Then they fasten a rope to his tayle, and with the Shallops, one made fast to another, they towe him towards the ship with his tayle foremost. Then doe they lay him crosse the sterne of the ship, where he is cut up in this manner; two or three men in a Boat or Shallop come close to the side of the Whale, and hold the Boat fast there with a Boat-hooke; and another standing either in the Boat, or most commonly upon the Whale, cutteth the fat (which we call Blubber) in square pieces with a cutting Knife, three or foure foot long. Then to race it from the flesh, there is a Crane or Capsten placed purposely upon the poope of the ship, from whence there descendeth a rope with a hooke in it; this hooke is made to take hold on a piece of Blubber: and as the men winde the Capsten, so the cutter with his long knife looseth the fat from the flesh, even as if the [III.iii.471.] lard of a Swine were to be cut off from the leane. When a piece is in order cut off, then let they lower the Crane, and let downe the Blubber to flote upon the water, and make a hole in some part of it, putting a rope thorow it; and so they proceed to cut off more, fastning ten or twentie pieces together to bee towed a shoare at one time, being made fast to the sterne of a Boat or Shallop. These pieces being thus brought unto the shoare side, they are drawne by one and one upon the shoare with an high Crane, or carried up by two men on a Barrow unto a Stage, there to be cut into small pieces about a foot long, but thin: then it is carried unto the choppers by two boyes, with two little hand-hookes, taking in each hand a piece, and so they put it into half-tubs which stand behind the choppers, out of which the choppers take it up; who stand at the side of a boat which is raised of an equall

height fit for the furnace. And the boat being fitted with all things necessarie for the choppers, they place the chopping blockes, which they make of the Whales tayle, and the Blubber is layd ready for them, as they use it, in small pieces upon the boord whereon they stand. Then the choppers take it up with hand-hookes, and lay it on their blockes, and chop it in thin pieces (the thinner he cuts it, the better it is) and when it is chopped, they put it off the blocke downe into the Shallop, with a short Paddle made like a Cole-rake: and thus doe sixe or eight men stand chopping on the one side of the boat, and on the other side of the boat about two or three yards distant are the Furnaces and Coppers placed and heated. Then betweene the chopping boat and the Coppers, is layd a broad thicke planke, on which standeth a hogshead, which contayneth as much as is put into the Copper, at one time for one boyling, and the tub being emptied, is made to slide unto the chopping boat againe, being there filled with a copper ladle againe, and put into another Copper. When it is boyled enough, the small pieces of Blubber, which wee call Fritters, will looke browne as if they were fried. Then are they taken out with copper ladles, and some of the Oyle also with them, and put into a Barrow made close to dreyne the Oyle, which standeth over another Shallop, that is set on the back-side of the Furnace to receive the Oyle in, and as soone as the Fritters are taken cleane out of the Copper, then presently is the tub of small Blubber emptied into the Copper againe to be also boyled.

The Boat into which the hot Oyle is put out of the Coppers, is ever kept halfe full of water, which doth not onely coole the Oyle before it runne into the Caske, but also is a cleanser of it from drosse, which descendeth to the bottome of the Boat. Out of the Oyle-boat doth the Oyle runne thirtie or fortie yards in Troughs or Gutters, and so into Buts or Hogsheads, which being filled, is rolled off to coole, and another Caske layd to fill, and when there is any quantitie of Oyle made, it is carried

aboord the ship in rafts. In this manner is the Oyle saved and prepared.

Whale Finnes. Now concerning the Whale Finnes, the Whales head being cut off from the body (as hee floteth at the sterne of the ship where hee is cut up) is towed by a Boat as neere the shoare as it will come: but it is aground in twelve or thirteene foot water, then by crabes which are placed on land it is drawne on land, at severall times when the water is at highest, so neere the dry shoare, that men at a lowe water with their Boats on, cut off the Blubber and Finnes, which by the crabes are drawne on shoare, and the Finnes are with Axes, one severed from another, and being made cleane, are packed up by fiftie in a bundle, and so shipped.

Eight kinds of Whales known. There are eight severall kinds of Whales, and differing the one from the other in goodnesse, quantitie and qualitie.

1. *Grand bay Whale.* The first sort of Whale is called the Grand-bay, taking his name from Grand-bay in Newfoundland, as having there beene first killed: he is blacke of colour, with a smooth skinne, and white underneath the chaps. This Whale is the best for Oyle and Finnes of all the rest (and doth yeeld most the elder it growes.) This sort of Whale doth yeeld about an hundred hogsheads of Oyle, and some five hundred Finnes.

2. *Sarda.* The second sort of Whale is called Sarda, of the same colour as the former, but somewhat lesser, and the Finnes likewise lesser, and yeelds in Oyle according to his bignesse, sometimes seventie hogsheads, or eightie hogsheads. This Whale hath naturally growing upon his backe, white things like unto Barnacles.

3. *Trumpa.* The third sort of Whale is called Trumpa, being as long as the first, but thicker forwards, of colour more gray then the former, having but one spoute in his head, and the rest have all two; he hath in his mouth teeth about a span long, and as thicke as a mans wrist, but no finnes; his head is bigger then the two former, and in proportion farre bigger then his bodie. In the head of this Whale

is the Permesitie, which lieth there in a hole like a Well. This is the Whale that is supposed to yeeld the Ambergreese; There taken about fortie hogsheads of Oyle besides the Permesitie. *Spermaceæte.*

The fourth sort of Whale is called Otta Sotta, and is of the same colour of the Trumpa, having finnes in his mouth all white, but not above halfe a yard long, being thicker then the Trumpa, but not so long: he yeelds the best Oyle, but not above thirtie hogsheads. 4. *Otta Sotta.*

The fift sort of Whale is called Gibarta, of colour blacke like the two first, saving that it hath standing upon the top of his backe, a finne halfe a yard long. This Whale is as bigge as the first; his fins little or nothing worth, being not above halfe a yard long: and hee yeeldeth about twelve hogsheads of Oyle, all which his backe yeelds; as for his bellie it yeelds nothing at all. 5. *Gibarta.* [III.iii.472.]

The sixt sort is called Sedeva, being of a whitly colour, and bigger then any of the former, the finnes not above one foot long, and he yeelds little or no Oyle. 6. *Sedeva.*

The seventh is called Sedeva Negro, of colour blacke, with a bumpe on his backe; this Whale yeelds neither Oyle, finnes, nor teeth, and yet he is of a great bignesse. 7. *Sedeva Negro.*

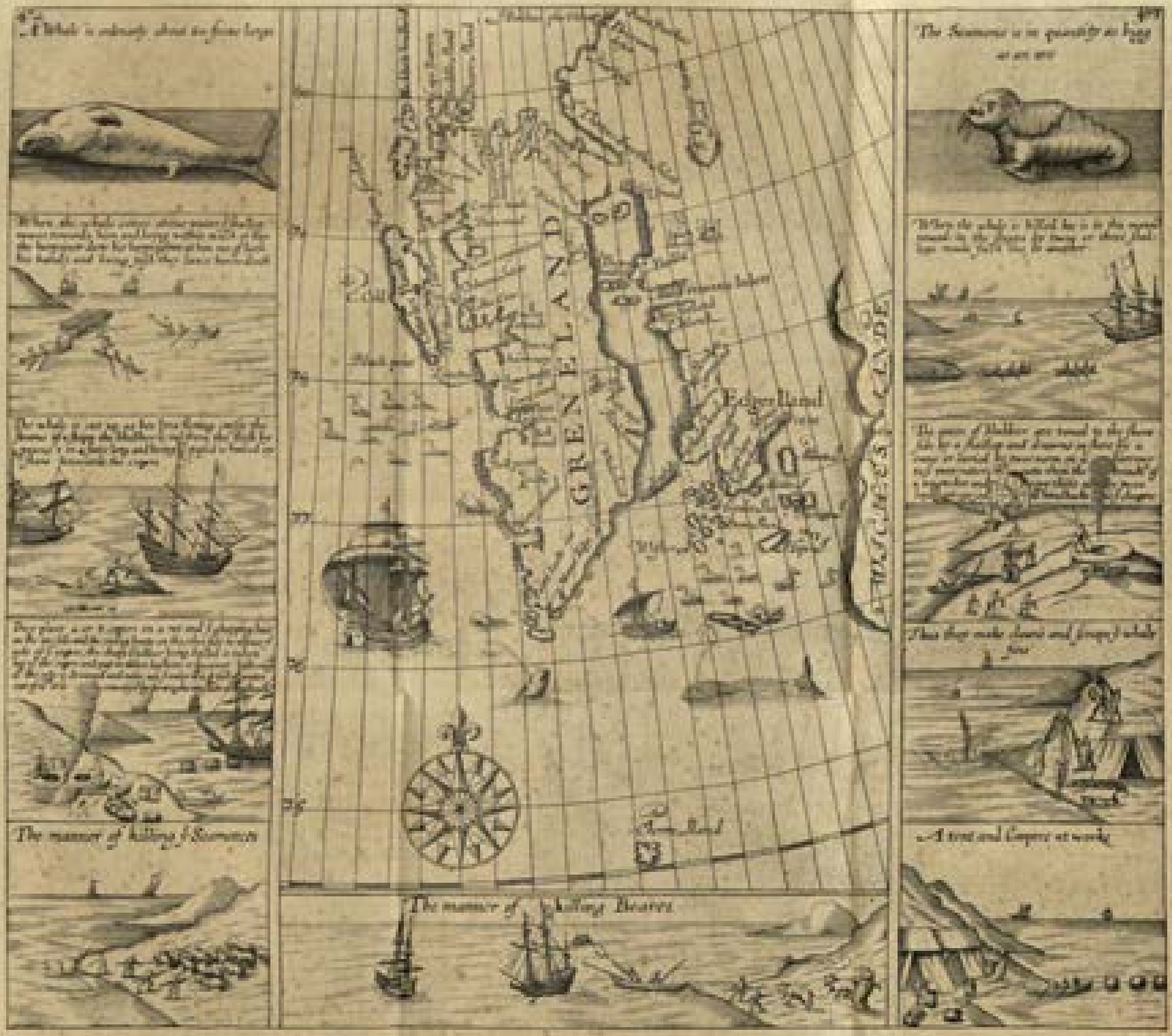
The eight sort is called Sewria, of colour as white as snow, of the bignesse of a Wherrie, he yeelds not above one hogshead or two of Oyle, nor any finnes, and is good meate to be eaten. 8. *Sewria.*

The description of Greenland.

GReenland is a place in Nature nothing like unto the Name: for certainly there is no place in the World, yet knowne and discovered that is lesse greene then it. It is covered with snow, both the Mountaines and the lower Lands, till about the beginning of June, being very Mountainous, and beareth neither grasse nor tree, save onely such as grow upon the Moores and heathie grounds, in the North parts of England, which we call Heath, or Ling. This groweth when the snow melteth, and when the ground beginneth to be uncovered. And on this doe *Antiphrastical appellation. I have found this description of Greenland, with other notes, written by Ro. Fotherby.*

Deere. the Deere feed in the Summer time, and become very fat therewithall in a moneths space, but how they live in the Winter time it is not easily to be imagined. For seeing at the end of May wee find the ground all covered with snow, it is very like, that in the time of Winter there is no part bare, where any thing can grow; especially during the time that the Sunne is altogether depressed under the horizon, which in the latitude of 77. degrees, continueth from the eighteenth of October till the fourth of Februarie. This Countrey by all probabilities hath never been inhabited by any people; notwithstanding, I thinke men might live there, carrying thither good store of provision of victuals, and other things necessary against the cold, which perhaps will be vehement in the Winter time, by the former reasons; namely, because the Sunne remayneth so long under the Horizon.

Neverthelesse, there will not be any continuance of darknesse, because the Sunne in his greatest declination will be but 10. degrees under the Horizon, at this time of his being in the South of the Meridian in the former latitude of 77. degrees, which is once in foure and twentie houres; and therefore the time of their Noone will bee much lighter then our Night here in England, when the dayes are at the longest; for then is the Sunne 15. degrees under the Horizon at midnight, and yet the greatest darknesse is but like twi-light. And although it bee a generall saying, and a common received opinion, that the further North the greater cold, yet experience teacheth, that it is not alwaies true. For at Mosco, and thereabouts in the Winter time, there is extreme frosts and cold weather, insomuch that oftentimes men are brought home dead, being starved with cold; and many have their noses and eares caused to fall off, through the extremity of the piercing aire: yet at Edenborrow, which is more Northerly by one degree and an halfe, and in all places neere unto it the aire is temperate, and the cold tolerable, the snow never lying any long time on the ground after it is fallen. Notwithstanding, wee have


A Whale is ordinarily about 60 foote longe
The Sea horse is in quantity as bigg as an Ox
The manner of killing of Sea horses
The manner of killing Beavers
A tent and Coopers at worke
GREENLAND
DAVIS STRAITS

MAP OF GREENLAND, WITH THE MANNER OF KILLING WHALES, MORSE, AND BEAVER

A Whale is ordinarily about 60 foote longe
The Seamonst is in quantitye as bigge as an ox
Where the whales comonly destroy manie Shallops
When the whale is killed her is in this manner towed by the Shippes to lande or where shee lyes
The whales is cut up and her lyne boyled with the
The peces of Whalebone are towed to the shore
Where they make caskes and fatts of whale
The manner of killing Seamonst
A tente and Coopers at worke
The manner of killing Beares
GREENLAND
Edge Island
Foule Island

MAP OF GREENLAND, WITH THE MANNER OF KILLING WHALES, MORSES, AND BEARS

snow remayning all the yeere long in divers places of England, but the reason of this is, because the aire is ever warmest neere unto the Sea shoare, (as Edenborrow standeth) and contrariwise the cold is most vehement in places which are farthest remote from the Sea, as Mosco is situated.

Yet in China even neere the Sea, and farre neerer the Sun, betweixt 30. and 40. the Winters are extreme. R. Foth.

All the Creatures that appeare unto us upon the Land, are Deere, Beares, and Foxes, and sundrie sorts of wilde Fowle, as Cuthbert Duckes, Willockes, Stints, Sea-pigeons, Sea-parrets, Gulls, Noddies, &c. The Author addes a discourse of sending condemned men to inhabite there, with divers projects for their service there, for the further discoverie how best to bee effected, for such things as are most necessary for this employment of Whale-killing, &c. but because experience hath given best instructions already, and destructions must otherwise be prevented, I have forborne to detayne the Reader in those (otherwise judicious) speculations.

The Southermost part of Greenland stands in 76. degrees 30. minutes, which wee call, Point Looke out, and we have discovered all the West side of the Land as farre unto the Northwards as 80. degrees odde minutes: in which compasse wee have already experience of sixe or eight good Harbours for the killing of the Whale; and on the East side we have discovered as farre as 78. degrees, finding divers Ilands, great and small, yeelding good Harbours, and store of Whales, and Sea-horses; and for a further discovery on the East side, I am perswaded it had beene farre greater, if the Dutch had not so disturbed us in our proceedings, as also the Hull-men, who ever practised to follow our steps, after the discoverie within one yeere or two: as by our Masters Journall more at large may appeare. The best actions have their hindrances and crosses, and so hath this had; for, the Dutch have beene a bane to this Trade and Discoverie: The Hull-men have done some bad service in this Action, for they were the first that carried the Dutch to the Tutches, as by Wivendens Oath and Journall appeares,

[III.iii.473.] they were also a cause of that bad Voyage, to us in 1618. in that they animated the Flemmings to come backe to Greenland againe, as appeareth in this Journall, in the yeere 1617. they have done some other ill services against us as well as the Dutch, but in regard they are our Country-men, I will omit and wish their amendment, and pray to God to send a good and further Discovery to bee made in these Northerne parts. Amen.

READER, I present thee here three admirable Voyages of Discovery made by the Dutch, no whit envying their due prayse, but honouring their worthy Acts and Arts. They have formerly beene published in Dutch, and translated by W. Philip. I have heere abbreviated them, as my use is with others, to avoid prolixitie. The Dutch themselves * write that after the English Russian Trade, one Oliver Bunell moved with hope of gaine, went from Enckhuysen to Pechora, where he lost all by shipwracke, having discovered Costinsarca in Nova Zemla. These Navigations of the English, and that of Bunell, and the hopes of China and Cathay, caused the States Generall to send forth two shippes under the command of Hugo Linschoten, to the Streights of Wey-gates, and two others under William Bernards, by the perswasion of P. Plancius to goe right Northwards from Nova Zemla. Linschot went fiftie miles beyond the Streights, the Northerly winds, and late season forcing him backe. Bernards Journall here followeth, of that and his two later Voyages, the two later written by one employed therein.

*Prolegomena. ad Hudsoni Detect. edit. Amstelodami per Het. Gerard. 1611.

Chap. III.

The first Navigation of William Barents, alias Bernards into the North Seas; Written by Gerat de Veer.

IT is a most certayne and an assured Assertion, that nothing doth more benefit and further the Common-wealth (specially these Countryes) then the art and knowledge of Navigation, in regard that such Countreyes and Nations as are strong and mightie at Sea, have the meanes and ready way to draw, fetch, and bring unto them for their mayntenance, all the principallest commodities and fruits of the Earth.

In these Navigations we must not be dismayed if some mislike, or if we cannot perfect a Discovery in the first, second, or third Voyage. Alexander Magnus (after he had wonne all Grecia, and from thence entred into little and great Asia; and comming to the farthest parts of India, there found some difficultie to passe) said, If wee had not gone forward, and persisted in our intent, which other men esteemed and held to be impossible, we had stil remayned and stayed in the entry of Cicilia, where as now we have over-runne and past through all those large and spacious Countreyes: for nothing is found and effected all at one time, neyther is any thing that is put in practice, presently brought to an end. To the which end, Cicero wisely saith; God hath given us some things, and not all things, that our Successors also might have some-what to doe. Therefore we must not leave off, nor stay our pretence in the middle of our proceedings, as long as there is any commoditie to be hoped, and in time to bee obtayned: for that the greatest and richest Treasures are hardliest to be found. I thought good to set downe, in regard that I have undertaken to describe the three Voyages made into the North Seas, in three yeeres, one

A thing not continued, cannot bee effected.

All things are effected in convenient time.

after the other; behind Norway, and along and about Muscovia, towards the Kingdome of Cathaia, and China: whereof, the two last, I my selfe holpe to effect; and yet brought them not to the desired end that we well hoped.

The first finding is hard, but the second attempt is easier.

First, to shew our diligent, and most toylesome labour and paines taken, to find out the right course; which we could not bring to passe, as wee well hoped, wished, and desired, and possible might have found it, by crossing the Seas, if we had taken the right course; if the Ice & the shortnesse of time, and bad crosses had not hindered us. We have assuredly found that the onely and most hinderance to our Voyage, was the Ice that we found about Nova Zembla, under 73. 74. 75. and 76. degrees; and not so much upon the Sea betweene both the Lands: whereby it appeareth, that not the neerenesse of the North-pole, but the Ice that commeth in and out from the Tartarian Sea, about Nova Zembla, caused us to feele the greatest cold. Therefore in regard that the neerenesse of the Pole was not the cause of the great cold that wee felt, if wee had had the meanes to have held our appointed and intended course into the North-east, we had peradventure found some entrance: which course wee could not hold from Nova Zembla, because that there we entred amongst great store of Ice; and how it was about Nova Zembla, we could not tel, before we had sought it; and when we had sought it, we could not then alter our course, although also it is uncertayn, what we should have done, if we had continued in our North-east course, because it is not yet found out. But it is true, that in the Countrey lying under 80. degrees, (which we esteeme to be Greenland) there is both Leaves and Grasse to be seene: Wherein, [III.iii.474-] such Beasts as feed of Leaves and Grasse (as Harts, Hinds, and such like beasts) live, whereas to the contrary in Nova Zembla, there groweth neyther Leaves nor Grasse, and there are no beasts therein but such as eate flesh, as Beares and Foxes, &c. Although Nova Zembla lyeth 4. 5. and 6. degrees more Southerly from the Pole,

A comparison of the heate under the line, with the cold under the North Pole.

then the other Land aforesaid. It is also manifest, that upon the South and North-side of the Line of the Sunne on both sides, betweene both the Tropicks, under 23. degrees and an halfe, yet it is as hot, as it is right under the Line. What wonder then should it be, that about the North-pole also, and as many degrees on both sides, it should not be colder then right under the Pole? It was not the Sea, nor the neerenesse unto the Pole, but the Ice about the Land, that let and hindered us (as I said before) for that assoone as we made from the Land, and put more into the Sea, although it was much further Northward, presently we felt more warmth, and in that opinion our Pilot William Barents dyed, who notwithstanding the fearefull and intolerable cold that he indured, yet he was not discouraged, but offered to lay wagers with divers of us, that by Gods helpe, hee would bring that pretended Voyage to an end, if he held his course North-east from the North Cape. But I will leave that, and shew you of the three Voyages aforesaid, begunne and set forth by the permission and furtherance of the Generall States of the united Provinces, and of Prince Maurice, as Admirall of the Sea, and the rich Towne of Amsterdam.

The resolute intent and opinions of William Barents.

First, you must understand, that in Anno 1594. there was foure ships set forth out of the united Provinces, whereof two were of Amsterdam; one of Zelandt, and one of Enckhuysen, that were appointed to sayle into the North Seas, to discover the Kingdomes of Cathaia, and China; Northward from Norway, Muscovia, and about Tartaria, whereof William Barents, a notable skilfull and wise Pilot, was Commander over the ships of Amsterdam, and with them upon Whit-sunday, departed from Amsterdam, and went to the Texell.

Upon the fifth of June they sayled out of the Texel, and having a good wind and faire weather, upon the three and twentieth of June, they arrived at Kilduin in Muscovia, which for that it is a place well knowne and a common Voyage, I will make no further description

June 5. The particulars beeing knowne to many of our Mariners, I omit.

thereof. The nine and twentieth of June, at foure of the clocke in the after-noone, they set sayle out of Kilduin.

The fourth of July they saw Nova Zembla, lying South-east and by East six or seven miles from them, where they had blacke durtie ground at one hundred and five fathome. William Barents tooke the height of the Sunne with his Crosse-staffe, when it was at the lowest, that is betweene North North-east, and East and by North, and found it to be elevated above the Horizon six degrees and $\frac{1}{3}$. part, his declination being 12. degrees and 55. minutes, from whence substracting the aforesaid height, there resteth sixteenth degrees and 35. minutes, which being substracted from 90. degrees, there resteth 73. degrees and 25. minutes. Then they woond Eastward and sayled five miles, East and by South, and East South-east, and past by a long point of Land that lay out into the Sea, *Langenes.* which they named Langenes, and hard by that point Eastward, there was a great Bay, where they went a Land with their Boat, but found no people. From Langenes to Cape Bapo, East North-east it is foure miles. From Cape Bapo to the West point of Lombsbay North-east and by North are five miles, and betweene them both there are two *Lombsbay.* Creeks. Lombsbay is a great wide Bay, on the West-side thereof having a faire Haven, six, seven, or eight fathome deepe, blacke sand, there they went on shoare with their Boat, and upon the shoare placed a Beacon, made of an old Mast which they found there; calling the Bay Lombsbay, because of a certayne kind of Beares so called, which they found there in great abundance. The East point of Lombsbay, is a long narrow point, and by it there lyeth an Iland, and from that long point to Sea-ward in, there is a great Creeke. This Lombsbay lyeth under 74. degrees and $\frac{1}{3}$. part. From Lombsbay to *Admirals Iland.* the point of the Admirals Iland, they sayled six or seven miles, North-east and by North. The Admirals Iland is not very faire on the East-side, but a farre off very flat, so that you must shunne it long before you come at it, it is

also very uneven, for at one casting of the Lead they had ten fathome deepe, and presently at another casting of the Lead they had but six fathome, and presently after that againe ten, eleven, and twelve fathome, the streame running hard against the Flats.

Cape Negro. Black point.

From the East-end of the Admirals Iland, to Cape Negro, that is the Blacke point, they sayled about five or six miles, East North-east, and a mile without the Blacke point it is seventy fathome deepe, the ground slimy, as upon Pamphius, right East-ward of the Blacke point, there are two sharpe pointed Hils in the Creeke, that are easie to be knowne. The sixt of July, the Sunne being North, they come right before the Blacke point with faire weather, this Blacke point lyeth under 75. degrees and 20. minutes. From the Blacke point to Williams Iland, they sayled seven or eight miles, East North-east, and betweene them both about halfe a mile, there lay a small Iland.

Williams Iland.

The seventh of July they sayled from Williams Iland, and William Barents tooke the height of the Sunne, with his Crosse-staffe, and found it to be elevated above the Horizon in the South-west and by South 53. degrees and 6. minutes, his declination being 22. degrees and 49. minutes, which being added to 53. degrees and 6. minutes, make 75. degrees and 55. minutes. This is the right height of the Pole of the said Iland. In this Iland they found great store of Driftwood, and many Sea-horses being a kind of fish that keepeth in the Sea, having very great teeth, which at this day are used in stead of Ivory or Elephants Teeth, there also is a good Road for ships, at twelve and thirteene fathome deepe against all winds, except it bee West South-west, and West-winds, and there they found a piece of a Russia ship, and that day they had the wind East North-east, mistie weather.

[III.iii.475.]

Sea-horses, or Morses.

Beeren-fort white Beare, terrible.

The ninth of July they entred into Beeren-fort, upon the Road under Williams Iland, and there they found a white Beare, which they perceiving, presently entred into their Boat, and shot her into the bodie with a Musket, but

the Beare shewed most wonderfull strength, which almost is not to be found in any beast, for no man ever heard the like to be done by any Lion or cruell beast whatsoever: for notwithstanding that she was shot into the bodie, yet she leapt up, and swamme in the water, the men that were in the Boat rowing after her, cast a Rope about her necke, and by that meanes drew her at the sterne of the Boat, for that not having seene the like Beare before, they thought to have carryed her alive in the ship, and to have shewed her for a strange wonder in Holland; but she used such force, that they were glad that they were rid of her, and contented themselves with her skinne only, for shee made such a noyse, and strove in such sort, that it was admirable, wherewith they let her rest and gave her more scope, with the Rope that they held her by, and so drew her in that sort after them, by that meanes to wearie her: meane-time, William Barents made neerer to her, but the Beare swamme to the Boat, and with her fore-feet got hold of the sterne thereof, which William Barents perceiving, said, she will there rest her selfe, but she had another meaning, for she used such force, that at last she had gotten halfe her body into the Boat, wherewith the men were so abashed, that they ranne into the further end of the Boat, and thought verily to have beene spoyled by her, but by a strange meanes they were delivered from her, for that the Rope that was about her necke, caught hold upon the hooke of the Ruther, whereby the Beare could get no further, but so was held backe, and hanging in that manner, one of the men boldly stept forth from the end of the Scute, and thrust her into the bodie with a half-pike; and therewith shee fell downe into the water, and so they rowed forward with her to the shippe, drawing her after them, till shee was in a manner dead, wherewith they killed her out-right, and having slayed her, brought the skin to Amsterdam.

The twentieth of July, they sayled out of Beeren-fort from Williams Iland, and the same day in the morning

got to the Iland of Crosses, and there went on Land with their Pinnasse, and found the Iland to be barren, and full of Cliffes and Rocks, in it there was a small Haven, whereinto they rowed with their Boat. This Iland is about halfe a mile long, and reacheth East and West; on the West end it hath a banke, about a third part of a mile long, and at the East end also another banke, upon this Iland there standeth two great Crosses, the Iland lyeth about two long miles from the firme Land, and under the East-end thereof there is a good Road, at sixe and twentie fathome soft ground; and somewhat closer to the Iland on the Strand, at nine fathome sandie ground. *Iland of Crosses.*

From the Iland of Crosses to the point of Cape Nassaw, they sayled East, and East and by North about eight miles: it is a long flat point which you must be carefull to shunne, for thereabouts at seven fathome there were flats or shoales, very farre from the Land; it lyeth almost under 76. degrees and a halfe. From the West end of Williams Iland, to the Iland with the Crosses is three miles, the course North. From Nassaw point they sayled East and by South, and East South-east five miles, and then they thought that they saw Land in North-east, and by East, and sayled towards it five miles North-east to descrie it, thinking it to bee another Land, that lay Northward from Nova Zembla, but it began to blow so hard out of the West, that they were forced to take in their Marsaile, and yet the wind rose in such manner, that they were forced to take in all their Sayles, and the Sea went so hollow, that they were constrayned to drive sixteene houres together, without sayle, eight or nine miles East North-east. *Cape Nassaw.*

The eleventh of July their Boat was by a great wave of the Sea sunke to the ground, and by that meanes they lost it, and after that they drave without sayles five miles, East and by South; at last the Sunne being almost South-east, the wind came about to the North-west, and then the weather began somewhat to cleere up, but yet it was very mistie. Then they hoysed up their sayles

againe and sayled foure miles till night, that the Sunne was North and by East, and there they had sixtie fathome deepe, muddie ground, and then they saw certayne flakes of Ice, at which time upon the twelfth of July they woond West, and held North-west, and sayled about a mile with mistie weather, and a North-west wind, and sayled up and downe West South-west three or foure miles, to see if they could find their Boat againe: after that they woond againe with the wind, and sayled foure miles South-east, till the Sunne was South-west, and then they were close by the Land of Nova Zembla, that lay East and by North, and West and by South; from thence they woond over againe till noone, and sayled three miles, North and by West, and then till the Sunne was North-west, they held North-west and by North three miles, then they woond East-ward and sayled foure or five miles North-east and by East.

The thirteenth of July at night, they found great store of Ice, as much as they could descry out of the top, that lay as if it had beene a plaine field of Ice, then they woond Westward over from the Ice.

[III.iii.476.] The seventeenth of July, William Barents tooke the height of the Sunne with his Astrolabium, and then they were under 77. degrees and a ¼. of the Pole, and sayled Southward six miles, and perceived the firme Land, lying South from them. Then they sayled till the nineteenth of July in the morning, West South-west sixe or seven miles, with a North-west winde, and mistie weather, and after that South-west and South-west and by West seven miles, the Sunne being 77. degrees 5. minutes lesse. Then they sayled two miles South-west, and were close by the land of Nova Zembla, about Cape Nassaw.

The five and twentieth of July, they were so inclosed about with flakes of Ice, that out of the top they could not discerne any thing beyond it, and sought to get through the Ice, but they could not passe beyond it. At night, they tooke the height of the Sunne, when it was at the lowest betweene North and North-east, and

North-east and by North, it being elevated above the Horizon 6. degrees, and ¾. his Declination being 19. degrees 50. minutes, now take 6. degrees ¾. from 19. degrees and 50. minutes, and there resteth 13. degrees 5. minutes, which substracted from 90. there resteth 77. degrees lesse 5. minutes.

The sixe and twentieth of July in the morning, they sayled sixe miles South South-east, till the Sunne was South-west, and then South-east sixe miles, and were within a mile of the land of Nova Zembla, and came againe to Cape Trust. *Cape Trust.*

The eight and twentieth of July, the height of the Sun being taken at noone with the Astrolabium, it was found to be elevated above the Horizon 57. degrees and 6. minutes, her Declination being 19. degrees and 18. minutes, which in all is 76. degrees and 24. minutes, they being then about foure miles from the land of Nova Zembla, that lay all covered over with Snow, the weather being cleare, and the winde East.

The nine and twentieth of July, the height of the Sun being taken with the Crosse-staffe, Astrolabium & Quadrant, they found it to be elevated above the Horizon 32. degrees, her declination being 19. degrees, which substracted from 32. there resteth 13. degrees of the Equator, which being substracted from 90. there rested 77. degrees, and then the nearest North point of Nova Zembla, called the Ice point, lay right East from them. *Ice point.* There they found certaine Stones that glistered like gold, which for that cause they named Gold-stones, and there *Gold Stones.* also they had a faire Bay with sandie ground.

Upon the same day they woond Southward againe, and sayled South-east two miles betweene the Land and the Ice, and after that from the Ice-point East, and to the Southward sixe miles to the Ilands of Orange; and there *Orange Ilands.* they laboured forward betweene the Land and the Ice, with faire still weather, and upon the one and thirtieth of July got to the Ilands of Orange. And there went to one of those Ilands, where they found about two

Morses described.

hundred Walrushen, or Sea-horses, lying upon the shoare to bast themselves in the Sunne. This Sea-horse is a wonderfull strong Monster of the Sea, much bigger then an Oxe, which keepes continually in the Seas, having a skin like a Sea-calfe or Seale, with very short hayre, mouthed like a Lion, and many times they lye upon the Ice; they are hardly killed unlesse you strike them just upon the forehead, it hath foure Feet, but no Eares, and commonly it hath one or two young ones at a time. And when the Fisher-men chance to finde them upon a flake of Ice with their young ones, shee casteth her young ones before her into the water, and then takes them in her Armes and so plungeth up and downe with them, and when shee will revenge her-selfe upon the Boates, or make resistance against them, then she casts her young ones from her againe, and with all her force goeth towards the Boate (whereby our men were once in no small danger, for that the Sea-horse had almost stricken her teeth into the sterne of their Boate) thinking to over-throw it, but by meanes of the great crie that the men made, she was afraid, and swomme away againe, and tooke her young ones againe in her armes. They have two teeth sticking out of their mouthes, on each side one, each being about halfe an Ell long, and are esteemed to bee as good as any Ivorie or Elephants teeth, specially in Muscovia, Tartaria, and thereabouts where they are knowne, for they are as white, hard, and even as Ivorie.

The Sea-horses that lay bathing themselves upon the Land, our men supposing that they could not defend themselves being out of the water, went on shoare to assaile them, and fought with them, to get their Teeth that are so rich, but they brake all their Hatchets, Cuttle-axes, and Pikes in pieces, and could not kill one of them, but strucke some of their Teeth out of their mouthes, which they tooke with them: and when they could get nothing against them by fighting, they agreed to goe aboord the Ship, to fetch some of their great Ordnance, to shoot at them therewith; but it began to blow so hard,

that it rent the Ice into great pieces, so that they were forced not to doe it, and therewith they found a great white Beare that slept, which they shot into the bodie, but shee ranne away, and entred into the water; the men following her with their Boate, and killed her out-right, and then drew her upon the Ice, and so sticking a halfe-pike upright, bound her fast unto it, thinking to fetch her when they came back againe, to shoot at the Sea-horses with their Ordnance, but for that it began more and more to blow, and the Ice therewith brake in peeces, they did nothing at all.

After that, William Barents finding that hee could hardly get through, to accomplish and end his pretended [III.iii.477.] Voyage, his men also beginning to bee wearie, and would sayle no further, they all together agreed to returne backe againe, to meet with the other Ships *Their returne backe againe.* that had taken their course to the Wey-gates, or the Straights of Nassaw, to know what Discoveries they had made there. The first of August they turned their course to sayle backe againe from the Ilands of Orange; there William Barents tooke the height of the Sunne, it being under 71. degrees and $\frac{1}{3}$, and there they found a great Creeke, which William Barents judged to bee the place where Oliver Brunel had beene before, called *Oliver Brunell.* Costincsarch. From the Blacke Iland they sayled South, *Blacke Iland.* and South and by East to another small point three miles, on which point there stood a Crosse, and therefore they called it the Crosse-point, there also was a flat Bay and low water, five, six, or seven fadome deepe soft ground. From Crosse-point they sayled along by *Crosse-point.* the land South South-east foure miles, and then came to another small point, which behind it had a great Creeke, that reached Eastward: This point they called the fifth point, or Saint Laurence point. From the fifth point they sayled to the Sconce point three miles, South South-east, and there lay a long blacke Rocke close by the land, whereon there stood a Crosse; then they entred into the Ice againe, and put inward to the Sea

because of the Ice. Their intent was to sayle along the coast of Nova Zembla to the Wey-gates, but by reason that the Ice met them, they woond Westward, and from the ninth of August in the Eevening, till the tenth of August in the Morning, sayled West and by North eleven miles, and after that foure miles West North-west, and North-west and by West, the winde being North; in the Morning they woond Eastward againe, and sayled untill Eevening ten miles East, and East and by South; after that East, and East and by North foure miles, and there they saw land, and were against a great Creeke, where with their Boate they went on land, and there found a faire Haven five fathome deepe, sandie ground. This Creeke on the North side hath three blacke points, and about the three points lyeth the road, but you must keepe somewhat from the third point, for it is stonie, and betweene the second and third point there is another faire Bay, for North-west, North, and North-east windes, blacke sandie ground. This Bay they called Saint Laurence Bay, and there they tooke the height of the Sunne, which was 70. degrees and $\frac{3}{4}$.

Saint Laurence Bay.

From Saint Laurence Bay, South South-east two miles to Sconce point, there lay along blacke Rocke close by the land, whereon there stood a Crosse, there they went on Land with their Boat, and perceived that some men had beene there, and that they were fled to save themselves, for there they found sixe Sackes with Rye-meale buried in the ground, and a heape of stones by the Crosse, and a Bullet for a great Piece, and thereabouts also there stood another Crosse, with three Houses made of wood, after the North Countrey manner: and in the houses they found many barrels of Pike-staves, whereby they conjectured, that there they used to take Salmons, and by them stood five or six Coffins, by Graves, with dead mens bones, the Coffins standing upon the ground all filled up with stones; there also lay a broken Russia ship, the Keele

Sconce point.

thereof being fortie foure foot long, but they could see no man on the Land: it is a faire Haven for all windes, which they called the Meale-haven, because of the Meale that they found there. From the blacke Rocke or Cliffe with the Crosse, two miles South South-east, there lay a low Iland a little into the Sea; from whence they sayled nine or ten miles South South-east, there the height of the Sunne was 70. degrees and 50. minutes, when it was South South-west. From that Iland they sayled along by the Land foure miles South-east and by South, there they came to two Ilands, whereof the uttermost lay a mile from the Land: those Ilands they called Saint Clara.

Then they entred into the Ice againe, and woond inward to the Sea in the wind, and sayled from the Iland untill Eevening, West South-west foure miles, the wind being North-west; that Eevening it was very mistie, and then they had eightie fathome deepe.

Then againe they sayled South-west and by West, and West South-west three miles, there they had seventie fathome deepe, and so sayled till the thirteenth of August in the morning, South-west and by West foure miles, two houres before they had ground at fiftie sixe fathome, and in the morning at fortie five fathome, soft muddie ground. Then they woond from the land and sayled North, and North and by East foure miles, from thence they woond to land againe, and sayled till the fourteene of August, five or sixe miles South-west, sayling close by the land, which (as they ghesse) was the Iland of Colgoyen. *Colgoyen.*

August the fifteenth, the Sun being South-west, William Barents tooke the height thereof, and found it to bee elevated above the Horizon 35. degrees, his Declination being 14. degrees and $\frac{1}{4}$. so that as there wanted 55. degrees of 90. which 55. and 14. degrees $\frac{1}{4}$. being both added together, made 69. Degrees 15. Minutes, which was the height of the Pole in that place, the wind being North-west, then they sayled

Matfloe and Delgoy. They meet with their companie.

two miles more Eastward, and came to the Ilands called Matfloe and Delgoy, and there in the morning they met with the other Ships of their companie, being of Zelandt and Enck-huysen, that came out of Wey-gates the same day there they shewed each other where they had beene, and how farre each of them had sayled and discovered.

The Ship of Enck-huysen had past the Straights of Wey-gates, and said, that at the end of Wey-gates hee had found a large Sea, and that they had sayled fiftie or sixtie miles further Eastward, and were of opinion that they had beene above the River Obi, that commeth out of Tartaria, and that the Land of Tartaria reacheth North-eastward againe from thence, whereby they [III.iii.478.] thought that they were not farre from Cape Tabin, which is the point of Tartaria, that reacheth towards the Kingdome of Cathai, North-east and then Southward, and so thinking that they had Discovered enough for that time, and that it was too late in the yeere to sayle any further, as also that their Commission was to discover the scituation, and to come home againe before Winter, they turned againe towards the Wey-gates, and came to an Iland about five miles great, lying South-east from Wey-gates on the Tartarian side, *States Iland.* and called it the States Iland, there they found many Stones that were of Christall Mountayne, being a kind of Diamond.

When they were met together, as I sayd before, they made signes of joy, discharging some of their Ordnance, and were merrie, the other Ships thinking that William Barents had sayled round about Nova Zembla, and had come backe againe through the Wey-gates: and after they had shewed each other what they had done, and made signes of joy for their meeting, they set their course to turne backe againe for Holland, and upon the sixteenth of August they went under the Ilands of Matsloe and Delgoy, and put into the road, because the wind was North-west, and lay till the

eighteenth of August. Then they set sayle, and came to the Texel the sixteenth of September.

Chap. IIII.

A briefe Declaration of Barents his second Navigation, made in Anno 1595. behinde Norway, Muscovia, and Tartaria, written by Gerat de Veer.

THe foure Ships aforesaid, being returned home about Harvest-time, in Anno 1594. they were in good hope that the Voyage aforesaid would bee done, by passing along the Straights of Weygates, and specially by the report made by the two Ships of Zelandt, and Enckhuysen, wherein John Huyghen of Linschoten was Committee, who declared the manner of their travell in such sort, that the Generall States and Prince Maurice resolved, in the beginning of the next yeere to prepare certayne Ships, not onely (as they went before) to discover the passage, but to send certayn Wares and Merchandizes thither, wherein the Merchants might lade what Wares they would, with certaine Factors to sell the said Wares, in such places as they should arrive, neither paying Fraight nor Custome. Peter Plantius a learned Cosmographer, being a great furtherer and setter forward of this Voyage, and was their chiefe Instructer therein, setting downe the scituation of the Coasts of Tartaria, Cathaia, & China; but how they lye it is not yet sufficiently Discovered, for that the courses and rules by him set downe, were not fully effected, by meanes of some inconveniences that fell out, which by reason of the shortnesse of time could not bee holpen.

In Anno 1595. the Generall States of the united Provinces, and Prince Maurice, caused seven Ships to

bee prepared to sayle through the Wey-gates, or the Straights of Nassaw, to the Kingdome of Cathaia and China: two out of Amsterdam, two out of Zelandt, two out of Enck-huysen, and one out of Rotterdam: sixe of them laden with divers kindes of Wares, Merchandizes, and with Money and Factors, to sell the said Wares; the seventh being a Pinnasse, that had Commission, when the other Ships were past about the Cape de Tabin (which is the furthest point of Tartaria) or so farre, that they might sayle forth Southward, without any let or hinderance of the Ice, to turne backe againe, and to bring newes thereof: and I being in William Barents Ship that was our chiefe Pilot, and James Hems-kerke chiefe Factor, thought good to write downe the same in order, as it is hereafter declared, as I did the first Voyage, according to the course and stretching of the Land as it lyeth.

James Hems-kerke famous for the Gibralter exploit.

First, after we had beene mustered at Amsterdam, and every man taken an Oath, that was then purposely ministred unto us; upon the eighteene of June wee sayled to the Texel, from thence to put to Sea, with other Ships that were appointed to meet us at a certayne day; and so to begin our Voyage in the name of God. The second of July wee set sayle out of the Texel. The fifth of August, the North Cape lay about two miles East from us, and when the Sunne was North-west, the Mother and her Daughters lay Southward from us foure miles.

The seventeenth, wee saw great store of Ice, all along the Coast of Nova Zembla, and casting out the Lead, had 75. fathom soft ground. After that we held divers courses because of the Ice, and sayled South-east and by East, & South South-east, for the space of eighteene miles, till the eighteenth of August, when the Sunne was East, and then we cast out the lead againe, and found 30. fathome soft ground, and within two houres after that, fathome, red sand, with small shelles: three Glasses after that we had ground at twentie fathome,

red sand, with blacke shels, as before: then wee saw two Ilands, which they of Enck-huysen gave the names of Prince Maurice, and his Brother, which lay from us South-east three miles, being low Land, and then wee sayled eight miles, till the Sun was South. Then we sayled East, and oftentimes casting out the lead, we found twentie, nineteene, eighteene, and seventeene fathome [III.iii.479.] deep, good ground mixed with black shels, and saw the Wey-gates (the Sunne being West) which lay East North-east from us about five miles, and after that we sayled about eight miles.

Then we sayled under 70. degrees, untill we came to the Wey-gates, most part through broken Ice, and when we got to Wey-gates, we cast out our Lead, and for a long time found thirteene and fourteene fathome, soft ground, mixed with blacke shels, not long after that we cast out the Lead and found ten fathome deepe, the wind being North, and we forced to hold stifly aloofe, in regard of the great quantitie of Ice, till about mid-night, then were forced to wind Northward, because of certaine Rocks that lay on the Southside of Wey-gates, right before us, about a mile and a halfe, having ten fathome deepe: then we changed our course, and sayled West North-west for the space of foure Glasses, after that we woond about againe East, and East and by South, and so entred into Wey-gates, and as wee went in, wee cast out the Lead, and found seven fathome deepe, little more or lesse, till the nineteenth of August, and then the Sunne being South-east, we entred into the Wey-gates, in the Road, the wind being North. The right Channell betweene the Image point and the Samuters Land was full of Ice, so that it was not well to bee past thorow, and so we went into the Road (which we called the Traen Bay, because we found store of Traen-oyle there,) this is a good Bay for the course of the Ice, and good almost for all winds, and we may sayle so farre into it as we will, at foure, five, and three fathome, good Anchor-ground, on the East side it is deepe water.

Image point.
Samoyeds land.
Traen Bay.

The twentieth of August, the height of the Sunne being taken with the Crosse-staffe, wee found that it was elevated above the Horizon 69. degrees 21. minutes, when it was South-west and by South, being at the highest, or before it beganne to descend. The one and twentieth of August, we went on Land within the Wey-gates with foure and fiftie men, to see the situation of the Countrey, and being two miles within the Land we found many Vel-werck, Traen, and such like Wares, and divers foot-steps of men, and Deere; whereby wee perceived that some men dwelt there abouts, or else used to come thither. And to assure us the more thereof, wee might perceive it by the great number of Images, which we found there upon the Image of Beelthooke, (so called by us) in great abundance, whereof ten dayes after wee were better informed by the Samuters and the Russians, when wee spake with them. And when wee entred further into the Land, we used all the meanes we could, to see if we could find any houses or men, by whom we might be informed of the situation of the Sea there abouts, whereof afterward we had better intelligence by the Samuters; that told us, that there are certayne men dwelling on the Wey-gates, and upon Nova Zembla, but we could neither find men, houses, nor any other things, so that to have better information, wee went with some of our men further South-east into the Land; towards the Sea-side, and as we went, we found a path-way made with mens feet in the Mosse or Marsh-ground, about halfe knee deepe, for that going so deepe we felt hard ground under our feet, which at the deepest was no higher then our shooes, and as we went forward to the Sea-coast, we were exceeding glad, thinking that we had seene a passage open, where we might get through, because we saw so little Ice there: and in the Evening entring into our ship againe, we shewed them that newes. Meane-time, our Master had sent out a Boat to see if the Tartarian Sea was open, but it could not get into the Sea because of the Ice, yet they rowed to the Crosse-point, and there let the

They goe on Land.

Images.

Boat lye, and went over the Land to the West point, and there perceived that the Ice in the Tartarian Sea, lay full upon the Russian Coasts, and in the mouth of Wey-gates.

The three and twentieth of August we found a Lodgie, or Boat of Pitzore, which was sewed together with Bast or Ropes, that had beene Northward to seeke for some Sea-horses Teeth, Traen, and Geese, which they fetcht with their Boat, to lade in certaine shippes that were to come out of Russia through Wey-gates. Which ships they said (when they spake with us) were to sayle into the Tartarian Sea, by the River of Oby, to a place called Ugolita in Tartaria, there to stay all Winter, as they used to doe every yeere: and told us that it would yet bee nine or ten Weekes ere it began to freeze in that place, and that when it once beganne to freeze, it would freeze so hard, that as then men might go over the Sea into Tartaria (along upon the Ice) which they called Mermare.

The foure and twentieth of August in the morning betimes, we went on board of the Lodgie, to have further information and instruction of the Sea, on the Eastside of Wey-gates, and they gave us good instruction, such as you have heard.

The five and twentieth of August we went againe to the Lodgie, and in friendly manner spake with them, we for our parts offering them friendship; and then they gave us eight fat Geese, that lay in the bottome of their Boat: we desired that one or two of them would goe with us aboard our ship, and they willingly went with us to the number of seven; and being in our ship, they wondred much at the greatnesse and furniture of our ship; and after they had seene and looked into it in every place, we set Fish, Butter and Cheese before them to eate, but they refused it: saying, that that day was a Fasting day with them, but at last when they saw some of our Pickled Herrings, they eate them both heads, tayles, skinnes, and guts, and having eaten thereof, we

[III.iii.480.] gave them a small Firkin of Herrings, for the which they gave us great thankes, knowing not what friendship they should doe us to requite our courtesie, and wee brought them with our Pinnasse into the Traen Bay. About Noone we hoysed up our Anchors with a West North-west wind; the course or stretching of Wey-gates, is East to Cruis point, and then North-east to the Twist point, and somewhat more Easterly: From thence the Land of Wey-gates, reacheth North North-east, and North and by East, and then North, and somewhat Westerly, wee sayled North-east and Eastward two miles, by the Twist point, but then we were compelled to saile backe againe, because of the great store of Ice, and tooke our course to our Road aforesaid: and sayling backe againe we found a good place by the Crosse point, to anchor in that night. The six and twentieth of August in the morning we hoysed Anchor, and put out our fork-saile, and so sailed to our old Road, and there to stay for a more convenient time.

The eight and twentie, nine and twentie, and thirtieth of August till the one and thirtieth, the wind for the most part was South-west, and William Barents our Captaine sailed to the South-side of Wey-gates, and there went on Land, where we found certaine Wildmen (called Samuters) and yet not altogether wilde, for they being twentie in number, staid and spake with our men, being but nine together, about a mile within the Land, our men not thinking to find any men there (for that we had at other times beene on Land in the Wey-gates, and saw none) at last, it being mistie weather, they perceived men, five and five in a company, and wee were hard by them before we knew it: then our Interpretour went alone towards them to speake with them; which they perceiving, sent one towards us, who comming almost to our men, tooke an Arrow out of his Quiver, offering to shoot at him; wherewith our Interpretor, being without Armes, was afraid, and cryed unto him, saying (in Russian speech;) Shoote not, we are friends: which the other

They speake with Samoyeds.

hearing, cast his Bow and Arrowes to the ground, therewith giving him to understand that he was well content to speake with our man: which done, our man called to him once againe, and said: We are friends: whereunto he made answere and said; then you are welcome: and saluting one the other, bended both their heads downe towards the ground, after the Russian manner: this done, our Interpretor questioned with him, about the situation and stretching of the Sea East-ward through the Streights of Wey-gates; whereof he gave us good instruction, saying: that when they should have past a point of land about five daies sailing from thence, shewing North-eastward; that after that, there is a great Sea (shewing towards the South-east upward,) saying, that he knew it very well, for that one had beene there that was sent thither by their King with certaine Souldiers, whereof he had beene Captaine. *Sea open.*

The manner of their Apparell is, like as we use to paint Wildmen, but they are not wilde; for they are of reasonable judgement: they are apparelled in Harts skinnes from the head to the feet, unlesse it be the principallest of them, which are apparelled, whether they be men or women, like unto the rest, as aforesaid, unlesse it be on their heads, which they cover with certaine coloured Cloth lined with Furre: the rest weare Caps of Harts or Bucks skinnes, the rough side outwards, which stand close to their heads, and are very fit. They weare long Haire, which they pleate and fold, and let it hang downe upon their backes. They are (for the most part all) short and low of stature, with broad flat faces, small eyes, short legs, their knees standing outwards; and are very quicke to goe and leape. They trust not Strangers; for although that wee shewed them all the courtesie and friendship that wee could, yet they trusted us not much: which wee perceived hereby, that as upon the first of September wee went againe on Land to them, and that one of our men desired to see one of their Bowes: they refused it, making a signe that they would *Samoyeds apparell.* *Haire, person, stature.*

Their King. not doe it. Hee that they called their King, had Centinels standing abroad, to see what was done in the Countrey, and what was bought and sold: At last, one of our men went neerer to one of the Centinels, to speake with him, and offered him great friendship, according to their accustomed manner, withall giving him a Bisket; which he with great thankes tooke, and presently eate it; and while he eate it, hee still lookt diligently about him on all sides what was done.

Their Sleds. Their Sleds stood alwayes readie with one or two Harts in them, that runne so swiftly with one or two men in them, that our Horses are not able to follow them. One of our men shot a Musket towards the Sea, wherewith they were in so great feare, that they ranne and leapt like mad men: yet at last, they satisfied themselves, when they perceived that it was not maliciously done to hurt them: and we told them by our Interpretor, that we used our Peeces in stead of Bowes; whereat they wondered, because of the great blow and noyse that it gave and made: and to shew them what wee could doe therewith, one of our men tooke a flat stone about halfe a handfull broad, and set it upon a Hill a good way off from him: which they perceiving, and thinking that we meant somewhat thereby, fiftie or sixtie of them gathered round about us: and yet some-what farre off, wherewith hee that had the Peece, shot it off, and with the Bullet smote the stone in sunder: whereat they wondred much more then before.

Departure. After that, wee tooke our leaves one of the other, with great friendship on both sides; and when we were in our Pinnasse, wee all put off our Hats, and bowed our heads unto them, sounding our Trumpet: They (in their manner) saluting us also, and then went to their Sleds againe.

[III.iii.481.] And after they were gone from us, and were somewhat within the Land, one of them came riding to the shoare, *Image.* to fetch a rough-hewed Image, that our men had taken off the shoare, and carryed into their Boate: and when

hee was in our Boate, and perceived the Image, he made us a signe that wee had not done well to take away that Image: Which we beholding, gave it to him againe: Which when hee had received, he placed it upon a Hill right by the Sea-side, and tooke it not with him, but sent a Sled to fetch it from thence: and as farre as wee could perceive, they esteemed that Image to be their God; for that right over against that place in the Wey-gates which wee called Beelthooke, we found certayne hundreds of such carved Images, all rough about the Heads, being somewhat round, and in the middle, having a little hill in stead of a Nose; and about the Nose two cuts, in place of Eyes; and under the Nose a cut, in place of a Mouth. Before the Images, wee found great store of Ashes, and bones of *Harts*: whereby it is to bee supposed, that there they offered unto them.

Hundreds of ill-shapen Images.

The second of September, a little before Sunne rising, wee put forth an Anchor to get out, for that the winde as then blew South South-west; it being good weather to get out, and ill weather to lye still: for wee lay under a low Banke. The Admirall and Vice-admirall seeing us making out, began also to hoyse their Anchors, and to set sayle. When wee put out our Focke-sayle, the Sunne was East and by South: and then wee sayled to the Crosse-point, and there wee cast Anchor to stay for the Vice-admirals Pinnasse; which with much labour and paines, in time got out of the Ice, by often casting out of their Anchor: and in the Eevening shee got to us: in the Morning about two houres before Sunne rising we set sayle, and by Sunne rising, wee got within a mile Eastward of the Twist-point, and sayled Northward sixe miles, till the Sunne was South. Then wee were forced to wind about, because of the great quantitie of Ice, and the Myst that then fell, at which time the winde blew so uncertayne, that we could hold no course, but were forced continually to winde and turne about, by reason of the Ice, and the unconstantnesse of the winde, together with myst, so that our course was uncertayne,

and wee supposed that we had sayled Southward up towards the Samuters Countrey, and then held our course South-west, till the watchers were North-west from us; then we came to the point of the States Iland lying Eastward about a Musket shot from the land, having 13. fathom deepe.

The fourth of September, wee hoysed Anchor because of the Ice, and sayled betweene the firme Land and the *States Iland.* States Iland, where we lay close by the States Iland at foure and five fathom deepe, and made our Ship fast with a Cable cast on the shoare, and there wee were safe from the course of the Ice, and divers times went on land to get Hares, whereof there were many in that Iland. The sixth of September, some of our men went on shoare upon the firme land to seeke for Stones, which are a kinde of Diamond, whereof there are many also in the States Iland: and while they were seeking the Stones, two of our men lying together in one place, a *A Beare kills two men.* great leane white Beare came suddenly stealing out, and caught one of them fast by the neccke, who not knowing what it was that tooke him by the necke, cryed out and sayd; Who is that that pulls mee so by the necke? wherewith the other that lay not farre from him; lifted up his head to see who it was, and perceiving it to bee a monstrous Beare, cryed out and sayd, Oh Mate! it is a Beare, and therewith presently rose up and ranne away.

The Beare at the first falling upon the man, bit his head in sunder, and suckt out his blood, wherewith the rest of the men that were on the Land, being about twentie in number, ranne presently thither, either to save the man, or else to drive the Beare from the dead body: *Herstoutnesse.* and having charged their Pieces and bent their Pikes, set upon her, that still was devouring the man, but perceiving them to come towards her, fiercely and cruelly ranne at them, and got another of them out from the Companie which shee tore in pieces, wherwith all the rest ranne away.

We perceiving out of our Ship and Pinnasse, that our men ranne to the Sea-side to save themselves, with all speed entred into our Boates, and rowed as fast wee could to the shoare to relieve our men. Where being on Land, we beheld the cruell spectacle of our two dead men, that had beene so cruelly killed and torne in pieces by the Beare, wee seeing that, incouraged our men to goe backe againe with us, and with Pieces, Curtelaxes, and Halfe-pikes, to set upon the Beare, but they would not all agree thereunto: some of them saying, our men are already dead, and we shall get the Beare well enough, though we oppose not our selves into so open danger, if wee might save our fellowes lives, then wee would make haste, but now we need not make such speed, but take her at an advantage, with most securitie for our selves, for we have to doe with a cruell, fierce, and ravenous Beast. Whereupon three of our men went forward, the Beare still devouring her prey, not once fearing the number of our men, and yet they were thirtie at the least: the three that went forward in that sort, were Cornelius Jacobson, Master of William Barents ship, William Gysen, Pylot of the Pinnasse, and Hans van Nuflen, William Barents, Purser: and after that the sayd Master and Pylot had shot three times and mist, the Purser stepping somewhat further forward, and seeing the Beare to be within the length of a shot, presently levelled his Piece, and discharging it at the Beare, shot her into the head betweene both the eyes, and yet she held the man still fast by the necke, and lifted up her head with the man in her mouth, but she began somwhat to stagger wherewith the Purser and a Scottish-man drew out their Curtelaxes and strooke at her so hard, [III.iii.482.] that their Curtelaxes burst, and yet she would not leave the man, at last William Geysen went to them, and with all his might strooke the Beare upon the snout with his Piece, at which time the Beare fell to the ground, making a great noyse, and William Geysen, leaping upon her cut her throat. The seventh of Sep-

They kill the Beare.

tember, wee buried the dead bodies of our men in the States Iland, and having flayed the Beare, carryed her Skin to Amsterdam.

The ninth of September, we set sayle from the States Iland, but the Ice came in so thicke and with such force, that we could not get through, so that at Eevening we came backe againe to the States Iland, the winde being Westerly. There the Admirall and the Pinnasse of Rotterdam, fell on ground by certayne Rockes, but got off againe without any hurt.

The tenth of September, we sayled againe from the States Iland towards the Wey-gates, and sent two Boates into the Sea, to certifie us what store of Ice was abroad: and that Eevening wee came all together into Wey-gates, *Twist-point.* and Anchored by the Twist-point. The eleventh of September in the Morning, we sayled againe into the Tartarian Sea, but we fell into great store of Ice, so that we sayled backe againe to the Wey-gates, and Anchored by the Crosse-point, and about midnight we saw a Russian Lodgie, that sayled from the Beelt-point towards the Samuters Land. The thirteenth of September, the Sunne being South, there began a great storme to blow out of the South South-west, the weather being mistie, melancholy, and snowie, and the storme increasing more and more, we drave through.

The fourteenth of September, the weather began to bee somewhat clearer, the winde being North-west, and the storme blowing stiffe out of the Tartarian Sea, but at Eevening it was faire weather, and then the wind blew North-east, the same day our men went on the other side of Wey-gates, on the firme land, to take the depth of the Channell, and entred into the Bough behind the Ilands, where there stood a little House made of wood, and a great fall of water into the land. The same Morning we hoysed up our Anchor, thinking once againe to try what wee could doe to further our Voyage, but our Admirall being of another minde, lay still till the fifteenth of September. The same day in the Morning,

the winde drave in from the East-end of the Wey-gates, whereby we were forced presently to hoyse Anchors, and the same day sayled out from the West-end of the Wey-gates, with all our Fleet, and made homewards againe, and that day past by the Ilands called Matfloe and Delgoy, and that night we sayled twelve miles, North-west and by West, till Saturday in the morning, and then the winde fell North-east, and it began to Snow. We saw the point of Candynaes, lying South-east from us, and then wee had seven and twentie fathom deepe, red sand with blacke shels. *Matfloe and Dolgoy.*

The nine and twentieth of September, in the Eevening, entred into Ward-house, and there we stayed till the tenth of October. And that day we set sayle out of Ward-house, and upon the eighteenth of November, we arrived in the Maes.

Chap. V.

The third Voyage Northward to the Kingdomes of Cathaia, and China, in Anno 1596. Written by Gerat de Veer.

§. I.

What happened to them at Sea, before they came to build their House.

AFter that the seven Ships (as I said before) were returned backe againe from their North Voyage, with lesse benefit then was expected, the Generall States of the United Provinces consulted together, to send certayne Ships thither againe, a third time, to see if they might bring the said Voyage to a good end, if it were possible to bee done: but after much Consultation had, they could not agree thereon, yet they were content to cause a Proclamation to be made, that if any, either Townes, or Merchants,

were disposed to venture to make further search that way, at their owne charges, if the Voyage were accomplished, and that thereby it might be made apparant, that the sayd passage was to be sayled, they were content to give them a good reward, in the Countries behalfe, naming a certayne summe of money. Whereupon in the beginning of this yeere, there was two Ships rigged and set forth by the Towne of Amsterdam, to sayle that Voyage, the men therein being taken up upon two Conditions: viz. What they should have if the Voyage were not accomplished, and what they should have if they got through, and brought the Voyage to an end, promising them a good reward if they could effect it, thereby to encourage the men, taking up as many unmarried men as they could, that they might not bee disswaded by meanes of their Wives and Children to leave off the Voyage. Upon these Conditions, those [III.iii.483.] two Ships were ready to set sayle in the beginning of May. In the one, Jacob Heemskerke Hendrickson, was Master and Factor for the Wares and Merchandizes; and William Barents chiefe Pylot. In the other, John Cornelison Riip, was both Master and Factor for the goods that the Merchants had laden in her.

The fifth of May, all the men in both the Ships were Mustered, and upon the tenth of May, they sayled from Amsterdam, and the thirteenth of May got to the Ulie. The thirtieth of May we had a good winde, and sayled North-east, and wee tooke the height of the Sunne with our Crosse-staffe, and found that it was elevated above the Horizon 47. degrees and 42. minutes, his Declination was 21. degrees and 42. minutes, so that the height of the Pole was 69. degrees and 24. minutes.

June. Three Sunnes and foure Rain-bowes. The like hath beene seene in England about the time this worke entred the Presse.

The first of June we had no night, and the second of June we had the winde contrarie, but upon the fourth of June we had a good winde, out of the West North-west, and sayled North-east. And when the Sunne was about South South-east, wee saw a strange sight in the Element: for on each side of the Sunne there was another

Sunne, and two Raine-bowes, that past cleane thorow the three Sunnes, and then two Raine-bowes more, the one compassing round about the Sunnes, and the other crosse thorow the great rundle; the great rundle standing with the uttermost point, elevated above the Horizon 28. degrees: at noone the Sunne being at the highest, the height thereof was measured, and wee found by the Astrolabium, that it was elevated above the Horizon 48. degrees and 43. minutes, his Declination was 22. degrees and 17. minutes, the which being added to 48. degrees 43. minutes, it was found that wee were under 71. degrees of the height of the Pole.

John Cornelis ship held aloofe from us, and would not keepe with us, and would hold no course but North North-east, for they alledged, that if wee went any more Easterly, that then we should enter into the Wey-gates, but wee being not able to perswade them, altered our course one point of the Compasse, to meet them, and sayled North-east and by North, and should otherwise have sayled North-east, and somewhat more East.

The fifth, wee saw the first Ice, which we wondered *Ice.* at, at the first, thinking that it had beene white Swannes, for one of our men walking in the Fore-decke, on a sudden began to cry out with a loud voyce, and said; that hee saw white Swannes: which wee that were under Hatches hearing, presently came up, and perceived that it was Ice that came driving from the great heape, showing like Swannes, it being then about Eevening, at midnight we sayled *through* it, and the Sunne was about a degree elevated above the Horizon in the North.

The sixth, about foure of the clocke in the after-noone, wee entred againe into the Ice, which was so strong that we could not passe through it, and sayled South-west and by West, till eight Glasses were runne out, after that we kept on our course North, North-east, and sayled along by the Ice.

The seventh, we tooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was elevated above the Horizon 38. degrees

and 38. minutes, his Declination being 22. degrees 38. minutes; which being taken from 38. degrees 38. minutes, wee found the Pole to bee 74. degrees; there we found so great store of Ice, that it was admirable: and we sayled along through it, as if we had past betweene two Lands.

Greene water. The water being as greene as Grasse, and we supposed that we were not farre from Greenland, and the longer we sayled, the more and thicker Ice we found. The eight of June, we came to so great a heape of Ice, that we could not sayle through it.

Beares, or Cherie-Iland. The ninth of June, we found the Iland that lay under 74. degrees and 30. minutes, and as we ghest, it was about five miles long. The tenth, we put out our Boate, and therewith eight of our men went on Land, and as we past by John Cornelisons ship, eight of his men also came into our Boate, whereof one was the Pilot. Then William Barents asked him, whether we were not too much Westward, but hee would not acknowledge it: whereupon there passed many words betweene them, for William Barents sayd, he would prove it to bee so, as in truth it was. The eleventh, going on Land, we found great store of

Egges. Sea-Mewes Egges upon the shoare, and in that Iland we were in great danger of our lives: for that going up a great Hill of Snow, when wee should come downe againe, we thought we should all have broken our neckes, it was so slipperie, but we sate upon the Snow and slid downe, which was very dangerous for us, to breake both our armes and legges, for at the foot of the Hill there was many Rockes, which we were likely to have fallen upon,

Danger escaped. yet by Gods helpe we got safely downe againe. Meane time William Barents sate in the Boate, and saw us slide downe, and was in greater feare then we, to behold us in

Variation of the Compasse. that danger. In the said Iland, we found the varying of our Compasse, which was 13. degrees, so that it differed a whole point at the least: after that wee rowed aboord John Cornelisons ship, and there we eate our Egges.

Great white Beare. The twelfth in the morning, we saw a white Beare, which wee rowed after with our Boate, thinking to cast a

Rope about her necke; but when we were neere her, she was so great, that we durst not doe it, but rowed backe againe to our Ship to fetch more men and our Armes, and so made to her againe with Muskets, Harquebusses, Halberts, and Hatchets. John Cornelisons men comming also with their Boate to helpe us: and so being well furnished of men and weapons, we rowed with both our [III.iii.484.] Boates unto the Beare, and fought with her while foure *Fight with her.* Glasses were runne out, for our Weapons could doe her little hurt: and amongst the rest of the blowes that we gave her, one of our men strooke her into the backe with an Axe, which stucke fast in her backe, and yet shee swamme away with it; but we rowed after her, and at last we cut her head in sunder with an Axe, wherewith she dyed: and then wee brought her into John Cornelisons ship, where we flayed her, and found her Skinne to *Beares skin 12. foot long.* bee twelve foot long: which done, we eate some of her flesh; but wee brookt it not well. This Iland we called the Beare-Iland.

The thirteenth we left the Iland, and sayled North, and somewhat Easterly, the winde being West, and South-west, and made good way: so that when the Sunne was North, wee ghest that we had sayled sixteene miles Northward from that Iland.

The fourteenth, when the Sunne was North, we cast out our Lead one hundred and thirteene fathome deepe, but found no ground, and so sayled forward till the fifteenth of June, when the Sunne was South-east, with mistie and drisling weather, and sayled North, and North and by East: about Eevening it cleared up, and then we saw a great thing driving in the Sea, which we thought had beene a Ship: but passing along by it, we perceived it to bee a dead Whale, that stunke monstrously; and on *Dead Whale.* it there sate a great number of Sea-mewes: At that time, wee had sayled twentie miles.

The sixteenth, with the like speed we sayled North and by East, with mistie weather; and as we sayled, we heard the Ice before we saw it; but after, when it cleared up,

we saw it, and then woond off from it, when as we ghest we had sayled thirtie miles. The seventeenth and eighteenth, we saw great store of Ice, and sayled along by it, untill we came to the point, which we could not reach, for that the wind was South-east, which was right against us, & the point of Ice lay Southward from us: yet wee lavered a great while to get beyond it, but we could not doe it. The nineteenth, we saw Land againe, then we tooke the height of the Sun, and found that it was elevated above the Horizon 33. degrees and 37. minutes: her Declination being 23. degrees and 26. minutes: which taken from the sayd 33. degrees and 37. minutes, wee found that we were under 80. degrees and 11. minutes: which was the height of the Pole there. This Land was very great, and we sayled Westward along by it, till we were under 79. degrees and a halfe, where we found a good road, and could not get neare to the Land, because the winde blew North-east, which was right off from the Land: the Bay reacheth right North and South into the Sea.

80. *Degrees and* 11 *minutes.*

The twentie one, we cast out our Anchor, at eighteene fathome before the Land; and then we and John Cornelisons men, rowed on the West-side of the Land, and there fetched Balast: and when we got on boord againe with our Balast, we saw a white Beare that swamme towards our ship; whereupon we left off our worke, and entering in the Boate with John Cornelisons men, rowed after her, and crossing her in the way, drove her from the Land, wherewith she swamme further into the Sea, and we followed her; and for that our Boate could not make good way after her, we manned our Scute also, the better to follow her: but shee swam a mile into the Sea; yet we followed her with the most part of all our men of both Ships in three Boats, and strooke oftentimes at her, cutting and hewing her, so that all our Armes were most broken in pieces. During our fight with her, shee strooke her Clawes so hard in our Boate, that the signes thereof were seene in it; but as hap was, it was in the fore-head of our Boate: for if it had beene in the middle thereof, she

Another fight with a white Beare.

had (peradventure) over-throwne it, they have such force in their Clawes: At last, after we had fought long with her, and made her wearie with our three Boates that kept about her, we overcame her and killed her: which done, we brought her into our ship, and flayed her: her Skinne being thirteene foot long. After that, we rowed with our Scute, about a mile inward to the Land, where there was a good Haven, and good Anchor ground, on the East-side being sandie, there wee cast out our Lead, and found sixteene fathom deepe, and after that, ten, and twelve fathome, and rowing further, we found that on the East-side there was two Ilands, that reached Eastward into the Sea: on the West-side also there was a great Creeke or River, which shewed also like an Iland. Then we rowed to the Iland that lay in the middle, and there we found many Red Geese-egges, which we saw sitting upon their Nests, and drove them from them, and they flying away, cryed, red, red, red: and as they sate we killed one Goose dead with a stone, which we drest and eate, and at least sixtie Egges, that wee tooke with us aboord the ship, and upon the two and twentieth of June, we went aboord our ship againe.

Beares skin 13. foot long.

Red Geese Egges.

Those Geese were of a perfit Red colour, such as come into Holland about Weiringen, and everie yeere are there taken in abundance, but till this time it was never knowne where they hatcht their Egges, so that some men have taken upon them to write, that they sit upon Trees in Scotland, that hang over the Water, and such Egges as fall from them downe into the Water become young Geese, and swim there out of the water; but those that fall upon the Land burst in sunder, and are lost: but this is now found to bee contrary, and it is not to be wondred at, that no man could tell where they breed their Egges, for that no man that ever wee knew, had ever beene under 80. Degrees: nor that Land under 80. degrees, was never set downe in any Card, much lesse the red Geese that breed therein.

Red Geese breed their young Geese, under 80. Degrees in Greenland. Fable of Barnacles.

It is heere also to bee noted, that although that in this

Note.

[III.iii.485.] land which we esteeme to be Greenland, lying under 80. Degrees, and more, there groweth Leaves and Grasse, and that there are such Beasts therein as eate grasse, as Harts, Buckes, and such like beasts as live thereon, yet in Nova Zembla under 76. Degrees, there groweth neither Leaves nor Grasse, nor any Beasts that eate grasse or leaves live therein, but such Beasts as eate Flesh, as Beares and Foxes: and yet this Land lyeth full 4. Degrees from the North Pole, further then Greenland aforesayd doth.

The three and twentieth, wee hoysted Anchor againe, and sayled North-westward into the Sea; but could get no further, by reason of the Ice; and so we came to the same place againe where we had layne, and cast Anchor at eighteene fathome: and at Eevening being at Anchor, the Sunne being North-east, and somewhat more Eastward, wee tooke the height thereof, and found it to be elevated above the Horizon 13. degrees and 10. minutes, his Declination being 23. degrees and 28. minutes: which substracted from the height aforesaid, resteth 10. degrees and 18. minutes, which being substracted from 90. degrees, then the height of the Pole there was 79. degrees and 42. minutes.

After that, we hoysted Anchor againe, and sayled along by the West side of the Land, and then our men went on Land, to see how much the Needle of the Compasse varyed: Meane time there came a great white Beare swimming towards the Ship, and would have climbed up into it, if we had not made a noyse; and with that wee shot at her with a Piece, but she left the ship, and swam to the Land, where our men were: which we perceiving, sayled with our ship towards the Land, and gave a great shout; wherewith our men thought that wee had fallen on a Rocke with our Ship, which made them much abashed; and therewith the Beare also being afraid, swamme off againe from the Land, and left our men, which made us glad: for our men had no Weapons about them. Touching the varying of the Compasse,

Beare assaults them.

for the which cause our men went on Land, to trie the certaintie thereof: it was found to differ 16. Degrees. *Variation of the Compasse 16. Degrees.*

The five and twentieth of June, we hoysted Anchor againe, and sayled along by the Land, and went South, and South South-west, with a North North-east winde, under 79. degrees. There we found a great Creeke or River, whereinto we sayled ten miles at the least, holding our course Southward; but we perceived that there we could not get through: there we cast out our Lead, and for the most part found 10. fathom deepe, but we were constrained to lavere out again, for the winde was Northerly, and almost full North, and we perceived that it reached to the firme land, which we supposed to bee Low-land, for that wee could not see it any thing farre, and therefore we sayled so neere unto it, till that we might see it, and then we were forced to lavere, and upon the seven and twentieth of June we got out againe.

The eight and twentieth, we got beyond the point that lay on the West side, where there was so great a number of Birds, that they flew against our Sayles, and wee sayled ten miles Southward, and after that West, to shun the Ice. The nine and twentieth, wee sayled South-east and somewhat more Easterly, along by the Land, till we were under 76. degrees and 50. minutes, for we were forced to put off from the Land, because of the Ice. The thirtieth of June, wee sayled South, and somewhat East, and then we tooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was elevated above the Horizon 38. degrees and 20. minutes, his Declination was 23. degrees and 20. minuts, which being taken from the former height, it was found that we were under 75. degrees. *Store of Birds.*

The first of July wee saw the Beare-Iland againe, and then John Cornelison and his Officers came aboord our ship, to speake with us about altering our course, but wee being of a contrary opinion, it was agreed that we should follow on our course, and hee his: which was, that he (according to his desire) should sayle unto *July. Cherie-Iland.*

80. Degrees againe: for he was of opinion, that there he should finde a passage through, on the East side of the Land that lay under 80. Degrees. And upon that agreement we left each other, they sayling Northward, and wee Southward, because of the Ice, the winde being East South-east.

They part companie.

The second, we sayled Eastward, and were under 74. degrees, having the wind North North-west, and then wee woond over another Bough, with an East North-east winde, and sayled Northward. In the Eevening the Sunne being about North-west and by North, we woond about againe (because of the Ice) with an East winde, and sayled South South-east, and about East South-east, and then we woond about againe (because of the Ice) and the Sunne being South South-west, we woond about againe, and sayled North-east. The third, we were under 74. degrees, having a South-east and by East winde, and sayled North-east and by North: after that wee woond about againe with a South winde, and sayled East South-east, till the Sunne was North-west, then the winde began to be somewhat larger.

The eight, wee had a good North-west winde, and sayled East and by North, with an indifferent cold gale of wind, and got under 72. degrees and 15. minutes. The ninth of July, we went East and by North, the wind being West. The tenth of July, the Sunne being South South-west, we cast out our Lead, and had ground at one hundred and sixtie fathome, the wind being North-east and by North, and we sayled East and by South, under 72. degrees. The eleventh, we found 70. fathome deepe, and saw no Ice, then wee ghest that we were right South and North from Dandinaes, that is the East-point of the White-sea, that lay Southward from us, and had sandie ground, and the banke stretched Northward into the Sea, so that we were out of doubt that we were upon the banke of the White Sea, for wee had found no sandie ground all the Coast along, but onely that banke. Then the wind being East and by South,

[III.iii.486.]

we sailed South, and South and by East, under 72. degrees, and after that, we had a South South-east Wind, and sayled North-east to get over the Banke.

The thirteenth of July, we sayled East with a North North-east wind: then wee tooke the height of the Sunne, and found it to be elevated above the Horizon 54. degrees and 38. minutes, his declination was 21. degrees and 54. minutes, which taken from the height aforesaid, the height of the Pole was found to bee 73. degrees, and then againe wee found Ice, but not very much, and we were of opinion, that we were by Willoughbies Land. The fourteenth, we sayled North-east, the wind being North North-west, and in that sort sayled about a dinner time, along through the Ice, and in the middle thereof we cast out our Lead, and had ninety fathome deepe, in the next quarter wee cast out our Lead againe, and had an hundred fathome deepe, and we sayled so farre into the Ice, that wee could goe no further: for wee could see no place where it opened, but were forced (with great labour and paine) to lavere out of it againe, the wind blowing West, and we were then under 74. degrees and 10. minutes.

Willoughbies Land conceited from some Maps.

The fifteenth, we drave through the middle of the Ice with a calme, and casting out our Lead, had an hundred fathome deepe, at which time the wind being East, wee sayled West. The sixteenth, we got out of the Ice, and saw a great Beare lying upon it, that leaped into the water when shee saw us: Wee made towards her with our ship, which shee perceiving got up upon the Ice againe, wherewith wee shot once at her. Then wee sayled East South-east, and saw no Ice, ghessing that we were not farre from Nova Zembla, because we saw the Beare there upon the Ice, at which time we cast out our Lead, and found an hundred fathome deepe.

The seventeenth, we tooke the height of the Sunne, and it was elevated above the Horizon 37. degrees and 55. minutes, his declination was 21. degrees and 15.

minutes, which taken from the height aforesaid, the height of the Pole was 74. degrees and 40. minutes: and when the Sunne was in the South, we saw the Land of *Nova Zembla.* Nova Zembla, which was about Lomsbay: I was the first that espied it. Then we altered our course, and sayled North-east and by North, and hoysed up all our sayles, except the Fore-sayle and the Lesien. The eighteenth, wee saw the Land againe, being under 75. degrees, and sayled North-east and by North, with a North-west wind, and we gate above the point of the *Admirals Iland.* Admirals Iland, and sayled East North-east, with a West Wind, the Land reaching North-east and by North. *Crosse Iland in 76. degrees 20. minutes.* The nineteenth, wee came to the Crosse Iland, and could get no further, by reason of the Ice, for there the Ice lay still close upon the Land, at which time the wind was West, and blew right upon the Land, and it lay under 76. degrees and 20. minutes. There stood two Crosses upon the Land, whereof it had the Name.

The twentieth, we anchored under the Iland, for we could get no further for the Ice. There we put out our Boat, and with eight men rowed on Land, and went to one of the Crosses, where we rested us a while to goe to the next Crosse, but being in the way wee *Two Beares.* saw two Beares by the other Crosse, at which time we had no weapons at all about us. The Beares rose up *Their sent.* upon their hinder feet to see us (for they smell further than they see) and for that they smelt us: therefore they rose upright, and came towards us, wherewith we were not a little abashed, in such sort that we had little lust to laugh, and in all haste went to our Boat againe, still looking behind us, to see if they followed us, thinking to get into the Boat, and so put off from the Land: but the Master stayed us, saying, hee that first beginnes to runne away, I will thrust this Hake-staffe (which he then held in his hand) into his ribs; for it is better for us (said hee) to stay all together, and see if we can make them afraid with whooping and hollowing; and so we went softly towards the Boat, and got away,

glad that we had escaped their clawes, and that we had the leasure to tell our fellowes thereof.

The one and twentieth we tooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was elevated above the Horizon 35. degrees and 15. minutes, his declination was 21. degrees, which being taken from the height aforesaid, there rested 14. degrees, which substracted from 90. degrees, then the height of the Pole was found to be 76. degrees and 15. minutes, then we found the variation of the Compasse to bee 26. degrees. The same day two of our men went againe to the Crosse, and found no beares to trouble us, and wee followed them with our Armes, fearing least wee might meet any by chance, and when we came to the second Crosse, we found the foot-steps of two Beares, and saw how long they had followed us, which was one hundred foot-steps at the least, that way that we had beene the day before. The two and twentieth being Munday, wee set up another Crosse, and made our Marke thereon: and lay there before the Crosse Iland, till the fourth of August, meane time we washt and whited our Linnen on the shoare.

Variation 26. degrees, perhaps 16.

The thirtieth, the Sunne being North, there came a Beare so neere to our ship, that we might hit her with a stone, and we shot her into the foot with a Piece, wherewith shee ranne halting away. The one and thirtieth of July, the Sunne being East North-east, seven of our men killed a Beare, and flayed her, and cast her bodie into the Sea. The same day at noone (by our Instrument) we found the variation of the Needle of the Compasse to be 17. degrees.

The first of August we saw a white Beare, but she ran away from us. The fourth, we got out of the Ice, to the other side of the Iland, and anchored there: where, with great labour and much paine, we fetched a Boat full of stones from the Land. The fifth, wee set sayle againe towards Ice-point, with an East Wind, and sayled South South-east, and then North North-east, and saw no Ice by the Land, by the which we lavered. The sixth,

[III.iii.487.]

August.

Point Nassaw. we gate about the point of Nassaw, and sayled forward East, and East and by South along the Land.

The seventh, we had a West South-west Wind, and sayled along by the Land, South-east, and South-east and by East, and saw but a little Ice, and then past *Trust-point.* by the Trust-point, which we had much longed for: at Eevening we had an East Wind, with mistie Weather, so that we were forced to make our ship fast to a piece of Ice, that was at least thirtie sixe fathome deepe under the water, and more then sixteene fathome above the *Ice 52. fathom deepe.* water: which in all was two and fifty fathome thick, for it lay fast upon ground; the which was thirtie sixe fathome deepe. The eight in the morning we had an East Wind, with mistie Weather.

Snow. The ninth, lying still fast to the great piece of Ice, it snowed hard, and it was mistie weather, and when the Sunne was South, we went upon the Hatches (for we alwayes held watch) where as the Master walked along the ship, he heard a beast snuffe with his nose, and looking over-boord, he saw a great Beare hard by *Beares assault.* the ship, where hee cryed out, a Beare, a Beare; and with that all our men came up from under Hatches, and saw a great Beare hard by our Boat, seeking to get into it, but we giving a great shout, she was afraid, and swamme away, but presently came backe againe, and went behind a great piece of Ice, whereunto we had made our ship fast, and climbed upon it, and boldly came towards our ship to enter into it: but we had torne our Scute Sayle in the ship, and lay with foure Peeces before at the Boot-sprit, and shot her in the bodie: and with that, shee ranne away; but it snowed so fast that wee could not see whither shee went: but wee ghest that shee lay behind a high Hoovell; whereof there were many upon the piece of Ice.

The tenth, being Saturday, the Ice began mightily to breake, and then wee first perceived that the great piece of Ice whereunto we had made our ship fast, lay on the ground; for the rest of the Ice drave along by

it, wherewith wee were in great feare that wee should bee compassed about with the Ice, and therefore we used all the diligence and meanes that we could to get from thence, for we were in great doubt: and being under sayle, wee sayled upon the Ice, because it was all broken under us, and got to another piece of Ice; whereunto we made our ship fast againe with our Sheate Anchor, which we made fast upon it; and there we lay till Eevening: and when we had supped, in the first quarter, the said piece of Ice began on a sudden to burst and rend in pieces, so fearefully that it was admirable; for with one great cracke it burst into foure hundred pieces at the least: we lying fast to it, weighed our Cable, and got off from it, under the water it was ten fathome deepe, and lay upon the ground, and two fathome above the Water; and it made a fearefull noyse both under and above the Water when it burst, and spread it selfe abroad on all sides. And being with great feare, gotten from that piece of Ice, wee came to another piece, that was six fathome deepe under the Water: to which wee made a Rope fast on both sides. Then wee saw another great piece of Ice, not farre from us, lying fast in the Sea, that was as sharpe above, as it had beene a Tower; whereunto wee rowed: and casting out our Lead, we found that it lay twentie fathome deepe, fast on the ground under the Water, and twelve fathome above the Water.

Icie thunder.

The eleventh being Sunday, we rowed to another piece of Ice, and cast out our Lead, and found that it lay eighteene fathome deepe fast to the ground under the Water, and ten fathome above the water. The twelfth, wee sayled neere under the Land, the better to shunne the Ice, for the great flakes that drave in the Sea, were many fathome deepe under the Water, and we were better defended from them being at foure and five fathome Water, and there ranne a great current of water from the Hill. There we made our ship fast againe to a piece of Ice, and called that point, The small Ice point.

The thirteenth in the morning, there came a Beare from the East point of the Land, close to our ship, and one of our men with a Peece shot at her, and brake one of her legs, but she crept up the Hill with her three feet, and we following her, killed her, and having flayed her, brought the skinne aboord the ship. From thence wee set sayle, with a little gale of Winde, and were forced to lavere, but after that it began to blow more out of the South, and South South-east.

Beare killed.

Orange Iland. The fifteenth, we came to the Iland of Orange, where we were inclosed with the Ice, hard by a great piece of Ice where we were in great danger to lose our ship, but with great labour and much paine, we got to the Iland, the Wind being South-east, whereby we were constrayned to turne our ship, and while we were busied thereabouts, and made such noyse, a Beare that lay there and slept, awaked, and came towards us to the ship, so that wee were forced to leave our Worke about turning of the ship, and to defend our selves against the Beare, and shot her into the bodie, wherewith she ranne away to the other side of the Iland, and swamme into the water, and got up upon a piece of Ice, where she lay still, but we comming after her to the piece of Ice where she lay, when she saw us, she leapt into the water, and swamme to the Land: but we got betweene her and the Land, and strooke her [III.iii.488.] on the head with a Hatchet, but as often as wee strooke at her with the Hatchet, she duckt under the water, whereby wee had much to doe before we could kill her: after she was dead we flayed her on the Land, and tooke the skinne aboord with us, and after that, turned our shippe to a great piece of Ice, and made it fast thereunto.

The sixteenth, ten of our men entring into one Boat, rowed to the firme Land of Nova Zembla, and drew the Boat up upon the Ice, which done, we went up a high Hill, to see the situation of the Land, and

found that it reached South-east, and South South-east, and then againe South, which wee disliked, for that it lay so much Southward: but when wee saw open water South-east, and East South-east, we were much comforted againe, thinking that we had wonne our Voyage and knew not how we should get soone enough aboord, to certifie William Barents thereof.

The eighteenth, we made preparation to set sayle, but it was all in vaine: for wee had almost lost our Sheat Anchor, and two new Ropes, and with much lost labour got to the place againe from whence wee came: for the streame ranne with a mightie current, and the Ice drave very strongly upon the Cables, along by the ship, so that we were in feare that wee should lose all the Cable that was without the ship, which was two hundred fathome at the least, but God provided well for us, so that in the end, we got to the place againe from whence we put out.

The nineteenth it was indifferent good weather, the Wind blowing South-west, the Ice still driving, and wee set sayle with an indifferent gale of Wind, and past by the point of Desire, whereby we were once *Point Desire.* againe in good hope, and when we had gotten above the point, we sailed South-east into the Sea-ward, foure miles, but then againe wee entred into more Ice, whereby wee were constrayned to turne backe againe, and sayled North-west untill we came to the Land againe, which reacheth from the point of Desire, to the head point, South and by West six miles: from the head point to Flushingers head, it reacheth South-west, which are three miles one from the other: from the Flushingers head, it reacheth into the Sea, East South-east, and from Flushingers head to the point of the Iland, it reacheth South-west, and by South, and South-west three miles: and from the Iland point, to the point of the Ice Haven, the Land reacheth West South-west foure miles: from the Ice Havens point to the fal of Water, or the streame Bay, and the low Land, it reacheth West and by South,

and East and by North seven miles: from thence the Land reacheth East and West.

The one and twentieth, we sayled a great way into the Ice Haven, and that night anchored therein: next day the streame going extreame hard Eastward, wee haled out againe from thence, and sayled againe to the Iland point, but for that it was misty Weather, comming to a piece of Ice, wee made the ship fast thereunto, because the Wind beganne to blow hard South-west and South South-west. There we went up upon the Ice, and wondred much thereat, it was such manner of Ice: For on the top it was full of Earth, and there wee found above fortie Egges, and it was not like other Ice, for it was of a perfect Azure colour like to the Skies, whereby there grew great contention in words amongst our men, some saying that it was Ice, others that it was frozen Land: for it lay unreasonable high above the Water, it was at least eighteene fathome under the water close to the ground, and ten fathome above the water: there wee stayed all that storme, the Wind being South-west and by West. The three and twentieth, wee sayled againe from the Ice, South-eastward into the Sea, but entred presently into it againe, and woond about to the Ice Haven. The next day it blew hard North North-west, and the Ice came mightily driving in, whereby we were in a manner compassed about therewith, and withall the Wind beganne more and more to rise, and the Ice still drave harder and harder, so that the pinne of the Rother, and the Rother were shorne in pieces, and our Boat was shorne in pieces betweene the ship and the Ice, we expecting nothing else, but that the ship also would be prest and crusht in pieces with the Ice.

Earth on the top of Azure Ice.

Boat broken with Ice.

The five and twentieth, the Weather began to be better, and we tooke great paines, and bestowed much labour to get the Ice, wherewith we were so inclosed, to goe from us, but what meanes soever we used it was all in vaine, but when the Sunne was South-west,

the Ice began to drive out againe with the streame, and we thought to saile Southward about Nova Zembla, to the Streights of Mergates, seeing we could there find no passage. Wee having past Nova Zembla, were of opinion that our labour was all in vaine, and that we could not get through, and so agreed to goe that way home againe; but comming to the Streame Bay, wee were forced to goe backe againe, because of the Ice which lay so fast thereabouts, and the same night also it froze, that wee could hardly get through there, with the little wind that we had, the Wind then being North.

The six and twentieth, there blew a reasonable gale of Wind, at which time wee determined to sayle backe to the point of Desire, and so home againe, seeing that wee could not get through the Wergats, although we used all the meanes and industry wee could to get forward, but when we had past by the Ice Haven, the Ice began to drive with such force, that wee were inclosed round about therewith, and yet we sought all the meanes we could to get out, but it was all in vaine: and at that time we had like to have lost three men that were upon the Ice to make way for the ship, if the Ice had held the course it went, but as we drave backe againe, and that the Ice also whereon our men stood, in like sort drave, they being nimble, as the ship drave by them, one of them caught hold of the beak head, another upon the shrouds, and the third upon the great brase that hung out behind, and so by great adventure by the hold that they tooke, they got safe into the ship againe, for which they thanked God with all their hearts: for it was much likelier that they should rather have beene carried away with the Ice, but God, by the nimblenesse of their hands, delivered them out of that danger which was a pitifull thing to behold, although it fell out for the best, for if they had not beene nimble, they had surely dyed for it. The same day in the evening, wee got to the West-side of the Ice Haven, where wee were forced in great cold, povertie,

Inclosed with Ice.

[III.iii.489.]

Escape of three men.

miserie, and griefe, to stay all that Winter, the winde then beeing East North-east.

The seven and twentieth, the Ice drave round about the ship, and yet it was good weather, at which time we went on Land, and being there it began to blow South-east, with a reasonable gale, and then the Ice came with great force before the bough, and drave the ship up foure foot high before, and behind it seemed as if the keele lay on the ground, so that it seemed that the ship would be overthrowne in the place, whereupon they that were in the ship, put out the Boat, therewith to save their lives, and withall put out a flagge to make a signe to us, to come aboard: which we perceiving, and beholding the ship to be lifted up in that sort, made all the haste we could to get aboord, thinking that the ship was burst in pieces, but comming unto it, we found it to be in better case then we thought it had beene.

Ship lifted up, and beset with Ice.

The eight and twentieth, we got some of the Ice from it, and the ship beganne to sit upright againe, but before it was fully upright, as William Barents and the other Pilot went forward to the bough to see how the ship lay, and how much it was risen; and while they were busie upon their knees and elbowes to measure how much it was, the ship burst out of the Ice with such a noise, and so great a cracke, that they thought verily that they were all cast away, knowing not how to save themselves.

Another danger.

The nine and twentieth, the ship lying upright againe, wee used all the meanes wee could, with Iron hookes and other instruments, to breake the flakes of Ice that lay one heaped upon the other, but all in vaine; so that we determined to commit our selves to the mercy of God, and to attend aide from him, for that the Ice drave not away in any such sort that it could helpe us. The thirtieth, the Ice began to drive together one upon the other with greater force then before, and bare against the ship with a boystrous South-west winde, and a great snow, so that all the whole ship was borne up and enclosed, whereby all that was both about it and in it, began to

cracke, so that it seemed to burst in an hundred pieces, which was most fearefull both to see and heare, and made all the haire of our heads to rise upright with feare: and after that, the ship (by the Ice on both sides that joyned and got under the same) was driven so upright, in such sort, as if it had beene lifted up with a Wrench or Vice.

The one and thirtieth of August, by force of the Ice, the ship was driven up foure or five foot high at the beake head, and the hinder part thereof lay in a clift of Ice, whereby wee thought that the Rother would bee freed from the force of the flakes of Ice, but notwithstanding, it brake in pieces staffe and all: and if that the hinder part of the ship had beene in the Ice that drave, as well as the fore part was, then all the ship would have beene driven wholly upon the Ice, or possibly have runne on ground, and for that cause wee were in great feare, and set our Scutes and our Boat out upon the Ice, if need were, to save our selves, but within foure houres after, the Ice drave away of it selfe, wherewith wee were exceeding glad, as if wee had saved our lives, for that the ship was then on flote againe, and upon that we made a new Rother and a Staffe, and hung the Rother out upon the hookes, that if we chanced to bee borne upon the Ice againe, as we had beene, it might so be freed from it. *Rother broken.*

The first of September being Sunday, while we were at prayer, the Ice began to gather together againe, so that the ship was lifted up two foot at the least, but the Ice brake not. The same evening the Ice continued in that sort still driving and gathering together, so that we made preparation to draw our Scute and the Boat over the Ice upon the Land, the wind then blowing South-east. The second, it snowed hard with a North-east wind, and the ship began to rise up higher upon the Ice, at which time the Ice burst and crackt with great force, so that wee were of opinion to carrie our Scute on Land in that foule weather, with thirteene barrels of Bread, and two hogsheads of Wine, to sustaine our selves if need were. *September.*

The third, it blew hard but snowed not so much, the wind being North North-east, at which time we began to be loose from the Ice, whereunto we lay fast, so that the Scheck broke from the Steven, but the plankes wherewith the ship was lined, held the Scheck fast, and made it hang on, but the Boutloofe and a new Cable (if we had falled upon the Ice) brake by forcible pressing of the Ice, but held fast againe in the Ice, and yet the ship was staunch; which was wonder, in regard that the Ice drave so hard, and in great heapes, as big as the Salt-hils that are in Spaine, and within a Harquebusse shot of the ship, betweene the which wee lay in great feare and anguish.

The fourth, the weather began to cleare up, and we saw
[III.iii.490.] the Sunne, but it was very cold, the wind being North-east we being forced to lie still. The fift, it was faire Sun-shine weather, and very calme, and at evening when we had supped, the Ice compassed about us againe, and wee were hard enclosed therewith, the ship beginning to lie upon the one side, and leaked sore, but by Gods grace it became staunch againe, wherewith we were wholly in feare to lose the ship, it was in so great danger: at which time wee tooke counsell together, and carried our old socke Sayle, with Powder, Lead, Peeces, Muskets, and other furniture on Land, to make a Tent about our Scute that we had drawne upon the Land, and at that time we carried some Bread, and Wine on Land also, with some Timber therewith to mend our Boat, that it might serve us in time of need.

The sixt, it was indifferent faire Sea-weather, and Sun-shine, the wind being West, whereby we were somewhat comforted, hoping that the Ice would drive away, and that wee might get from thence againe. The seventh, it was indifferent weather againe, but we perceived no opening of the water, but to the contrary, it lay hard enclosed with Ice, and no water at all about the ship, no not so much as a bucket full. The same day, five of our men went on Land, but two of them came backe againe, the other three went forward about two miles into the

Land, and there found a River of sweet water, where also they found great store of Wood that had beene driven thither, and there they found the footsteps of Harts and Hinds, as they thought, for they were cloven footed, some greater footed then others, which made them judge them to be so. *River of fresh water, and Wood.*

The eight, it blew hard East North-east, which was a right contrary wind to doe us any good, touching the carrying away of the Ice, so that we were still faster in the Ice, which put us in no small discomfort. The ninth, it blew North-east, with a little snow, whereby our ship was wholly enclosed with Ice, for the wind drave the Ice hard against it, so that we lay three or foure foot deepe in the Ice, and our Sheck in the after Steven, brake in pieces, and the ship began to be somewhat loose before, but yet it was not much hurt. In the night time, two Beares came close to our ship side, but we sounded our Trumpet, and shot at them, but hit them not, because it was darke, and they ranne away. The tenth, the weather was somewhat better, because the wind blew not so hard, and yet all one wind.

The eleventh, it was calme weather, and eight of us went on Land, every man armed, to see if that were true as our other three companions had said, that there lay Wood about the River, for that seeing we had so long woond and turned about, sometime in the Ice, and then againe got out, and thereby were compelled to alter our course, and at last saw that we could not get out of the Ice, but rather became faster, and could not loose our ship, as at other times we had done, as also that it began to be Winter, we tooke counsell together what we were best to doe, according to the time, that we might winter there, and attend such adventure as God would send us: and after we had debated upon the matter (to keepe and defend our selves both from the cold, and wilde beasts) we determined to build a house upon the Land, to keepe us therein as well as wee could, and so to commit our selves unto the tuition of God, and to that end we went further

Ship fastned in Ice.

They determine to winter there.

into the Land, to find out the convenientest place in our opinions, to raise our house upon, and yet we had not much stuffe to make it withall, in regard that there grew no trees, nor any other thing in that Countrey convenient to build it withall: but wee leaving no occasion unsought, as our men went abroad to view the Countrey, and to see what good fortune might happen unto us, at last we found an unexpected comfort in our need, which was, that we found certaine trees roots and all, (as our three companions had said before) which had beene driven upon the shoare, either from Tartaria, Muscovia, or else where; for there was none growing upon that Land, wherewith (as if God had purposely sent them unto us) we were much comforted, being in good hope that God would shew us some further favour; for that Wood served us not onely to build our house, but also to burne, and serve us all the Winter long, otherwise without all doubt, we had died there miserably with extreme cold.

How God in our extremest need, when we were forced to lie all the Winter upon the Land, sent us Wood to make us a house, and to serve us to burne in the cold Winter.

The twelfth, it was calme weather, and then our men went unto the other side of the Land, to see if they could find any Wood neerer unto us, but there was none. The thirteenth, it was calme but very misty weather, so that we could doe nothing, because it was dangerous for us to goe into the Land, in regard that we could not see the wilde Beares, and yet they could smell us, for they smell better then they see. The fourteenth it was cleare Sun-shine weather, but very cold, and then we went into the Land, and layed the Wood in heapes one upon the other, that it might not bee covered over with the Snow, and from thence meant to carrie it to the place where we intended to build our house.

Three Beares.

The fifteenth in the morning, as one of our men held watch, we saw three Beares, whereof the one lay still behind a piece of Ice, the other two came close to the ship; which wee perceiving, made our Peeces ready to shoot at them, at which time there stood a Tub full of Beefe upon the Ice, which lay in the water to be seasoned, for that close by the ship there was no water: one of the

Beares went unto it, and put in his head to take out a piece of the Beefe, but she fared therewith as the Dog did with the Pudding, for as she was snatching at the Beefe, shee was shot into the head, wherewith shee fell downe dead, and never stirred: the other Beare stood still, and looked upon her fellow, and when shee had stood a good while, shee smelt her fellow, and perceiving that she was [III.iii.491.] dead, shee ran away, but wee tooke Halberts and other Armes with us, and followed her, and at last she came againe towards us, and we prepared our selves to withstand her, wherewith she rose up upon her hinder feet, thinking to rampe at us, but while shee reared her selfe up, one of our men shot her into the bellie, and with that she fell upon her forefeet againe, and roaring as loud as she could, ran away. Then we tooke the dead Beare, and ript her bellie open; and taking out her guts, we set her upon her fore-feet, that so she might freeze as shee stood, intending to carrie her with us into Holland, if wee might get our ship loose, and when we had set the Beare upon her foure feet, we began to make a Sled, thereon to draw the Wood to the place where we went to build our house, at that time it froze two fingers thicke in the salt water, and it was exceeding cold, the wind blowing North-east.

It freezeth in the salt water two fingers thicke in a night.

The sixteenth, the Sunne shone, but towards the evening it was misty, the wind being Easterly, at which time we went to fetch Wood with our Sleds, and then wee drew foure beames above a mile upon the Ice and the Snow, that night againe it froze above two fingers thicke. The seventeenth, thirteene of us went where the Wood lay with our Sleds, and so drew five and five in a Sled, and the other three helped to lift the Wood behind, to make us draw the better, and with more ease, and in that manner we drew Wood twice a day, and laid it on a heape by the place where we meant to build our house.

The three and twentieth, wee fetcht more Wood to

build our house, which wee did twice a day, but it grew to be misty and still weather againe, the wind blowing East, and East and North-east, that day our Carpenter being of Purmeceat died, as wee came aboord about evening. The foure and twentieth, we buried him under the sedges, in the clift of a hill, hard by the water, for we could not dig up the earth, by reason of the great frost and cold, and that day wee went twice with our Sleds to fetch Wood.

House builded. The five and twentieth, it was darke wether, the wind blowing West, & West South-west, and South-west, and the Ice began somwhat to open, and drive away; but it continued not long, for that having driven about the length of the shot of a great Peece, it lay three fathoms deepe upon the ground: and where we lay the Ice drave not, for we lay in the middle of the Ice; but if we had layne in the mayne Sea, we would have hoysed sayle, although it was then late in the yeere. The same day we raysed up the principles of our house, and began to worke hard thereon, but if the ship had beene loose, we would have left our building, and have made our after Steven of our ship, that we might have beene ready to sayle away if it had beene possible.

The sixe and twentieth, wee had a West wind and an open Sea, but our ship lay fast, wherewith we were not a little grieved, but it was Gods will, which we most patiently bare, and wee began to make up our house, part of our men fetched Wood to burne, the rest played the Carpenters: and were busie about the house, as then we were sixteene men in all, for our Carpenter was dead, and of our sixteene men there was still one or other sicke. The seven and twentieth, it blew hard North-east, and it froze so hard, that as we put a nayle into our mouthes (as when men worke Carpenters worke they use to doe) there would Ice hang thereon when we tooke it out againe, and make the bloud follow: the same day there came an old

Hard and violent frost.

Beare and a young one towards us, as we were going to our house, being all together (for we durst not goe alone) which we thought to shoot at, but she ran away, at which time the Ice came forcibly driving in, and it was faire Sun-shine weather, but so extreme cold, that we could hardly worke, but extremity forced us thereunto.

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather, and the Sunne shone, the Wind being West and very calme, the Sea as then being open, but our ship lay fast in the Ice and stirred not; the same day there came a Beare to the ship, but when she espyed us, she ranne away, and we made as much haste as wee could to build our House. The nine and twentieth in the morning, the Wind was West, and after-noone it blew Northerly, and then wee saw three Beares betweene us and the House, an old one and two young; but we notwithstanding drew our goods from the ship to the House, and so got before the Beares, and yet they followed us: nevertheless, we would not shun the way for them, but hollowed out as loud as we could, thinking that they wold have gone away, but they would not once goe out of their foot-path, but got before us, wherewith we and they that were at the house, made a great noyse, which made the Beares run away, and we were not a little glad thereof. The thirtieth the Wind was East, and East South-east, and all that night and the next day it snowed so fast, that our men could fetch no Wood, it lay so close and high one upon the other: then wee made a great fire without the House, therewith to thaw the ground, that so we might lay it about the House, that it might bee the closer; but it was all lost labour, for the Earth was so hard, and frozen so deepe into the ground, that wee could not thaw it, and it would have cost us too much Wood, and therefore wee were forced to leave off that labour.

Ground not to be thawed.

[III.iii.492.]

§. II.

Their cold, comfortlesse, darke and dreadfull Winter: the Sunnes absence, Moones light, Sunnes unexpected returne with miraculous speed. Of Beares, Foxes, and many many Wonders.

THe first of October, the Wind blew stiffe North-east, and after-noone it blew North, with a great storme and drift of Snow, whereby wee could hardly goe in the Wind, and a man could hardly draw his breath, the Snow drave so hard in our faces, at which time we could not see two ships length from us. The second before nooñe, the Sunne shone, and after noone it was cloudie againe, and it snew, but the weather was still, the Wind being North, and then South, and wee set up our House, and upon it wee placed a May-pole made of frozen Snow.

May-pole of Snow.

The third before noone, it was calme Sun-shine weather, but so cold, that it was hard to bee indured, and after-noone it blew hard out of the West, with so great extreme cold, that if it had continued, we should have beene forced to leave our worke. The fourth, the Wind was West, and after-noone North, with great store of Snow, whereby we could not worke: at that time we brought our Anchor upon the Ice to lye the faster, when wee lay but an Arrow shot from the Water, the Ice was so much driven away.

The fifth, it blew hard North-west, and the Sea was very open and without Ice, as farre as we could discerne, but we lay still frozen as we did before, and our ship lay two or three foot deepe in the Ice, and wee could not perceive otherwise, but that wee lay fast upon the ground, and then it was three fathome and a halfe deepe. The same day we brake up the lower deck of the fore-part of our ship, and with those Deales we covered

our Houses, and made it slope over head, that the Water might runne off, at which time it was very cold. The sixth, it blew hard West South-west, but towards Eevening, West North-west, with a great Snow, that wee could hardly thrust our heads out of the doore, by reason of the great cold. The seventh, it was indifferent good weather, but yet very cold, and wee calk't our House, and brake the ground about it at the foot thereof: that day the Wind went round about the Compasse.

Extreme Snow.

The eight, all the night before it blew so hard, and the same day also, and snowed so fast, that we should have smothered, if we had gone out into the Ayre; and to speake truth, it had not beene possible for any man to have gone one ships length, though his life had layen thereon: for it was not possible for us to goe out of the House or ship. The ninth, the Wind still continued North, and blew, and snowed hard, all that day the Wind as then blowing from the Land, so that all that day we were forced to stay in the ship, the weather was so foule.

Hence it may seeme, that the course of the Tides and Sea is from the North.

The tenth, the weather was somewhat fairer, and the Wind calmer, and blew South-west, and West, and South-west, and that time the Water flowed two foote higher then ordinary, which we ghest to proceede from the first North-wind, which as then had blowne. The same day the weather began to be somewhat better, so that we began to go out of our ship againe: and as one of our men went out, he chanced to meet a Beare, and was almost at him before hee knew it, but presently he ranne backe againe towards the ship, and the Beare after him; but the Beare comming to the place where before we had killed another Beare, and set her upright, and there let her freeze (which was covered over with Ice, and yet one of her pawes reached about it) shee stood still, whereby our man got before her, and climbed up into the ship, in great feare, crying, A Beare, a Beare; which we hearing, came above Hatches to looke on her, and to shoot at her, but we could not see her, by meanes

of the exceeding great smoke, that had so sore tormented us (while we lay under Hatches) in the foule weather which we would not have indured for any money, but by reason of the cold and snowie weather, wee were constrayned to doe it, if wee would save our lives, for aloft in the ship we must undoubtedly have died; the Beare stayed not long there, but ranne away, the Wind then being North-east. The same day about Eevening, it was faire weather, and we went out of our ship to the House, and carried the greatest part of our Bread thither.

The eleventh, it was calme weather, the Wind being South, and somewhat warme, and then we carried our Wine and other Victuals on Land: and as we were hoysing the Wine over-boord, there came a Beare towards our ship, that had layen behind a piece of Ice, and it seemed that we had waked her with the noyse we made: for wee had seene her lye there, but wee thought her to be a piece of Ice; but as she came neere us, we shot at her, and she ranne away, so we proceeded in our worke. The twelfth, it blew North, and somewhat Westerly, and then halfe of our men kept in the House, and that was the first time that we lay in it, but wee indured great cold, because our Cabins were not made; and besides that wee had not Clothes enough, and we could keepe no fire because our Chimney was not made, whereby it smoked exceedingly.

The thirteenth, the Wind was North and North-west,
[III.iii.493.] and it began againe to blow hard, and then three of us went aboord the ship, and laded a Sled with Beere, but when wee had laden it, thinking to goe to our House with it, suddenly there rose such a Wind, and so great a storme and cold, that wee were forced to goe into the ship againe, because wee were not able to stay without, and wee could not get the Beere into the ship againe, but were forced to let it stand without upon the Sled: being in the ship, wee indured extreame cold, because wee had but a few clothes in it.

The fourteenth, as wee came out of the ship, wee found the Barrell of Beere standing upon the Sled, but it was fast frozen at the heads, yet by reason of the great cold, the Beere that purged out, froze as hard upon the side of the Barrell as if it had bene glued thereon, and in that sort wee drew it to our House, and set the Barrell an end, and dranke it first up, but wee were forced to melt the Beere, for there was scant any unfrozen Beere in the Barrell, but in that thicke Yeast that was unfrozen lay the strength of the Beere, so that it was too strong to drinke alone, and that which was frozen tasted like water, and being melted we mixt one with the other, and so dranke it, but it had neither strength nor taste. *Beere melted.*

The fifteenth, the Wind blew North and East, and East South-east, that day we made place to set up our doore, and shoveled the Snow away. The eighteenth, the Wind blew hard East South-east, and then we fetched our Bread out of the Scute which wee had drawne up upon the Land, and the Wine also which as then was not much frozen, and yet it had layne sixe Weekes therein, and not withstanding that it had oftentimes frozen very hard. The same day wee saw another Beare, and then the Sea was so covered over with Ice, that wee could see no open water. *Sea covered with Ice.*

The nineteenth, the Wind blew North-east, and then there was but two men and a Boy in the ship, at which time there came a Beare that fought forcibly to get into the ship, although the two men shot at her with pieces of Wood, and yet she ventured upon them, whereby they were in an extreame feare, each of them seeking to save themselves, the two men leapt into the Ballast, and the Boy climbed into the foot Mast top, to save their lives, meane time, some of our men shot at her with a Musket, and then shee ranne away. The twentieth, it was calme Sunne-shine weather, and then againe wee saw the Sea open, at which time wee went on boord to fetch the rest of our Beere out of the *Beare assaults the ship.*

A.D. 1596.

Barrels and Iron hoopes broken with Ice.

ship, where wee found some of the Barrels frozen in pieces, and the Iron hoopes that were upon the Josam Barrels were also frozen in pieces.

The two and twentieth, the Winde blew coldly, and very stiffe North-east, with so great a Snow, that wee could not get out of our doores. The three and twentieth, it was calme weather, and the Winde blew North-east, then wee went aboord our ship, to see if the rest of our men would come home to the House; but wee feared that it would blow hard againe, and therefore durst not stirre with the sicke man, but let him lye still that day, for hee was very weake.

All come to the House.

The foure and twentieth, the rest of our men beeing eight persons, came to the House, and drew the sicke man upon a Sled, and then with great labour and paine, wee drew our Boat home to our House, and turned the bottome thereof upwards; that when time served us (if God saved our lives in the Winter time) wee might use it: and after that, perceiving that the ship lay fast, and that there was nothing lesse to be expected then the opening of the water, wee put our Anchor into the ship againe, because it should not be covered over and lost in the Snow, that in the Spring time wee might use it: for we alwayes trusted in God that hee would deliver us from thence towards Summer time, eyther one way or other. The Sunne, when we might see it best and highest, began to be very low, and we used all the speed we could to fetch all things with Sleds out of our ship into our House, not onely meate and drinke, but all other necessaries, at which time the Wind was North.

The five and twentieth, wee fetcht all things that were necessary for the furnishing of our Scute and our Boate: and when we had laden the last Sled, and stood readie to draw it to the House, our Master looked about him and saw three Beares behind the ship that were comming towards us, whereupon hee cryed out aloud to feare them away, and wee presently leaped

forth to defend our selves as well as we could: and, as good fortune was, there lay two Halberds upon the Sled, whereof the Master tooke one, and I the other, and made resistance against them as well as we could; but the rest of our men ranne to save themselves in the ship, and as they ranne, one of them fell into a Clift of Ice, which grieved us much: for we thought verily that the Beares would have ranne unto him, to devoure him, but God defended him: for the Beares still made towardes the ship after the men that ranne thither to save themselves. Meane time, wee and the man that fell into the Clift of Ice, tooke our advantage, and got into the ship on the other side, which the Beares perceiving, they came fiercely towards us, that had no other Armes to defend us withall, but onely the two Halberds, which wee doubting would not bee sufficient, wee still gave them worke to doe by throwing Billets and other things at them, and every time we threw, they ranne after them as a Dogge useth to doe at a Stone that is cast at him. Meane time, wee sent a man downe under Hatches to strike Fire, and another to fetch Pikes, but wee could get no Fire, and so wee had no meanes to shoote: at the last, as the Beares came fiercely upon us, wee strooke one of them with a Halberd upon the Snowt, wherewith shee gave backe, when shee felt her selfe hurt, and went away, which the other two that were not so great as shee, perceiving, ranne away: and wee thanked God that wee were so well delivered from them, and so drew our Sled quietly to our House, and there shewed our men what had happened unto us.

Fight with Beares.

[III.iii.494.]

The sixe and twentieth, the Wind was North, and North North-west, with indifferent faire weather: then wee saw open Water hard by the Land, but wee perceived the Ice to drive in the Sea, still towards the ship. The seven and twentieth, the Wind blew North-east, and it snowed so fast, that wee could not worke without the doore. That day our men killed a White

White Foxe. Foxe, which they flead: and after they had rosted it, ate thereof, which tasted like Conies flesh: the same day we set up our Dyall, and made the Clocke strike, and wee hung up a Lampe to burne in the night time, wherein we used the fat of the Beare which wee melt, and burnt in the Lampe.

Beares fat for Lampe.

The nine and twentieth, the Wind still blew North-east, and then wee fetched Segges from the Sea-side, and layd them upon the Sayle that was spread upon our House, that it might bee so much the closer and warmer: for the Deales were not driven close together, and the foule weather would not permit us to doe it. The thirtieth, the Winde yet continued North-east, and the Sunne was full above the Earth, a little above the Horizon. The one and thirtieth, the Winde still blew North-east, with great store of Snow, whereby wee durst not looke out of doores.

November. The first of November, the Wind still continued

Sun & Moone. North-east, and then wee saw the Moone rise in the East when it beganne to bee darke, and the Sunne was no higher above the Horizon then we could well see it, and yet that day we saw it not, because of the close weather, and the great Snow that fell, and it was extreame cold, so that we could not goe out of the House.

The second, the Wind blew West, and somewhat South, but in the Eevening it blew North, with calme weather, and that day we saw the Sunne rise South South-east, and it went downe South South-west, but it was not full above the Earth, but passed in the Horizon along by the Earth: and the same day one of our men killed a Fox with a Hatchet, which was flayed, roasted and eaten. Before the Sunne began to decline, wee saw no Foxes, and then the Beares used to goe from us.

Sun riseth South South-east, and goeth downe South South-west, not full above the Earth.

Foxes succeed Beares.

The third, the Wind blew North-west with calme weather, and the Sunne rose South and by East, and somewhat more Southerly, and went downe South and by West, and somewhat more Southerly; and then we

could see nothing but the upper part of the Sunne above the Horizon, and yet the Land where wee were, was as high as the Mast of our ship, then wee tooke the height of the Sunne, it being in the eleventh degree, and fortie eight minutes of Scorpio, his Declination being fifteene degrees and twentie foure minutes, on the South-side of the Equinoctiall Line.

They see the Sun no more after the third of November, Stilo novo, or our Octob. 24.

The fourth, it was calme weather, but then wee saw the Sunne no more, for it was no longer above the Horizon, then our Chirurgion made a Bath (to bathe us in) of a Wine-pipe, wherein wee entred one after the other, and it did us much good, and was a great meanes of our health. The same day wee tooke a White Foxe, that oftentimes came abroad, not as they used at other times: for that when the Beares left us at the setting of the Sunne, and came not againe before it rose, the Foxe to the contrarie came abroad when they were gone.

Moone continually seene in the Sunnes absence.

The fifth, the Winde was North, and somewhat West, and then wee saw open water upon the Sea, but our shippe lay still fast in the Ice, and when the Sunne had left us, wee saw the Moone continuall both day and night, and never went downe when it was in the highest degree. The sixt, the Winde was North-west, still weather, and then our men fetcht a Sled full of Fire-wood, but by reason that the Sunne was not seene, it was very darke weather.

Darknesse.

The seventh, it was darke weather, and very still, the Winde West, at which time wee could hardly discerne the Day from the Night, specially because at that time our Clocke stood still, and by that meanes wee knew not when it was day, although it was day, and our men rose not out of their Cabins all that day; but onely to make water, and therefore they knew not whether the light they saw, was the light of the day or of the Moone; whereupon, they were of severall opinions, some saying, it was the light of the day, the others of the night: but as wee tooke good regard thereunto,

wee found it to bee the light of the day about twelve of the clocke at noone.

The eight, it was still weather, the Winde blowing South, and South-west. The same day our men fetcht another Sled of Fire-wood, and then also wee tooke a White Foxe, and saw open water in the Sea. The same day wee shared our Bread amongst us, each man having foure pound and tenne ounces, for his allowance in eight dayes, so that then we were eight dayes eating a Barrell of Bread, whereas before wee ate it up in five or six dayes: we had no need to share our flesh and fish, for we had more store thereof; but our drinke failed us, and therefore we were forced to share that also: but our best Beere was for the most part wholy without any strength, so that it had no savour at all: and besides all this, there was a great deale of it spilt. The ninth, the Wind blew North-east, and somewhat more Northerly, and then we had not much day light, but it was altogether darke. The tenth, it was calme weather, the Wind North-west, and then our men went into the ship to see how it lay, and wee saw that there was a great deale of water in it, so that the ballast was covered over with water, but that it was frozen, and so might not bee pumpt out. The eleventh, it was indifferent weather, the Wind North-west. The same day we made a round thing of Cable yarne, and like to a Net, to catch Foxes withall, that wee might get them into the House, and it was made like a Trap, which fell upon the Foxes as they came under it, and that day we caught one.

Bread shared and Beere.

[III.iii.495.]

Beere strength lesse with frost.

Ship ballast covered with water.

Fox-trap.

Wine shared.

Drinke water.

The twelfth, the Wind blew East, with a little light: that day wee began to share our Wine, every man had two Glasses a day, but commonly our Drinke was water, which we melted out of Snow, which we gathered without the House. The thirteenth, it was foule weather, with great Snow, the Wind East. The fourteenth, it was faire cleere weather, with a cleere Skie full of Starres, and an East-wind. The fifteenth, it was darke weather, the Wind North-east, with a vading light. The sixteenth,

it was weather with a temperate Ayre, and an East-wind. The seventeenth, it was darke weather, and a close Ayre, the Wind East. The eighteenth it was foule weather, the wind South-east: then the Master cut up a packe of course Clothes, and divided it amongst our men that needed it, therewith to defend us better from the cold. The nineteenth, it was foule weather, with an East-wind, and then the Chist with Linnen was opened, and divided amongst the men for shift, for they had need of them, for then our onely care was to find all the meanes we could to defend our bodie from the cold. The twentieth, it was faire still weather, the Wind Easterly, then wee washt our sheets, but it was so cold, that when wee had washt and wrung them, they presently froze so stiffe, that although wee layed them by a great fire, the side that lay next the fire thawed, but the other side was hard frozen, so that wee should sooner have torne them in sunder then have opened them, whereby wee were forced to put them into the seething water againe to thaw them, it was so exceeding cold. The one and twentieth, it was indifferent weather with a North-east wind, then we agreed that every man should take his turne to cleave Wood, thereby to ease our Cooke, that had more then worke enough to doe twice a day to dresse meate, and to melt Snow for our Drinke, but our Master and the Pilot were exempted from that Worke. *Ill washing.*

The two and twentieth, the Wind was South-east, it was faire weather, then wee had but seventeene Cheeses, whereof one we ate amongst us, and the rest were divided to every man one for his portion, which they might eate when he list. The three and twentieth, it was indifferent good weather, the Wind South-east, and as we perceived that the Fox used to come oftner, and more then they were wont, to take them the better, wee made certaine Trappes of thicke Planckes, whereon wee laid stones, and round about them placed pieces of shards fast in the ground, that they might not digge under them, and so got some of the Foxes. The foure and twentieth, it was foule

weather, and the Wind North-east, and then wee prepared our selves to goe into the Bath, for some of us were not very well at ease, and so foure of us went into it, and when we came out, our Surgeon gave us a Purgation, which did us much good, and that day we tooke foure Foxes. The five and twentieth, it was faire cleere weather, the Wind West; and that day we tooke two Foxes with Springs that we had purposely set up.

Bathing and purging.

The six and twentieth, it was foule weather, and a great storme with a South-west Wind, and great store of Snow, whereby wee were so closed up in the House, that wee could not goe out, but were forced to ease our selves within the House. The seven and twentieth, it was faire cleere weather, the Wind South-west, and then we made more Springes to get Foxes, for it stood us upon to doe it, because they served us for meate, as if God had sent them purposely for us, for we had not much meate. The eight and twentieth of November, it was foule stormie weather, and the Winde blew hard out of the North, and it snew hard, whereby wee were shut up againe in our House, the Snow lay so closed before the doores.

The nine and twentieth, it was faire cleere weather, and a good Ayre: the Wind Northerly, and we found meanes to open our doore by shoveling away the Snow, whereby wee got one of our doores open, and going out, wee found all our Traps and Springes cleane covered over with Snow, which wee made cleane, and set them up againe to take Foxes: and that day wee tooke one, which as then served us not onely for meate, but of the skinnes wee made Caps to weare upon our heads, wherewith to keepe them warme from the extreame cold. The thirtieth, it was faire cleere weather, the Wind West, and six of us went to the ship, all well provided of Armes to see how it lay: and when wee went under the fore Decke, wee tooke a Foxe alive in the ship.

Store of Snow.

Fox-skin-caps.

December. The first of December, it was foule weather with a

South-west Wind, and great store of Snow, whereby we were once againe stopt up in the House, and by that meanes there was so great a smoake in the House, that [III.iii.496.] we could hardly make fire, and so were forced to lye all day in our Cabins, but the Cooke was forced to make fire to dresse our meate. The second, it was still foule weather, whereby wee were forced to keepe still in the House, and yet wee could hardly sit by the fire, because of the smoake, and therefore stayed still in our Cabins, and then we heated stones, which we put in our Cabins to warme our feet, for that both the cold and the smoake were unsupportable.

Lye still in Cabins.

Stones heated to heat them. Cold and Smoake.

The third, we had the like weather, at which time as we lay in our Cabins, wee might heare the Ice cracke in the Sea, and yet it was at the least halfe a mile from us, which made a huge noyse, and we were of opinion, that as then the great Hils of Ice which wee had seene in the Sea, in Summer time, brake one from the other, and for that during those two or three dayes, because of the extreame smoake, we made not so much fire as we commonly used to doe, it froze so sore within the House, that the Wals and the Roofe thereof were frozen two fingers thick with Ice, and also in our Cabins where we lay all those three dayes, while wee could not goe out: by reason of the foule weather, we set up the Glasse of twelve houres, and when it was runne out, wee set it up againe, still watching it lest wee should misse our time. For the cold was so great, that our Clocke was frozen, and might not goe, although we hung more waight on it then before.

Ice cracking noyse.

Ice in the House.

Clock frozen.

The fourth, it was faire cleere weather, the Wind North-east, and then we began every man by turne to digge open our doores that were closed up with Snow, for we saw that it would be often to doe, and therefore we agreed to worke by turnes, no man excepted but the Master and the Pilot. The fifth, it was faire weather with an East-wind, and then we made our Springes cleane againe to take Foxes. The sixt, it was foule weather

Doore digged open.

againe, with an Easterly Wind, and extreame cold, almost not to bee indured, whereupon wee lookt pittifully one upon the other, being in great feare, that if the extreamitie of the cold grew to bee more and more, wee should all dye there with cold, for that what fire soever we made, it would not warme us, yea, and our Sacke which is so hot, was frozen very hard, so that when wee were every man to have his part, we were forced to melt it in the fire, which wee shared every second day about halfe a pint for a man, wherewith we were forced to sustayne our selves, and at other times wee dranke water, which agreed not well with the cold, and we needed not to coole it with Snow or Ice, but we were forced to melt it out of the Snow.

Cold stronger then fire and Sacke.

The seventh, it was still foule weather, and we had a great storme with a North-east Wind, which brought an extreame cold with it, at which time wee knew not what to doe, and while we sate consulting together, what were best for us to doe, one of our companions gave us counsell to burne some of the Sea-coales that we had brought out of the ship, which would cast a great heate and continue long, and so at Eevening we made a great fire thereof, which cast a great heat: at which time wee were very carefull to keepe it in: for that the heate beeing so great a comfort unto us, we tooke care how to make it continue long: whereupon wee agreed to stop up all the doores and the Chimney, thereby to keepe in the heate, and so went into our Cabins to sleepe, well comforted with the heate, and so lay a great while talking together; but at last we were taken with a great swounding and dazeling in our heads, yet some more then other some, which we first perceived by a sicke man, and therefore the lesse able to beare it, and found our selves to be very ill at ease, so that some of us that were strongest, start out of their Cabins, and first opened the Chimney, and then the doores, but he that opened the doore fell downe in a swound upon the Snow, which I hearing, as lying in my Cabin next to the doore, start

Sea-coale fire.

Swounding & stifling by the Cole-vapour and closenesse.

up, and casting Vinegar in his face, recovered him againe, and so he rose up: and when the doores were open, we all recovered our healths againe, by reason of the cold Ayre, and so the cold which before had beene so great an Enemy unto us, was then the onely reliefe that wee had, otherwise without doubt, we had dyed in a sudden swound, after that the Master, when we were come to our selves againe, gave every one of us a little Wine to comfort our hearts. *Benefit of cold.*

The eight, it was foule weather, the winde Northerly, very sharpe and cold, but we durst lay no more coales on, as wee did the day before, for that our misfortune had taught us, that to shunne one danger we should not runne into another. The ninth, it was faire cleare weather, the skie full of Starres, then we set our doore wide open, which before was fast closed up with Snow, and made our Springes ready to take Foxes. The tenth, it was still faire Star-light weather, the winde North-east: then wee tooke two Foxes, which were good meate for us, for as then our victuals began to bee scant, and the cold still increased, whereunto their Skinnes served us for a good defence. The eleventh, it was faire weather, and a cleere ayre but very cold, which hee that felt not would not beleeve, for our Shooes froze as hard as hornes upon our feete, and within they were white frozen, so that we could not weare our shooes, but were forced to make great Pattents, the upper part being Sheepe-skinnes, which we put on over three or foure payre of Sockes, and so went in them to keepe our feet warme. *Shooes on feet frozen within. They weare no shooes.*

The twelfth, it was faire cleere weather with a North-west winde, but extreame cold, so that our House walls and Cabbins were frozen a finger thicke; yea, and the Cloathes upon our backes were white over with Frost, and although some of us were of opinion, that wee should lay more coles upon the fire to warme us, and that we should let the chimney stand open, yet we durst not doe it, fearing the like danger we had escaped. The thirteenth, it was faire cleere weather, with an East winde: then we *Clothes on their backes frozen.* [III.iii.497.]

85488

tooke another Foxe, and tooke great paines about preparing and dressing of our Springes, with no small trouble, for that if wee stayed too long without the doores, there arose blisters upon our Faces and our Eares. The fourteenth, it was faire weather, the winde North-east, and the skie full of starres, then we tooke the height of the right shoulder of the Rens, when it was South South-west, and somewhat more Westerly (and then it was at the highest in our Compasse) and it was elevated above the Horizon 20. degrees and 28. minutes, his Declination being 6. degrees and 18. minutes, on the North-side of the line, which Declination being taken out of the height aforesayd, there rested 14. degrees, which being taken out of 90. degrees, then the height of the Pole was 76. degrees.

Cold blisters.

The fifteenth, it was still faire weather, the winde East: that day wee tooke two Foxes, and saw the Moone rise East South-east, when it was sixe and twentie dayes old, in the signe of Scorpio. The sixteenth, it was faire cleere weather, the winde East: at that time wee had no more Wood in the house, but had burnt it all: but round about our house there lay some covered over with Snow, which with great paine and labour we were forced to digge out, and so shovell away the Snow, and so brought it into the house, which wee did by turnes, two and two together, wherein we were forced to use great speed, for wee could not long endure without the House, because of the extreame cold, although we wore the Foxes skinnes about our heads, and double apparell upon our backes.

Extreame and terrible freezing.

The seventeenth, the winde still held North-east, with faire weather and so great Frosts, that wee were of opinion, that if there stood a Barrell full of water without the doore, it would in one night freeze from the top to the bottome. The eighteenth, the winde still held North-east, with faire weather: then seven of us went out unto the Ship to see how it lay, and being under the decke, thinking to finde a Foxe there, we sought all the holes but we found none; but when we entred

into the Cabbin and had stricken fire to see in what case the ship was, and whether the water rose higher in it, there wee found a Foxe, which we tooke and carryed it home, and eate it, and then we found that in eighteene dayes absence (for it was so long since we had beene there) the water was risen about a finger high, but yet it was all Ice, for it froze as fast as it came in, and the vessels which wee had brought with us full of fresh water out of Holland, were frozen to the ground.

The nineteenth, it was faire weather, the winde being South: then we put each other in good comfort, that the Sunne was then almost halfe over, and ready to come to us againe, which wee sore longed for, it being a weary time for us to bee without the Sunne, and to want the greatest comfort that God sendeth unto man heere upon the earth, and that which rejoyceth every living thing. *Sunnes comfort.*

The twentieth, before noone it was faire cleere weather, and then we had taken a Foxe, but towards Eevening, there rose such a storme in the South-west, with so great a snow, that all the house was inclosed therewith. The one and twentieth, it was faire cleere weather, with a North-east winde, then we made our doore cleane againe, and made a way to goe out, and clensed our Traps for the Foxes, which did us great pleasure when we tooke them, for they seemed as daintie as Venison unto us. *House inclosed with snow.*

The two and twentieth, it was foule weather, with great store of snow, the winde South-west, which stopt up our doore againe, and wee were forced to digge it open againe, which was almost every day to doe. The three and twentieth, it was foule weather, the wind South-west, with great store of snow, but wee were in good comfort that the Sunne would come againe to us, for as we ghest, that day hee was in Tropicus Capricorni, which is the furthest Signe that the Sunne passeth on the South-side of the line, and from thence it turneth Northward againe. The foure and twentieth, being Christmasse Eeven, it was faire weather, then wee opened our doore againe, and saw much *Sun in Tropicus Capricorni. 24. Decemb. Stilo novo.*

open water in the Sea: for we had heard the Ice cracke and drive: although it was not day, yet we could see so farre. Towards Eevening it blew hard out of the North-east, with great store of Snow, so that all the passage that wee had made open before, was stopt up againe. The five and twentieth, being Christmasse day, it was foule weather, with a North-west winde, and yet though it was foule weather, we heard the Foxes runne over our House, wherewith some of our men sayd, it was an ill signe; and while we sate disputing why it should bee an ill signe, some of our men made answer, that it was an ill signe because wee could not take them, to put them into the Pot or roast them, for that had beene a very good signe for us.

Cold Christmasse.

Ill signe indeed.

The sixe and twentieth, it was foule weather, the winde North-west, and it was so cold that we could not warme us, although wee used all the meanes we could with great fires, good store of cloathes, and with hot stones and billets, layd upon our feete and upon our bodies, as we lay in our Cabbins; but notwithstanding all this, in the morning our Cabbins were frozen, which made us behold one the other with sad countenance, but yet wee comforted our selves againe as well as we could, that the Sunne was then as low as it could goe, and that it now began to come to us againe, and we found it to bee true: for that the Dayes beginning to lengthen, the Cold began to strengthen, but hope put us in good comfort, and eased our paine. The seven and twentieth, it was still foule weather, with a North-west wind, so that as then wee had not beene out in three dayes together, nor durst not thrust our heads out of doores, and within the house it was so extreame cold, that as we sate before a great Fire, and seemed to burne on the fore-side, we froze behind at our backes, and were all white as the Countrey-men use to bee, when they come in at the gates of the Towne in Holland with their Sleds, and have gone all night.

Cold invincible.

[III.iii.498.]

Burne before, freeze behind.

The eight and twentieth, it was still foule weather with

a West wind, but about Eevening it began to cleere up, at which time one of our men made a hole open at one of our doores, and went out to see what newes abroad, but found it so hard weather that hee stayed not long, and told us that it had snowed so much, that the Snow lay higher then our house, and that if he had stayed out longer, his eares would undoubtedly have beene frozen off. The nine and twentieth, it was calme weather, and a pleasant ayre, the wind being Southward: that day, he, whose turne it was, opened the doore, and digged a hole through the Snow, where we went out of the house upon steps, as if it had beene out of a Celler, at least seven or eight steps high, each step a foote from the other, and then we made cleane our Springes for the Foxes, whereof for certaine dayes we had not taken any: and as we made them cleane, one of our men found a dead Foxe in one of them, that was frozen as hard as a stone, which he brought into the house, and thawed it before the fire, and after flaying it, some of our men eate it. The thirtieth, it was foule weather againe, with a storme out of the West, and great store of Snow, so that all the labour and paine that we had taken the day before to make steps to goe out of our house, and to clense our Springes, was all in vaine, for it was all covered over with Snow againe, higher then it was before. The one and thirtieth, it was still foule weather, with a storme out of the North-west, whereby we were so fast shut up into the house, as if wee had beene prisoners, and it was so extreame cold, that the fire almost cast no heate: for as we put our feet to the fire, we burnt our hose before we could feele the heate, so that we had worke enough to doe to patch our hose: and which is more, if we had not sooner smelt, then felt them, we should have burnt them ere we had knowne it.

Snow higher then the house.

Snow-steps.

Fire conquered, heat smelt before felt.

After that with great cold, danger, and disease, wee had brought this yeere unto an end, we entred into the yeere of our Lord God 1597. the beginning whereof, was in the same manner as the end of Anno 1596. had beene, for the weather continued as cold, foule, and Snowie, as it

An. Dom. 1597.

January. was before, so that upon the first of January wee were inclosed in the House, the winde then being West: at the same time wee agreed to share our Wine every man a small measure full, and that but once in two dayes: and as we were in great care and feare that it would bee long before we should get out from thence, (and we having but small hope therein) some of us spared to drinke wine as long as we could, that if we should stay long there, we might drinke it at our need. The second, it blew hard with a West wind, and a great storme with both Snow and Frost, so that in foure or five dayes, we durst not put our heads out of the doores, and as then by reason of the great cold, we had almost burnt all our Wood; notwithstanding, we durst not goe out to fetch more wood, because it froze so hard, and there was no being without the doore, but seeking about we found some peeces of wood that lay over the doore, which we clove, and withall clove the blockes whereon we used to beate our Stockfish, and so holpe our selves so well as we could. The third, it was all one weather, and we had little wood to burne. The fourth, it was still foule stormie weather, with much Snow and great cold, the winde South-west, and we were forced to keepe in the house: and to know where the wind blew, we thrust a halfe-pike out at the *Vane.* Chimney with a little cloath or feather upon it, but as soone as wee thrust it out, it was presently frozen as hard as a peece of wood, and could not goe about nor stirre with the wind.

The fifth, it was somewhat still and calme weather: then wee digged our doore open againe, that we might goe out, and carrie out all the filth that had beene made, during the time of our being shut in the house; and made every thing handsome, and fetched in Wood which we cleft, and it was all our dayes worke to further ourselves as much as we could, fearing least we should be shut up againe: and as there were three doores in our portall, and for that our house lay covered over in Snow, wee tooke the middle doore thereof away, and digged

a great hole in the snow, that lay without the house, like to a side of a vault, wherein we might goe to ease our selves, and cast other filth into it: and when we had taken paines all day, we remembred our selves that it was Twelfth Eeven, and then we prayed our Master that we might be merrie that night, and sayd, that we were content to spend some of the Wine that night which we had spared, and which was our share every second day, and whereof for certayne dayes wee had not drunke, and so that night we made merrie, and drunke to the three Kings, and therewith we had two pound of Meale, whereof wee made pan-cakes with Oyle, and every man a white Bisket, which we sopt in Wine, and so supposing that we were in our owne Countrey, and amongst our friends, it comforted us as well as if we had made a great banquet in our owne house: and we also made tickets, and our Gunner was King of Nova Zembla, which is at least two hundred miles long, and lyeth betweene two Seas.

Three Kings of Cullen.

King of Nova Zembla.

The sixt, it was faire weather, the wind North-east, then wee went out and cleansed our Traps to take Foxes, which were our Venison, and we digged a hole in the Snow, where our firewood lay, and left it close above like a vault; and from thence fetched out our Wood as we needed it. The seventh, it was foule weather againe, with a North-west wind, and some Snow, and very cold, which put us in great feare to be shut up in the house againe. The eight, it was faire weather againe, the wind North: then wee made our Springes ready to get more Venison: which wee longed for, and then wee might see and marke day-light, which then began to encrease, that the Sunne as then began to come towards us againe, which put us in no little comfort.

[III.iii.499.]

Day-light espied.

The ninth, it was foule weather, with a North-west wind, but not so hard weather as it had beene before, so that we might goe out of the doore to make cleane our Springes. The tenth, it was faire weather with a North wind: then seven of us went to our ship well armed, which we found in the same state wee left it in, and in it

Beares in the ship. wee saw many footsteps of Beares, both great and small, whereby it seemed that there had beene more then one or two Beares therein; and as we went under hatches, we strooke fire, and lighted a Candle, and found that the water was risen a foot higher in the ship. The eleventh, it was faire weather, the wind North-east, and the cold began to be somewhat lesse, so that as then we were bold to goe out of the doores, and went about a quarter of a mile to a Hill, from thence we fetched certaine stones, which we layd in the fire, therewith to warme us in our Cabins.

The twelfth, it was cleare weather, the wind North-west: that evening it was very cleare, and the skie full of Starres, *Oculus Tauri.* then wee tooke the height of Oculus Tauri, which is a bright and well knowne Starre, and we found it to be elevated above the Horizon 29. degrees and 54. minutes, her declination being 15. degrees 54. minutes on the North side of the Line. This declination being subtracted from the height aforesaid, then there rested 14. degrees, which subtracted from 90. degrees, then the height of the Pole was 76. degrees, and so by measuring the height of that Starre, and some others, wee ghessed that the Sunne was in the like height, and that we were there under 76. degrees, and rather higher then lower.

The thirteenth, it was faire still weather, the wind Westerly, and then wee perceived that day-light began more and more to encrease, and we went out and cast Bullets at the bale of the Flag-staffe, which before we could not see when it turned about. The fourteenth, it was faire weather and a cleare light, the wind Westerly, and that day we tooke a Foxe. The fifteenth, it was faire cleere weather, with a West wind, and sixe of us went aboord the ship, where wee found the Bolck-vanger (which the last time that we were in the ship, wee stucke in a hole in the fore decke, to take Foxes) pulled out of the hole, and lay in the middle of the ship, and all torne in pieces by the Beares, as we perceived by their footsteps.

The sixteenth, it was faire weather, the wind Northerly, and then we went now and then out of the house to stretch out our joynts and our limbs with going and running, that we might not become lame, and about noone time we saw a certaine rednesse in the skie, as a shew or messenger of the Sunne that began to come towards us. The seventeenth, it was cleare weather with a North wind, and then still more and more wee perceived that the Sunne began to come neerer unto us, for the day was somewhat warmer, so that when we had a good fire, there fell great pieces of Ice downe from the walls of our house, and the Ice melted in our Cabins, and the water dropped downe, which was not so before, how great soever our fire was; but that night it was cold againe.

Aurora blusheth to lie so long in bed.

Cold relenteth.

The eighteenth, it was faire cleare weather, with a South-east wind, then our Wood began to consume, and so we agreed to burne some of our Sea-coles, and not to stop up the Chimney, and then we should not need to feare any hurt, which we did, and found no disease thereby, but we thought it better for us to keepe the Coles, and to burne our Wood more sparingly, for that the Coles would serve us better when we should sayle home in our open Scute.

The one and twentieth, it was faire weather with a West wind: at that time taking of Foxes began to fayle us, which was a signe that the Beares would come againe, as not long after we found it to be true, for as long as the Beares stay away, the Foxes came abroad, and not much before the Beares come abroad, the Foxes were but little seene.

The two and twentieth, it was faire weather with a West wind: then we went out againe to cast the Bullet, and perceived that day-light began to appeare, whereby some of us said, that the Sunne would soone appeare unto us, but William Barents to the contrary said, that it was yet two weekes too soone. The three and twentieth, it was faire calme weather, with a South-west wind: then

foure of us went to the ship, and comforted each other, giving God thankes that the hardest time of the Winter was past, being in good hope that we should live to talke of those things at home in our owne Countrey: and when we were in the ship, we found that the water rose higher and higher in it, and so each of us taking a Bisket or two with us, wee went home againe.

The foure and twentieth, it was faire cleare weather, with a West wind: then I, and Jacob Heemskerke, and another with us went to the Sea-side, on the South side of Nova Zembla, where contrary to our expectation, I first saw the edge of the Sunne, wherewith wee went speedily home againe, to tell William Barents, and the rest of our companions that joyfull newes: but William Barents being a wise and well experienced Pilot, would not beleeve it, esteeming it to be about fourteene dayes to soone for the Sunne to shine in that part of the World; but we earnestly affirmed the contrarie, and said, that we had seene the Sunne.

Sunne appeareth againe, Jan. 24. [III.iii.500.]

The five and twentieth, and sixe and twentieth, it was misty, and close weather, so that wee could not see any thing: then they that layed the contrary wager with us, thought that they had won: but upon the seven and twentieth day it was cleare weather, and then wee saw the Sunne in his full roundnesse above the Horizon, whereby it manifestly appeared that wee had seene it upon the foure and twentieth day of January. And as we were of divers opinions touching the same, and that wee said, it was cleane contrary to the opinions of all old and new Writers; yea, and contrary to the nature and roundnesse both of Heaven and Earth; some of us said, that seeing in long time there had beene no day, that it might be that we had overslept our selves, whereof we were better assured: but concerning the thing in it selfe, seeing God is wonderfull in all his workes, we will referre that to his almightie power, and leave it unto others to dispute of, but for that no man shall thinke us to be in doubt thereof, if wee should let this passe without discoursing upon it,

Sun fully seen.

How the Sun which they had lost the 4. of November did appeare to them againe upon the 24. of January, which was very strange, and contrary to all learned mens opinions.

therefore we will make some declaration thereof, whereby we may assure our selves that we kept good reckoning.

You must understand, that when we first saw the Sun, it was in the fift degr. and 25. min. of Aquarius, and it should have staid according to our first ghessing, till it had entred into the 16. deg. and 27. min. of Aquarius, before he should have shewed there unto us, in the height of 76. deg. Which we striving and contending about it amongst our selves, could not be satisfied, but wondred thereat, and some amongst us were of opinion, that we had mistaken our selves, which neverthelesse we could not be perswaded unto, for that every day without fayle, wee noted what had past, and also had used our Clocke continually, and when that was frozen, wee used our Houreglasse of twelve houres long, whereupon wee argued with our selves, in divers wise, to know how we should finde out that difference, and leave the trueth of the time, which to trie, wee agreed to looke into the Ephemerides made by Josephus Schala, Printed in Venice, for the yeeres of our Lord 1589. till A. 1600. and we found therein, that upon the foure and twentieth day of January, (when the Sun first appeared unto us) that at Venice the Clocke being one in the night time, the Moone and Jupiter were in conjunction, whereupon we sought to know when the same conjunction should be over or about the house where wee then were, and at last wee found that the foure and twentieth day of January was the same day whereon the conjunction aforesaid happened in Venice, at one of the clocke in the night, and with us in the morning, when the Sunne was in the East: for we saw manifestly that the two Planets aforesaid approached neere unto each other, untill such time as the Moone and Jupiter stood one just over the other, both in the signe of Taurus, and that was at sixe of the clocke in the morning, at which time the Moone and Jupiter were found by our Compasse, to be in conjunction over our house, in the North and by East point, and the South part of the Compasse was South South-west, and

Difference of longitude betwixt Venice and their wintring place.

there we had it right South, the Moone being eight dayes old, whereby it appeareth, that the Sunne and the Moone were eight points different, and this was about sixe of the clocke in the morning: this place differeth from Venice five houres in longitude, whereby we may ghesse how much we were neerer East then the Citie of Venice, which was five houres, each houre being 15. degrees, which is in all 75. degrees, that we were more Easterly then Venice, by all which it is manifestly to be seene, that wee had not fayled in our account, and that also wee had found our right longitude, by the two Planets aforesaid, for the Towne of Venice lieth under 37. degrees and 25. minutes in longitude, and her declination is 46. degrees and 5. minutes, whereby it followeth that our place of Nova Zembla, lieth under 112. degrees and 25. minutes in longitude, and the height of the Pole 76. degrees, and so you have the right longitude and latitude, but from the uttermost point of Nova Zembla to the point of Cape de Tabin, the uttermost point of Tartaria, where it windeth Southward, the longitude differeth 60. degrees; but you must understand, that the degrees are not so great as they are under the Equinoctiall Line, for right under the Line a degree is fifteene miles, but when you leave the Line, either Northward or Southward, then the degrees in longitude doe lessen, so that the neerer that a man is to the North or South Pole, so much the degrees are lesse: so that under the 76. degrees Northward, where we wintred, the degrees are but three miles and two third parts; whereby it is to be marked, that we had but 60. degrees to saile to the said Cape de Tabin, which is, 220. miles, so the said Cape lieth in 172. degrees in longitude as it is thought: and being above it, it seemeth that we should be in the Streight of Anian, where we may sayle boldly into the South, as the Land reacheth. Now what further instructions are to be had to know, where wee lost the Sunne under the said 76. degrees upon the fourth of November, and saw it againe upon the foure and twentieth of January, I leave that to be described, by such as make

Note for deg. of longitude.

profession thereof, it sufficeth us to have shewed, that it failed us not to appeare at the ordinary time.

The five and twentieth of January, it was darke cloudy weather, the wind Westerly, so that the seeing of the Sunne the day before, was againe doubted of, and then many wagers were layd, and we still looked out to see if the Sunne appeared, the same day we saw a Beare, (which as long as the Sunne appeared not unto us we saw not) comming out of the South-west towards our house, but when we shouted at her she came no neerer, but went away again. The six & twentieth, it was faire cleare weather, but in the Horizon there hung a white or darke cloude, whereby we could not see the Sunne, whereupon the rest of our companions, thought that we had mistaken our selves upon the foure and twentieth day, and that the Sunne appeared not unto us, and mocked us, but we were resolute in our former affirmation, that we had seene the Sunne, but not in the full roundnesse: That Eevening the Sicke man that was amongst us, was very weake, and felt himselfe to bee extreame sicke, for he had layne long time, and we comforted him as well as we might, and gave him the best admonition that we could, but hee dyed not long after midnight.

Beares returne with the Sun. [III.iii.501.]

Sicke man dieth.

The twentie seven it was faire cleare weather, with a South-west wind, then in the morning we digged a hole in the snow hard by the house, but it was still so extreame cold, that we could not stay long at worke, and so wee digged by turnes, every man a little while, and then went to the fire, and another went and supplied his place, till at last wee digged seven foot depth where wee went to burie the dead man, after that when we had read certaine Chapters, and sung some Psalmes, wee all went out and buried the man, which done we went in and brake our fasts, and while we were at meate, and discoursed amongst our selves, touching the great quantitie of snow that continually fell in that place, wee said that if it fell out, that our house

should bee closed up againe with snow, wee would finde the meanes to climbe out at the chimney, whereupon our Master went to trie if hee could climbe up through the chimney, and so get out, and while hee was climbing one of our men went forth of the doore, to see if the Master were out or not, who standing upon the snow, saw the Sunne, and called us all out, wherewith we all went forth, and saw the Sun in his full roundnesse, a little above the Horizon, and then it was without all doubt, that wee had seene the Sunne upon the foure and twentieth of January, which made us all glad, and we gave God heartie thankes, for his grace shewed unto us, that that glorious light appeared unto us againe.

The Summer.

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a West wind, then we went out many times to exercise our selves, by going, running, casting of the ball, (for then we might see a good way from us) and to refresh our joynts, for wee had long time sitten dull, whereby many of us were very loose. The nine and twentieth, it was foule weather, with great store of snow, the wind North-west, whereby the house was closed up againe with snow. The thirtieth, it was darke weather, with an East wind; and we made a hole through the doore, but wee shoveled not the snow very farre from the portall, for that as soone as we saw what weather it was, wee had no desire to goe abroad. The one and thirtieth, it was faire calme weather, with an East wind, then we made the doore cleane, and shoveled away the snow, and threw it upon the house, and went out, and wee saw the Sunne shine cleere, which comforted us, meane time we saw a Beare, that came towards our house, but wee went softly in, and watched for her till shee came neerer, and as soone as she was hard by we shot at her, but she ran away againe.

Beare.

February.

The first of February, being Candlemasse Eeve, it was boisterous weather, with a great storme, and good store of snow, whereby the house was closed up againe

with snow, and we were constrained to stay within doors, the wind then being north-west. The second it was foule weather, and as then the Sunne had not rid us of all the foule weather, whereby wee were somewhat discomforted, for that being in good hope of better weather wee had not made so great provision of wood as we did before. The third, it was faire weather, with an East wind, but very mystie, whereby wee could not see the Sunne, which made us somewhat melancholy, to see so great a myst, and rather more then we had had in the Winter time, and then we digged our doore open againe, and fetched the wood that lay without about the doore into the house, which we were forced with great paine and labour to dig out of the snow. The fourth, it was foule weather, with great store of snow, the wind being South-west, and then wee were close up againe with snow, but then wee tooke not so much paines as we did before, to dig open the doore, but when we had occasion to goe out we climbed out at the chimney, and eased our selves, and went in againe the same way.

The fifth, it was still foule weather, the wind being East, with great store of snow, whereby wee were shut up againe into the house, and had no other way to get out but by the chimney, and those that could not climbe out, were faine to helpe themselves within as wel as they could. The sixth, it was still foule stormy weather, with store of snow, and we still went out at the chimney, (and troubled not our selves with the doore,) for some of us made it an easie matter to climbe out at the chimney. The seventh, it was still foule weather, with much snow, and a South-west wind, and we thereby forced to keep the house, which grieved us more then when the Sun shined not, for that having seene it, and felt the heate thereof, yet wee were forced not to injoy it. The eight, it began to be fairer weather, the wind being South-west, then wee saw the Sun rise South, South-east, and went downe South

They goe out at the chimney.

South-west, by the Compasse that we had made of Lead, and placed according to the Meridian of that place, but by our common Compasse it differed two points. The ninth, it was faire cleere weather, the [III.iii.502.] wind South-west, but as then wee could not see the Sunne, because it was close weather in the South, where the Sunne should goe downe. The tenth, it was faire cleare weather, so that wee could not tell where the *Heat of the Sunne.* wind blew, and then we began to feele some heat of the Sun, but in the Eevening it began to blow somewhat cold out of the west.

The eleventh, it was faire weather, the wind South, that day about noone, there came a Beare towards our house, and wee watched her with our Muskets, but shee came not so neere as wee could reach her, the same night wee heard some Foxes stirring, which since the Beares began to come abroad againe we had not much seene. The twelfth, it was cleere weather and very calme, the winde South-west, then we made our Traps cleane againe, meane-time there came a great Beare towards our house, which made us all goe in, and wee levelled at her with our Muskets, and as shee came right before our doore, we shot her into the brest, cleane through the heart, the bullet passing through her body, and went out againe at her tayle, and was *Beare slaine.* as flatte as a Counter, the Beare feeling the blow, leapt backwards, and ranne twentie or thirtie foot from the house, and there lay downe, wherewith wee leapt all out of the house, and ranne to her, and found her still alive, and when she saw us, shee rear'd up her head, as if she would gladly have done us some mischiefe, but we trusted her not, for that we had tryed their strength sufficiently before, and therefore wee shot her twice into the body againe, and therewith shee dyed: Then we ript up her belly, and taking out her guttes, 100. *Pound of fat taken out of a Beare, usefull for Lamps.* drew her home to the House where we flayed her, and tooke at least one hundred pound of fat out of her belly, which wee molt and burned in our Lampe.

This Grease did us great good service, for by that meanes we still kept a Lampe burning all night long, which before wee could not doe, for want of Grease, and every man had meanes to burne a Lampe in his Cabbin, for such necessaries as hee had to doe. The Beares skinne was nine foot long, and seven foot broad.

The thirteenth, it was faire cleere weather with a hard West winde, at which time we had more light in our house by burning of Lampes, whereby we had meanes to passe the time away, by reading and other exercises, which before (when we could not distinguish Day from Night, by reason of the darkenesse, and had not Lamps continually burning) wee could not doe. The foureteenth, it was faire cleere weather, with a hard West wind before noone, but after noone, it was still weather, then five of us went to the Ship to see how it lay, and found the water to increase in it, but not much. The fifteenth, it was foule weather, with a great stormie out of the South-west, with great store of Snow, whereby the House was closed up againe, that Night the Foxes came to devoure the dead body of the Beare, whereby we were in great feare, that all the Beares thereabouts would come thither, and therefore wee agreed, as soone as we could to get out of the house to burie the dead Beare deepe under the Snow.

The sixteenth of February, it was foule weather, with great store of Snow and a South-west wind, that day was Shrove-tuesday, then we made our selves somewhat merrie in our great griefe and trouble, and every one of us dranke a draught of Wine.

The nineteenth, it was faire cleere weather, with a South-west winde, then we tooke the height of the Sunne, which in long time before wee could not doe, because the Horizon was not cleere; as also for that it mounted not so high, nor gave not so much shadow, as we were to have in our Astrolabium, and therefore we made an Instrument that was halfe round, at the

one end having 90. degrees marked thereon, whereon we hung a thread with a Plumet of Lead, as the water Compasses have, and therewith we tooke the height of the Sunne, when it was at the highest, and found that it was 3. degrees elevated above the Horizon, his Declination 11. degrees and 16. minutes, which being added to the height aforesayd, made 14. degrees and 16. minutes, which substracted from 90. degrees, there rested 75. degrees and 44. minutes for the height of the Pole, but the aforesayd 3. degrees of height, being taken at the lowest side of the Sunne, the 16. minutes might well be added to the height of the Pole, and so it was just 76. degrees, as we had measured it before. The twentieth, it was foule weather, with great store of snow, the wind South-west, whereby we were shut up againe in the house.

The two and twentieth, it was cleere faire weather, with a South-west wind, then we made ready a Sled to fetch more Wood, for need compelled us thereunto; for as they say, hunger driveth the Wolfe out of his denne, and eleven of us went together, all well appointed with our Armes, but comming to the place where we should have the Wood, we could not come by it, by reason it lay so deepe under the Snow, whereby of necessitie we were compelled to goe further, where with great labour and trouble we got some: but as we returned backe againe therewith, it was so sore labour unto us, that we were almost out of comfort, for that by reason of the long cold and trouble that we had indured, we were become so weake and feeble, that we had little strength, and we began to bee in doubt, that we should not recover our strengths againe, and should not be able to fetch any more Wood, and so we should have dyed with cold, but the present necessitie and the hope wee had of better weather, increased our forces, and made us doe more then our strengths afforded, and when we came neere to our house, we

saw much open water in the Sea, which in long time we had not seene, which also put us in good comfort, that things would bee better.

The five and twentieth, it was foule weather againe, and much Snow, with a North winde, whereby we were closed up with Snow againe, and could not get out of our House. [III.iii.503.]

The eight and twentieth of February, it was still weather, with a South-west wind, then ten of us went and fetched another Sled full of Wood, with no lesse paine and labour then wee did before, for one of our companions could not helpe us, because that the first joynt of one of his great Toes was frozen off, and so hee could doe nothing.

The first of March, it was faire still weather, the wind West but very cold, and we were forced to spare our Wood, because it was so great labour for us to fetch it, so that when it was day, we exercised our selves as much as we might, with running, going, and leaping, and to them that lay in their Cabins, wee gave hot stones to warme them, and towards night we made a good fire, which we were forced to endure. The second, it was cold cleere weather, with a West wind, the same day we tooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was elevated above the Horizon 6. degrees and 48. minutes, and his Declination was 7. degrees and 12. minutes, which substracted from 90. degrees, resteth 76. degrees for the height of the Pole. The third, it was faire weather with a West wind, at which time our Sicke men were somewhat better, and sate upright in their Cabins, to doe some thing to passe the time away, but after they found that they were too ready to stirre before their times. The fourth, it was faire weather, with a West wind, the same day there came a Beare to our House, whom we watcht with our Pieces, as wee did before, and shot at her, and hit her, but shee runne away, at that time five of us went to our Ship, where we found that the Beares had made work, and had *March.*

opened our Cookes cupboard, that was covered over with snow, thinking to finde some thing in it, and had drawne it out of the Ship where we found it.

Note. The seventh, it was still foule weather and as great a winde, so that wee were shut up in our House, and they that would goe out must climbe up through the Chimney, which was a common thing with us, and still we saw more open water in the Sea, and about the Land, whereby wee were in doubt that the Ship in that foule weather, and driving of the Ice, would bee loose (for as then the Ice drave) while we were shut up in our House, and wee should have no meanes to helpe it. The eight, it was still foule weather, with a South-west storme, and great store of Snow, whereby we could see no Ice in the North-east, nor round about in the Sea, whereby we were of opinion, that North-east from us there was a great Sea. The ninth, it was foule weather, but not so foule as the day before, and lesse snow, and then we could see further from us, and perceive that the water was open in the North-east, but not from us towards Tartaria, for there we could still see Ice in the Tartarian Sea, otherwise called the Ice Sea, so that we were of opinion, that there it was not very wide, for when it was cleere weather, we thought many times that wee saw the Land and shewed it to our companions, South and South-east from our house, like a hilly Land, as land commonly showeth it selfe, when we see it.

The eleventh, it was cold, but faire Sun-shine weather, the wind North-east, then we tooke the height of the Sunne with our Astrolabium, and found it to bee elevated above the Horizon 10. degrees and 19. minutes, his Declination was 3. degrees and 41 minutes, which being added to the height aforesayd, made 14. degrees, which substracted from 90. degrees, there resteth 76. degrees for the height of the Pole. Then twelve of us went to the plate, where wee used to goe, to fetch a Sled of Wood, but still we had more paine and labour

therewith, because we were weaker, and when we came home with it, and were very wearie, we prayed the Master to give each of us a draught of Wine, which hee did, wherewith we were somewhat releeved and comforted, and after that were the willinger to labour, which was unsupportable for us, if meere extremitie had not compelled us thereunto, saying oftentimes one unto the other, That if the Wood were to be bought for Money, we would give all our Earnings or Wages for it.

The twelfth, it was foule weather, the Winde North-east, then the Ice came mightily driving in, which the South-west Wind had beene driven out, and it was then as cold, as it had bin before in the coldest time of Winter.

The fifteenth, it was faire weather, the Wind North, that day wee opened our doore to goe out, but the cold rather increased then diminished, and was bitterer then before it had beene.

The sixteenth, it was faire cleere weather, but extreame cold with a North Wind, which put us to great extreamitie, for that we had almost taken our leaves of the cold, and then it began to come againe. This continued till the one and twentieth.

The one and twentieth, it was faire weather, but still very cold, the Wind North, the same day the Sunne entred into Aries in the Equinoctiall Line, and at noone wee tooke the height of the Sunne, and found it to be elevated 14. degrees above the Horizon, but for that the Sunne was in the middle Line, and of the like distance from both the Tropickes, there was no declination, neither on the South nor North side, and so the 14. degrees aforesayd being substracted from 90. degrees, there rested 76. degrees for the height of the Pole. The same day, we made shooes of Felt or Rugge, which we drew upon our feete, for we could not goe in our shooes, by reason of the great cold, for the shooes on our feet were as hard as hornes, and then we fetcht

Sol in Aries.

Shooes of Felt and Rugge.

[III.iii.504.] a Sled full of Wood home to our house, with sore and extreame labour, and with extremitie of cold which we indured, as if March meant to bid us farewell, for our hope and comfort was, that the cold could not still continue in that force, but that at length the strength thereof would bee broken.

The three and twentieth, it was very foule weather, with infernall bitter cold, the wind North-east, so that we were forced to make more fire, as we had beene at other times, for then it was as cold as ever it had beene, and it froze very hard in the floore and upon the walls of our house. The foure and twentieth, it was alike cold, with great store of snow, and a North wind, whereby we were once againe shut up into the house, and then the Coles served us well, which before by reason of our bad using of them, we disliked of. The sixe and twentieth, it was faire cleare weather, and very calme, then we digd our selves out of the house again, and went out, and then we fetcht another Sled of Wood, for the great cold had made us burne up all that we had.

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather, the wind South-west, whereby the Ice drave away very fast. The same day, sixe of us went aboord the ship to see how it lay, and found it still in one sort; but we perceived that the Beares had kept an evill favoured house therein.

Aprill. The second of Aprill, it was faire weather, the wind North-east and very calme, then wee tooke the height of the Sunne, and found it to be elevated above the Horizon 18. degrees and 40. minutes, his declination being 4. degrees and 40. minutes, which being substracted from the height aforesaid, there rested 14. degrees, which taken from 90. degrees, the height of the Pole was 76. degrees.

The sixt, it was still foule weather, with a stiffe North-west wind, that night there came a Beare to our house, and we did the best we could to shoot at her,

Beare assault the house.

but because it was moist weather, and the cocke foisty, our Peece would not give fire, wherewith the Beare came boldly toward the house, and came downe the staires close to the doore, seeking to breake into the house, but our Master held the doore fast to, and being in great haste and feare, could not barre it with the piece of Wood that wee used thereunto; but the Beare seeing that the doore was shut, shee went backe againe, and within two houres after shee came againe, and went round about and upon the top of the house, and made such a roaring, that it was fearefull to heare, and at last got to the chimney, and made such worke there, that wee thought shee would have broken it downe, and tore the sayle that was made fast about it in many pieces, with a great and fearefull noise, but for that it was night, we made no resistance against her, because wee could not see her, at last she went away and left us.

The fourteenth, it was faire cleare weather with a West wind, then we saw greater hills of Ice round about the ship, then ever we had seene before, which was a fearefull thing to behold, and much to be wondred at, that the ship was not smitten in pieces. The fifteenth, it was faire calme weather with a North wind, then seven of us went aboord the ship, to see in what case it was, and found it to be all in one sort, and as wee came backe againe, there came a great Beare toward us, against whom we began to make defence, but she perceiving that, made away from us, and we went to the place from whence shee came to see her Den, where we found a great hole made in the Ice, about a mans length in depth, the entrie thereof being very narrow, and within wide, there we thrust in our Pikes to feele if there was any thing within it, but perceiving it was empty, one of our men crept into it, but not too farre, for it was fearefull to behold, after that we went along by the Sea-side, and there we saw, that in the end of March, and the beginning of Aprill, the Ice was in such wonderful manner risen and piled up one upon the other, that it was wonderfull,

Beares Den.

in such manner as if there had beene whole Townes made of Ice, with Towres and Bulwarkes round about them.

The sixteenth, it was foule weather, the wind North-west, whereby the Ice began somewhat to breake. The seventeenth, it was faire cleare weather, with a South-west wind, and then seven of us went to the ship, and there we saw open water in the Sea, and then wee went over the Ice-hills as well as we could, to the water, for in sixe or seven moneths we had not gone so neere unto it, and when we got to the water, there we saw a little bird swimming therein, but as soone as it espied us, it dived under the water, which we tooke for a signe, that there was more open water in the Sea then there had beene before, and that the time approached that the water would open.

The eighteenth of Aprill, it was faire weather, the wind South-west, then wee tooke the height of the Sunne, and it was elevated above the Horizon 25. degrees and 10. minutes, his declination 11. degrees and 12. minutes, which being taken from the height aforesaid, there rested 13. degrees and 58. minutes, which substracted from 90. degrees, the height of the Pole was found to be 75. degrees 58. minutes; then eleven of us went with a Sled to fetch more Wood, and brought it to the house, in the night there came another Beare upon our house, which we hearing, went all out with our Armes, but the Beare ran away.

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a North wind, then we tooke the height of the Sunne againe, and found it to bee elevateed 28. degrees and 8. minutes, his declination 14. degrees and 8. minutes, which substracted from 90. degrees, there rested 76. degrees for
[III.iii.505.] the height of the Pole. The nine and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a South-west wind, then we played at Colfe, both to the ship, and from thence againe homewards to exercise our selves. The thirtieth, it was faire weather, the wind South-west, then in the night wee could see

the Sunne in the North (when it was in the highest) just above the Horizon, so that from that time wee saw the Sunne both night and day.

§. III.

Their preparation to goe from thence: they depart in a Boat and Scute both open, and come to Cola, 1143. miles. Their many dangers by Beares, Ice, Famine, Scorbute, in the way.

THe first of May, it was faire weather with a West wind, then wee sod our last flesh, which for a long time we had spared, and it was still very good, and the last morsell tasted as well as the first, and we found no fault therein, but onely that it would last no longer. The second, it was foule weather, with a storme out of the South-west, whereby the Sea was almost cleare of Ice, and then wee beganne to speake about getting from thence, for we had kept house long enough there. The third, it was still foule weather, with a South-west wind, whereby the Ice began wholly to drive away, but it lay fast about the ship, and when our best meate, as flesh, and other things beganne to faile us, which was our greatest sustenance, and that it behooved us to be somewhat strong, to sustaine the labour that wee were to undergoe, when we went from thence, the Master shared the rest of the Bacon amongst us, which was a small Barrell with salt Bacon in pickle, whereof every one of us had two ounces a day, which continued for the space of three weekes, and then it was eaten up. *May.*

The fourth, it was indifferent faire weather, the wind South-west, that day five of us went to the ship, and found it lying still as fast in the Ice as it did before, for about the middle of March it was but seventy five paces from the open water, and then it was five hundred paces from the water, and enclosed round about with high hills of Ice, which put us in no small feare, how wee should

bring our Scute and our Boat through or over that way into the water, when wee went to leave that place. That night there came a Beare to our house, but as soone as shee heard us make a noyse, she ranne away againe, one of our men that climbed up in the Chimney, saw when shee ranne away, so that it seemed that as then they were afraid of us, and durst not bee so bold to set upon us, as they were at the first. The fift, it was faire weather, with some snow, the wind East, that Eevening, and at night wee saw the Sunne when it was at the lowest, a good way above the Earth. The sixt, it was faire cleare weather, with a great South-west wind, whereby we saw the Sea open both in the East and in the West, which made our men exceeding glad, longing sore to be gone from thence. The seventh, it was foule weather, and snew hard, with a North wind, whereby we were closed up againe in our house.

The tenth, it was faire weather with a North-west wind, that night the Sunne by our common Compasse being North North-east, and at the lowest, we tooke the height thereof, and it was elevated 3. degrees and 45. minutes, his declination was 17. degrees and 45. minutes, from whence taking the height aforesaid, there rested 14. degrees, which substracted from 90. degrees, there rested 76. degrees for the height of the Pole.

The fourteenth, wee fetcht our last Sled with fire-wood, and still ware our shooes made of Rugge on our feet.

The five and twentieth, it was faire weather, with an East wind, then at noone time wee tooke the height of the Sunne, that was elevated above the Horizon 34. degrees and 46. minutes, his declination 20. degrees and 46. minutes, which taken from the height aforesaid, there rested 14. degrees, which taken from 90. degrees, rested 76. degrees for the height of the Pole. The sixe and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a great North-east wind, whereby the Ice came in againe. The seven and twentieth, it was foule weather, with a great North-east wind, which drave the Ice mightily in againe,

whereupon the Master, at the motion of the companie, willed us to make preparation to be gone.

The nine and twentieth in the morning, it was reasonable faire weather, with a West wind, then ten of us went unto the Scute to bring it to the house to dresse it, and make it ready to sayle, but wee found it deepe hidden under the snow, and were fayne with great payne and labour to digge it out, but when wee had gotten it out of the snow, and thought to draw it to the house, wee could not doe it, because wee were too weake, wherewith wee became wholly out of heart, doubting that wee should not bee able to goe forward with our labour, but the Master encouraging us, bade us strive to doe more then wee were able; saying, that both our lives and our welfare consisted therein: and that if wee could not get the Scute from thence, and make it ready, then hee said wee must dwell there as Burgers of Nova Zembla, and make our Graves in that place: but there wanted no good-will in us but onely strength, which made us for that time to leave off worke and let the Scute lie still, which was no small griefe unto us, and trouble to thinke what were best for us to doe; but after noone being thus comfortlesse come home, wee tooke hearts againe, and determined to turne the Boat that lay by the house with her keele upwards, and to amend it, that it might bee the fitter to carrie us over the Sea, for wee made full account that we had a long troublesome Voyage in hand, wherein wee might have many crosses, and wherein wee should not bee sufficiently provided for all things necessarie, although wee tooke never so much care, and while wee were busie about our worke, there came a great Beare unto us, wherewith wee went into our house, and stood to watch her in our three doores, with Harquebusses, and one stood in the Chimney with a Musket, this Beare came boldlier unto us then ever any had done before, for shee came to the neather step that went to one of our doores, and the man that stood in the doore saw her not, because hee looked towards the other doore, but they that stood within saw

Burgers of Nova Zembla. [III.iii.506.]

her, and in great feare called to him, wherewith he turned about, and although he was in a maze, he shot at her, and the Bullet past cleane through her body, whereupon she ranne away. Yet it was a fearefull thing to see, for the Beare was almost upon him before hee saw her, so that if the Peece had fayled to give fire (as oftentimes they doe) it had cost him his life, and it may bee, that the Beare would have gotten into the house. The Beare being gone somewhat from the house lay downe, wherewith wee went all armed and killed her out right, and when wee had ript open her bellie: we found a piece of a *Bucke.* Bucke therein, with haire, skinne and all, which not long before shee had torne and devoured.

The one and thirtieth of May, it was faire weather, but somewhat colder then before, the wind being South-west, whereby the Ice drave away, and we wrought hard about our Boat, but when wee were in the chiefest part of worke, there came another Beare, as if they had smelt that wee would be gone, and that therefore they desired to taste a piece of some of us, for that was the third day, one after the other, that they set so fiercely upon us, so that wee were forced to leave our worke, and goe into the house, and shee followed us, but we stood with our Peeces to watch her, and shot three Peeces at her, two from our doores, and one out of the Chimney, which all three hit her: but her death did us more hurt then her life, for *Beares Liver venomous.* after we ript her belly, we drest her Liver and eate it, which in the taste liked us well, but it made us all sicke, specially three that were exceeding sicke, and wee verily thought that wee should have lost them, for all their skins came off, from the foot to the head, but yet they recovered againe.

June. The third of June, in the morning it was faire cleare weather the wind West, and then wee were somewhat better, and tooke great paines with the Boat, that at last we got it ready, after we had wrought sixe dayes upon it: about Eevening it began to blow hard, and therewith the watter was very open, which put us in good comfort that our

deliverance would soone follow, and that we should once get out of that desolate and fearefull place.

The fourth, it was faire cleare weather, and indifferent warme, and about the South-east Sunne, eleven of us went to our Scute where it then lay, and drew it to the ship, at which time the labour seemed lighter unto us then it did before, when wee tooke it in hand and were forced to leave it off againe. The reason thereof was, the opinion that wee had that the snow as then lay harder upon the ground, and so was become stronger; and it may be that our courages were better, to see that the time gave us open water, and that our hope was that wee should get from thence; and so three of our men stayed by the Scute to build her to our minds: and for that it was a Herring Scute, which are made narrow behind, therefore they sawed it off behind, and made it a broad stearne: and better to brooke the Seas, they built it also somewhat higher, and drest it up as well as they could, the rest of our men were busie in the house to make all other things ready for our Voyage, and that day drew two Sleds with victuals and other goods unto the ship, that lay about halfe way betweene the house and the open water, that after they might have so much the shorter way, to carrie the goods unto the water side, when wee should goe away: at which time all the labour and paines that wee tooke, seemed light and easie unto us, because of the hope that wee had to get out of that wilde Desart, irkesome, fearefull, and cold Countrey.

The fift, it was foule weather, with great store of haile and snow, the wind West, which made an open water, but as then we could doe nothing without the house, but within we made all things ready, as Sayles, Oares, Masts, Sprit, Rother, Swerd, and all other necessarie things. The sixt, in the morning it was faire weather, the wind North-east, then wee went with our Carpenters to the ship, to build up our Scute, and carried two sleds full of goods into the ship, both victuals and Merchandise, with other things, which wee meant to take with us; after

that there rose very foule weather in the South-west, with snow, haile, and raine, which wee in long time had not had, whereby the Carpenters were forced to leave their worke, and goe home to the house with us, whereby also we could not be drie, because wee had taken off the Deales, therewith to amend our Boat and our Scute, there lay but a sayle over it, which would not hold out the water, and the way that lay full of snow began to be soft, so that wee left off our shooes made of Rugge and Felt, and put on our Leather shooes.

[III.iii.507.] The eight, it was faire weather, and wee drew the wares to the ship, which wee had packed and made ready, and the Carpenters made ready the Scute, so that the same evening it was almost done, the same day all our men went to draw our Boat to the ship, and made ropes to draw withall, such as wee use to draw with in Scutes, which wee cast over our shoulders, and held fast with all our hands, and so drew both with our hands and our shoulders, which gave us more force, and specially the desire and great pleasure wee tooke to worke at that time, made us stronger.

The tenth, wee carried foure Sleds of goods into the ship, the wind then being variable, and at evening it was Northerly, and wee were busie in the house to make all things ready, the Wine that was left we put into little vessels, that so wee might divide it into both our vessels, and that as wee were enclosed by the Ice, (which wee well knew would happen unto us) wee might easilier cast the goods upon the Ice, both out and into the Scutes, as time and place served us. The eleventh, it was foule weather, and it blew hard North North-west, so that all that day we could doe nothing, and we were in great feare lest the storme would carrie the Ice and the ship both away together, (which might well have come to passe) then wee should have beene in greater miserie then ever wee were, for that our goods both victuals and others, were then all in the ship, but God provided so well for us, that it fell not out so unfortunatly. The twelfth, it was indifferent faire

weather, then we went with Hatchets, Halberds, Shovels, and other instruments, to make the way plaine, where we should draw the Scute and the Boat to the water side, along the way that lay full of knobs and hills of Ice, where wee wrought sore with our Hatchets and other instruments, and while we were in the chiefest of our worke, there came a great leane Beare out of the Sea upon the Ice towards us, which we judged to come out of Tartaria: for we had seene of them twenty or thirty miles within the Sea, and for that wee had no Muskets, but *onely one, which our Surgeon* carried, I ranne in great haste towards the ship to fetch one or two, which the Beare perceiving ranne after mee, and was very likely to have over taken me, but our companie seeing that, left their worke and ranne after her, which made the Beare turne towards them, and left me, but when she ran towards them, she was shot into the body by the Surgeon, and ranne away; but because the Ice was so uneven and hilly, she could not goe farre, but being by us overtaken, we killed her out right, and smote her teeth out of her head, while she was yet living. *Beare slayne.*

The thirteenth, it was faire weather, then the Master and the Carpenters went to the ship, and there made the Scute and the Boat ready, so that there rested nothing as then, but onely to bring it downe to the water side, the Master and those that were with him, seeing that it was open water, and a good West wind, came backe to the house againe, and there hee spake unto William Barents (that had beene long sicke) and shewed him, that he thought it good, (seeing it was a fit time) to goe from thence, and so willed the companie to drive the Boat and the Scute downe to the water side, and in the name of God to beginne our Voyage, to sayle from Nova Zembla: then William Barents wrote a Letter, which he put in a Muskets charge, and hanged it up in the Chimney, shewing how he came out of Holland, to sayle to the Kingdome of China, and what had happened unto us being there on Land, with all our crosses, that if any man *They depart.*

chanced to come thither, they might know what had happened unto us, and how we had beene forced in our extremitie to make that house, and had dwelt ten moneths therein, and for that wee were put to Sea in two small open Boats, and to undertake a dangerous and adventurous Voyage in hand, the Master wrote two Letters, which most of us subscribed unto, signifying how wee had stayed there upon the Land in great trouble and miserie, in hope that our ship would bee freed from the Ice, and that we should sayle away with it againe, and how it fell out to the contrary, and that the ship lay fast in the Ice, so that in the end the time passing away, and our victuals beginning to faile us, we were forced for the saving of our owne lives, to leave the ship, and to sayle away in our open Boats, and so to commit our selves into the hands of God. Which done, he put into each of our Scutes a Letter, that if wee chanced to lose one another, or that by stormes or any other misadventure we happened to be cast away, that then by the Scute that escaped, men might know how we left each other, and so having finished all things as we determined, we drew the Boat to the water side, and left a man in it, and went and fetcht the Scute, and after that eleven Sleds with goods, as Victuals, with some Wine that yet remayned, and the Merchants goods, which we preserved as well as we could, vz. sixe packes with fine woollen Cloth, a Chest of Linnen, two packets with Velvet, two small Chests with Money, two Dri-fats with mens Clothes and other things, thirteene Barrels of Bread, a Barrell of Cheese, a flitch of Bacon, two Runlets of Oyle, sixe small Runlets of Wine, two Runlets of Vineger, with other packes belonging to the Saylers, so that when they lay all together upon a heape, a man would have judged that they would not have gone into the Scutes, which being all put into them, we went to the house, and first drew William Barents upon a Sled to the place where our Scutes lay, and after that we fetcht Claes Adrianson, both of them having beene long sicke, and so we entred into the Scutes, and divided our selves

into each of them alike, and put into either of them a sicke man, then the Master caused both the Scutes to lie close one by the other, and there we subscribed to the Letters which he had written, and so committing our selves to the will and mercy of God, with a West North-west wind, and an indifferent open water, we set sayle and put to Sea. [III.iii.508.] *The letter is omitted. It was subscribed by Jacob Hemskerke, Peter Peterson Vos, Master Hans Vos, Laurence Willimson, Peter Cornelison, John Remarson, William Barents, Gerrat de Veer, Leonard Hendrickson, Jacob Johnson Scheadam, Jacob Johnson Sterrenburg.*

The fourteenth of June in the morning, the Sunne Easterly, wee put off from the Land of Nova Zembla, and the fast Ice thereunto adjoyning, with our Boat and our Scute, having a West wind, and sayled East North-east all that day to the Ilands point, which was five miles, but our first beginning was not very good, for we entred fast into the Ice againe, which there lay very hard and fast, which put us into no small feare and trouble, and being there, foure of us went on Land, to know the situation thereof, and there we tooke many Birds, which wee kild with stones upon the clifts.

The sixteenth, we set sayle againe, and got to the Iland of Orange, with a South wind, which is eight miles distant from the Point of Desire, there we went on Land with two small Barrels, and a Kettle, to melt snow, and to put the water into the Barrels, as also to seeke for Birds and Egges, to make meate for our sicke men. We put to the Sea againe with a South-east wind and drowsie miseling weather, whereby we were all dankish and wet, for wee had no shelter in our open Scutes, and sayled West, and West and by South, to the Ice-point, and wee made our Scutes fast to a great piece of Ice, and there eate somewhat, but the weather was still fouler and fouler, so that we were once againe enclosed with Ice, and forced to stay there. *Orange Iland.* *Open Scutes.*

The seventeenth in the morning, when we had broken our fasts, the Ice came so fast upon us that *it* made our haires stare upright upon our heads, it was so fearefull to behold: by which meanes we could not make fast our Scutes, so that we thought verily that it was a fore-shewing of our last end, for wee drave away so hard with the Ice, and were so sore prest betweene a flake of Ice, that we

thought verily the Scutes would burst in a hundred pieces, at last, being in this discomfort, and extreme necessitie, the Master said, if we could take hold with a rope upon the fast Ice, we might therewith draw the Scute up, and so get it out of the great drift of Ice, but as this counsell was good, yet it was so full of danger, that it was the hazard of his life that should take upon him to doe it, and without doing it, was it most certaine, that it would cost us all our lives: this counsell as I said was good, but no man (like to the tale of the Mice) durst hang the Bell about the Cats necke, fearing to bee drowned, yet necessitie required to have it done, and the most danger made us choose the least, so that being in that perplexitie, I being the lightest of all our companie, tooke on me to fasten a rope upon the fast Ice, and so creeping from one piece of driving Ice to another, by Gods helpe got to the fast Ice, where I made a rope fast to a high howell, and they that were in the Scute, drew it thereby unto the said fast Ice, and then one man alone could draw more then all of them could have done before, and when we had gotten thither, in all haste wee tooke our sicke men out, and layed them upon the Ice, laying clothes and other things under them, and then tooke all our goods out of the Scutes, and so drew them upon the Ice, whereby for that time we were delivered from that great danger, making account that we had escaped out of deaths clawes, as it was most true.

Dangerous attempt to draw the Boat over the Ice.

The eighteenth, we repaired and amended our Scutes againe, being much bruised and crushed with the racking of the Ice, and were forced to drive all the nayles fast againe and to piece many things about them, God sending us Wood, wherewith we molt our Pitch, and did all other things that belonged thereunto, that done, some of us went upon the Land to seeke for Egges, which the sicke men longed for, but we could finde none, but we found foure Birds, not without great danger of our lives, betweene the Ice and the firme Land, wherein wee often fell, and were in no small danger.

The nineteenth, it was indifferent weather, the wind North-west, and West South-west, but we were still shut up in the Ice, and saw no opening, which made us thinke that there would be our last abode, and that we should never get from thence.

The twentieth, Claes Adrianson and William Barents died, the death of William Barents put us in no small discomfort, as being the chiefe Guide, and onely Pilot on whom wee reposed our selves, next under God. *W. Barents dieth.*

The two and twentieth in the morning, it blew a good gale out of the South-east, and then the Sea was reasonable open, but we were forced to draw our Scutes over the Ice to get unto it, which was great paine and labour unto us; for, first we were forced to draw our Scutes over a piece of Ice of fifty paces long, and there put them into the water, and then againe to draw them up upon other Ice, and after drew them at the least an hundred paces more over the Ice, before we could bring them to a good place where we might easily get out, and being gotten unto the open water we committed our selves to God, and set sayle the Sun being about East North-east, with an indifferent gale of wind out of the South, and South South-east, and sayled West, and West and by South, till the Sunne was South, and then we were round about enclosed with Ice againe, and could not get out, but were forced to lie still, but not long after the Ice opened againe like to a sluce, and we past through it and set sayle againe, and so sayled along by the Land, but were presently enclosed with Ice, but being in hope of opening againe, meane time wee eate somewhat, for the Ice went not away as it did before: after that wee used all the meanes wee could to breake it, but all in vayne, and yet a good while after, the Ice opened againe, and we got out, and sayled along by the Land, West and by South, with a South wind. *Enclosed again with Ice: and againe.* [III.iii.509.]

The three and twentieth, wee sayled still forward West and by South, till the Sunne was South-east, and got to the Trust-point, which is distant from the Ice-point five and *Trust-point.*

twentie miles, and then could goe no further, because the Ice lay so hard and so close together, and yet it was faire weather: the same day we tooke the height of the Sunne with the Astrolabium, and also with our Astronomicall Ring, and found his height to be 37. degrees, and his Declination 23. degrees and 30. minutes, which taken from the height aforesayd, there rested 13. degrees and 30. minutes, which substracted out of 90. degrees, the height of the Pole was 76. degrees and 30. minutes, and it was faire Sun-shine weather, and yet it was not so strong as to melt the Snow, that we might have water to drinke, so that wee set all our Tinne platters and other things full of Snow to melt, and so molt it, and put snow in our mouthes, to melt it downe into our throates, but all was not enough, so that we were compelled to endure great thirst.

Extreame cold.

The stretching of the Land from the house where we wintred, along by the North-side of Nova Zembla, to the Straights of Wey-gats, where we past over to the Coast of Russia, and over the entrie of the white Sea to Cola, according to the Card here insuing.

FRom the Low-land, to the Streame Bay, the course East and West, foure miles. From the Streame Bay, to the Ice-haven point, the course East and by North, foure miles. From the Ice-haven point, to the Ilands point, the course East North-east, five miles. From the Ilands point, to the Flushingers point, the course North-east and by East, three miles. From the Flushingers point, to the Head point, the course North-east, foure miles. From the Head point, to the point of Desire, the course South and North, sixe miles. From the point of Desire, to the Iland of Orange, North-west, eight miles. From the Ilands of Orange, to the Ice point, the course West, and West and by South, five miles. From the Ice point, to the point of Trust, the course West and by South, five and twentie miles. From the point of Trust, to Nassawes point, the course West, and West and by North, ten miles. From the Nassaw point, to the East end of the Crosse Iland, the course West and by North, eight miles. From the East end of the Crosse Iland, to Williams Iland, the course West and by South, three miles. From Williams Iland, to the Blacke point, the course West

South-west, sixe miles. From the Blacke point, to the East end of the Admirable Iland, the course West South-west, seven miles. From the East to the West point of the Admirable Iland, the course West South-west, five miles. From the West point of the Admirable Iland, to Cape Planto, the course South-west and by West, ten miles. From Cape de Planto, to Lombs-bay, the course West South-west, eight miles. From Lombs-bay, to the Staves point, the course West South-west, ten miles. From the Staves point, to Langenesse, the course South-west and by South, fourteene miles. From Langenesse, to Cape de Cant, the course South-west and by South, sixe miles. From Cape de Cant, to the point with the Blacke clifts, the course South and by West, foure miles. From the point with the Blacke clifts, to the Blacke Iland, the course South South-east, three miles. From the Blacke Iland, to Constint-sarke, the course East and West, two miles. From Constint-sarke, to the Crosse point, the course South South-east, five miles. From Crosse point, to Saint Laurence Bay, the course South South-east, sixe miles. From Saint Laurence Bay, to Mel-haven, the course South-east, sixe miles. From Mel-haven, to the two Ilands, the course South South-east, sixe miles. From the two Ilands, where we crost over to the Russia Coast, to the Ilands of Matfloe and Delgoy, the course South-west, thirtie miles. From Matfloe and Delgoy, to the Creeke where we sayled the compasse round about, and came to the same place againe, two and twentie miles. From that Creeke, to Colgoy, the course West North-west, eighteene miles. From Colgoy, to the East point of Camdenas, the course West North-west, twentie miles. From the East point of Camdenas, to the West side of the White Sea, the course West North-west, fortie miles. From the West point of the White Sea, to the seven Ilands, the course North-west, foureteene miles. From the seven Ilands, to the West end of Kilduin, the course North-west, twentie miles. From the West end of Kilduin, to

the place where John Cornelis came unto us, the course North-west and by West, seven miles. From thence to Cola, the course West Southerly, eighteene miles.

So that wee sayled in the two open Scutes, sometimes in the Ice, then over the Ice, and through the Sea, three hundred and eightie one miles Flemish, which is one thousand one hundred fortie and three miles English.

The foure and twentieth of June, the Sunne being Easterly, we rowed heere and there in the Ice, to see where we might best goe out, but wee saw no opening, but when the Sunne was South, we got into the Sea, for the which we thanked God most heartily, that hee had sent us an unexpected opening, and then we sayled with an East winde, and went lustily forward, so that we made our account to get above the point of Nassawes close by the land, and wee could easily see the point of Nassawes, and made our account to bee about three miles from it.

The sixe and twentieth, it still blew hard out of the South, and broke the Ice whereunto we were fast in pieces, and we thereby drave into the Sea, and could get no more to the fast Ice, whereby we were in a thousand dangers to bee all cast away, and driving in that sort in the Sea, wee rowed as much as we could, but we could not get neere unto the Land, therefore we hoysed up our Focke, and so made up with our sayle, but our Fock-mast brake twice in peeces, and then it was worse for us then before, and notwithstanding that there blew a great gale of Wind, yet we were forced to hoyse up our great [III.iii.510.] Sayle, but the winde blew so hard into it, that if wee had not presently taken it in againe, we had sunke in the Sea, or else our Boate would have been filled with water, for the water began to leape over-boord, and wee were a good way in the Sea, at which time the waves went so hollow, that it was most fearefull, and wee thereby saw nothing but death before our eyes, and every twinckling of an eye looked when wee should sinke. But God that had delivered us out of so many dangers of Death, holpe us once againe, and contrary to our expectations, sent us a

North-west wind, and so with great danger wee got to the fast Ice againe, when we were delivered out of that danger, and knew not where our other Scute was, wee sayled one mile along by the fast Ice, but found it not, whereby we were wholly out of heart, and in great feare that they were drowned, at which time it was mystie weather, and so sayling along, and hearing no newes of our other Scute, we shot off a Musket, which they hearing shot off another, but yet we could not see each other, meane time approching neerer to each other, and the weather waxing somewhat cleerer, as wee and they shot once againe, we saw the smoake of their Piece, and at last we met together againe, and saw them lye fast, betweene driving and fast Ice, and when we got neere unto them, we went over the Ice, and holpe them to unlade the goods out of their Scute, and drew it over the Ice, and with much paine and trouble brought it into the open water againe, and while they were fast in the Ice, wee found some Wood upon the Land by the Sea side, and when we lay by each other, we sod some Bread and Water together, and eat it up warme, which did us much good.

The eight and twentieth, when the Sunne was in the East, wee layd all our goods upon the Ice, and then drew the Scutes upon the Ice also, because we were so hardly prest on all sides, with the Ice, and the wind came out of the Sea upon the Land, and therefore wee were in feare to be wholly inclosed with the Ice, and should not be able to get out thereof againe, and being upon the Ice, we layd sayles over our Scutes, and lay downe to rest, appointing one of our men to keepe watch, and when the Sunne was North there came three Beares towards our Scutes, wherewith hee that kept the Watch cryed, three Beares, three Beares, at which noyse wee leapt out of our Boates with our Muskets, that were laden with hayle-shot to shoote at Birds, and had no time to discharge them, and therefore shot at them therewith, and although that kinde of shot could not hurt them much, yet they ranne away, and in the meane time they gave us

Three Beares.

leasure to lade our Muskets with bullets, and by that meanes wee shot one of the three dead, which the other two perceiving ranne away, but within two houres after they came againe, but when they were almost at us and heard us make a noyse, they ranne away, at which time the winde was West, and West and by North, which made the Ice drive with great force into the East.

The nine and twentieth of June, the Sunne being South South-west, the two Beares came againe to the place where the dead Beare lay, where one of them tooke the dead Beare in his mouth, and went a great way with it over the rugged Ice, and then began to eate it, which we perceiving shot a Musket at her, but she hearing the noyse thereof ranne away, and let the dead Beare lye, then foure of us went thither, and saw that in so short time she had eaten almost the halfe of her, we tooke the dead Beare and layd it upon a high heape of Ice, that we might see it out of our Scute, that if the Beare came againe we might shoot at her, at which time we tryed the great strength of the Beare, that carryed the dead Beare as lightly in her mouth, as if it had beene nothing, whereas wee foure had enough to doe to carry away the halfe dead Beare betweene us.

One Beare carryeth another in his mouth and eat it.

Strong Beare.

July. The first of July, it was indifferent faire weather, with a West North-west wind, and in the Morning the Sunne being East, there came a Beare from the driving Ice towards us, and swam over the water to the fast Ice whereon we lay, but when she heard us, she came no neerer but ran away, and when the Sunne was South-east, the Ice came so fast in towards us, that all the Ice whereon we lay with our Scutes and our goods, brake and ran one peece upon another, whereby we were in no small feare, for at that time most of our goods fell into the water, but wee with great diligence drew our Scutes further upon the Ice towards the Land, where we thought to be better defended from the driving of the Ice, and as we went to fetch our goods, we fell into the greatest trouble that ever we had before, for that wee endured so great danger in the

saving thereof, that as we layd hold upon one peece thereof, the rest sunke downe with the Ice, and many times the Ice brake under our owne feete, whereby we were wholly discomforted, and in a manner cleane out of all hope, expecting no issue thereof, in such sort that our trouble at that time surmounted all our former cares and impeachments, and when wee thought to draw up our Boates upon the Ice, the Ice brake under us, and we were carryed away with the Scute, and all by the driving Ice, and when we thought to save the goods, the Ice brake under our feet, and with that the Scute brake in many places, especially that which wee had mended, as the Mast, the mast planke, and almost all the Scute, wherein one of our men that was sicke, and a Chest of money lay, which we with great danger of our lives got out from it, for as we were doing it, the Ice that was under our feet drave from us, and slid upon other Ice, whereby we were in danger to burst both our armes and our legges, at which time, thinking that wee had beene cleane quit of our Scute, we beheld each other in pittifull manner, knowing not what we should doe, our lives depending thereon, but God made so good provision for us, that the peeces of Ice drave from each other, wherewith we ranne in great [III.iii.511.] haste unto the Scute, and drew it to us againe in such case as it was, and laid it upon the fast Ice by the Boate, where it was in more securitie, which put us unto an exceeding and great and dangerous labour, from the time that the Sunne was South-east, untill it was West South-west, and in all that time wee rested not, which made us extreame wearie, and wholy out of comfort, for that it troubled us sore, and it was much more fearefull unto us, then at that time when William Barents dyed, for there we were almost drowned, and that day we lost (which was sunke in the Sea) two Barrels of Bread, a Chist with Linnen Cloth, a Dry Fat with the Saylors Clothes, our Astronomicall Ring, a packe of Scarlet Cloth, a Rundlet of Oyle, and some Cheeses, and a Rundlet of Wine, which bouged with the Ice so that there was not any thing thereof saved.

The fourth, it was so faire cleere weather, that from the time we were first in Nova Zembla, we had not the like. The fifth, it was faire weather, the Wind West, South-west, the same day dyed John Franson of Harlem.

The seventh, it was faire weather with some Raine, the Winde West South-west, and at Evening West, and by North, then we went to the open water, and there killed thirteene Birds, which we tooke upon a piece of driving Ice, and laid them upon the fast Ice.

The ninth, in the morning, the Ice began to drive, whereby we got open water on the Land side, and then also the fast Ice whereon we lay, beganne to drive whereupon the Master and the men went to fetch the Packe and the Chist, that stood upon the Ice, to put them into the Scute, and then drew the Scutes to the water, at least three hundred and fortie paces, which was hard for us to doe, in regard that the labour was great, and we very weake, and when the Sunne was South South-east we set sayle with an East-wind, but when the Sunne was West, we were forced to make towards the fast Ice againe, because thereabouts it was not yet gone, the Winde being South, and came right from the Land, whereby wee were in good hope that it would drive away, and that we should proceed in our Voyage. The tenth, from the time that the Sunne was East North-east, till it was East, we tooke great paines and labour to get through the Ice, and at last we got through, and rowed forth, untill we happened to fall betweene two great flakes of Ice that closed one with the other, so that we could not get through, but were forced to draw the Scutes upon them, and to unlade the goods, and then to draw them over to the open water on the other side, and then we must goe fetch the goods also to the same place, being at least one hundred paces long, and when we were in open water againe, we rowed forward as well as we could, but we had not rowed long, before wee fell betweene two great flakes of Ice, that came driving one against the other, but by Gods helpe, and our speedy

rowing, we got from betweene them, before they closed up, and being through we had a hard West Winde, right in our Teeth, so that of force we were constrayned to make towards the fast Ice that lay by the shoare.

The eleventh, in the morning as we sate fast upon the Ice, the Sunne being North-east, there came a great Beare out of the water running towards us, but we watcht for her with three Muskets, and when she came within thirtie paces of us, wee shot all the three Muskets at her, and killed her out-right, so that she stirred not a foot, and we might see the fat runne out at the holes of her skinne, that was shot in with the Muskets, swimme upon the water like Oyle, and so driving dead upon the water, we went upon a flake of Ice to her, and putting a Rope about her necke, drew her up upon the Ice, and smit out her Teeth, at which time we measured her bodie, and found it to be eight foot thicke, then we had a West Wind with close weather, but when the Sunne was South it began to cleere up, then three of our men went to the Iland that lay before us, and being there, they saw the Crosse Iland, lying West-ward from them, and went thither to see if that Summer there had beene any Russian there, and went thither upon the fast Ice, that lay betweene the two Ilands, and being in the Iland, they could not perceive that any man had beene in it since wee were there, there they got seventie Egges, but when they had them, they knew not wherein to carrie them, at last one of them put off his Breeches, and tying them fast below, they carried them betweene two of them, and the third bare the Musket: and so came to us againe, after they had beene twelve houres out, which put us no small feare to thinke what was become of them, they told us that they had many times gone up to the knees in water, upon the Ice betweene both the Ilands: and it was at least sixe mile to and fro, that they had gone, which made us wonder how they could indure it, seeing we were all so weake. With the Egges that they had brought, wee were all well comforted, and fared like Lords, so that we found some reliefe

Huge Beare.

in our great miseric, and then wee shared our last Wine amongst us, whereof every one had three Glasses.

The twelfth, in the morning, when the Sunne was East, the Wind began to blow East, and East North-east, with mystie weather, and at Eevening sixe of our men went into the Land, to seeke certayne stones, and found some, but none of the best sort, and comming backe againe, eyther of them brought some Wood. The thirteenth, it was a faire day, then seven of our men went to the firme Land to seeke for more stones, and found some, at which time the Wind was South-east. The fourteenth, it was faire weather, with a good South Wind, and then the Ice began to drive from the Land, whereby wee were in good [III.iii.512.] hope to have an open water, but the Wind turning Westerly againe, it lay still, when the Sunne was South-west, three of our men went to the next Iland that lay before us, and there shot a Bercheynet, which they brought to the Scute, and gave it amongst us, for all our goods were common.

The sixteenth, there came a Beare from the firme Land, that came very neere unto us, by reason that it was as white as Snow, whereby at first we could not discerne it to be a Beare, because it shewed so like the snow, but by her stirring at last we perceived her, and as she came neere unto us, we shot at her and hit her, but shee ranne away: that morning the Wind was West, and after that againe, East North-east with close weather. The seventeenth, about the South South-east Sunne, five of our men went againe to the neerest Iland, to see if there appeared any open water, for our long staying there was no small griefe unto us, perceiving not how wee should get from thence, who being halfe way thither, they found a Beare lying behind a piece of Ice, which the day before had beene shot by us, but shee hearing us went away, but one of our men following her with a Boat-hooke, thrust her into the skinne, wherewith the Beare rose up upon her hinder feet, and as the man thrust at her againe, she strooke the Iron of the Boat-hooke in pieces, wherewith the man fell downe

upon his buttockes, which our other two men seeing, two of them shot the Beare into the bodie, and with that she ranne away, but the other man went after her with his broken staffe, and strooke the Beare upon the backe, wherewith the Beare turned about against the man three times one after the other, and then the other two came to her and shot her into the bodie againe, wherewith shee sat downe upon her buttockes, and could scant runne any further, and then they shot once againe, wherewith shee fell downe, and they smote her Teeth out of her head: all that day the Winde was North-east, and East North-east.

The eighteenth, about the East Sun, three of our men went up upon the highest part of the land to see if there was any open water in the Sea, at which time they saw much open water, but it was so far from the land, that they were almost out of comfort, because it lay so far from the land, and the fast Ice, being of opinion that we should not be able to draw the Scutes and the goods so farre thither, because our strengthes still beganne to decrease: and the sore labour and paine that we were forced to indure more and more increased, and comming to our Scutes, they brought us that newes, but we being compelled thereunto by necessitie abandoned all wearinesse and faint-heartednesse, and determined with our selves to bring the Boats and the goods to the water side, and to row unto that Ice, where wee must passe over to get to the open water, and when wee got to it, wee unladed our Scutes, and drew them first over the Ice to the open water, and after that the goods; it beeing at the least one thousand paces, then wee set sayle, till the Sunne was West and by South; and presently fell amongst the Ice againe, where wee were forced to draw up the Scutes againe upon the Ice, and beeing upon it, wee could see the Crosse Iland, which wee ghest to bee about a mile from us, the Wind then being East, and East North-east.

The nineteenth, lying in that manner upon the Ice, about the East Sunne, seven of our men went to the Crosse Iland, and being there they saw great store of open

water in the West, wherewith they much rejoyced, and made as great haste as they could to get to the Scutes againe, but before they came away they got 100. Egges, and brought them away with them, and comming to the Scutes, they shewed us that they had seene as much open water in the Sea as they could discerne, being in good hope, that that would be the last time that they should draw the Scutes over the Ice, and that it should bee no more measured by us, and in that sort put us in good comfort, whereupon we made speed to dresse our Egges, and shared them amongst us, and presently the Sunne being South South-west we fell to worke, to make all things ready to bring the Scutes to the water, which were to be drawne at least two hundred paces over the Ice, which wee did with a good courage, because we were in good hope that it would be the last time, and getting to the water, we put to Sea with Gods helpe, with an East, and East North-east Wind, and a good gale, so that with the West Sunne, we past by the Crosse Iland, which is distant from Cape de Nassawes ten miles, and presently after that the Ice left us, and wee got cleere out of it, yet wee saw some in the Sea, but it troubled us not, and so wee held our course West and by South, with a good gale of Wind out of the East, and East North-east, so that wee ghest that betweene every meale-tyde we sayled eighteene miles.

The twentieth, having still a good gale about the South-east Sunne, wee past along by the Blacke Point, which is twelve miles distant from the Crosse Iland, and sayled West South-west, and about the Eevening with the West Sunne, we saw the Admirals Iland, and about the North Sunne past along by it, which is distant from the Blacke Point eight miles, and passing along by it, we saw about two hundred Sea-horses, lying upon a flake of Ice, and wee sayled close by them, and drave them from thence, which had almost cost us deere, for they beeing mightie strong fishes, and of great force, swamme towards us, (as if they would be revenged on us for the despight that we had done them) round about our Scutes with a great

Admirals Iland.

noyse, as if they would have devoured us, but we escaped from them, by reason that we had a good gale of Wind, yet it was not wisely done of us to wake sleeping Wolves. The one and twentieth, we past by Cape Plancio, about the East North-east Sunne, which lyeth West South-west eight miles from the Admirals Iland, and with the good gale that we had about the South-west Sunne, we sayled by Langenes, nine miles from Cape Plancio: there the Land reacheth most South-west, and we had a good North-east wind. [III.iii.513.] *Cape Plancio.* *Langenes.*

The two and twentieth, we having so good a gale of wind when wee came to Cape de Cant, there we went on land to seeke for some Birds and Egges, but we found none, so we sayled forwards, but after that about the South Sunne we saw a Clift that was full of Birds, thither wee sayled and casting stones at them, we killed two and twentie Birds, and got fifteene Egges, which one of our men fetcht from the Clift, and if we would have stayed there any longer, wee might have taken a hundred or two hundred Birds at least, but because the Master was somewhat further into Sea-ward then we, and stayed for us, and for that wee would not loose that faire fore-wind, we sayled forwards along by the Land, and about the South-west Sunne, wee came to another point, where wee got a hundred twentie and five Birds, which wee tooke with our hands out of their Nests, and some wee killed with stones, and made them fall downe into the water, for it is a thing certayne that those Birds never used to see men, and that no man had ever sought or used to take them, for else they would have flowne away, and that they feared no bodie, but the Foxes and other wild beasts, that could not climbe up the high Clifts, and that therefore they had made their Nests thereon, where they were out of feare of any beasts comming unto them, for we were in no small danger of breaking of our legges and armes, especially as we came downe againe, because the Clift was so high and so steepe, those Birds had every one but one Egge in their Nests, and that lay upon the bare Clift without any straw or other *Cape Cant.* *Strange Birds breeding in strong cold.*

thing under them, which is to be wondred at, to thinke how they could breede their young ones in so great cold, but it is to be thought and beleeved, that they therefore sit but upon one Egge, that so the heate which they give in breeding so many, may be wholly given unto one Egge.

The foure and twentieth, it was faire weather, but the winde still Northerly, whereby wee were forced to lye still, and about noone we tooke the height of the Sunne with our Astrolabium, and found it to be elevated above the Horizon 37. degrees and 20. minutes, his declination 20. degrees and 10. minutes which substracted from the height aforesaid rested 17. degrees and 10. minutes, which taken from 90. degrees, the height of the Pole was 73. degrees and 10. minutes, and for that we lay still there, some of our men went oftentimes on Land to seeke stones, and found some that were as good as ever any that we found.

The seven and twentieth, wee had sayled from Cape de Cant, along by Constinsarke, to the Crosse Point, twentie miles, our course South South-east, the Wind North-west.

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather with a North-east wind, then we sayled along by the Land, and with the South-west Sunne, got before Saint Laurence Bay, or Sconce Point, and sayled South South-east six miles, and being there, wee found two Russians Lodgies, or ships beyond the Point, wherewith we were not a little comforted, to thinke that we were come to the place where we found men, but were in some doubt of them, because they were so many, for at that time we saw at least thirtie men, and knew not what they were, there with much paine and labour we got to Land, which they perceiving, left off their worke, and came towards us, but without any Armes, and we also went on shoare, as many as were well, for divers of us were very ill at ease, and weake by reason of a great scouring in their bodies, and when wee met together, wee saluted each other in friendly wise, they after theirs, and wee after our manner, and when we were met, both they and wee lookt each other stedfastly in the

Two Russian Lodies or Lodgies.

face, for that some of them knew us, and wee them, to bee the same men which the yeere before, when we past through the Wey-gates had beene in our ship: at which time wee perceived that they were abasht and wondred at us, to remember that at that time wee were so well furnished with a great ship, that was exceedingly provided of all things necessary, and then to see us so leane and bare, with so small Scutes in that Countrey: and amongst them there were two, that in friendly manner clapt the Master and me upon the shoulder, as knowing us since that Voyage: for there was none of all our men that was as then in that Voyage, but we two only, and asked us for our Crable, meaning our ship, and we shewed them by signes as well as we could (for we had no Interpreter) that we had lost our ship in the Ice, wherewith they said, Crable pro pal (which wee understood to bee, Have you lost your ship?) and we made answere, Crable pro pal, which was as much as to say, That we had lost our ship, and many more words we could not use, because we understood not each other, then they made shew to be sorrie for our losse, and to be grieved that we the yeere before had beene there with so many ships, and then to see us in so simple manner, and made us signes that then they had drunke Wine in our ship, and asked us what drinke wee had now, wherewith one of our men went into the Scute and drew some water, and let them taste thereof, but they shak't their heads, and said, No dobbre (that is, It is not good) then our Master went neerer unto them, and shewed them his mouth, to give them to understand that we were troubled with a loosenesse in our bellies, and to know if they could give us any counsell to helpe it, but they thought wee made shew that wee had great hunger wherewith one of them went unto their Lodging, and fetcht a round Rie Loafe, weighing about eight pounds, with some [III.iii.514.] smored Fowles which we accepted thankfully, and gave them in exchange halfe a doozen of Muschuyt, then our Master led two of the chiefe of them with him into his Scute, and gave them some of the Wine that we had, being

almost a Gallon, for it was so neere out: and while we stayed there, we were very familiar with them, and went to the place where they lay, and sod some of our Mischuyt with water by their fire, that we might eat some warme thing downe into our bodies, and wee were much comforted to see the Russians for that in thirteene moneths time, that we departed from John Cornelison, we had not seene any man, but onely monsterous and cruell wild Beares.

The nine and twentieth, it was reasonable faire weather, and that morning the Russians beganne to make preparation to bee gone, and to set sayle: at which time they digged certayne Barrels with Trayne Oyle out of the sieges which they had buried there, and put it into their ships.

The thirtieth, lying at Anchor, the Wind still blew North-west, with great store of Raine, and a sore storme, so that although we had covered our Scutes with our Sayles, yet we could not lye dry, which was an unaccustomed thing unto us: for wee had had no Raine in long time before, and yet we were forced to stay there all that day.

No Raine.

The one and thirtieth, in the morning, about the North-east Sunne, wee rowed from that Iland to another Iland, whereon there stood two Crosses, wee thought that some men had layne there about Trade of Merchandize, as the other Russians that wee saw before had done, but wee found no man there, the Wind as then beeing North-west, whereby the Ice drave still towards the Wey-gates: there to our great good wee went on Land, for in that Iland wee found great store of Leple leaves, which served us exceeding well, and it seemed that God had purposely sent us thither: for as then wee had many sicke men, and most of us were so troubled with a scouring in our bodies, and were thereby become so weake, that wee could hardly row, but by meanes of those leaves we were healed thereof: for that as soone as we had eaten them, we were presently eased and healed, whereat wee could not choose but wonder, and therefore wee gave God great thankes

Scurvy-graise, or Leple leaves cure their scowring and Scorbuticall infirmitie.

for that, and for many other his mercies shewed unto us, by his great and unexpected aide lent us, in that our dangerous Voyage: and so as I said before, wee eate them by whole handfuls together, because in Holland we had heard much spoken of their great force, and as then found it to be much more then we expected.

The first of August, the Wind blew hard North-west, and the Ice that for a while had driven towards the entry of the Wey-gates, stayed and drave no more, but the Sea went very hollow, whereby we were forced to remove our Scutes on the other side of the Iland, to defend them from the waves of the Sea, and lying there wee went on Land againe to fetch more Leple leaves, whereby we had beene so well holpen, and still more and more recovered our healths, and in so short time, that we could not choose but wonder thereat, so that as then some of us could eate Bisket againe, which not long before they could not doe. The second, it was darke mistie weather, the Winde still blowing stiffe North-west, at which time our victuals beganne to decrease, for as then wee had nothing but a little Bread and Water, and some of us a little Cheese. *August.*

The third, about the North Sunne, the weather being somewhat better, wee agreed amongst our selves to leave Nova Zembla and to crosse over to Russia, and so committing our selves to God, we set sayle with a North-west Wind, and sayled South South-west till the Sunne was East, and then we entred into Ice againe, which put us in great feare, and about the South-west Sunne got cleere thereof, and entred into the large Sea, where wee saw Ice, and then what with sayling and rowing we had made twentie miles, and so sailing forwards wee thought to approch neere unto the Russian Coast; but about the North-west Sunne we entred into Ice againe, and then it was very cold.

The fourth, about the South-east Sunne, being gotten out of the Ice, we sayled forward with a North-west Wind, and held our course Southerly, and when the Sunne was South, at noone time we saw the Coast of Russia lying

before us, whereat we were exceeding glad, and going neerer unto it, we strooke our sayles and rowed on Land, and found it to be very low Land, like a bare Strand that might be flowed over with the water, there we lay till the Sunne was South-west, but perceiving that there wee could not much further our selves, having as then sayled from the Point of Nova Zembla (from whence we put off) thither full thirtie miles, wee sayled forward along by the Coast of Russia, with an indifferent gale of Winde, and when the Sunne was North, we saw another Russian Jolle or ship, which we sayled unto to speake with them, and being hard by them, they came all above Hatches, and wee cryed unto them Candinaes Candinaes (whereby we asked if we were about Candinaes) but they cryed againe and said, Pitzora, Pitzora, (to shew us that wee were there abouts) and for that wee sayled along by the Coast, where it was very dry, supposing that we held our course West and by North, that so we might get beyond the Point of Candinaes, we were wholy deceived by our Compasse, that stood upon a Chist bound with Iron bands which made us vary at least two Points, whereby we were much more Southerly then wee thought our course had beene, and also farre more Easterly, for wee thought verily that we had not beene farre from Candinaes, and wee were three dayes sayling from it as after we perceived, and for that we found our selves to bee so much out of our way, we stayed there all night till day appeared.

Pitzora.

Compasse deceiveth by ill Neighbourhood.

[III.iii.515.]

The twelfth of August, it was faire weather, at which time the Sunne being East, wee saw a Russia Lodgie come towards us, with all his sayles up, wherewith we were not a little comforted, which we perceiving from the Strand, where we lay with our Scutes, we desired the Master that we might goe unto him, to speake with him, and to get some victuals of them, and to that end we made as much haste as we could, to launch out our Scutes, and sayled towards them, and when we got to them, the Master went into the Lodgie, to aske them how farre wee had to Candinaes, which we could not well learne of them,

because wee understood them not, they held up their five Fingers unto us, but we knew not what they meant thereby, but after we perceived that thereby they would shew us, that there stood five Crosses upon it, and they brought their Compasse out and shewed us that it lay North-west from us, which our Compasse also shewed us, which reckoning also we had made: but when we saw we could have no better intelligence from them, the Master went further into their Ship, and pointed to a barrell of Fish that he saw therein, making signes to know, whether they would sell it unto us, shewing them a peece of eight Rials, which they understanding gave us one hundred and two Fishes, with some Cakes which they had made of Meale when they sodde their Fish, and about the South Sunne wee left them. *Russian Compasse.*

The sixteenth of August in the Morning, sayling forward North-west, we perceived that we were in a Creeke, and so made towards the Russian Lodgie, which we had seene on our starre-boord, which at last with great labour and much paine wee got unto, and comming to them about the South-east Sunne, with a hard winde, we asked them how farre we were from Zembla de Cool or Kilduin, but they shooke their heads, and shewed us that wee were on the East-side of Zembla de Candinaes.

The seventeenth, lying at Anchor in the Morning at breake of day, wee saw a Russian Lodgie that came sayling out of the white Sea, to whom we rowed, that we might have some instruction from him, and when we boorded him, without asking or speaking unto him, he gave us a loafe of Bread, and by signes shewed us as well as he could, that hee had seene our Companions, and that there was seven men in the Boate, but wee not knowing well what they sayd, neither yet beleeving them, they made other signes unto us, and held up their seven Fingers, and pointed to our Scute, thereby shewing that there was so many men in the Boate, and that they had sold them Bread, Flesh, Fish and other victuals: and while wee stayed in their Lodgie, we saw a small Compasse therin,

which we knew that they had bought of our chiefe Boatson, which they likewise acknowledged. About midnight wee found a fall of fresh Water, and then we went on Land to fetch some, and there also wee got some Leple-leaves, and as wee thought to row forward, we were forced to sayle, because the flood was past, and still we lookt earnestly out for the point of Candinaes, and the five Crosses, whereof we had beene instructed by the Russians, but we could not see it.

The Eighteenth, in the Morning the Sunne being East, we puld up our Stone, (which we used in steed of an Anchor) and rowed along by the Land, till the Sunne was South, and then we saw a point of Land reaching into the Sea, and on it certayne signes of Crosses, which as we went neerer unto we saw perfectly, and when the Sunne was West, we perceived that the Land reached West and South-west, so that thereby we knew it certainely to bee the point of Candinaes, lying at the mouth of the white Sea, which we were to crosse, and had long desired to see it. This Point is easily to bee knowne, having five Crosses standing upon it, which are perfectly to be discerned, and having a good North-east wind (which was not for us to slacke) we set forward in the Name of God, and when the Sunne was North-west, we past the Point, and all that night and the next day sayled with a good Wind, and all that time rowed but while three Glasses were runne out, and the next Night after ensuing, having still a good wind, in the Morning about the East North-east Sunne, we saw Land on the West-side of the white Sea which we found by the rushing of the Sea upon the Land before we saw it, and perceiving it to bee full of Clifts, and not low sandie ground with some Hills, as it is on the East-side of the white Sea, wee assured our selves that we were on the West-side of the white Sea, upon the *Lapland.* Coast of Lapland, for the which we thanked God, that he had helped us to sayle over the white Sea in thirtie houres, it being fortie Dutch miles at the least, our course being West with a North-east winde.

The twentieth, we espied certayne Crosses, with Warders upon them, whereby we understood that it was a good way, and so put into it, and being entred a little way within it, we saw a great Russian Lodgie lying at Anchor, whereunto we rowed as fast as we could, and there also we saw certayne Houses wherein men dwelt, and when wee got to the Lodgie, we made our selves fast unto it, and cast our tent over the Scute, for as then it began to rayne, then we went on land into the Houses that stood upon the shoare, where they shewed us great friendship, leading us into their Stoves and there dryed our wet Cloathes, and then seething some Fish, bade us sit downe and eate somewhat with them. In those little houses wee found thirteene Russians, who every morning went out to Fish in the Sea, whereof two of them had charge over the rest, they lived very poorely, and ordinarily eate nothing but Fish and Bread: at Eevening when we prepared our selves to goe to our Scute againe, they prayed the Master and me to stay with them in their Houses, which the Master thanked them for, would not doe, but I stayed with them all that night: besides those thirteene Men, there was two Laplanders more, and three Women with a Child, that lived very poorely of the overplusse which the Russians gave them, as a peece of a Fish, and some fishes heads which the Russians threw away, and they with great thankfulnesse tooke them up, so that in respect of their povertie, we thought our selves to bee well furnished: and yet we had little enough, but as it seemed their ordinary living was in that manner, and we were forced to stay there, for that the wind being North-west, it was against us.

Russian Houses. [III.iii.516.]

Laplanders miserable life.

The one and twentieth, wee met our other Companie wherewith we rejoyced, and shewed each other of our proceedings, and how wee had sayled too and fro in great necessitie and hunger, and yet they had beene in greater necessitie and danger then we, and gave God thankes that hee had preserved us alive, and brought us together againe, and then we eate something together and dranke of the cleere Water, such as runneth along by Collen

through the Rhene, and then we agreed that they should come unto us, that we might sayle together.

The two and twentieth, the rest of our men with the Boate came unto us, about the East South-east Sunne, whereat wee much rejoyced, and then we prayed the Russians Cooke to bake a sacke of Meale for us, and to make it Bread paying him for it, which hee did, and in the meane time, when the Fisher-men came with their Fish out of the Sea, our Master bought foure Cods of them, which we sodde and eate, and while we were at meate, the chiefe of the Russians came unto us, and perceiving that we had not much Bread, hee fetched a Loafe and gave it us, and although we desired them to sit downe and eate some meate with us, yet we could by no meanes get them to grant thereunto, because it was their Fasting day, and for that we had powred Butter and fat into our Fish; nor wee could not get them once to drinke with us, because our Cup was somewhat greasie, they were so superstitious touching their Fasting and Religion, neither would they lend us any of their Cups to drinke in, least they should likewise bee greased, at that time the wind was North-west.

Slutterie a fast breaker.

The foure and twentieth, the wind blew East, and then the Sunne being East, we got to the seven Ilands, where we found many Fisher-men, of whom we enquired after Cool and Kilduin, and they made signes that they lay West from us, (which we likewise ghest to bee so) and withall they shewed us great friendship, and cast a Codde into our Scute, but for that wee had a good gale of wind, we could not stay to pay them for it, but gave them great thankes, much wondering at their great courtesie, and so with a good gale of wind we arrived before the seven Ilands, when the Sunne was South-west, and past betweene them and the Land, and there found certayne Fisher-men that rowed to us, and asked us where our Crable (meaning our Ship) was, whereunto we made answer, with as much Russian language as wee had learned, and sayd, Crable pro Pal (that is, our Ship is lost) which they understand-

ing, sayd unto us, Cool Brabouse Crable, whereby we understood, that at Cool there was certayne Netherland Ships, but wee made no great account thereof, because our intent was to sayle to Ware-house, fearing least the Russians or great Prince of the Countrey would stay us there.

The five and twentieth, sayling along by the Land with a South-east wind, about the South Sunne, we had a sight of Kilduin, at which time we held our course West North-west, and sayling in that manner between Kilduin and the firme Land, about the South South-west Sunne, we got to the West end of Kilduin, and being there looked if we could see any Houses or people therein, and at last we saw certayne Russian Lodgies that lay upon the Strand, and there finding a convenient place for us to Anchor with our Scutes, while wee went to know if any people were to bee found, our Master put in with the Land, and there found five or sixe small Houses, wherein the Laplanders dwelt, of whom we asked if that were Kilduin, whereunto they made answer, and shewed us that it was Kilduin, and sayd, that at Coola there lay three Brabants Crables or Ships, whereof two were that day to set sayle: wee found a small House upon the shoare, wherein there was three Men and a great Dogge, which received us very friendly, asking us of our affaires, and how we got thither, whereunto we made answer, and shewed them that we had lost our Ship, and that wee were come thither to see if we could get a Ship that would bring us into Holland: whereunto they made us answer as the other Russians had done, that there was three Ships at Coola, whereof two were to set sayle from thence that day, then wee asked them if they would goe with one of our men by Land to Coola, to looke for a Ship, wherewith wee might get into Holland, and sayd we would reward them well for their paines, but they excused themselves, and sayd, that they could not goe from thence, but they sayd they would bring us over the Hill, where we should finde certayne Laplanders whom they thought would goe with us, as they

Kilduin.

did: for the Master and one of our men going with them over the Hill, found certaine Laplanders there, whereof they got one to goe with our man, promising him two Ryals of eight for his paines, and so the Laplander going with him, tooke a Piece on his necke, and our man a Boat-hooke, and about Eevening they set forward, the winde as then being East, and East North-east.

[III.iii.517.] The sixe and twentieth, it was faire weather, the wind South-east, at which time we drew up both our Scutes upon the Land, and tooke all the goods out of them, to make them the lighter; which done, we went to the Russians and warmed us, and there dressed such meates as wee had, and then againe we began to make two meales a day, when we perceived that we should every day finde more people, and we dranke of their drinke which they call Quasse, which was made of broken peeces of Bread, and it tasted well: for in long time wee had drunke nothing else but Water. Some of our men went further into the Land, and there found blew Berries and bramble Berries, which they plucked and eate, and they did us much good, for we found that they healed us of our loosenesse, the wind still blew South-east.

The eight and twentieth, it was indifferent good weather, and then we drew the Scutes upon the Land againe, that we might take the rest of the goods out of them, because the wind still blew hard North, and North North-west, and having drawne the Scutes up, we spred our sayles upon them, to shelter us under them, for it was still mystie and raynie weather, much desiring to heare some newes of our man, that was gone to Coola with the Laplander.

The nine and twentieth, wee spyed the Laplander comming alone without our man, whereat we wondred, and were somewhat in doubt, but when hee came unto us, he shewed us a Letter that was written unto our Master, which he opened before us, the Contents thereof being, that hee that had written the Letter wondred much at our arrivall in that place, and that long since hee verily

thought that we had beene all cast away, being exceeding glad of our happie fortune, and how that he would presently come unto us with victuals, and all other necessaries to succour us withall, we being in no small admiration who it might bee, that shewed us so great favour and friendship, could not imagine what he was, for it appeared by the Letter that he knew us well: and although the Letter was subscribed, by me John Cornelison Rip, yet wee could not bee perswaded that it was the same John Cornelison, who the yeere before had beene set out in the other ship with us, & left us about the Beare Iland: for those good newes we payd the Laplander his hyer; and besides that, gave him Hose, Breeches, and other furniture, so that hee was apparelled like a Hollander: for as then wee thought our selves to bee wholly out of danger, and so being of good comfort, we layd us downe to rest. Heere I cannot chuse but shew you how fast the Laplander went: for when he went to Coola, as our Companion told us, they were two Dayes and two Nights on the way, and yet went apace, and when he came backe againe he was but a Day and a Night comming to us, which was wonderfull, it being but halfe the time, so that we sayd, and verily thought that hee was halfe a Conjurer, and he brought us a Partridge, which hee had killed by the way as he went.

The thirtieth, wee saw a Russian Joll come rowing with John Cornelison, and our Companion that we had sent to Coola, who being landed, wee received and welcommed each other, with great joy and exceeding gladnesse, as if either of us on both sides had seene each other rise from death to life againe: for we esteemed him, and hee us to bee dead long since: hee brought us a Barrell of Roswicke Beere, Wine, Aqua vite, Bread, Flesh, Bacon, Salmon, Suger, and other things, which comforted and relieved us much, and we rejoyced together for our so unexpected meeting: at that time giving God great thankes, for his Mercie shewed unto us.

The first of September, in the Morning with the East *September.*

Sun, we got to the West-side of the River of Coola, and entred into it, where we rowed till the Flood was past, and then wee cast the Stones that served us for Anchors upon the ground, at a point of Land till the Flood came in againe: and when the Sunne was South, wee set sayle againe with the Flood, and so sayled and rowed till midnight, and then wee cast Anchor againe till morning. The second, in the Morning, we rowed up the River, and as we past along wee saw some Trees on the River side, which comforted us, and made us glad as if we had then come into a new world, for in all the time that wee had beene out, we had not seene any Trees, and when we were by the Salt Kettles, which is about three miles from Coola, we stayed there a while, and made merrie, and then went forward againe, and with the West North-west Sunne, got to John Cornelisons Ship, wherein we entred and drunke: there wee began to make merrie againe, with the Saylers that were therein, and that had beene in the Voyage with John Cornelison the yeere before, and bad each other welcome: then we rowed forward, and late in the Eevening got to Coola, where some of us went on Land, and some stayed in the Scutes to looke to the goods: to whom we sent Milke and other things to comfort and refresh them, and we were all exceeding glad that God of his mercie had delivered us out of so many dangers and troubles, and had brought us thither in safetie.

Trees a rare sight.

Coola.

The third, wee unladed all our goods, and there refreshed our selves after our toylesome and wearie Journey, and the great hunger wee had endured, thereby to recover our healths and strengths againe.

The eleventh, by leave and consent of the Bayart, Governour of the great Prince of Moscovia, we brought our Scute and our Boate into the Merchants House, and there let them stand for a remembrance of our long, farre (and never before sayled way) and that wee had sayled in those open Scutes, almost foure hundred Dutch miles, through, and along by the Sea Coasts to the Towne of Coola.

Their Scute and Boat layd up for a Monument: how much more worthily then the old worlds Argo.

The seventeenth of September, John Cornelison and our Master being come aboord, the next day about the East Sunne, we set sayle out of the River Coola, and with Gods grace put to Sea, to sayle homewards, and being out of the River, wee sayled along by the Land North-west and by North, the winde being South. [III.iii.518.]

Upon the nine and twentieth of October, wee arrived in the Mase, with an East North-east wind, and the next morning got to Maseland Sluce, and there going on Land, from thence rowed to Delfe, and then to the Hage, and from thence to Harlem. And upon the first of November about Noone, got to Amsterdam, in the same Clothes that wee wore in Nova Zembla, with our Caps furr'd with white Foxes skinnes. The newes thereof being spred abroad in the Towne, it was also carryed to the Princes Court in the Hage, at which time the Lord Chancellour of Denmarke, Ambassadour for the sayd King, was then at Dinner with Prince Maurice: for the which cause we were presently fetcht thither by the Scout, and two of the Burgers of the Towne, and there in the presence of those Ambassadours, and the Burger-masters, wee made rehearsall of our Journey both forwards and backwards.

I thought good to adde hither for Barents or Barentsons sake, certaine Notes which I have found (the one Translated, the other Written by him) amongst Master Hakluyts Paper.

This was Written by William Barentson in a loose Paper, which was lent mee by the Reverend Peter Plantius in Amsterdam, March the seven and twentieth, 1609.

THe foure and twentieth of August, Stilo novo 1595. wee spake with the Samoieds, and asked them how the Land and Sea did lye to the East of Way-gates. They sayd after five dayes journey going North-east, wee should come to a great Sea, going South-east. This Sea to the East of Way-gats, they sayd was called Marmoria, that

Intelligence from Samoyeds. 1595.

is to say, A calme Sea. And they of Ward-house have told us the same. I asked them, if at any time of the yeere it was frozen over? They sayd it was. And that sometimes they passed it with Sleds. And the first of September 1595. Stilo novo, the Russes of the Lodie or Barke affirmed the same; saying, that the Sea is sometimes so Frozen, that the Lodies or Barkes going sometimes to Gielhsidi from Pechora, are forced there to Winter: which Gielhsidi was wonne from the Tartars, three yeeres past.

Barkes going from Pechora to Gielhsidi: wintering there.

Gielhsidi won from the Tartars 1592.

For the Ebbe and Flood there I can finde none; but with the Winde so runneth the streame. The third of September, Stilo novo, the winde was South-west, and then I found the water higher, then with the winde at North or North-east. Mine opinion is grounded on Experience, That if there bee a passage, it is small: or else the Sea could not rise with a Southerly Winde. And for the better proofe to know if there were a Flood and Ebbe, the ninth of September, Stilo novo, I went on shoare on the South end of the States Iland, where the Crosse standeth, and layd a Stone on the brinke of the Water, to prove whether there were a Tide, and went round about the Iland to shoote at a Hare, and returning, I found the Stone as I left it, and the Water neither higher nor lower: which prooveth as afore, that there is no Flood nor Ebbe.

1592. *No Ebbe nor Floud.*

September 9.

Chap. VI.

A Treatise of Iver Boty a Gronlander, translated out of the Norsh Language into High Dutch, in the yeere 1560. And after out of High Dutch into Low Dutch, by William Barentson of Amsterdam, who was chiefe Pilot aforesaid. The same Copie in High Dutch, is in the hands of Jodocus Hondius, which I have seene. And this was translated out of Low Dutch, by Master William Stere, Marchant, in the yeere 1608. for the use of me Henrie Hudson. William Barentsons Booke is in the hands of Master Peter Plantius, who lent the same unto me.

INprimis, it is reported by men of Wisedome and Understanding borne in Gronland, That from Stad in Norway to the East part of Island, called Horn-nesse, is seven dayes sayling right West.

Item, men shall know, that betweene Island and Gronland, lyeth a Riffe called Gombornse-skare. There were they wont to have there passage for Gronland. But as they report there is Ice upon the same Riffe, come out of the long North Bottome, so that we cannot use the same old Passage as they thinke. *Gombornse-skare.* *The long North bottom.*

Item, from Long-nesse on the East side of Island to the abovesaid Horn-nesse, is two dayes sayle to the Brimstone Mount.

Item, if you goe from Bergen in Norway, the course is right West, till you bee South of Rokenesse in Island: and distant from it thirteene miles, or leagues. And with this course you shall come under that high Land that lyeth in the East part of Groneland, and is called Swafster. A day before you come there, you shall have sight of a *Swafter.* [III. iii. 519.]

Whitsarke. high Mount, called Huit-sarke: and betweene Whitsarke
Hernoldus Hooke. and Groneland, lyeth a Head-land called Hernoldus Hooke; and thereby lyeth an Haven, where the Norway Merchants Ships were wont to come: and it is called
Sound Haven in Groneland. Sound Haven.

Item, if a man will sayle from Island to Gronland, hee shall set his course to Snofnesse, which is by West Rokenesse thirteene miles, or leagues right West, one day and nights sayling, and after South-west to shun the Ice, that lyeth on Gombornse-skare; and after that one day and night North-west. So shall hee with this course fall right with the abovesayd Swafster, which is high Land, under which lyeth the aforesayd Head-land, called Hernoldus Hooke, and the Sound Haven.

Item, the Easter Dorpe of Groneland lyeth East from
Skagen Ford. Hernoldus hooke, but neere it, and is called Skagen Ford, and is a great Village.

Item, from Skagen Ford East, lyeth a Haven called
Beare Ford. Beare Ford: it is not dwelt in. In the mouth thereof lyeth a Riffe, so that great Ships cannot harbour in it.

A great fishing for Whales. Item, there is great abundance of Whales: and there is a great Fishing for the killing of them there: but not without the Bishops consent, which keepeth the same for the benefit of the Cathedrall Church. In the Haven is a
A great Swalth. great Swalth: and when the Tide doth runne out, all the Whales doe runne into the sayd Swalth.

Item, East of Beare Ford, lyeth another Haven called
Allabong Sound. Allabong Sound: and it is at the mouth narrow, but farther in, very wide: The length whereof is such, that the end thereof is not yet knowne. There runneth no
Store of Oxen. Streame. It lyeth full of little Iles. Fowle and Oxen are there common: and it is playne Land on both sides, growne over with greene Grasse.

The Icie Mountayne. The Haven of Fendebother. Note. Item, East from the Icie Mountayne, lyeth an Haven called Fendebother; so named, because in Saint Olafes time there was a Ship cast away, as the speach hath beene in Groneland; In which Ship was drowned one of Saint Olafes men, with others: and those that were saved did

burie those that were drowned, and on their Graves did set great stone Crosses, which wee see at this day.

Item, somwhat more East toward the Icie Mountayne, lyeth a high Land, called Corse Hought, upon which they Hunt white Beares, but not without the Bishops leave, for it belongeth to the Cathedrall Church. And from thence more Easterly, men see nothing but Ice and Snow, both by land and water.

Corse Hought. An hunting of white Beares. More Easterly all Desart.

Now wee shall returne againe to Hernoldus Hooke, where we first began to come to the first Towne that lyeth on the East-side of Hernoldus Hooke, called Skagen Ford: and so we will write the Names of all that lye on the West-side of the Ford or Sound.

The Townes from Hernoldus Hooke Westward.

Item, West from Hernoldus Hooke, lyeth a Dorpe called Kodosford, and it is well built: and as you sayle into the Sound, you shall see on the right hand a great Sea and a Marsh: and into *this* Sea runneth a great streame: and by the Marsh and Sea standeth a great Church, on which the Holy Crosse is drawne, of colour *white: it belongeth to Enelnesse de* Hokesong, and the Land to Peters Wike.

The Towne of Godosford.

A great Church with a white Crosse on it.

Item, by Peters Wike, lyeth a great Dorpe called Wartsdale, by which lyeth a water or Sea of twelve miles or leagues over: in which is much Fish: And to Peters wike Church belongeth Wartsdale Boy or Towne, and the Villages.

Peters Wike. Wartsdall.

Boy in the Norse tongue, signifieth a Towne.

Item, neere *this* Boy or Towne, lyeth a Cloyster or Abbey, in which are Canons Regular, it is Dedicated to Saint Olafes, and Saint Augustines name. And to it belongeth all the Land to the Sea side, and toward the other side of the Cloyster.

A Monasterie.

Item, next Godosford, lyeth a Ford called Rompnes Ford: And there lyeth a Cloyster of Nuns of Saint Benedicts Order.

Rompnes Ford. A Nunnerie.

Item, this Cloyster to the bottome of the Sea, and to Wegen Kerke, was Dedicated to Saint Olafe the King. In this Ford lye many small Iles. And to this Cloyster belongeth halfe the Ford and the Church. In this Sound

Wegen Kerke.

Hot waters in Groneland.

are many warme Waters. In the Winter they are intollerable hot: but in the Summer more moderate; and many Bathing in them are cured of many diseases.

A place called Vose, belonging to the King.

Saint Nicolas Church.

Item, betweene Rompnes and the next Sound, lyeth a great Garden called Vose, belonging to the King. There is also a costly Church dedicated to Saint Nicolas. This Church had the King before this. Neere it lyeth a Sea of Fresh water, called , in which is great abundance of Fish, without number. And when there falleth much Rayne, that the Waters doe rise therewith, and after fall againe, there remayneth upon the Land much Fish drie.

Emestnes Ford.

Southwoders Wicke.

Bloming.

Granwicke.

Daleth Garden.

A great Wood.

[III.iii.520.]

Oxen, Kine, and Horses.

Item, when you sayle out of Emestnes Ford, there lyeth an Inlet, called South-woders Wike: and somewhat higher in the same Sound, and on the same side, lyeth a little Cape called Bloming: and beyond that lyeth another Inwike called Granwike, and above that lyeth a Garden called Daleth, which belongeth to the Cathedrall Church. And on the right hand as you sayle out of the same Sound, lyeth a great Wood, which pertayneth to the Church, where they feede all their Cattell, as Oxen, Kine, and Horses: And to the Church pertayneth the Sound of Emestnes Ford. The high Land lying by Emestnes Ford, is called The Ramos hayth: So called, because that on those Hills doe runne many Roe Deere, or Reyne Deere, which they use to Hunt, but not without the Bishops leave. And on this high Land is the best Stone in all Groneland. They make thereof Pots, because fire cannot hurt it. And they make of the same stone Fattes or Cisternes, that will hold ten or twelve Tunnes of water.

Excellent Stone, that fire cannot hurt.

Item, West from this lyeth another high Land, called The long high Land: and by another called whereon are eight great Orchards, all belonging to the Cathedrall Church. But the Tenths thereof they give to Warsedall Church.

Eight great Orchards belonging to the Cathedrall Church.

Swalster Ford.

Item, next to this Sound lyeth another Sound called Swalster Ford, wherin standeth a Church called Swalster. This Church belongeth to all this Sound, and to Romse

Ford, lying next it. In this Sound is a great Garden belonging to the King, called Saint Henlestate.

Item, next to that lyeth Ericks Ford, and entring therein lyeth an high Land called Ericks Hought; which pertayneth the one halfe to Devers Kerke, and is the first Parish Church on Groneland, and lyeth on the left hand as you sayle into Ericks Ford: and Devers Kerke belongeth all to Meydon Ford, which lyeth North-west from Ericks Ford. *Ericks Hought.*

Item, farther out then Ericks Ford, standeth a Church called Skogel Kerke, which belongeth to all Medford: And farther in the Sound standeth a Church called Leaden Kerke. To this Church belongeth all thereabout to the Sea; and also on the other side as farre as Bousels. There lyeth also a great Orchard called Grote Lead, in which the Gusman (that is a chiefe or Bayliffe over the Boores) doth dwell. *Skogel Kerke.*

And farther out then Ericks Ford, lyeth a Ford or Sound called Fossa, which belongeth to the Cathedrall Church: and the sayd Fossa Sound lyeth as men sayle out towards Ericks Ford; and to the North of it lye two Villages, the one called Ever-boy, and the other Forther-boy, because they lye so. *Fossa Sound.*

Item, from thence farther North lyeth Breda Ford, and after that Lormont Ford from that West, and from Lormont Ford to the West is Ice Dorpe. All these are places built, and in them dwell people. *Breda Ford. Larmut Ford. Ice Dorpe.*

Item, from the Easter builded Land to the Wester Dorpe, is twelve miles or leagues: and the rest is all waste land. In the Dorpe in the West standeth a Church, which in times past belonged to the Cathedrall Church, and the Bishop did dwell there. But now the Skerlengers have all the West Lands and Dorps. And there are now many Horses, Oxen, and Kine, but no people neither Christian nor Heathen; but they were all carryed away by the Enemie, the Skerlengers. *The Skerlengers. Many Horses, Oxen, and Kine.*

All this before Written was done by one Iver Boty borne in Gronland, a principall man in the Bishops Court: *Iver Boty the Author.*

who dwelt there many yeeres, and saw and knew all these places. He was chosen by the whole Land for Captayne, to goe with Ships to the West land, to drive away their Enemies the Skerlengers. But hee comming there, found no people neither Christian nor Heathen, but found there many Sheepe running being wilde, of which Sheepe they tooke with them as many as they could carrie, and with them returned to there Houses. This before named Indo Boty was himselfe with them.

A great Wilderneese called Hemel Hatsfelt, to the North of the West land.

To the North of the West Land, lyeth a great Wildernesse with Clifes or Rockes, called Hemel Hatsfelt. Farther can no man sayle, because there lye many Swalgen or Whirle-pooles: and also for the Water and the Sea.

Mines of Silver, white Beares, white Hawkes, all sorts of Fish.

Item, in Groneland are many Silver Hills, and many white Beares with red patches on their heads; and also white Hawkes, and all sorts of Fish, as in other Countries.

Item, there is Marble stone of all colours, also Zevell stone or the Load stone, which the Fire cannot hurt, whereof they make many vessels, as Pots, and other great vessels.

Groneland not so cold as Iseland or Norway.

Item, in Groneland runneth great streames, and there is much Snow and Ice: But it is not so cold, as it is in Island or Norway.

Fruits.

Item, there grow on the high Hills, Nuts and Acornes, which are as great as Apples, and good to eate. There groweth also the best Wheate, that can grow in the whole Land.

This Sea Card was found in the Iles of Fero or farre, lying betweene Shot-lant and Island, in an old reckoning Booke, written above one hundred yeeres agoe: out of which this was all taken.

Punus and Potharse.

Item, Punnus and Potharse, have inhabited Island certayne yeeres, and sometimes have gone to Sea, and have had their trade in Groneland. Also Punnus did give the Islanders their Lawes, and caused them to bee written. Which Lawes doe continue to this day in Island, and are called by name Punnus Lawes.

The Course from Island to Groneland.

IF men bee South from the Haven of Bred Ford in Island, they shall sayle West, till they see Whitsarke upon Groneland, and then sayle somewhat South-west till Whitsarke bee North off you, and so you need not feare Ice, but may boldly sayle to Whitsarke, and from thence to Ericks Haven.

If men be North the Haven of Bredford in Island, then sayle South-west, till Whit sarke beare North: then sayle to it, and so come to Ericks Haven. [III.iii.521.]

If you see Ice, that commeth out of Trolebothon, you shall goe more Southerly, but not too farre South for feare of Freesland, for there runneth an hard streame. And it is fifteene miles or leagues from Freesland. *Trolebothon.*

Item, Freesland lyeth South, and Island East from Gronland.

Item, From the Ice that hangeth on the Hilles in Gronland, commeth a great Fogge, Frost and Cold. And such a Fogge commeth out of the Ice of Trolebothon: and it is a great Wildernesse. *Trolebothon, a great Wildernesse.*

There are Sables, Marternes, Hermelins, or Ermins, White Beares, and White Hawkes, Seales, White and Gray, Gold and Silver Hills, also Fish dryed and salted, and thousands of Salmons: also store of Losh Hides and other Hides. There are Hares, Foxes, Wolves, Otters, and Veltfrasen. *The Commodities of Gronland.*

Now if it please God they come to Gronland, then shall they set but two men on shoare; who shall take with them divers kindes of Marchandize: and let them deale with good order, and let them bee such as can make good Report, what they there doe see or finde; and let them observe whether men may there Land or no, with the love of the Inhabitants. *Good Counsell for travelling to Gronland.*

And I counsaile and charge those that shall Trade for Gronland, that they set no more folke on Land, but they keepe men enough to man the Ship. And looke well to

the course you hold to Gronland, that if those that bee set on shoare bee taken, they may come home againe with Gods helpe. For if shipping returne, they may come home or bee releeved in a yeere and a day. And in your living there so demeane your selves to them, that in time you may winne the Countrey and the people.

Remember my Scholler and Clearke, which shall bee there appointed as Commander, that you send those on Land, that will shew themselves diligent Writers, and that they carrie themselves so, that they may learne thereby the State of the Countrey. They shall take with them two Boats and eight Oares, and take Tynder-boxes for fire if there be no Habitation. Also set up Crosses of Wood or Stone, if need be.

Tynder-boxes for fire.

This Note following was found in an old Booke of Accomdts, in the Yeere 1596.

Courses for Gronland.

INprimis, From Gtad in Norway, standing neere the Latitude of sixtie three Degrees, you shall hold your course due West: and that course will bring you upon Swartnesse in Gronland. And in this course is the least streame and least perill of Swalgen or Indrafts. There is lesse perill this way, then is on the North-side; you shall keepe $\frac{2}{3}$. of the Sea on Freesland side, and one third on Island side. And if it bee cleere weather, and you have kept your course right West, you shall see the Mount of Snevels Jokul in the South-west part of Island. And if you have a storme in the North, you must shunne it as you can, till Whitsarke be North of you. Then shall you sayle right with it, and seeke the Land: and you shall finde a good Haven, called Ericks Ford.

A storme in the North.

Whitsarke.

Ericks Ford.

Item, If you bee betweene Gronland and Island, you may see Snevels Jokul on Island, and Whitsarke on Gronland, if it be cleere weather. Therefore men of experience doe affirme, that it is but thirtie leagues betweene both.

Also if you have a storme betweene Gronland and Island, you must have care you bee not laid on Freesland

with the streame and Winde; for the streame or Current doth run strong upon Freesland, out of the North.

Also if you have a storme out of the South, you shall not sayle out of your course, but keepe it as neere as you can possibly, till Whitsarke in Gronland beare North off you: then sayle toward it, and you shall come into Ericks Ford, as it is afore-said in the first Article. *A storme in the South.*

Chap. VII. [III.iii.522.]

A Description of the Countries of Siberia, Samoieda, and Tingoesia. Together with the Journeyes leading unto the same Countries toward the East and North-east, as they are daily frequented by the Moscovites.

§. I.

Discoverie of Siberia, and the subjecting of the same to the Russes.

THere is in Moscovie, a Kindred called the Sonnes of Oneeko, of a rusticke or base descent, and first sprung from one Oneeko a Husband-man. He being very rich in Lands, dwelt upon a certaine River called Wichida, or Witsogda, falling into the River Duina, which about one hundred leagues beneath, neere unto the Castle called S. Michael the Archangel, which falleth into the White Sea. This Oneeko being rich (as is said) had also many Children, God having largely blessed and provided him with plentie of all things. Yet neverthelesse, hee had an earnest desire and affection, to know what Countreyes were possessed and inhabited by those people, which yeerely came into Russia to trafficke, bringing with them costly Furres, and divers other Merchandizes, much diffring in Language, Apparel, Religion, and Behaviour,

The first and second Paragraphs were published in Latine by Hessell Gerardus An. 1612. here a little contracted: the last I found in M. Hakluyts Papers.

Arica or Oneeka Wichida. White Sea to the North of Russia.

Samoieds.

calling themselves Samoieds, and by other unknowne names. These people came every yeere downe the River Wichida, and exchanged their Commodities with the Russes and Muscovites, in the Townes of Osel and Ustiug, on the River Duina; which at that time were the Receits and chiefe Mart Townes of all kind of Marchandizes, but especially of costly Furres. Oneeko therefore (as hath beene said) was most desirous to know, from whence these people came, or what Countreyes they did inhabit, easily conjecturing, That great wealth was there to be gotten; since the Furres yeerely brought them amounted to a great summe of Money. Wherefore secretly hee got acquaintance and consorted himselfe with divers of them, and sent in their company about tenne or twelve of his owne people into those parts; enjoyning them, that through what Countreyes so ever they should travell, they should make diligent search of every particular thing therein, and fully observe the Manners, Rites, Dwellings, and whole course of life of those Nations; that at their returne they might bring from thence perfect knowledge thereof. Which they having at length performed, he entertayned them bountifully at their returne, and shewed them all favour, but with especiall charge to keepe silence. Hee likewise kept all these things close to himselfe, not revealing them to any man.

Oysel and Ustiug Mart Townes for the Samoieds.

The first Voyage unto the Samoieds countreyes.

The second Voyage.

And the next yeere following, he sent thither a greater number of his people, joyning with them certayne of his Kindred and Alliance. These carried with them divers base Marchandize; as small Bels, and other like Dutch small Wares; and tooke diligent notice of every thing in those parts; and after they had passed many Deserts, and divers great Rivers, they came to the River Obi: where making Acquaintance and Friendship with the Samoieds, they found that Furres were to be had for a small price, and that great wealth was there easily to be gotten; and further, that this people had not any Cities, but lived together in Companies, and peaceably,

Many Deserts and divers great Rivers. River Obi. Great wealth to be gotten by the Trade to the River of Obi.

and governed by some of the ancientest among them; that they were lothsome in their feeding, and lived on the flesh of such beasts as they tooke: that they had no knowledge of Corne or Bread, were cunning and skilfull Archers, making their Bowes of a gentle and flexible kind of Wood, and that their Arrowes were headed with sharpened stones or fish bones: with those they killed wilde beasts, which are exceeding plentifull in those places: that they sowed also with bones of fishes, serving them for Needles; their thred being made of the sinewes of certaine small beasts, and so they sew together the Furres, wherewith they cloath themselves: the Furrie side in Summer turned outward, and in Winter inward. That they covered their Houses with the Skins of Elkes and such like beasts, little esteemed among them. Finally, these Messengers of Oneeko, searched curiously into every matter, and returned home stored with costly Furres.

Conditions of the people. Government. Dyet. No Bread. Shooting.

Apparell.

Houses.

Now when as Oneeko understood by their report, that which he so much longed to know, he together with certayne others of his Friends, continued his Trafficke into those Countreyes for divers yeeres together: by meanes whereof the Oneekos grew very mightie, and bought great Possessions in all parts. Those that dwelled neere unto them beeing ignorant from whence all this wealth arose, greatly wondred at it. For the Oneekos builded Churches in some of their Villages. Yea, afterward they erected in the Towne of Osoil upon the Wichida, where at that time they dwelt, an exceeding faire Church, which was raysed from the very foundations of hewen stone. Finally, they knew no end of their goods.

Great wealth obtayned by continuance of this Voyage.

[III.iii.523.]

Now among the Russes it goeth for a common Proverbe, that Hee which hath no friends in Court, is scarce to be accounted in the number of the living. For most commonly it happeneth, that they that excell others in any thing, are presently envyed and falsly accused in the Princes Court, where if they have not

a friend to succour them, they are forth-with without hearing the cause, oppressed; yea, and utterly ruined. For which cause the Oneekos beeing growne to much wealth, as is said, got into the favour of one of the greatest in the Court, which was Borisodanova, Brother to the Wife of the Emperour Pheodar Evanowich then reigning; to whom also he succeeded in the Empire. Unto this Boris the Oneekos determined to reveale the whole matter: who first presenting him with gifts after the custome of the Countrey, prayed him to grant them hearing in a matter, which they had to deliver for the benefit of the whole Empire. Boris presently listning to this Petition, received them with extraordinary kindnesse: and after they had declared unto him the situation of the Countreys of Samoiedia, and Siberia, then what they had seene and observed therein, and how great Riches might thence arise unto the Empire of Moscovia. Boris presently grew into an ardent desire to set forward this businesse, entertayning them as his Children, and gracing them to the uttermost of his power, procuring them from the Emperour a most ample Priviledge, by which it was ordayned, That they should for ever enjoy the Lands which they possessed, and might dispose of them unto their Heires at their pleasure. And farther, if it happened they were abiding in the Citie of Moscua, he tooke them into his owne Sled: which among the Moscovites is the greatest kind of honour, especially being offered by principall Noblemen, such as then was Boris, a man of the greatest power, and in whom the chiefe authoritie of the Empire rested. Boris pondering these things attentively, signified the whole matter to the Emperour, to whom it was very pleasing; And not sleeping about the matter, employed therein certayne Captaynes and Gentlemen of small abilitie of his owne followers: commanding them to prepare themselves to goe to that Journey, in company of such as the Oneekos should appoint unto them, and that they should apparell themselves gallantly, and like unto

L. Boris, that Theodore Emperour. The Russes pronounce th as ph.

Imperiall priviledge.

Ambassadors, adding further certayne Souldiers, and Presents of small value to be distributed among the people, to which they should come: enjoyning them further to note diligently all Passages, Rivers, Highwayes, Woods, and what else they should meete with in their travell; as also to commit to memorie the names of them; that at their returne they might make a faithfull and true report thereof; adding further that they should intreat the people with all courtesie, and that they should seeke out some convenient place for building of Castles and Fortresses, and that in any case (if it were possible) they should bring backe with them into Moscovia, some of the Inhabitants of those Countryes.

The first Voyage set out by Boris Godonova.

These Messengers being sufficiently furnished with all things necessary for the Journey, namely, Apparell, Weapons, Money, and Presents, departing from the Moscua, not long after came to the River Wichida, and to the Oneekos: who also sent some of their owne people with them. Assoone as they were arrived into those parts, they began to performe what was given them in charge, shewing freely all tokens of courtesie unto the barbarous people, and carefully observing who were of greatest authoritie among them, to whom they used reverence and gave gifts, such as were of small and almost no value to themselves, but which seemed so precious unto the other, that when the Moscovites were comming a farre off towards them, they would stay for them with great dancings and clapping of their hands, and cast themselves downe at the feet of the Givers, being so gallantly attyred, accounting them altogether as Gods. The Moscovites using the Samoieds for their Interpretors, which had continued certayne yeeres in the Villages of Moscovia, to learne their Language, began to discourse with the Barbarians concerning their Emperour of Moscovie, whom they wonderfully extolled, and made him little lesse then an Earthly God, enterlacing other things with all, whereby those people were stirred up to wish that they might behold these things with their eyes.

These their desires were pleasing to the Moscovites, who signified that they were likewise well contented therewithall: Adding, that they would leave certayne pledges among them, which during the Samoieds abode in Moscovia, might learne their Language: And by this meanes they drew unto their purpose the good will of many of the people on the West-side of Obi, who of their owne accord subjected themselves to the authoritie of the Moscovites, and suffered them to lay a Taxation upon them, promising yeerely of every head (not excepting the Boyes that were but yet learning to handle the Bow) two skinnes of Sables; which to themselves were of no value, but esteemed of the Moscovites as precious as Jewels. These they promised to deliver to such a Treasurer as the Emperour should ordayne. Neither did they faile to performe the same.

They submit themselves to the Moscovites.

After this the Messengers passed over the River Obi, and travelled beyond it almost two hundred leagues toward the East and North-east, having seene by the way many wild beasts of strong shapes, most cleere Fountaynes, extraordinary Plants and Trees, pleasant Woods, and Samoieds of divers sorts, whereof some did ride on Elkes or Loshes, other were drawne in Sleds by Raine Deere, and others also were drawne by Dogges, which are equall to Harts for swiftnesse. Finally, many other things in their whole Journey they met with, not before seene, and therefore to be marvelled at: which orderly and truly noted downe, that they might more certainly report the same at their returne. And so at length taking with them some voluntarie Samoieds, and leaving there divers of their owne people to learne their Language, they returned backe into Moscovia; where at their first conveniencie they made knowne to Boris, and by him unto the Emperour the whole successe of their Voyage.

Travaile beyond Obi.

Elkes or Loshes.

[III.iii.524.]

Raine Deere.

Dogs equal in swiftnesse to Harts.

They marvelled at the Samoieds which were brought unto them, commanding them to make some shew of their cunning in shooting; which they did so perfectly, that

Samoieds shooting.

almost it seemed to any man incredible. For taking a piece of Coyne lesse then our *Pennie, and fastning it to the stocke of a Tree, and then going as farre from the same, as they could very hardly discerne it, they did every time that they did shoot so assuredly hit the same, that they did not once misse it. Where at many of the beholders did above measure wonder. *Stiver.

And on the other side, the Samoieds as greatly wondred both at the Moscovites manner of living and fashions, as also at the statelinesse of the Citie: neither did they without a certayne terrour behold the Emperour himselfe, so richly attired and mounted either on Horse-backe, or in his Coach drawne by many Horses together, and environed with so many Nobles most gallantly adorned. Then with admiration they beheld the Guards furnished with their Calivers, of whom about foure hundred waited on the Emperour at his going abroad. So oft also as they heard the ringing of the Bells, which are very many among the Moscovites, and saw so many faire shops, and the rest of the Cities beautie, they were altogether astonished, and thought themselves to bee in some Mansion of the Gods; wishing withall, that they were a while among their Countrey-men to tell them of all things. Yea, they reported themselves to be happie, that they had the fortune to serve so glorious an Emperour, whom they altogether accounted as a Divine power. The Meates which the Moscovites did set before them, they did greedily eate: whereby it plainely appeared, that the same were more pleasant to their taste, then the raw flesh, or fish dried in the winde, wherewith they feed themselves at home. Finally, they promised to receive the Emperour for their Lord; and to perswade their Countrey-men, inhabiting farre and wide to doe the same. They humbly also prayed the Emperour to vouchsafe them the favour, to send them certaine Governours to rule over them, and to whom they might pay the aforesaid Tribute. Concerning their Idolatrie, there was no speech made thereof, but they were left

to their owne customes. Notwithstanding, I thinke that the Christian Faith would easily be spred among them, if they had sufficient and godly Teachers. Neither doubt I but the Moscovites would have taken order therein, if they had not beene hindred by these most troublesome Warres.

These things so done as is declared, the Oneekos were raised to great Honours, and endowed with great Priviledges, as also with Supreme Authoritie over many places, adjoyning unto their Lands, enjoying Possessions lying one hundred miles asunder upon the Rivers of Duina, Whichida, and Suchana: so that they are very mighty and rich, and increase daily in greater Honours.

It was further ordayned by the Moscovites, that there should bee places chosen by the River Oby, and in the fields adjoyning unto it, fortified by the naturall situation for the building of Castles thereon, and furnishing them with Garrisons, and that there should be sent thither a chiefe Governour, principally for further discovering the Countrey, and bringing it under subjection. These things so ordayned, did likewise take effect. And first of all there were builded certaine Castles enclosed with certaine strong beames, cut out of the Woods thereby, and fastned one in another in double rewes, filled betweene with earth, and fortified with Garrisons; And so great a multitude of men is duely sent thither, that in some places there are Cities assembled, consisting of Poles, Tartars, Russes, and other Nations mingled together. For, into these parts are sent all that are banished, Murtherers, Traitors, Theeves, and the scumme of such as deserve death: some of which are for a time kept in prison, others enforced to continue there for certaine yeeres, every one according to the rate of his offence: whereby there are very populous assemblies of people growne together, who with the Castles already builded, doe almost make a pretie Kingdome: Many men of the meane sort, daily flocking thither, the rather for that they enjoy great priviledges, neither pay any thing for the Lands which they possesse.

Castles builded.

Sinke of bad people.

The whole Countrey is called Siberia, the Citie builded therein Siber. And in deed at the first, the Offenders among the Moscovites, did no lesse tremble at the name of Siberia, then *doe evill persons in London, when they are threatned with New-gate: for they were forthwith sent away into Siberia. But now the often inflicting of that punishment is almost growne into contempt. But Noblemen and great Personages, if at any time they incurre the Princes displeasure, doe as yet very much loath the name of Siberia. For many times both themselves, with their Wives and Families are sent away into those parts: where some Office is committed unto them, till the Emperours anger bee asswaged, and they called home into Moscovia.

Siberia and Siber.

**Then Malefactors of Amsterdam at the Prison, &c.*

I will now shew the way by which they travell out of Moscovia into those parts, and that in the best manner that I could get notice thereof. Which whatsoever it shall seeme to bee, I have not attayned unto it, without great paines and ready furtherance of some friends, which I found in the Court, while I continued in Russia: who though they were ready to pleasure me, and that I had beene very instant with them about it, yet with much adoe were brought to communicate this particular Journall unto me. For if at any time after, when the land should bee at quiet, it should any way come to light, doubtlesse it would cost them all their lives. For such is the disposition of the Russes, that they will not indure to have the secrets of their State to bee made knowne.

[III.iii.525.] *This Journall to the North-east was hardly obtayned by some friends in Court.*

The great danger for imparting this Journey.

§. II.

A briefe Description of the wayes and Rivers, leading out of Moscovia toward the East and North-east into Siberia, Samoiedia, and Tingoesia, as they are daily frequented by the Russes: with further Discoveries towards Tartaria and China.

Osoil.

FRom the Citie Osoil upon the River Wichida, where the Oneekos dwell, they goe against the streame, untill they come to Javinis, a little Towne built by the Russes, and it is distant from Osoil almost seventeene dayes journey. Whither before they come, they passe many Rivers and Woods. The River Wichida springeth out of the Mountaines of Jugoria, which to the South joyne upon Tartarie, and from thence runne Northwards to the Ocean Sea. Out of the same Mountaines issueth the River Petsora, which falleth into the Ocean Sea on this side the Streight of Waygats. From Javinis after three weekes journey, they come to Neem; a River so named of the gentle gliding of her streames through the Woods. For Neem in English signifieth Still or Dumbe. On this River they proceed about five dayes space with their Boats; and then, for that the Neem taketh his course another way, for shortning their journey, they must of force cause their stuffe to be carried by Land, the space of a league: And so they come to the Wisera, a River issuing out of certaine Rockes adjoyning to the Mountaines of Jugoria. These Rockes the Moscovites call Camenas. From hence they are carried downe the River Wisera, for the full space of nine dayes, untill they come to Soil Camscoy, a small Towne builded by the Moscovites, for refreshing of Travellers for a short space, which hence forward are to proceed on their Journey by Land. As for the Wisera, it keeping on his course somewhat farther, at length falleth into the Cam, which passing

Javinis 17. daies journey distant from Osoil, against the streame.

Jugoria.

River Petsora.

Neem River 3. weekes journey from Javinis.

From Neem to Wisera 5. dayes journey.

From Wisera to Soil Camscoy 9. dayes.

by Viatcam, a Towne of Moscovia, falleth into the great River Rha, commonly called Volga, which entreth with seventy branches into the Caspian Sea, as I have received from eye witnesses. *Volga by the Tartars called Etil.*

The Towne of Soil Camscoy is reasonably inhabited, having many Villages round about it. The Inhabitants, for the most part are Russes or Tartars. Here is great store of Cattell, and chiefly of Horses. Travellers having here somewhat refreshed themselves, doe lade their carriages on Horses, and travell for the most part through Mountaines full of Firres, Pines, and other trees of strange sorts. Betweene these Mountaines they passe over the Rivers Soiba, and from thence over Cosna, both running toward the North-east. *Soil Camscoy.* *The River Soiba.* *The River Cosna.*

Now these Mountaines are divided into three parts; whereof the two first are passed over each of them in two dayes, and the third in foure dayes. The first part is called Coosvinscoy Camen: The second Cirginscoy Camen: The third Podvinscoy Camen. And doubtlesse all these mountainous Countries are much different from the other Countries out of which they enter into them. For the Woods upon them, are fairer and thicker growne with trees, bearing every where divers sorts of Plants. These three Desarts are frequented by none in a manner but Tartars, and Samoieds, who onely hunt after those costly Furres, which are to pay their tribute to the Emperour of Moscovia. The Mountaines of Podvinscoy Camen are higher then the rest, and for the most part covered with Snow and Cloudes, and therefore difficult for Travellers to passe over: but by little and little they have a gentle descent. From thence they come to Vergateria, in which Towne they must abide untill the Spring, by reason of the River Toera, which arising not farre from thence, is all the rest of the yeere very shallow. *Mountaines in three parts.* *Coovinscoy Camen.* *Cirginscoy Camen.* *Podvinscoy Camen.* *Vergateria.* *Toera River.*

But the Spring approaching, when the Snow melts from the hoary Hills, and the Land waters arise, it is passed over with Skiffes and small Boats. Vergateria is the first Towne of the Countrey of Siberia, and was begun to be *Vergateria the first Towne of Siberia.*

builded with some other Townes within these one and twenty yeeres. It is reasonably full of buildings, and the lands about it are tilled as in Moscovia. Heere there is resident for the Emperour of Moscovia a Governour, which yeerely at the beginning of the Spring, by way of the Rivers doth distribute great store of Corne, and Victuals among the Castles with Garrisons throughout all Siberia: furnishing also in like manner the Moscovites, which remayne beyond the River Oby. For in those places the ground is not yet tilled; and the Samoieds, as before is said, for the most part feed on the flesh of wilde beasts.

1590. *Russian Governour.*

[III.iii.526.] *Five dayes journey to Japhanis.*

Downe the River Toera, in five dayes they come to Japhanis, a Towne builded and inhabited within these two yeeres. Thence againe they passe downe the Toera, and having proceeded two dayes thereon, they are enforced by reason of the often windings and turnings of the River, to cut over it in certaine places, for shortning of the way. In these places there now dwell here and there, Tartars and Samoieds, living for the most part upon Cattell and Fishing.

Tabab a mighty River 200. leagues from Toera.

At length leaving Toera, they come to the mighty River Tabab, distant from Vergateria about two hundred leagues. And from thence they proceed farther to Tinna, a populous Towne, and builded by those above mentioned.

From Japhanis to Tinna 12. dayes journey by sled.

But many travell also from Japhanis to Tinna, by Sleds in the Winter time, in the space of twelve dayes. And here is used much buying and selling of costly Furres, betweene the Muscovites, Tartars, and Samoieds. And this is a very convenient place, for such as determine to stay in the Countrey not above sixe moneths. But many doe search the further parts, and travell farre beyond the Oby, toward the East and South.

Many travell farre beyond Oby toward the East & South.

Tobolsca the chiefe Towne of Siberia.

From Tinna they come to Tobolsca, the chiefe of all the Townes of Siberia: wherein is the seat of the chiefe Governour of Siberia, and of the Moscovites that are in the same. To this place yeerely are brought from the other Townes of the whole Countrey, as well on this side,

as beyond Oby the tributes, which being brought together, and guarded with Souldiers, are after carried into Moscovia to the Emperour. Here also the Law is most severely administred: and all the other Governours in Samoiedia, and Siberia, are bound to obey him onely. In this Citie besides is the chiefe Market of commodities brought out of Moscovia; the Tartars out of the South parts, and almost farthest parts of Tartarie, and men of other Nations repairing thither: who, the farther that the report of these Countries reacheth, doe in so much the greater number assemble thither: whereby there ariseth great profit to the Moscovites. Furthermore, in divers places there are Churches and Chappels erected, wherein the Greeke Religion is exercised, which among the Russes, and other Northerne People is most used, although corrupted with divers Superstitions. But howsoever, no man is forced against his will to their Religion: but certaine gentle meanes are used by the Russes, by which these people are perswaded and wonne thereunto.

Tobolsca on the River Yrtis.

The Citie Tobolsca is situated on the River Yrtis, which with a most forcible streame, and as it were another Danubius, rising from the South, taketh his course toward the Oby, through which it seemeth to runne with the same course. On the other side is the River Tobol, of which the Citie taketh her name. Into this falleth the River Tassa, which seemeth to spring from the North-east, and from certaine Mountaines there upon the Coast. On the side of this River the Moscovites have of late builded a Towne, called Pohemy, inhabited with dwellers drawne out of Siberia, for no other cause, but that it is environed with an exceeding fertile soyle, as also with very pleasant Woods, wherein divers sorts of wilde beasts doe breed, as Panthers, Ounces, Foxes, Sables, and Marterns. Now Pohemy is distant from Tobolsca, about two weekes Journey toward the North-east. Yrtis with almost the like distance from Tobolsca, falleth into the Oby. And at the mouth of it was builded a Towne, called Olscoygorod, but afterward razed downe by commandement of

Tobol River.

Tassa River.

Pohemy a Towne.

Yrtis River.

Olscoygorod razed.

the Governour of Siberia: The cause whereof was not then knowne: which notwithstanding I guesse to have been either the extremity of the cold, or that the Towne stood nearer unto the Sea then they thought fit, and feared lest some inconvenience might grow thereby, for which cause about fiftie leagues above that razed Towne, they builded another upon an Iland of the River Oby, called Zergolta. From hence sayling up the River, they use small sayles, either because winds blow faintly, or for the highnesse of the shoare: so that, though the Oby bee almost every where very broad; notwithstanding, they drew their Boats in it with ropes, altogether after the same sort that they travell up the Rivers of Moscovia.

Zergolta a town builded in an Iland of the River Oby.

Two hundred leagues above Zergolta, they came to Noxinscoi, a Castle builded thirteene yeers agoe, at which time the Governour sent certaine men thither out of Siberia, to seeke out Countries profitable for mankind, and fit to build Townes in. Wherefore at that time they builded this Castle, and furnished it with a certaine Garrison, in a very pleasant, wholsome, warme, and fertile soyle, and wherein were great store of Beasts and Fowles of rare kinds. The very Castle being situated toward the South-east, by little and little grew to be a Citie. The Inhabitants whereof were enjoyned to proceed by degrees into further and more temperate Countries, and to trafficke truely in every place, and courteously and kindly to entreat all people that they met withall: whereby at length they might more largely extend the Dominion, and spread abroad the Russian Name. Wherefore flocking thither in great numbers, and piercing into the Inland foure hundred leagues, they found goodly Countries, but not inhabited. And whereas ten yeeres past, having sayled two hundred leagues up the River Oby, they lighted upon a Countrey very fruitfull and pleasant, which was very temperate, and free from all discommodities, and the Winters very short, and in a manner none at all, they tooke occasion thereupon to returne into Siberia, & to send word of these things into Moscovia. Boris

Noxinscoy Castle 200. leagues above Zergolta.

They travell 400. leagues into the Inland beyond Noxinscoy.

Godonova was then Emperor there, who having received such good tidings, forthwith commanded the Governour of Siberia, that with all speed hee should cause a Citie to bee builded there. The Governour obeyed, and there was a Castle builded upon his commandement, with certaine houses adjoyned; so that now it is a large Citie. [III.iii.527.] The name thereof is Tooma, because they understood, that a great multitude of Tartars in times past were seated there, of whom this Citie tooke that name for the pleasantnesse of the situation thereof. And it is reported that these Tartars had at that time a King, whose name was Altin: Whereby it came to passe, that the Citie which was first builded, held out many assaults of sundry people that dwelt in those Champion Countreyes. And now this Citie is so mightie, that in processe of time some reasonable great Kingdome is likely to grow out off it.

The Reigne of Boris Godonova.

The Citie Tooma.

Tartar King.

Furthermore, betweene this Castle of Noxinscoi, and the Citie Tooma, and Siberia, the Moscovites daily doe discover many people dwelling in the In-land parts, some of whom call themselves Ostachies, and now are growne into one bodie with the Tartars, Samoieds, and Russes, living friendly together; they have many Kings among them, almost like unto the Indians (I speake of the pettie Kings, not of the greater Kings of India.) And to bee briefe, the Moscovites have proceeded so farre into that mayne Land, that we have just cause to marvell thereat. Moreover, there are many Castles and Townes betweene the Rivers of Obi and Yrtis, builded almost at the same time when Tobolsca was, and are now proper Townes: whose Inhabitants are Moscovites, Tartars, and Samoieds of their kind, which we call, The tame Samoieds, in respect of those which are altogether wild.

Ostachies a people.

And the first of the Townes is Tara: from which place it is neere ten dayes journey between Obi and Yrtis. Then Jorgoetum, builded about fifteene yeares past. Besobia, and Mangansoiscoigorod, both of them builded above Jorgoetum toward the South. The Inhabitants

Tara a Towne.
Jorgoetum.
Besobia.
Mangansoiscoigorod.

that dwell on the west side of the River Obi, seeke daily to discover more and more. On this side of Obi are seated the Cities Tobolsca, Siberia, Beresaia, and certaine others, builded upon certaine Rivers: and more are builded daily.

Narim and Tooma beyond Obi.

Beyond Obi are Narim, Tooma, and divers other Cities, the Inhabitants whereof insteed of Horses use Reyne Deere, or exceeding swift Dogs, which they fatten with divers kinds of fishes, and especially with Thornebacks; because they thinke they be made the stronger with that kinde of food. Jorgoetum, whereof I spake before, is builded in an Iland of the River Obi.

Reyne Deere and exceeding swift Dogs used insteed of Horses and fed with Fishes.

Telta River to the East beyond Obi. Comgof-scoi Castle.

Also above Narim as men travaile toward the East, they meete with the River Telta: on the banke whereof they have builded a Castle, named Comgof-scoi. The garrison Souldiers of which Castle, together with the Inhabitants of Narim, about seven yeeres past, were commanded by the Governour of Siberia to travell East, and diligently to search what unknowne Nations dwelt in those parts. Therefore travelling through certaine vast Deserts, for the space of tenne weekes or there abouts, passing in the way through many faire Countreys, many Woods, and Rivers, at length they espied certaine Cottages set up in the fields, and certaine Hords or Companies of people. But because they had Samoieds and Tartars for their guides, which were acquainted with those places, they were not afraid. The people came unto them reverently, and with humble behaviour, and signified by the Samoieds and Tartars, that they were called Tingoesi, and that their dwelling was upon the banke of the great River Jeniscè, which they said did spring from the South South-east, but that they knew not the head thereof. These people were deformed with swellings under their throats, and in their speech they thratled like Turkie-cocks. Their language seemed not much to differ from the Samoieds, which also understood many of their words.

Ten weekes travell East-ward from Obi, wherein the Tingoesies were first discovered. Tingoesie a people dwelling in Companies upon the great River Jeniscè. The Tingoesies deformed with swellings under their throats: a disease attending drinkers of Snow-water.

Mountaines on the East side of Jeniscè casting out fire and brimstone.

Jeniscè being a River farre bigger then Obi, hath high mountaines on the East, among which are some that cast out fire and brimstone. The Countrey is plaine to the

West, and exceeding fertile, stored with plants, flowers, and trees of divers kinds. Also many strange fruits do grow therein, and there is great abundance of rare Fowles. Jeniscè in the spring overfloweth the fields about seventie leagues, in like manner as they report unto us, as Nilus doth Egipt. Wherwith the Tingoesi being well acquainted, doe keepe beyond the River, and in the mountaines, untill it decrease, and then returne, and bring downe their heards of Cattell into the plaines.

The overflowing of Jeniscè in the spring: as it may seem from melted Snow.

The Tingoesi being a very gentle people, by the perswasion of the Somoieds, without delay submitted themselves to the same Governours which they obeyed, whom they reverenced as a kind of Gods. But what God they worship, or with what rites, it is uncertaine, neither as yet can bee knowne, the Moscovites being negligent searchers into such things.

Neither hereafter will I marvell, though the Streight of Waygats bee stopped up to the North-east, with such huge Mountaines of Ice, since the Rivers Obi and Jeniscè, and very many more, whose names are not yet knowne, powre out so huge a quantitie thereof, that in a manner it is incredible. For it commeth to passe in the beginning of the spring, that in places neere unto the Sea, the Ice through the excessive thicknesse and multitude thereof, doth carrie downe whole woods before it. And without doubt this is the cause, that about the shoares of the Streight of Waygats, so great abundance of floting wood is every where seene. And whereas in that Streight neere unto Nova Zembla, it is extreame cold, it is no marvell, if in regard of the narrownesse of the Streight, so huge heapes of Ice are gathered and frozen together, that in the end they grow to sixtie, or at least to fiftie fathoms thicknesse, as this present yeere (1612) they measured the same, which at the cost of Isaac Lamer went thither in a small Barke, in whose companie the said Isaac Lamer would have sent mee, but I would not. For I am readie to prove, that this is no passible way, and that they will still lose their labour, whosoever shall attempt the same,

Reason why Waygats is stopped with Ice.

Ice 60. or 50. fathoms thicke in the Streight of Waygats.

[III.iii.528.]

unlesse they take another course in the businesse. But let us returne to our purpose.

The first voyage Eastward beyond the River Jenisce.

Many Nations dwell toward the South, which are in warre one with another. Such are the Zagatay Tartars, as before in Goes is seene.

Furthermore, those whom I mentioned before, undertooke a long Journey beyond the River Jenisce Eastward, and were somewhat afraid to turne to the South, taking with them certaine Tingoesies, by whom they were informed, that many Nations dwelt toward the South, which differed much from them, whose Kings were most commonly in warre one with another. But having travelled certaine dayes to no great purpose, at length they returned home; Yet before their returne they gave order to the Tingoesies, to search those Countreys more thorowly; who promise that they would doe so: And they renewed the league which formerly they had made with the Moscovites. The Moscovites at their departure, left divers of their people in those parts, and also certaine Samoieds and Tartars their confederates, after they had bestowed some small gifts among the Tingoesies.

The second voyage East beyond the River Jenisce.

Certaine people taken.

The River Pisida.

Bells.

The yeere following, the Tingoesies sent divers of their owne people Eastward: who travelling somewhat farther then they had done before, at length found another mightie River, somewhat lesser then Jenisce, but as swift as it: And following the course thereof some few dayes, they lighted upon certaine people whom they tooke, being swifter a foot then they: But they could not understand their language, saving that by certaine signes and words of the Salvages, which often repeated om om, they conjectured that on the other side of the River, they heard it often thunder. They added also, that they had often heard the noyse of men in those parts: And pointing to the River with their fingers, they often repeated the word Pisida: whereby the Tingoesies gathered, that that should bee the name of the River; but by the voyces om om, the Moscovites did afterward gather, that they were knollings of Bells. The Tingoesies at their returne from thence, carried with them divers of the people of that Countrey, which died all by the way, either for feare, or through change of ayre. The Tingoesies were verie sorrie

for their deaths. For at their returne they affirmed, that they were men of good understanding, well set, with small eyes, flat faced, browne colour, and enclining to tawnie.

The description of the people dwelling upon the River Pisida. Such are the people of the East both Tartars and Chinois.

When the Moscovites understood these things by the Samoieds, which returned into Siberia out of the Countrey of the Tingoesies, eftsoones they were stirred up with a great desire to search out the farther parts of that Countrey, wherefore they became sutors to the Governour, that they might bee sent thither with some others joyned with them. Hee presently yeelded to their request, granting unto them a certaine companie of Souldiers, and enjoyned them curiously to search out all things, and to take with them Tingoesies, Samoieds, and Tartars. So beeing about seven hundred men, they passed the River Obi, and came to the River Jenisce through the countreys of the Samoieds and Tingoesies. And passing the River, they marched forth Eastward, having the Tingoesies for their guides: which did not onely serve them as guides, but also plentifully provided all the company with victuals, taking with wonderfull dexteritie, Fowles, Goats, Reyne Deere, and such like wilde beasts: as also no small quantitie of fish out of the Rivers which they met in the way. Having travailed as farre as the River Pisida, they pitched their Tents on the banks thereof, with purpose to stay there till it were passable, the Ice being shortly to breake up, because the spring was at hand, at which time they came thither, yet they durst not passe over the River Pisida; having now plainly heard the sound, whereof they were advertised before: which they certainly judged to bee nothing else but the towling of Brazen Bells; and when the wind blew from the farther side of Pisida, they sometimes heard the noyse of men and horses. Moreover they saw certayne sayles, though but a few; whereby they conjectured that they were vessels, which sayled downe the streame. They sayd further, that the sayles were square, like the Indian sayles, as wee suppose. But seeing no people at all on that side of the River where they remained, after they had staied there a certaine space, and

The third voyage beyond Jenisce Eastward.

The towling of brazen Bells: of which they have in China, and perhaps in the North parts above it.

Horses in Pisida.

Vessels sayling downe Pisida with square sayles.

had perceived that in the spring time the River did greatly swell (which neverthelesse they can hardly affirme for a certaintie, since the shoare is high on both sides:) At length by very great journeys, and yet not before Autumne they returned home to Siberia; reporting, and that upon their oathes, That in the moneths of April and May, they were very much delighted with the exceeding faire shew of that Countrey; And that they had seene therein many rare Plants, Flowers, Fruits, Trees, Fowles, and wild Beasts. But the Moscovites are nothing curious in such things, as men that seeke after nothing but gaine, in all things else very negligent and rude.

They came not home till Autumne.

The plesantnesse of this Countrey in Aprill and May.

These newes being brought to the Court of Moscovia, the Emperour Boris, and the Noblemen that were with him, much wondering thereat, and inflamed with a great desire to search out exactly all particulars, resolved the yeere next ensuing, to send Ambassadours thither, which should carrie presents with them, and should take Tartars, Samoieds, and Tingoesies in their companie. And they were enjoyned to search out the further side of the River Pisida, and to make a league of friendship with the Kings if they found any, and set downe in writing all things that they could observe by the way, and should make report of them most exactly. But these things did not take effect, because of the breaking out of the civill warres, among the Moscovites in the meane season.

[III.iii.529.] I am of opinion, that in this countrey is the beginning, and the bounds of the Kingdome of Cataia, which bordereth upon China. Yet I feare the Moscovites will lose their labour, if they ever returne thither. But time will declare the event hereof.

The opinion of the Author of this Story.

Yet for all this, by the commandement of the Governours, even in the time of this warre, there was a voyage made into those parts, many Inhabitants of Siberia being employed in the same, who passing over the River Jeniscé, travelled further on foot, divers of whom died by the way, being not accustomed to hardnesse. These also found many things agreeable to the relation of the former.

The fourth Voyage to the River Pisida.

And they likewise did oftentimes heare the towlings of brazen Bells. But upon the disswasions of the Tingoesies they durst not passe the River: But they stayed awhile in the Mountains, out of which they saw oftentimes flames of fire ascend; & they brought thence some small quantitie of brimstone, and of touch-stone: so that some rich Mines seeme to bee in those hills. Moreover, the Governour of Siberia caused certaine covered Boats to bee made, and commanded them to saile downe by the shoare of the River Obi, in the first beginning of the spring, and to coast the same continually till they came to the River of Jeniscé; wherein they should afterward saile certaine dayes, discharging it selfe (as hee thought) into the sea. He sent others likewise to travell over Land: giving commandement to both of them before they went: To the Land-men, that they should stay by the Rivers side untill the Boates arrived; and that if they did not arrive there, then after one yeere they should returne. To them that were in the Boates, over whom he made one Lucas Captayne, he gave in charge, diligently to discover the Coast, and whatsoever thereon was worthy to bee observed. They did as they were enjoyned. And the Mariners arriving at the mouth of the River Jeniscé, met with certayne of them which travelled over Land, which were sent before in Boats and Skiffes downe the River.

The towling of Brazen Bells.

Mountaynes casting out flames of fire.

The fift Voyage by Obi and the Sea-coast to the River Jeniscé.

Lucas Captain of the Discoverie by Sea.

In their journey, they found all things in a manner to fall out as the Governour had fore-told. But Lucas being dead by the way, and some others, they thought it the best course, for both of the Companies to returne the same way that they came: And when they came home into Siberia, they declared unto the Governour the whole successe of their journey: which caused the same to be sent unto the Emperour: And this Relation is layed up among the Treasures of Moscovia untill these Warres bee ended; and then, as it is thought, it shall bee examined. But wee feare that by this time it is perished, which if it be so, truly it is much to be lamented, in regard that they have found so many rare and sundry Ilands, Rivers,

Fowles, and wild beasts, and that farre beyond the River Jeniscé.

Taes River falleth into Obi.

Moreover, the River Taes falleth into the River of Obi, springing as it seemeth, out of places neere unto the River Jeniscé, and out of a great Wood in those parts; out of which Wood another River seemeth also to have his Fountayne not farre from the River Taes, and falleth into the River of Jeniscé. So that even from Obi they travell by water along the Coast of the Samoieds, and passing only two leagues over Lands, they meet with the River Torgalse, downe which with the streame they fall into the River Jeniscé. And this is a very easie way, and lately found out by the Samoieds, and the Tingoesies.

The River Torgalse falleth into Jeniscé.

An Over-hall of two leagues only.

Doubtlesse (it is to be lamented) that the Hollanders have not had good successe in passing the Streight of Way-gats; but surely they know not the right way to attempt the same. For if they attempt it by shippes, though it were an hundred times, it would hardly once take effect. But if they would throughly discover these Countreyes, then they should stay two or three yeares about Petsora and Way-gats, where they should not want good Havens, nor Victualls: and from thence they should send out some with small Boates to discover the further parts, by the very example of the Russes, whose Friendship if they would procure unto themselves, they should easily find Guides and Pilots: and so at length all these Coasts would throughly bee discovered.

The right way to discover the North-east parts. Note.

Doubtlesse goodly Countreyes would bee found out, and not only Ilands, but the Mayne Land also. Yet there is just cause to doubt, whether America above China joyne not with some of the three parts of the old World: As wee see Africa joyned unto Asia, with a narrow necke of Land upon the Redde Sea. And doubtlesse, this seemeth likely to bee true. For who can affirme, that they bee separated? Saving that they have found some things in the Writings of prophane Authors, whereby it may be prooved, and bring many Arguments from thence.

And though these parts bee not joyned together, yet they must needs bee divided with some small Streight.

§. III.

[III.iii.530.]

A Note of the Travels of the Russes over Land, and by Water from Mezen, neere the Bay of Saint Nicholas to Pechora, to Obi, to Yenisse, and to the River Geta, even unto the Frontiers of Cataia; brought into England by Master John Mericke, the English Agent for Moscovie, and translated out of the Russe by Richard Finch.

FRom Mezen to Pechora, is a thousand Versts; and the same is travelled with Reyne Deere. From Pechora to Montnaja Reca, or The troubled River, and to the parts of Mongosey, it is travelled in Boats called Coaches in seven Weekes. At this place is a certayne Over-hal, where the foresaid Boats or Vessels are drawne over by men. Out off Montnaja Reca, or The troubled River, passing this Over-hall, they enter into Zelena Reca, or the Greene River. From Zelena Reca, or the Greene River to Obi, is three Weekes rowing, running downe with the Current; but with a faire wind it is no more but three dayes and three nights Journey. From Obi to Taes Castle, is a Weekes rowing. From Taes Castle to the River Yemissey upon long Woodden Pattens through the Snow, is three Weekes travaile. But through the deepe Channell in the afore-said Vessels, called Coaches, is foure Weekes travayle. It bringeth them to a place, called Toorou-hansko Zeemovia, that is, The Wintering place of one called Toorouhan. Having travelled to this Toorou-hansko Zeemovia, they come out on the backe side to a place called, The River of Tingoosie, being a stonie or Rocky River, which falleth into the River Yenisey. In that place live the Tingoosies, and people of the afore-said Land of Tingoosi.

Mezen.

Pechora.

Montnaja Reca.

The Voloc, or Over-hall.

Zelena Reca.

Obi River.

Taes River and Castle.

Toorou-hansko Zeemovia.

Tingoosie River.

Yenisey River.

The Boulashies. Seeahee. Yenisey the greater and lesse. Imbaki. Ostaki. Geta River.

Beyond them live a people called The Boulashees: And beyond the Boulashees inhabit the people of Seelahee. These people report concerning Yenisey the Great, and Yenisey the Lesser: That beyond this fore-said Yenisey inhabit the people Imbaki and the Ostaki, which are a kind of Tartars. Also beyond the Tingoosies is a River called Geta, which was travailed by the Russes of Vashen, and Russes of Pechora. These men by report lived in the parts of Geta, sixe yeeres. After which one of the Russes of Vashen, named Wolfe, returned into Siberia; and he reported, that he was travailing from Tingoosie to Geta a Summer. Likewise, this said Wolfe reported, that a Samoied told him, that in Yenisey the greater were Vessels of a great burthen, seene to be drawne with the Rope, by a very great number of people: but hee could not tell what people they were, neither whither they did intend to travaile with the said Vessels.

Summers travell from Tingosey to Geta.

Vessels of greater burthen drawne with the Rope, a thing used in China.

Chap. VIII.

A Voyage made to Pechora 1611. Written by William Gourdon of Hull, appointed chiefe Pilot, for Discoverie to Ob, &c.

THe eleventh of Aprill we weighed Anchor at Blacke-wall in the River of Thames, in a ship called the Amitie; whereof James Vadun was Master, and sayling along the Coasts of England, Scotland, Norway, and Finmarke, on the eleventh of the next moneth of May, wee found our selves in the latitude of 71. degrees 40. minutes.

The twelfth, wee ranne fortie eight leagues North North-east, the wind being at South South-east, and found our selves in the latitude of 73. degrees 42. minutes, and at night wee had shoaldings of Cherie Iland: for wee were enjoyned by our Commission to touch there, although it were three degrees to the North out of our way.

The thirteenth, being Whit-sunday it cleered up, and then we did see Cherie Iland six leagues East South-east from us. *Cherie Iland.*

The fourteenth, being faire weather, we stood to the Northwards, thinking to have gone on shoare, but we could not for Ice, and labouring to Land on the South side of the Iland, wee met with Jonas Poole about Eeven- ing in the Elizabeth, who came as then to the Iland, and was set forth by the Right Worshipfull Company of our Russian Merchants, to discover further Northward, from eightie degrees toward the North Pole. Then we stood to the Eastward, where wee found great store of Ice. *Jonas Poole.*

The fifteenth, we spent on the South-side of the Iland, in hope of the arrivall of the Marie Margaret, which being a ship of nine score Tunnes, was set forth very chargeably by the aforesaid Russian Company, and had in her sixe Baskes, being excellent Whale-killers of Saint John de Luz, for the killing of the Whale on the Coast of Greenland, in a Road called Crosse Road, standing exceeding farre to the North, even in the latitude of 79. degrees and better. The same day at night, seeing that there we could doe no good, we determined to proceed on our Voyage for the River of Pechora: and Letters being given one to the other for Testimoniall of our meeting in that place, we left Jonas Pooley, and directed our course to the Eastward. *Six Biscainers.* *Crosse Road.* [III.iii.531.]

The two and twentieth of May, we came to a small Iland, called Bigs Hole by Tapani Harbour. The three and twentieth, we arrived at the Ile of Kildin in Lappia. *May.* *Bigs Hole.* *Kildin in Lappia.*

The foure and twentieth, Josias Logan, which was appointed Factor for Pechora, and my selfe with two more, went to Olena, and stayed there all the five and twentieth, being Saturday, where wee found a ship of Yarmouth, whereof James Wright of Hull was Master, of whom we learned the proceeding of the Hollanders. *Olena.*

The seventh of June, in the morning we had sight of the Coast of Lappia, a little short of Cape Comfort, and *June.* *Cape Comfort.*

A ship of Amsterdam. met with a ship of Amsterdam, by which we sent Letters to Master John Mericke our English Agent, then Resident in Colmogro; and we had two Hogsheads of Beere of them.

The eight, we plyed to Cape Comfort, the wind at South-east.

The ninth being Sunday, in the morning wee put off from the Coast of Lappia, to crosse over the White Sea, to the Cape of Callinos corruptly, and commonly called Candinos. At noone we passed through some Ice, the weather being thicke and foggie.

Callinos. The eleventh, we plyed to the Cape of Callinos, passing through much Ice, the wind at North North-east. And therefore wee thought it better to goe to the Southward againe: and in the Eevening we came to an Anchor in ten fathomes. This night wee had a sore storme; the winde at North-east.

The twelfth, in the morning we weighed, and in weighing brake our Anchor: and then wee stood to the Southward, and came to an Anchor; and at night wee went *They goe on shoare.* on shoare for Wood, and Water, where was good store of Drift Wood: And within a ledge of Rockes on *Ten Lodias of Pinega bound for Nova Zembla.* the West-side of Callinos there lay ten Lodias or Russe small shippes, some fourteene or fifteene Tunnes the biggest (of a Towne called Pinega) all which were bound for Nova Zembla, to kill the Morsse: with the men of which Fleete wee had some conference, and did see their Provisions: which were Launces of their fashion, and Harping Irons; their Victuals were Salt-fish, Butter, Bacon, Meale, their Drinke Quasse.

The sixteenth, in the morning wee weighed and stood our course for the Ile of Colgoieve, the wind being at South South-west, and did find the Ice that was close to the shoare to bee open: but at night finding that we could not sayle our course for the Ice, we thought it better to stay, and so came to an Anchor.

The seventeenth, wee weighed in the morning, and stood along the shoare, which did lye South-east by East,

and North-west by West. And in the after-noone, wee went on shoare with our shallop, and came to a River, which we called Hakluyts River, where wee did see certayne Samoieds, with their Deere: but when they perceived us, they fled into the Land, carrying with them such things as in haste they could get together: but left most of their necessaries, as Bowes, Arrowes, long Speares, wanting Iron heads burnt at the end, Harping Irons, Wimbles, and Morsse-skinnes, lying hid, some in one place, some in another: which wee caused our men to uncover, and would not suffer them to take any thing away; only I tooke the Pizzell of a Morsse which they had lately killed; and Josias Logan left a Knife, that they might not shunne us hereafter. The same Eevening we anchored and stayed all night.

The eighteenth, wee weighed, and at noone wee came to an Harbour; which, as wee thinke, was the very same where Master Stephen Burrow was in his Discoverie of Vaigatz, and Nova Zembla, 1556. where there is twelve, or thirteene foot at high water upon the Barre, and within six or seven fathomes. Also in this place were three Lodias of Pinega, which when they saw us come in, rowed out, and at night returned, and some of their men came aboord of us, and told us that they could not passe for Ice; and said, that they were bound for Sharskai Gooba, or Shar Bay to fish for certayne fishes; which they call Omilie, which are somewhat like a Shad, and for Morsses.

A good Harbour. Stephen Burrow.

Three Lodias of Pinega.

Sharkai Gooba, which is the great Bay of Hayuburi.

The twentieth, Josias Logan and my selfe went over to the Mayne, which was distant two leagues, and came to a great River in 67. degrees and 40. minutes, where there had beene people: and there we saw foure or five great white fishes swimming, which are foure or five yards long, and called by the Russes Belluga, whereof they make Oyle, whereof afterward we found at Pechora, great store to be spoyled.

They land the third time. A great River.

The one and twentieth, we sent our men for Wood, for there was good store of Flote-wood as we had found all the Coast along, but none growing.

Flote-wood.

The two and twentieth, in the morning we came over the Barre, the winde at South South-east, directing our course for the Ile of Colgieve; and at noone wee passed through much Ice, which lay so thicke that wee could not sayle, but tooke in our sayles, and made fast our ship to a piece of Ice.

The three and twentieth, in the morning wee set sayle, and plyed to the Wind-ward, the wind at South-east, with raine: and at night wee mored to a Cake of Ice.

[III.iii.532.] The foure and twentieth, in the morning we set sayle, and plyed to wind-ward, the wind at South-west to get cleere of the Ice; and at noone we observed and found our selves to bee in 67. degrees 12. minutes, and in the after-noone we had sight of the Land againe, being foure leagues to the Southwards of the aforesaid Harbour; and finding the Tyde to set very sore upon the shoare to the Westward, we stood to the Eastward, bearing through the Ice, and at twelve at night wee mored to a piece of Ice.

A sore tyde upon the shoare.

The five and twentieth, we loosed and sayled to the Eastward, till we found the Ice so thick, that we could not passe further: then we made fast to a piece of Ice: the wind at North North-east, thicke fogge, and some raine. The six and twentieth, we set our fore top-sayle, the wind at North North-east, blowing hard and thicke fogge: we stood sometimes one way, sometimes another, as we could find the Ice open; and at noone we had sight of the shoare, being foure or five leagues off, and the Ice lying so thicke, that we could make no meanes to get farther from the shoare: wherefore wee made fast to a great Cake of Ice. The seven and twentieth, wee lay still, the Ice lying very close, with thicke foggie weather: the wind at North North-west.

The eight and twentieth, in the morning it was cleere, and the Land did beare North by West seven leagues off, and then we set sayle, passing to the Eastward till noone: then we made fast to a piece of Ice, it being very foggie: the wind at West North-west. And the same

day at eight in the after-noone wee loosed from the Ice, it being cleere, the wind at North-west. And at midnight we got cleere of the Ice, keeping our course East North-east.

The nine and twentieth, at eight in the morning, we had sight of Cape Swetinos, the winde at North North-west, with thicke foggie weather: At noone, finding the Ice to lye close to the shoare, we cast about to the Westward. And at eight in the Eevening, wee came to an Anchor in tenne fathomes; and then I went on shoare, where there were two Russian Crosses: the Land was smooth, and full of fresh Ponds, being a kind of white Chalke Cliffes. At our comming aboord, we weighed and stood neerer to the shoare because of the Ice.

Cape Swetinos.

William Gourdan goeth on shoare. Two Russe Crosses.

The thirtieth, in the morning the Ice came so extreamely upon us, that we could not weigh; for our men being cast from the Capstan, our Cable brake, and so wee lost an Anchor. Then seeing wee could not passe to the Eastward, wee stood to the Westward of Cape Swetinos, into the afore-said deepe Bay in seven fathomes: the wind at East North-east, cleere weather.

A deepe Bay Westward of Cape Swetinos.

The first of July, we went on shoare to see if there were any thing to take notice of: but wee found nothing worth the going. For only we saw a wild Deere, and an House of Wood after the Russe fashion, where people had beene. The second, likewise we rode still, and going againe on shoare we did see the Ice all gone to the Eastward; and so came aboord. The third, at sixe in the morning we weighed, the wind at East North-east, and plyed through some Ice: and at foure in the after-noone we got cleere of it: and at eight of the clocke wee came to an Anchor, it being calme and cleere weather: then I went on shoare, where we were first; and came aboord because of the great abundance of Muskitos or Gnats. At our comming having the winde at South-west, we set sayle and stood along the shoare.

They goe on Land againe.

An house of Wood.

They goe on Land the sixth time.

Abundance of Muskitos.

The fourth, we sayled along the shoare with faire weather, having the winde variable. The fifth, wee plyed

to the Eastward, wind at North-east by East faire weather. The sixth, wee plyed along the shoare, the wind at North by East. And in the after-noone wee passed through much Ice. The seventh, we plyed through the Ice to the Eastward, the winde at East North-east, thicke and foggie. The eight, with cleere weather, the winde at North North-east, we plyed to the Eastward; and at noone observed the Sunne having 69. degrees 40. minutes: At Eevening we had sight of the Land to the Eastward of the River of Pechora; and thinking to get into the shoare we could not for the shoald water.

The ninth, in the morning we stood backe to find the Barre or entrance of the River of Pechora. And in the after-noone, seeing the Sand over the Ice, which was not broken off from the shoare, I went thither with my shallop, and going on shoare, we espyed three Crosses, and certayne Russes walking upon the Sand; who told us, that that was the place that we desired: and one of them came aboord our ship to bring us over the Barre. But comming to shoald water, wee durst not trust his skill, but stood backe againe, and came to an Anchor in foure fathomes.

Crosses found and certayne Russes at the mouth of Pechora.

The tenth, in the morning I went to sound the Barre; where we had eleven and tenne, and in one place but nine foot water. And comming aboord wee set sayle to come in. And in going over the Barre we were on ground; but, God be thanked, wee got well over, and came to an Anchor in six fathomes.

The depth of the Barre of the River of Pechora. They passe over the Barre, and ride in six fathoms water.

The eleventh, the Ice brake off from the shoare, and came so fast upon us, that we could not shift from it, but were put on ground upon a Sand; yet God be thanked without any harme. The same day leaving our ship lying so, Josias Logan our Factor, my selfe, William Pursglove, being rowed in our Skiffe by six of our Mariners, tooke our way toward the Towne over a shoald Sea, which the Russes cal, The Dry Sea: which may very wel be so called. For on the starboord or West side going up is a low dry Sand, and on the Larboord or East side is all shoald water, as two, three, or foure foote water. And

They goe up the River of Pechora, over The Dry Sea.

seven leagues within to the South-west is an Iland, called Dolgoi, that is to say, The long Iland, which you must keep on the Larboord or East side, & then steer away South South-west, neere upon twentie leagues, all in shoald water; and then you shall come to the sight of an high Land called The Bolvan; which in the Russe Tongue signifieth, a Blocke: which you must leave on the Larboord, or East side. And be sure to keepe the channell, which doth trend South-west, and South-west by West. By report of the Inhabitants the River hath two and seventie mouthes.

Dolgoi is seven leagues up from the Barre.

[III.iii.533.]

The Bolvan, or East headland of the River Pechora.

The channell trendeth South-west.

The twelfth, we passed over the Drie Sea, (which the Russes call in their Language, Suchoi Morie,) to the mouth of the River Pechora: where we found many small Ilands, some a mile, some two miles in length, and so shoald water, that wee could not get to the shoare with our Shallop, but lay in her all night at an anchor, being uncertaine which way to take: and seeing so many entrances before us, we could hit right at none. The thirteenth, in the morning wee got to an Iland, at the very mouth of the River, where wee stayed all the day, having much wind and fogge. The fourteenth, being Sunday, we set sayle from the Iland, the Sea going very high: and at noone we came by Gods direction, into one of the chiefest entrances of the River Pechora; and came to an house, where there were two and their families, who made us the best entertaynment that they could, and gave us directions how to goe to the Towne.

An Iland neere the mouth of the River.

They find one of the chiefest entrances of the River.

The fifteenth, we came to a Sari or Ferme house of one of the principall men of the Towne; who bid us kindly welcome: and as the place and season affoorded, hee made us good cheere. He lay there at this time, to take Duckes, Swannes, Geese, and other Fowles: for then was the time of the yeere. Their feathers they sell, and their bodies they salt for winter provision. He also gave us a man to bring us to the Towne.

They come to a Ferme house of a principall man of the Towne.

The sixteenth, we came to the Towne of Pustozera, which standeth upon a Lake. There was no Gentleman

The Towne is called Pustozera.

or Governour in the Towne at our arrivall: for he had destroyed the Castle, and fled away the last Winter. For certaine dayes wee could have no answer, whether wee might stay or no, all the chiefe men being abroad for their Winters provision. But the chiefe Customer Matphe, sending men to know their mindes, the three and twentieth day of the same moneth of July, we were embraced of them, and desired to stay, and they appointed us an house to dwell in. Furthermore, they told us that the River Pechora was more convenient for us, then the River of Duyna: and that a great part of the goods, which come to Colmogro upon Dwina, doe passe in one place or other by the River Pechora, which, they say, runneth through Siberia; and how much farther they themselves know not. The five and twentieth, in the morning, having one of their Boats full with feathers, wee departed from the Towne, taking our leaves of Josias Logan, who stayed behind.

Pechora runneth through Siberia, and farther.

The sixe and twentieth, we came downe to the Bolvan, where wee went aboord of two Coches of some fifteene tunnes a piece, bound for Mougunzea. Here I went on shoare, and bought an airie of Slight-falcons, being very young. The seven and twentieth, in the Eevening wee came aboord our ship, and the same night tooke in the Feathers, and laded their Boat againe with Meale, sending her up to the Towne by the Russes that brought her downe.

Two Coches of Lodias, bound for Mougunzea.

He buyeth two Falcons.

The eight and twentieth, we got out our goods, which were appointed to be left at Pechora, under the charge of Master Logan, and made ready our ship. The nine and twentieth, wee weighed anchor, and fell lower downe, the wind North North-east. The thirtieth, wee rode still, and in the after-noone two Lodias that were fishing for Omulais, went out to Sea, the wind at North-west by West. The one and thirtieth, the wind being at West North-west, there came in foure and twentie sayles of Lodias or Coches, all bound for Mugunzea: but the yeere being farre spent they gave over their Voyage, and went

The stocke of goods left in Pustozera.

24. Lodias bound for Mugunzea, which is to the Eastward of Ob.

to the Towne of Pustozera, to winter. Out of one of the which Lodias we hired a man belonging to the Towne, to stay with William Pursglove and Marmaduke Wilson, by our goods, till the Lodia came, which we had hired. Which two were to winter with Master Logan in the Countrey. The aforesaid foure and twentie Lodias were of Colmogro, Pinega, Mezen, and Pustozera.

The first of August, the wind at West, we weighed, and, God bee thanked, came safely over the Barre of Pechora. From thence wee directed our course for Nova Zembla: and at noone we came to Ice: where having sayled many points of our Compasse, at mid-night wee tooke in our sayles, and made fast to a piece of Ice; the weather being very thicke and foggie. The second being very cleere, and seeing no way to passe to the Northward for Ice, we determined to return; and because the yeere was so farre spent to go for Cherie Iland, to see if it pleased God to give us there any good successe, for the bearing of the charges of this Voyage. So wee loosed, and at eight in the Eevening wee got cleere off the Ice, keeping our course by the edge of it, which did lie East by North, and East North-east. The third, at noone we had sight of Colgoieve Iland, and tooke the latitude, being on the North side of the Iland which was 69. degrees 20. minutes: and at night I went on shoare to see the Land, which was high clay ground: and I came where there was an airie of Slight-falcons: but they did flie all away save one, which I tooke up, and brought aboord. This Ile of Colgoieve is but thirtie leagues from the Barre of Pechora.

They safely passe the Barre of Pechora.

Colgoieve Iland 69. *degrees,* 20. *minutes.*

Falcons.

The fourth, we passed through some Ice, and at noone wee got cleere off it, and stood to the Northward, Colgoieve bearing South-west sixe leagues, the wind at East North-east. The fift, we had faire weather, the wind at East South-east, wee sayled two and thirtie leagues North North-west, we observed, and found our selves in 70. degrees and 40. minutes. The sixt, the wind being at South South-west, we steered North North-west fortie

[III.iii.534.]

70 *degrees* 40. *minutes.*

72. *degrees* 34 *minutes.* leagues, and were in 72. degrees 34. minutes. The seventh, the wind was variable, the weather faire: we steered North by West, eight and thirtie leagues, and at 74. *degrees* 30. *minutes.* noone had the latitude of 74. degrees 30. minutes. And at eight in the Eevening we sounded, and had eightie fathomes greene Oze. The eight, the wind at West, we sayled North twenty leagues: in the morning we sounded, and had seventy fathoms Oze: and at three in the afternoone, the wind comming North, wee cast about to the Westward.

The ninth, faire weather, we sayled thirteene leagues West, the wind at North. At noone we sounded, and had an hundred and twentie fathomes, greene slime. The tenth, the wind variable, with fogge and raine: wee steered West North-west five and twentie leagues: and at noone 74. *degrees* we observed, and had the latitude of 74. degrees 57. 57. *minutes.* minutes. The eleventh, was thicke foggie weather; wee sayled foure and twentie leagues West: and at eight in the Eevening wee sounded, and had ninety fathomes, soft Oze. The thirteenth, at noone wee had sight of *They arrive at Cherie Iland.* Cherie Iland, being within a mile of it, before we did see it: and the same Eevening wee got into the Cove, and mored our ship. Here we stayed twelve dayes, taking what it pleased God to send, which was but little.

The sixe and twentieth of August, we left the Iland, because the time of the yeere was farre spent, and returned for England, where (blessed be God) we safely arrived in Saint Catharines Poole, in the River of Thames, on Saturday being Saint Matthews day, and the one and twentieth of September, 1611.

There were in the Haven of the River Pechora, at our 30. *Lodias.* being there, about thirtie Lodias, or small Russe ships, having ten, twelve, fourteene, and sixteene men in each of them: which purposed to have gone, some to Nova Zembla, some to Tasse gorodoc, and some to other places in Mougumsey, to the East of the River Ob. These Lodias for the most part, were of Ustiug, Colmogro, Pinega, Mezen, and Pechora.

Also, we that went up to the Towne, found about fiftie Cayucks, or Boats of foure, five, six, and seven tunnes a piece, fishing in the River of Pechora for Salmons, and other kinds of fish; most of which Cayucks come from the great Towne of Ustiug, and the Townes thereunto adjoyning, by the River Jug, through the Land into the River Pechora, and at the Bolvan, at the Rivers mouth they tooke most part of their Salmon.

50. Cayucks or fishing Boats, haunting the River Pechora.

Chap. IX.

A Letter of Richard Finch to the Right Worshipfull Sir Thomas Smith, Governour; and to the rest of the Worshipfull Companie of English Merchants, trading into Russia: touching the former Voyage, and other observations.

RIght Worshipfull, my dutie remembred unto you, with prayer to God for the preservation of your healths and prosperous successe in all your worthie affaires. My last Letters unto you were from Typani in Lapland, by Thomas Harecastle of Hull, dated the foure and twentieth of May, 1611. The other, the nine and twentieth of May from Kyldin neere Camen, by a ship of Hamburg: which foresaid Letters were directed to our Governour, the right Worshipfull Sir Thomas Smith, Knight. May it now please you further to understand, That the ninth day of July, wee came to the mouth of the River of Pechora, which the Russes call Pechorskoi Zavorot with our ship. And being entred into the aforesaid Harbour, it was full of Ice, and hard to finde: for we found no mayne Land, save a small Sound behind the Ice. And labouring to and fro along the same, we sent William Gourdon in our Shallop manned to the shoare: who, as soone as they were landed, espied two Crosses standing on the sand: and presently our men

They arrive in the Port of Pechora the ninth of July.

Two Crosses standing on the sand.

espied three men comming toward them. These men belonged to three Boats of Pinega, which Boats had beene in our companie not long before, at a place called by them, Promoya, by us, Obscure, but by other Writers, Morshovitz. One of these Russes came on boord of our ship, and told us, that wee could goe no farther with our ship, then the place, that their Vessels, called Coaches, rid in; and that to the Towne we must goe in small Vessels; giving us directions to sayle by, for the better finding of the Towne. After our getting over the Barre of the Pechorskoi Zavorot, and that we were come to an anchor, we rode in great danger by the abundance of Ice, and the strong tide both of the ebbe and floud, which drove the same so forcibly against our ship. For, the eleventh of July, lying in foure fathomes water, a piece of an Iland of Ice, set with such a power against our ship, that it drove us out of our riding into eight foot and an halfe, and nine foot water.

Pinega.

Ship endangered by Ice.

[III.iii.535.] The eleventh of July, Master Josias Logan, William Gourdon, and William Pursglove, with our Shallop went up to the Towne of Pechora, taking directions of the Russes for the finding of the same. Neverthelesse, two dayes after their departure from our ship, they had mistaken their way, if by chance they had not met with a small Russe Boat, in which were Russes that directed them. Being about thirty Versts from the Towne, they came to the house of one Vasili Deadoolove, who at this present is one of the chiefest Customers: by which Customers the Towne of Pechora is now governed, since there was no Gentleman sent from the Mosco. This man gave them good entertaynment, and sent up with them a man of his owne, fearing that the people would bee amazed at our mens sudden and unexpected comming. Yet as soone as they espied our people, they were all exceedingly afraid. Divers of them with their women fled into the Woods, untill that one of the chiefest Customers had sent for them other Customers, who at that time were all out of Towne. But being met

Our men arrive at Towne of Pechora.

People afraid of the English.

together, Master Logan shewed them the Priviledges, of severall of their Emperours granted to your Worships. After the perusing of which, with the good report given of Master Mericke, your Agent, and our Nation by one of Colmogro, with whom Master Logan was acquainted; the Townes-men were well satisfied: and appointed our people an House. And many of them sent Bread, Pies, Ducks, Fish, and such like unto them, entertayning them very well, according to the fashion of the Countrey, with continuall admiration how they found the Towne.

Touching the Inhabitants, there is no doubt, but that they will be glad of our trading thither. Neverthelesse, by that which I have heard and perceived, it is very likely, that the same will be distastfull to the Merchants of the Countrey, and others that travell thither in the Winter time, out of many parts of Russia: and also, to them that trade in the Summer *time*, by Sea to Mongosey, and through the River of Peoza in Cayucks to Perm, Oust-zilme, and Pechora.

The seven and twentieth of July, our Shallop with a small Russe Boat, returned to our ship from Pechora Towne, departing from the same the Thursday before, being the five and twentieth of July, in our foresaid Shallop, and Russe Boat, were sent downe by Josias Logan, five and fortie bags of white Partridges feathers, and an hundred and seventie white Foxe skinnes. These Feathers and Foxe skinnes, are bought of a Colmogro man, to be payd for the same in Russia by Master Mericke; and, as I understand, not so cheape as others doe buy there of the Fowlers themselves. But if two men were left, one at Pechora, another at Oust-zilme, and Perm, with ready money and a little commodities, much good might be done in the Winter time by buying of Sables, Bevers, Bevers wombs, Squerrils, Foxe skinnes white and dunne, Losh hides, and Deere skinnes. And for the transportation of your goods to Pechora, or bringing of your goods from Pechora; the same may be done from Arch-angel upon the Duyna to Mezen, and from

White Partridges and Foxes.

Commodities.

Mezen to Pechora, Oust-zilme, and Perm, both by Winter over Land, and in Summer through fresh water Rivers, or alongst the shoare with speed, and with a little charge: as by the manner of their ordinary travell appeareth, as it hath beene of a trueth delivered mee, from the mouthes of men of long experience.

The Fleet of Mongosey of 26. Lodias. Or Mongal.

The last of August, came into Pechorskoi Zavorot, or the Haven of Pechora, sixe and twentie Lodias or Boats, which was the Fleet set out from Oustiug, Colmogro, Pinega, and Mezen: all of them being bound for Mongosey: but having been crossed with contrary winds, & the time of the yeere being spent, they gave over their intended Voyage; purposing with the next faire wind, to sayle to the Towne of Pechora, there to lay up their Lodias and commodities till the next Spring, and themselves with their small Boats or Wherries to goe home, passing from thence up the River of Peoza, which they told me they could easily doe in a moneths time. As soone as this Fleet of Lodias was come to an anchor, many of them came aboord of our ship, wondring to see a ship there. They demanded of me, how wee came thither, and what the intent of our comming was: and whither we purposed to sayle from thence. Among these were some which seemed to be Merchants, who asked to buy Lists, remnants of Cloth, Cap-clothes, Aqua vitæ, especially, they asked for small Pewter Dishes, which I understand to be a commoditie sold by them to the Samoyeds, at a great rate. I answered them, that the goods which wee had brought, were part already at Pechora, and the rest was to be transported thither, as soone as the Vessell came that was hired to carrie the same up: so that, if any of them were minded to buy of our commodities, they might have it of one of our Countrey-men there. After which, two or three of them demanded of me, whether I would buy any Sables, or Squerrils: which was but a brag. At this time many of them being on boord together, some of them were in private talke, which was my chance to overheare, and was as followeth: If these Neamchines, or

From Pechora to Colmogro is a moneths travel by River.

Small Pewter Dishes, a great commoditie.

Strangers resort to these places, it will be an occasion in short time to make us to be without Bread. The like speeches I heard a little before, of two men of Pinega; and of an old man remayning in Pechora, that came downe to our ship with the Feathers.

Touching the goods left with William Pursglove, Marmaduke Wilson, and the Russe, in regard the same lay in no good place, we were desirous to have hired one of their Russe Boats, to have carried the same to the Towne at a reasonable rate; the rather because it was on their way, and their Boats were not overladen: which they with two Boats might have done with ease: yet they [III.iii.536.] would not, unlesse wee would give them thirtie or five and twentie Rubbels at the least, and that with Condition, that they might distribute into each Boate somewhat thereof. Therefore understanding their unreasonable demand, having a Boate already hyred, wee utterly refused to talke with them any further thereof: especially when they were minded to divide the goods into all the sixe and twentie Lodias or Boates: which had beene a tricke to have lost all.

The first of August, leaving Master Josias Logan, *August* 1. William Pursglove, and Marmaduke Wilson, at Pechora, wee sayled over the Barre of Pechorskoie Zavorot, directing our course for Nova Zembla, till that wee had runne so farre, and were so inclosed in huge Ice, that in a Day and *Huge Ice.* a Night we could goe neither backward nor forward: And finding no meanes to proceed on our intended Voyage for Nova Zembla, wee cleared our selves out of that place. Truth it is, that this hath beene an hard Summer to all the Russes, both to them which were bound for Mongozey, and those that went to kill Morses, and fishing of a certayne Fish called Omeli. From the foresayd place wee *Omeli Fishing.* set our course for Cherie Iland, intending to meete with the Ile of Colgoieve, and Willoughbies Land. With *They land on the Ile of Colgoieve.* Colgoieve wee met, but we missed of the other. The seventh of August, William Gourdon and I with our Shallop went on shoare. This Colgoieve, is a very long and broad Iland with many Vallies in it. On the same are

Geese. many Geese, which the Russes use to take with Nets in the time of the yeere, before they bee over fledge. In this Iland seemeth to bee store of Hawkes. Heere William *Two Hawkes taken.* Gourdon and our Cooper, caught two Hawkes, whereof one was spoyled in the taking, the other remayneth alive.

Cherie Iland. The thirteenth of August, wee arrived at Cherie Iland, standing in 74. degrees and odde minutes, and Anchored in the South Cove, finding the same very cleare of Ice. And presently after our Ship was at an Anchor, James Vadin the Master, William Gourdon, and I, went on shoare on the Cove to looke for Morses. Here we found *Thomas Edge. See sup. c. 2.* a certayne Note, which was left there by Thomas Edge: the effect of which was: That he arrived there with three Shalops from Greenland, and that there he had found the Ship called the Elizabeth, and that hee was gone in her to Greenland the foure and twentieth of July, hoping to finde the goods which hee had left there: and that hee did purpose to returne againe to Cherie Iland with as much speed as could be made. Subscribed: Thomas Edge.

At our comming to the Iland, wee had three or foure dayes together very fine weather: in which time came in *Morses fearefull.* reasonable store of Morses, both at the South Cove and at the North-side: and wee were in good hope we should have made a saving Voyage. Neverthelesse, though there were store of Beasts, yet by no meanes would they goe on those beaches and places, that formerly they have beene killed on. But fortie or fiftie of them together, went into little holes within the Rocke, which were so little, steepe and slipperie, that as soone as wee did approach towards them, they would tumble all into the Sea. The like whereof by the Masters and William Gourdons report, was never done. For lying as they did, and being so shey as they were, it was not possible to doe any good upon them. Moreover, to get them off these foresaid Rockes to make them come on shoare upon their accustomed places, the Master and our men on both sides of the Iland went to drive them away, yet they would not. But by often driving of them out of their holes, we killed as

many as wee could. In the end the weather growing stormie and cold, there were few or none of them left. Wherefore seeing all hope of good to be done of them to be past, wee departed from thence the sixe and twentieth of August, 1611. for England. We did not perceive any Ship of Hull to have beene there this Summer. *August 26.*

Having touched the chiefest points of our Voyage, I thinke it meete to set downe somewhat of the State, Commodities, and Trade of Pechora, Oust Zilma, and Parmia.

The Towne of Pechora is small, having three Churches in it: and the most part of the people are poore. In the Spring and a great part of the Summer, they live by catching of Partridges, Geese, Duckes, and Swannes, of which they every Summer take a great number. The flesh of these Fowles they salt, and live of them the most part of the Winter. But the feathers of the said Fowle they gather together, and sell to the men of Colmogro, Oustiug, and others, that come everie yeere out of Russia to buy the same: Some of them give a little money before hand to the Fowlers. Which must be done with great care as the times are now. One Meafed a mans sonne of Pechora, whose Father is a man of great dealings, told mee, That they sold white Partridge feathers to men of Colmogro for readie money, at five Altines the Poud, and Duckes feathers (among which was Downe) they sold now for seven or eight Altines the Poud. Likewise hee told me that in former times the Russes that used to trade thither, before the people of the Countrey knew what Commodities were worth, had commonly a Poud of Partridge feathers for two pence of their money, and a peece of cake Sope worth at Colmogro ten pence of their money. So that the chiefest Commoditie and best cheape is Feathers, being bought at Pechora with readie Russe money of the Fowlers themselves, and not of the Ligers there, that use to sell them to us at Archangel on the River of Duyna. *Pechora.* *Oustiug.* *A Poud is 37. pound, or the third part of a hundred weight. An Altеen is five of their Pence, a Groat of ours.*

Moreover one hundred English miles on this side of the Towne of Pechora, is a place called by them the

A great fishing of Salmons, beginning the first of August. [III.iii.537.]

Bolvano, where they take great store of Salmons. But it is alwayes the first of August before they begin to cast out their Nets. And oftentimes toward the later part of the Summer, they have such store, that they are sold ordinarily for foure-pence a Fish, and sometimes for a penie a Fish of their money. Yea, in a plentifull yeere, I have beene told, one may buy whole draughts of Salmons for a very small summe of money. The Salmons heere are fat: three Fishes weighing commonly a Powd and no more. The best sort of the people of Pechora, use to preserve a great quantitie of their Salmon with a little salt. For they salt eightie, or one hundred Fishes with a Powd of Salt: and many times in plentiful yeres, much Fish is cast away for want of salt; which they are loath to bestow when Salt is deare.

This Salmon is carryed by the Pechora men to Mezen in Sleds, drawne with Reyne Deere. But if they be minded to carrie the said Fish from Mezen to Colmogro, then they carrie the same from thence with Sleds drawne with Horses.

Also many men of Colmogro, Pinega, and Mezen, buy Salmons at Pechora, and carrie it in the Winter time to Mezen, to which place they pay from Pechora for the hyer of a Sled and a Reyne Deere, ordinarily ten Altines, being twelve dayes journey: and from Mezen to Colmogro, being sixe dayes journey, they pay foure-pence a Powd at the most. The Deere that travell from Pechora to Mezen, will not draw above seven Powd weight. This way is travelled every Winter twice. The first is sixe or eight weekes before Christmasse. And the second time is two or three weekes before Shrovetide: which bee the times that they very diligently observe to sell the Salmon in. Most part of the men of Pechora, have every one his owne Deere to travell with. And some particular men of the better sort have twentie or thirtie Deere, which they let out to hyer in the Winter time; and in the Summer time they put them foorth to the Samoyeds to keepe. Also when the Winter way is set and beaten, many

Travelling Deere.

Merchants and others come out of Russia to buy Sables, Bevers, Bevers wombes, Squirrels, blacke, white and dunne Foxes, of which in the Winter time is store, brought thither by the Samoieds round about those parts: which Trading is in the Winter time and not else. The chiefest Russe Merchants or Furriers that use these parts, I have beene told, are the Obleazoves, the Shepetkins, and the Yeadomskoies. The Commodities carryed by them, are red, and yellow Cloathes; but chiefly Russe money, with which they buy Commodities there of the Russes, as well as that which they buy of the Samoieds in barter.

The Commodities carryed from Volochda, Oustiug, Colmogro, Pinega, and Mezen, to Pechora and Mongozei, are Meale, Bacon, Butter, Ote-meale, Tolockno, and Salt, with some small quantitie of Yeasts and tanned Leather, with some Cloath, and other of our Commodities. These Commodities at Mongozei are sold at great rates. But at Pechora, Commodities are sold sometimes deare and sometimes cheape, in respect of profit. For if the Fleet, being at least thirtie Boates that set out every Summer for Mongozey, laden with these Provisions and Commodities aforesaid, bee crossed with contrarie windes; and that by the latenesse of the yeere they cannot reach to Mongozey, but are constrayned to leave the same and come for Pechora, (as this yeere 1611. they were:) Then commonly Meale, Bacon, and such like Commodities with them are not deare. For by report a little quantitie of Meale doth serve all those parts. For the greater part of them live of fresh Fish sod and dryed in stead of Bread, of which Fish they have plentie. Likewise, there useth not to goe from Colmogro with these Provisions, above two Boates in a Summer directly to the Towne of Pechora: especially since the Towne was burnt, and that there was no Governour in the same.

Fish in stead of Bread.

Also by the Mongozey men it did appeare, that there was no likelihood for them to utter that quantitie of Commodities at Pechora, at any rate. For if there had, there would not have resolved to lay up their goods in Ware-

houses till the next Spring, and then to proceed for Mongozey.

Oust Zilma. Further from the Towne of Pechora, is a place called by the Russes, Oust Zilma. This is, by the description given unto me in distance from Pechora, as Oustiug is from Colmogro: and is likewise to bee travelled by water against the streame: And in Winter time it is to bee travelled in Sleds drawne with Reyne Deere. In this place of Oust Zilma, is great store of Squirrels, Bevers, and Bevers wombes, Foxe skinnes white and dunne, and other Furres, but chiefly Squirrels, of which is great store by all mens report, that I have talked withall. So that having a man in the Winter time at this place, a good quantitie of Squirrels and other Furres, may bee provided at a reasonable rate. Moreover, heere are to be bought Losh-hydes, and Deere-skinnes, which in the Winter time are brought to this Towne of Oust Zilma from Perm, which is not farre from thence. But to buy Losh-hydes and Deere-skinnes, the best course is to goe from Oust Zilma to *Perm.* Perm, and to buy them there, where one should bee sure to have Choise, and at a farre better rate. Also those that use to come out of Russia in the Winter time to Perm, to buy these foresaid Hydes; toward the later part of Winter carrie all these Hydes by Sleds, some two or three dayes Journey from Perm to the side of a certayne River, neere unto which is a small Towne or Village; where as soone as the Ice is gone, they have small Dorshenicks and Floates, on which they lade their Hydes, and being out of this River, they enter into Duyna, and transport them to Colmogro and Archangell.

Likewise being at Pechora, Oust Zilma, or any of those [III.iii.538.] parts, there is in the Winter time to bee had among the *Elephants teeth, whence, and which way.* Samoyeds, Elephants teeth, which they sell in pieces according as they get it, and not by weight. And I have beene told, they sell the same at a very small rate. It is called in Russe, Mamanta Kaost. Thus much may suffice at this time to bee spoken of Pechora, Oust-Zilma, and Perm.

Now I will set downe as I have beene enformed by divers Russes, the Names of the chiefest places which they use to sayle unto from Slobodca, an Haven so called in the Province of Mezen, to the Pechorskoie Zavorot, or the Haven of the River of Pechora, and the Distances to each place: with a Direction how to sayle from Pechorskoie Zavorot up to the Towne of Pechora. 1.

I will also set downe the Russes sayling from the foresayd Pechorskoie Zavorot, to the Yowhorskoie-share. And from thence to the River of Ob: and thence to Mongozey. 2.

I will likewise set downe a true Direction, to goe by water in their Boates called Cayooks, through the River of Peoza, and other Rivers, till they come from Mezen to Oust Zilma, and Pechora. 3.

Likewise I meane to write of the Samoieds, travelling from Vaygats to the parts of Mongozey, in the Winter time, and from thence backe againe to the foresayd Towne of Mezen, called Slobodca. 4.

Lastly, I will intreate of such Commodities as are to bee had at Mezen, with the speedie passage from thence to Colmogro by Sea, or by Land in the Sommer time. And it is as followeth. 5.

The things above mentioned, that I have not seene my selfe, I have not sleightly set downe from the mouthes of one or two, but from the mouthes of many ancient men, well experienced in the Travels and Trades of all these parts, which Master James Vadun the Master of our Ship can likewise witnesse. Therefore if the same may bee any way beneficiall unto the Company, and that thereby I have discharged my dutie unto your Worships, I shall bee heartily glad thereof. Thus fearing I have beene over tedious by my rude Letter, I rest, with my heartie prayer unto Almightie God, for the happie preservations of your selves, and all yours. Written on Shipboord, the last of August, 1611.

Your Worships humble Servant to command,

RICHARD FINCH.

The Names of the principall places, which the Russes sayle by from Mezen to the Pechorskoie Zavorot, or the Haven of Pechora. 1611.

FRom Mezen to Candinos, with a faire wind and stiffe gale, is thirtie houres sayle: They sayling commonly almost 40. leagues in foure and twentie houres, according to which it is 50. leagues. From Candinos to the Ile of Colgoie, is as before thirtie houres sayling, and after 40. leagues in foure and twentie houres, is 50. leagues. From Candinos to Premoya or Obscure, is twentie houres sayling, or 35. leagues. From the Ile of Colgoie to Colocol-cova, is fifteene houres sayling, and reckoned as above appeareth, is 25. leagues. Along the shoare of this place are heapes of Sand, in the forme of Bells. Therefore the Russes call this place Colocol-cova, being derived from Colocol, which in English signifieth a Bell. From Colocol-cova to the Peasaneetsa, is three houres sayle, or 5. leagues. This place is onely a small Brooke which they use for a Sea-marke, more then for any benefit is to bee reaped at the same. From Peasaneetsa to the Pechorskoie Zavorot is sixe houres sayle, or 10. leagues. So that from Colgoie Iland to this foresayd Pechorskoie Zavorot, is not above 40. leagues at the most.

A direction to sayle from the Pechorskoie Zavorot, where wee rode with our Ship in August 1611. to the Towne of Pechora, as followeth.

FRom this Pechorskoie Zavorot, they sayle into the Soohoie Mora, or Drie Sea, and not before: stirring away from hence South-west and by South, and in a faire gale of Winde, in foure houres they come to an Iland called Dolgoie. This Iland is reported to bee three or foure Russe Versts long, having on it in some time of the yeere many Geese, which the men of Pechora take before they bee able to flie. From this Dolgoie, they stirre away

Dolgoie Iland in the Soosoie Mora.

South South-west; and sayling this course with a faire gale of wind, in eight or nine houres sayle they come in sight of the maine Land, being an indifferent high Land. This Land is called the Boluanov; and this is 20. leagues at the most. This Boluanov they have on their Larboord side. Neere this place are divers that inhabite in Russe Houses: where in the Summer time they lye a Fowling, and fishing of a certayne Fish called Omeli, which are like our Maccarels. If need bee, heere a man may have a guide or good instructions to conduct him to Pechora Towne. Hard by this Boluanov, is the Oustia or barre of the entring of Pechora River. For as soone as you are over this barre, you come into the Rivers mouth, which leadeth to Pechora Towne. If it bee thicke foggie weather, then one of them continually soundeth the depth of the Channell, keeping as neere as they can in the deepest water: and in so doing, they seldome mistake their way, so that they stirre away West from the Boluanov to the Rivers mouth, keeping the Land on their Starboord side. And by all mens report, from the Boluanov to Pechora Towne, is with a faire winde and stiffe gale, not above twentie houres sayle: which according to their sayling, is about three and thirtie leagues. And it is not above fiftie leagues from the Pechorskoie Zavorot, where our Ship lay, to Pechora Towne.

The Boluanov.

[III.iii.539.]

The names of the places that the Russes sayle by, from Pechorskoie Zavorot, to Mongozey: with the manner of their Travell, and Distance betweene each place, or time of Sayling, Halling, and Rowing unto the same.

FRom Pechorskoie Zavorot to Matpheyove Ostrove, or Iland, is with a faire wind and stiffe gale, at the most thirtie houres sayle, which being reckoned as before, after fortie leagues in foure and twentie houres, is fiftie leagues: to which they stirre away East. From Matpheyove Ostrove to the Youhorskoie-share, is nine houres sayle or

Matpheyove Ostrove.

Youhorskoie Share.

fifteene leagues. When they are come to this Iland, they stir away from thence East to the said Youhorskoie-share. Also in cleere weather from Matpheyove Ostrove, they can see the maine Land, with the Meedanetskoie Zavorot: where the two Ilands bee called the Zelentsee or Greene Ilands: to which Ilands many of the Russes resort, to take a kinde of Fishes, called Omeli, which are like Maccarels: of which heere are store. This maine Land they have on their right hand or Starboord side, lying South from Matpheyove Ostrove. Also to the Southward of the Matpheyove Ostrove, is another Iland which the Russes call Dolgoie, that is, the long Iland. So that there are two Dolgoies: the one, within the Pechorskoie Zavorot, entring into the Soohoy Mora, or Drie Sea: The other is this, which is betwixt the Matpheyove Ostrove, and the Yougorskoie-share; lying as before was sayd, South from the sayd Matpheyove Ostrove. From which Iland in a cleere day they can see the Land of Vaygats, which lyeth on the Larboord side, being very high Land. So that stirring out-right, in the middle betweene the Meadanetskoie Land on their Starboord, and the land of Vaygats on their Larboord side, they sayle directly into the Yougorskoie-share. Likewise there is not much of this Yougorskoie-share. For they say, that being at one end, they can see the Sea at the other end thereof. Also, about the Land of Vaygats are neither Flats nor Shoalds. From the Yougorskoie-share to the Carskoie Gooba, is twelve houres sayle, or twentie leagues. In this Bay of Gooba, is the Meastuoy Ostrove, or Meastuoy Iland. Further it is to bee remembred, that as soone as they enter this Carskoie Gooba or Bay, they sayle up a River, leaving this Bay on their Starboord: which River bringeth them into the Mootnoya Reca, which signifieth the thicke or troubled River. From Carskoie Gooba to this Mootnoya Reca, is 20. leagues. Likewise, being a little past the Yougorskoie-share, there may bee described an high Land, which they call Socoha Looda, that is, The Hawkes perch. And being over the

The Meedanetskoie Zavorot: where Hainburie is.

The two Ilands called Zelentsee, or the Greene Islands.

Dolgoie Ostrove, or the Long Iland.

Korskoie Gooba.

Meastuoy Ostrove, or Meastuoy Iland.

A River.

Mootnoya Reca, or the Thicke or troubled River.

Mootnoya Reca, which they are eight dayes and eight nights in halling along the shoare by the Rope or Beachava, they come into two Lakes, which two Lakes from one end to the other they commonly row over in one Day or two Tides: the same not being above ten or twelve leagues. Having gotten to the end of those two Lakes, they come to a place called the Navoloke which signifieth an Over-hall. And it is almost two hundred fathoms, or foure hundred paces in length: And having emptyed their Vessels, called Coaches, laying poles under them, with the Companies or men of foure or five Boates, having twelve or thirteene men in a Boate, they hall their Vessels over, launching them into a third Lake, which they call the Zelenoy Osera, that is, the Greene Lake. These Over-halls constraine them to consort themselves into Companies: otherwayes they could not get this way to Mongozey. At the end of this Zelenoy Osera, or Greene Lake, they come into the Zelenoya Reca, or Greene River, into which they runne with the streame, being often compelled to emptie their great Boates with their Lodias, or Wherries, laying their Goods upon the shoare: which being done they row their great Lodias over the shoalds emptie; and having got over the shoalds, they bring their goods on boord againe. And thus they doe in divers places of this Zelenoya Reca, or Greene River: by reason whereof they are commonly ten dayes from the Over-hall, before they can get through this foresayd River, which is all with the streame; but the Distance hereof cannot yet bee perfectly learned. Being come to the end of the Zelenoya Reca, they enter into the River of Ob; and having rowed a little way up the same, they come to a place which they likewise call Zavorot: which signifieth a turning, winding, or entring into a place. From this Zavorot, they turne into the Tawze Reca, stirring away South to Tawze River; but it is foure and twentie houres sayle, or fortie leagues from the River of Ob, before they come into any part of the Tawze Reca. In the River of Ob, are neither Woods nor Inhabitants, till they sayle so

Two Lakes.

The Navoloke, or Over-hall.

Zelenoy Osera, or The Greene Lake.

Zelenoya Reca, or The Greene River falleth into Ob.

The River Ob.

The Zavorot in the River of Ob.

Tawze Reca.

[III.iii.540.]

farre up the same, that they come neere to Siberia. But there are Woods.

Taes. Tawze Gorodoc, or Castle.

When they are entred into this Tawze River, they have foure dayes and foure nights sayling to Tawze Castle, with a faire wind and a stiffe gale: But if they bee driven to row to the Tawze Gorodoc or Castle, then they are twelve dayes and twelve nights rowing thither at the least, having calme weather. This Tawze Gorodoc, or Tawze little Castle, with the Villages, Townes, and all other places thereto belonging, is by all the Russes generally called Mongosey. At this place are two Gentlemen or Governours, with three or foure hundred Gunners, and small Castles in severall places of these parts of Mongosey. Moreover, the men of Mezen, from whom I had all these Notes, told me; That in the Winter time there went men from Siberia to Mongosey, to buy Sables: delivering unto mee, that the Sables taken by the Samoyeds about Mongosey, are richer in Furres then those that come from Siberia. Also they told me, that the Samoyeds inhabiting upon the mayne land over against Vaygats, travelled in the Winter time with their Reyne Deere to the parts of Mongosey, to kill Sables and other beasts: and doe carrie their Furres from thence to Mezen, to sell there at a place called by the Russes, Slobodca, to which they did commonly resort about Shrove-tide, staying not there long, but as soone as they had made sale of their Furres, they departed home againe. Further, these men of Mezen told me, that in the Winter time with them was to be sold store of Squerrils, Beavers, Beavers wombs, and some Sables. And that all those that travelled in the Winter time from any part of Mongosey, Sibira, Pechora, and Oust-selma, to any part of Russia whether they were Merchants, or buyers up of the Furres, or the Samoyeds that caught them; they must of force come to their Towne of Mezen, to hire Horses to carrie them to Colmogro. By which meanes they told mee, their Towne was well replenished with all manner of Furres, especially of Squerrils. Also they informed me, that divers of

Mongosey.

The Samoyeds on the Mayne, over against Vaygats, travell in the Winter to Mongosey. We may learn of these Samoyeds, the trade of Mongosey at Mezen more perfectly.

Mezen a Towne of great traffick for Furres.

Colmogro, and other parts of Russia, that sold us Furs, for the most part bought the same of them, lying there in the Winter time for that purpose. Therefore, said they, if that any of our Nation would trade into their parts, they would be glad thereof, and that they may be furnished of all sorts of Furres, and at a farre better rate then hitherto we have had them at. And that wee could upon any occasion be quickly at Colmogro in the Winter time by Sled, or in any part of the Spring or Summer time by Boats, at a very small charge. Lastly, that in the Spring time we should not faile of a parcell of Trane-oyle, and Deeres skinnes, which every Summer they transported to Archangel to sell.

A true direction of the Russes travelling from Mezen, with Cayooks or small Boats, through the River Peoza, and from thence to a place called by them Peaskanoy Navolock, or The Sandy Over-hall, passing from thence through other Rivers, till they come to Oust-selma, and to the Towne of Pechora: And is as followeth.

HAving embarqued themselves at Mezen, in these small Cayooks or Boats, covered with the barkes of trees, they sayle to a River called Peoza Reca. From thence they sayle, or draw their Boats to a place called, the Peaskanoy Navolock, or Sandy Over-hall. From Mezen to this Over-hall is ten dayes haling along the shoare with the rope. This said Over-hall is five Russe Versts over. And after they have unladen their goods out of their Cayooks, they draw the said Vessels over at times with Horses, that come from Mezen of purpose; lying there the most part of the Summer, to that intent: and they pay sixe pence Russe for drawing over an empty Boat. Being over this Over-hall, they drive with the streame in three dayes to the Towne of Oust-selma: and with the streame in foure dayes they drive to a place called Pustozera: and

Mezen.

Peozareca.

Peaskanoy Navoloc.

Oust-selma.

Pustozera. from Pustozera against the streame they come to the
The Boluanov. Boluanov, and from the Boluanov to the Towne of
Pechora. Pechora. Also, many of these Boats very often in their returne home with their foresaid Cayooks, carrie Furres to Ustiug, and divers other places into the Countrey of Russia. All which they doe in a Summers time.

[III.iii.541.]

Chap. X.

The Voyage of Master Josias Logan to Pechora, and his wintering there, with Master William Pursglove, and Marmaduke Wilson. Anno 1611.

The former part of the Voyage is omitted, to avoid tedious repetition.

THe first of July, William Gurdon, Richard Finch, and William Pursglove, went on shoare at Suatinose, where two Crosses stand. The second, wee weighed anchor againe, and stood into the Bay because of the Ice: and that night wee went on shoare againe. The third, we weighed anchor, and stood it about Suatinose. The fift, we stood to the Eastwards five leagues more, and about twelve of
Toxar. the clocke at night, wee were thwart of the Iland of Toxar. The tenth, at eight of the clocke at night, we weighed, and went over a Barre, at two fathomes, and came into Harbour, where wee anchored at ten of the clocke in the morning in five fathoms, having sands round about us, being land-locked. The eleventh, my selfe, William Gurdon, and William Pursglove, with sixe of our men more, departed from the ship with our Shallop, to goe up
Pustozera. to the Towne of Pustozer.

The fourteenth, wee arrived at the fishing house of one Evan Vasiliov sene sowhav, where the people were afraid of us, and were ready to runne away: but we spake to them, and gave them some Biscuit and Aqua vitæ, and they sod us some fish, and shewed us our way to another Fishery: but they ran away from us, so we departed on

our way. The fifteenth day, at foure of the clocke in the afternoone wee met with a Russe, that was borne at Ustiug, who gave us Milke, and such things as he had, and we gave him some Biscuit, and some Aqua vitæ, and hee directed us unto another Fishery, about some five miles from that place where wee arrived, about sixe of the clocke the same night. But comming ashoare, we found not any, save one man, who after some conference had with us, and giving him some Bread, and some of our Aqua vitæ, hee told us, that the Master of the house, with three of his sonnes were hunting of Duckes, and that their wives were afraid, and were runne into the Woods to hide themselves, leaving a young childe behind them for haste. So he brought us into the house, where by that time that we had stayed an houre (because there were so many Muschitaes, which are like unto a Midge, and sting most horribly, so that we were not able to stay without) the Master of the house, and his sonnes came thither, who at the first, were afraid, thinking we came to rob them. And they were about to shoot our men in the Boat; but one of our men holding up a Biscuit cake, they then came to them, and spake unto them: but our men not understanding them, made them signes to the house, where my selfe, William Gurdon, and William Pursglove were: who, when they came into the house, being yet afraid, they came in one after another. Now, when we had saluted them after the Russe manner, they asked us of whence we were, and for what cause we came thither: whereunto I made answere, that wee were English-men, who because of the troubles in Russia, came thither to seeke a Trade, having heard divers times of the fame of those parts. Then hee replied, that in times past those places had beene good for trading: but now, by reason of a bad Governour, in those troublesome times, upon a spleene he had fired the Towne, and burned above an *July.* hundred houses: and so by that meanes they were fallen into poverty, and trading decayed, by reason of his great exactions. Yet hee said, that they have great store of

Salmon, and that the last yeere they got above 15000. Salmons, and in the Winter is their chiefest Mart. For then the Samoyeds come thither from divers places, and bring Sables, and Beavers, white Foxes, Rosamackes, Feathers, and some Squerrils. So having supped with him, we gave him a gallon of our Aqua vitæ, and some fortie cakes of our white Biscuit, and three or foure pound of Raisins: for we heard, that he was one of the principallest men in the Towne. Then desiring his favour, he holpe us to a man to goe with us up to the Towne, because of the fearefulnesse of the people, which they conceive through the Warres of the Poles: and so wee departed from thence that night to the Towne.

The sixteenth, in the afternoone we arrived at the Towne of Pustozera, where wee found not many people, considering the number of houses there, which are betwixt fourescore and an hundred, being of wood, built after the Russian manner, and they are subject unto the Russe, observing all their Rites as doe the Russes. The people were all abroad (some, in getting of Morses Oyle, and Belougaes Oyle, and some fishing of a fish called Ometta, which is a very sweet fish, and some hunting Duckes) saving the Customers, and three or foure more, who were likewise afraid of us, although we had one of their owne people with us, and were ready to flee away. So we seeing their fearefulnesse, caused their man to goe first on shoare with us three above mentioned, not permitting the rest of our men to come on Land as yet: then hee calling to them, they stayed, still peeping from behind the corners of their houses, untill at the last there was a Russe, one of Colmogro, that had wintred with them, who knew me, and had seene me some two yeeres before at Cola in Lappia, at his Uncles house. And so he encouraged them, speaking greatly in our commendation, shewing them, that I was a Merchant, and came to trade with them, and not with any intent of harme: for hee knew mee very well, and told them, that I was at Cola foure or five yeeres together, and lay at his Uncles house. So he

[III.iii.542.] *Cola in Lappia.*

came to me, and tooke me by the hand, asking me how I did, and told me his name, and how hee had seene mee with his Uncle at Cola. Then I called to mind, that I had seene him there, and so we grew acquainted: and he went with us to the Custome-house, where staying an houre, at length the Customer came: and after many questions had concerning our comming thither, I craved licence, that foure of us might winter with them: which they denyed, alledging that they durst not without the Emperour of Russia his licence. Whereupon I answered, that the Emperours Majestie, when he was raigning, was very gracious unto our Nation, above all other strangers; and shewed what great priviledges hee had bestowed on our people: and how by the English-mens meanes at the first; what a trade is now at Arkania, and what profit *Arkania.* came, not onely into his Majesties Treasurie, but also into all parts of his Dominions, which in time might be brought hither: and withall shewed the Emperours priviledge. Wherefore then they began to put away feare, and willed us to stay five or sixe dayes, untill he had sent for the chiefest men of the Townes-men, who were abroad, and then they would give us an answer. Then I desired, that we might have an house to be in, and not to stay without doores. So he gave libertie to any that would, to entertayne us, whereto there was one Callem that made answer, that he would: whereupon wee went with him, and were in an Ambar of his, untill wee received answer from them. In the meane time wee made much of them, and feasted them with our Aqua vitæ, Biscuit, and Figs, that we might the better obtayne their love.

The foure and twentieth, the Customers came to give us our answere, and told us, that they had concluded that we might stay if wee would: but they must write up to the Musko of our being here. So we thanked them, and gave them such entertaynment as we could, and sent presents to sixe of them of the chiefest, which they tooke very thankfully, and promised what favour they could. So this night I made ready my Letters to send for England.

The fourth of August, five and twentie Lodyas arrived at the Towne laden with Meale, and others which were bound for Molgomsey: but by reason of contrary winds, they were forced into Pechora, and came up to the Towne of Pustozer, and unladed to make sale.

Molgomsey.

The sixe and twentieth, we removed from the house where we were at the first, unto a Poles house, who is christened Russe, where we are to remayne all the Winter.

Pole baptized Russe.

The nine and twentieth, the frost was so strong, that the Ozera was frozen over, and the Ice driving in the River to and againe, brake all the nets, so that they got no Salmon, no not so much as for their owne victuals. The second of September, the frost brake up againe, and it was open weather. The eight of September, there was a Soyma, which the Towns-men bought, that went downe the River to have gone for Jugoria, and had a faire wind: but they neglecting two dayes sayling, that would have carried them forth of the River to the Sea, the wind came contrary, so that they were wind-bound, and could not get any further: and on the nineteenth, gave over their Voyage, and came up to the Towne.

Frost in August.

The thirteenth of October, the frost was so extreme, that the Ozera stood in one night, that men did walke on it the next day, and so continued all the Winter after.

The twelfth of November, there went two men of Penega to Ust-zilma, to buy Squerrils, and Beavers, and other commodities. The thirteenth, the Sunne arose at South and by East by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West.

The foure and twentieth, there went divers men, with at the least, three or fourescore Sleds drawne with Deere, to a place called Slobodca, where they hold a Mart, from the beginning of December to the middle thereof: and they carried fresh-water fish thither, with whom William Pursglove went into Russia. The sixe and twentieth, the Sunne arose at South and by West by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West.

Slobodca Mart.

The first of December, the Sunne arose at South and by

West Westerly by the Compasse, and set South-west and by West Southerly. The fourth, the Towns-men of Pechora went over land into Jugoria, to trade with the Inhabitants there, and the Samoyeds. *Jugoria.*

The eleventh, Marmaduke Wilson said that he saw the Sunne, but it was but the way of the Sunnes beames. The thirteenth, I saw the Sunnes beames my selfe, but I could not see the Sun it selfe, although I watched it very strictly. The fourteenth, it was snowie, and stormie weather, and continued so untill the foure and twentieth day, which was close weather also.

The five and twentieth, being Christmas day, I saw the Sunne, and it rose at South and by West, and set at South-west and by South, it having the neathermost part of it all the way just with the Horizon. The sixe and twentieth, it was stormy and snowy weather, and so continued untill the end of the moneth. *Sunne returneth.*

The second of Januarie, the Sunne arose at South, somewhat Westerly, and set South-west a little Southerly, it mounting a pretie height above the Horizon.

The fift, William Pursglove returned from Colmogro. The eleventh, the Sunne arose at South by East by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West.

The twelfth, there came a command from the Patriarch, that there should bee a generall Fast, both for young and old, not exempting the sucking babes: which began the thirteenth, continuing three dayes space, they neither eating nor drinking, so much as water, neither admitted they their sucking Babes, save those that fainted, to whom they gave a few Figs and a little water. [III.iii.543.] *Generall Fast for three dayes very strict.*

The nineteenth, the Inhabitants of Pustozer that went into Jugoria, returned from thence, having had but an hard Voyage, by reason of the Warres which the Samoyeds had amongst themselves: so that they durst not goe into Molgomsey, where they catch the most part of the Sables which come into Russia.

The three and twentieth, came the Carratchey, which is the chiefe of the Samoyeds, but they had no commodities

to speake of, by reason of the Warres: so that they neither durst trade with the Samoyeds of Molgomsey, neither hunt for the Sables themselves, which at other times they were wont to doe. The thirtieth, I had the chiefe Carratchey, his sonne, his sonnes sonne, and his brothers sonne at Dinner, and had some conference with him, who told mee, that they had seene ships in the Vaygats, two yeeres one after another: but they durst not bee seene of them, but fled from them: for the Russes told them, that they would kill them, or carrie them away prisoners. Yet they seemed to be glad of our comming, when they saw our behaviour, and the entertaynment that they had of us: Neverthelesse, they are very timerous, and unreasonable covetous, as by more acquaintance I perceived by them.

Russes fraud.

February.

The second of February, the most part of the Samoyeds went to Slobodca with their commodities, because in the Summer they had beene together by the eares with the Samoyeds of Callenose, and had slayne one or two of them: wherefore they went to agree with them, and to pay ransome for some of their men that were taken afterwards.

Samoyeds quarrell.

The fifteenth, the Sunne arose at South-east, a little Southerly, and set at West and by South Westerly. The sixteenth, the Sunne arose at South-east, and set at West due by the Compasse as I could set it, the variation being two points Westerly: for, at a South South-west, the Sunne commeth to the Meridian.

Variation.

The report of a Russe, a great Traveller of the way from Pechora to Ob.

Medemskoy Zavorot.

Zyelensa two Ilands.

Breit-vinnose.

The twentieth, I had conference with a Russe, concerning their trade of Molgomsey, who had beene there twice, and he was the first that ever attempted it, and none hath beene farther then he to the Eastwards. And he told me, that their course from Medenskoy Zavorot, at the mouth of Pechora to the Eastward, to the two Ilands called Zyelensa, is two dayes and three nights distance, sayling with a faire wind. From thence to Breit-vinnose, three dayes and three nights sailing with a faire wind, which is within the Streight of Vaygats. And from thence by an

Iland, or rather a Rocke, called Socolia Lowdia, leaving it on the Starboord side for feare of Rockes, still keeping your course North-east, untill you come to a long Point on the Starboord side, with a sand lying off into the Sea three miles, some five or sixe dayes sayling. Which when you have gotten about, you must hold your course somewhat more enclining to the South, five or six dayes more: and then you shall come to the River of Ob; against the mouth whereof lieth an Iland: but you must keepe the Sea-boord of it, by reason it is shoald betwixt it and the Mayne. The Land all alongst the shoare is a fine lowe Land, and the going into the River, is on the East side of the Iland. The River is reported to be a Summer dayes sayling over in bredth, and is full of Ilands: whereby they report it to be shoald. Yet, in my opinion, so great a River cannot be without a mayne channell; which as yet they have not sought for: and therefore they judge it innavigable. Also they report it to bee very plentifull of Fish of divers sorts: but the people here, and the Russes are unwilling that wee should goe thither. Moreover, hee told mee, that from the River Ob to the Eastwards, the Land stretcheth East, some sixe or eight dayes sayling more. To the Eastward of the River Ob lieth another great River as large as Ob, and is very deepe water, and runneth from the South, how farre as yet it is unknowne. Although that hee affirmed, that he himselfe had sayled at the least three weekes up the River: and all along as they went, they met with sundry sorts of People, differing in Language one from another, which they call Samoyeds. Yea, and the People there did certifie them, that up more towards the South, there are Tartars inhabiting, who ride upon Horses. And hee affirmed, that they found pieces of Ploughes that had beene driven downe the River by the flouds, caused by the Snow melting from the Mountaines. This River is very high Land, and deepe water on both sides. Into this River, on the East side falleth another River, called Tingussey, and the Inhabitants thereof are so called: whereby I conjecture, that it

Socolia Lowdia.

A long Point. From Medemskoy Zavorot to Ob. is 16. dayes sayling.

An Iland.

Ob is full of Ilands, broad and shoald.

The people of Pechora, and the Russes are unwilling that we should goe to Ob.

The River Yenice.

Samoyeds.

Horses.

Ploughes.

The River of the Tingusseys.

Tangut mentioned by Polo, a large Kingdom Northward from Cathay, of China.

is not farre from the Citie Tangut in Cathay. These Tingusses report, that there is another huge River, that trendeth to the Southwards, which the necke of a Land parteth from the River of Tingussey: wherein there are great ships, not unlike unto the Russes ships, that sayle in it, having many Masts and Gunnes, which when they are shot off, make all the earth shake with the noyse: which should seeme to be the Chinians that trade thither in the Summer, and returne backe againe ere the Winter doth come. The like also affirmeth another, being a Russe, who hath beene in the River of Tingussey, where the people make this report.

The River Pisida.

Gunnes.

March.

The first of March, the Russes tooke their Journey from hence, from Pustozer into Russia, with such commodities as they bought.

[III.iii.544.]

Pustozera in 68. degrees 30. or 35. minutes.

The twelfth, the Sunnes altitude by the Quadrant was 67. degrees and 40. minutes; and the declination, no degrees 52. minutes, which being added, maketh 68. degrees and 30. minutes, being the true heigth of Pustozer.

The thirteenth, the Sun arose at East and by South a little Southerly, and set at West North-west. This day the Sunnes altitude by the Quadrant was 67. degrees 20. minutes; and the declination, 1. degree 15. minutes: which added together, maketh 68. degrees 35. minutes: so that I conclude, that Pustozer standeth in about 68. degrees 30. minutes. The eight and twentieth, the Sunne arose at East and by North, and set at North-west and by West.

Aprill.

The eleventh of Aprill, the Inhabitants of this Towne returned from Slobodca, bringing with them Rie, Riemeale, and other provisions.

The report of a Permack.

The one and twentieth, having conference with a Permack, concerning what commodities were to be had at the Towne of Ust-zilma, he told me, that there were Losh hides, Squerrils, Sables, white Foxes, and Rosomackes. Moreover, he told me, that beyond the River of Yenissey, the Land trendeth due East, and then there is a River

Yenissey: beyond it the land trendeth due East.

called Peaseda, and beyond that another called Catonga, which runneth into Cathay: whose King, these Permacks and Russes call Teulka tsar. The River lieth North and South as they of Yenissey say, but they cannot tell how farre: for, there hath not any beene up the River, by reason they are afraid of their shot. And this Permack told me, that on the Sea coast betwixt these two Rivers, Peaseda and Catonga, they found certaine stones like unto Gold, and some like Silver, being about the halfe way betwixt the two Rivers.

Pesida River. Catonga River runneth out of Cathay.

Stones like Gold and Silver in the midway betweene Pisida and Catonga.

The two and twentieth, we had newes brought that the Ice was broken, in the Pechora, all alongst by the sides.

The ninth of May, the Sunne arose at North-east somwhat Easterly, and set at North somwhat Westerly, it being just foure houres by the Houre-glasse under the Horizon.

May.

The three and twentieth, the Sun did not goe under the Horizon, for it was a pretie height above the Horizon, at a North North-east point of the Compasse: it then being at the lowest. The foure and twentieth, we had newes that the Pechora brake up, upon the twentieth day of this instant moneth. The sixe and twentieth, at foure of the clocke in the after-noone, I departed from Pustozer, to goe to Ust-zilma, where I arrived the thirtieth day instant. And the River of Pechora lieth most part North North-east, and South South-west, and sometimes North and South. Ust-zilma, is a Village of some thirtie or fortie houses, and standeth in the height of 66. degrees and 30. minutes. They have Corne growing there, both Barley and Rie: and their Barley is passing faire and white almost as Rice.

The River Ice breakes up.

Foure dayes journey betweene Pustozer and Oust-zilma.

Oust-zilma is in 66. degrees 30. minutes, & there grow faire Barley and Rie.

The ninth of June, I departed from Ust-zilma backe againe to Pustozer, where I arrived the eleventh of June. The one and twentieth, seventeene Soymas departed from hence to goe to Molgomsey: some belonging to this place, some to Ust-zilma, and some to Mezen, and Penega. The two and twentieth, divers Boats went from hence to the Sea, to fish for Omelyes and Bealowgaes Oyle.

June.

17. Soymas depart for Molgomsey.

The foure and twentieth, I sent downe William Pursglove to the Sea side, to buy the Oyle which God shall send them.

July. The third of July, I received a Letter forth of England, by the way of Colmogro.

Tom combustion. The fift, we had newes that the Governour and Souldiers of Tom have burnt the Towne, and fled from thence, by reason they wanted victuals, and their pay: and about three hundred of them intended to come to Ust-zilma, to rob the Inhabitants thereof. This day I was told, that from Pustozer up Pechora with a faire wind, to the River of Ouse, is three weekes travell: and then up the River of Ouse, to Podcamen, ten dayes, and from thence to Ob, eight dayes, drawne by Deere: and from thence to Beresova, sixteene dayes, which is a Towne of trading. This mine Host told me, that he was a prisoner at Beresova, and at Tobolsco: and hee affirmeth, that Tobolsco is a Citie of great trade, and that the Teseeks, Bowhars, and Tartars, come thither to trade, who bring Silkes, Velvets, Grogran, Sendames, and Kindackes, and that great store of Cloth, Pewter, and Copper may be vented there. Also there is great store of Furres, as Sables, Squerrils, Foxes, Blacke, Rosamackes, and Beavers. He sayth, that from Pustozer to Vade in Jugoria, which is on this side Ob, with carriage upon Deere, it is a moneths Journey, and Nosova is on the other side of Ob; and it is two weekes and an halfe with light carriage or post. Moreover, he told me, that Pechora runneth into Velekapermia, five weekes journey from Pustozer, and from Veleca permia to Verho towria, nine dayes journey by Horse and Sleds: and from thence to Tumen by River, ten dayes: and from Tumen to Tobolsco, sixe dayes by the River Irtish, and is the chiefe Citie of all Siberia. And from Tobolsco to Sowrgout, is sixe weekes Journey up the River Ob, from whence come all the rich Furres which come to Arcania. From Sowrgout to Tome, which is amongst the Tartars, is three weekes up the River Ob: and yet none knoweth how farre the Ob runneth further,

Intelligence of the Countrey.

as he sayth, he was carried these wayes to the Musko, in the beginning of Rostriga his time. *Course of Pechora.*

The sixteenth, I was told by a Permack, having some speech with him concerning the Vaygats, that from Medniskoy Zavorot to the Vaygats, is one day and a nights sayle with a faire wind. And as you goe forth of the Vaygats, there lieth an Iland called Meastno Ostrove, not being farre from Socolia Lowdy: and from Vaygats through Yougorskoy shar into Oarskoy gouba, (which is a great Bay and deepe) is two dayes and one nights sayling into Mowtnoy River, the course East, somewhat Southerly. And from Mowtnoy to Sharrappa shar, which is an Inlet, is halfe a dayes sayling: and from thence to Yowconove is halfe a dayes sayling, which is an high Land: and from thence to Naromzia is a dayes sayling. And there are three little Rivers betwixt them: and there are Morses all alongst that shoare, and farther he knew not by Sea. But he sayth, that the River Ob is a dayes sayling right over. And from Zylena reca to the Taz-zavorot, the course is South-east, a dayes sayling: and from the Zavorot of Taz to the Rivers mouth, is a day and a nights sayling: and there is an Iland in the mouth thereof, being high land. And from thence up the River, the course is South-east to the Towne eight dayes journey, to be haled with a rope, there runneth such a streame. But, ere you come to the Taz River, there is another River on the Starboord side, called Powre, where they get of the best Sables that come: and you must leave the Iland at the Taz on the Larboord side. And from Taz Towne up the River Volochanco, is sixe dayes journey Easterly against the streame, untill you come to Vollocke, about a mile and an halfe long, Marish ground, and so into another River, some foure dayes rowing with the streame, to the River that is called Trowhan, which is a great River, and falleth into Yenissey, some three dayes journey more with the streame: at the entrance whereof lieth an Iland, called by the same name, whereon there is a little Towne of the same name. From thence

Modeneskoy zavorot.
Meastnoy Ostrove.
[III.iii.545.]
Scola Lowdia.
Yowgarkoy shar.
Carskey Gouba.
Mowtnoy a River.
Sharrappa Shar.
Yowconova.
Naromzia River.
Ob.
Zylena River.
Taz Zavorot.
Taz River.
An Iland in the mouth of Taz.
The Towne.
Powre River.
An Iland called Trowgan.

The River Hautike runneth out of Cathay.

downe the River Yenissey to the River Hautike, is twelve dayes sayling: and it is a great River, and runneth to the East (as it is thought) into Cathay, which of the Permacks, is called Kithayskoy Tsarrstua.

August. They depart from Pustozera.

The fift of August, my selfe, and the Boy, went aboord the Lodia departing from Pustozer. The tenth, we arrived at the Gloubocke, which are the deepe water, whither William Purseglove was come with the Oyle, where we melted what we could, before we departed. The twelfth, I observed in the Gloubocke, and had it on the Quadrant 56. degrees 30. minutes: and the Declination was 12. degrees 42. minutes, so it standeth in 69. degrees 12. minutes.

The eighteenth, we departed from the Gloubocke, and entred the Dry Sea, and arrived at the Zavorot the one and twentieth.

The two and twentieth, we weighed and went out to Sea, the wind at East North-east, but the wind comming to the North-west, we put roomer againe, and came to an Anchor at the Zavorot againe. The foure and twentieth, I observed at the Zavorot, and had it on the Quadrant 63. degrees no minutes, and the Declination was 7. degrees 26. minutes, so it standeth in about 70. degrees 30. minutes.

Gloubocke in 69 degrees 12. minutes.

The six and twentieth, we departed from the Zavorot about noon, the wind being at East, the land trending betwixt it & Collocolcova East & West, being two Voadaes, or sixty Versts distance.

Collocolcova.

The seven and twentieth, we came to an Iland called Mezyou Sharry, being sixtie Versts to the Eastwards of Suatinose, and it is about ten Versts in length, and two Versts broad. At the East end thereof, Oliver Brunell was carried into Harbour by a Russe, where he was Land-locked, having the Iland on the one side, and the Mayne on the other.

Mezyou Sharry.

Oliver Brunell.

The eight and twentieth, we departed from Mezyou Sharry, the wind at North-east, a little gale, but before night it fell thicke, and wee steered away North-west, and about mid-night, it came to the North North-east blowing

a very sore storme: so that we were not able to beare our sayle aloft, and having floud under foot, we were fogged into the Bay, and put ashoare some two houres before day, upon the long point of the obscure Harbour, about three miles to the Westwards, the wind being at North: where we got all our goods on Land, alwayes looking when the Lodia would have split. But, by Gods Almightie Providence, she beate over that Sand, and lay betwixt it and the beach: so that when the tyde was fallen, she sate on ground, as if she had beene in a creeke, the Sands all dry round about her. Also on the West side of Suatinose, in the Bay is a great River, called Indiga, which is, deepe Water, and a good Harbour for a ship, as the Russes doe report. *Indiga.*

The thirtieth, the storme continued all the day long. The one and thirtieth, about noone it blew lesse wind, and at night we stopped our leakes as well as we could.

The first of September, in the morning wee got our goods againe aboord. The second, in the morning, we went roomer with the obscure Harbour, the wind being at the North-west, but at noone, it came to the South-east and East South-east, so we weighed, and stood to the Westwards againe, untill wee came to the River, where wee came on shoare the last yeere: which is called Zenovea, where wee anchored a little to the Eastwards, and ridde the most part of that night. *September.*

The third, in the morning we weighed, and stood to the Westwards, but the wind comming to the West South-west blowing hard, and having the tyde against us, we anchored againe about ten of the clocke on Thursday, being the third day: yet within two houres after, we were forced to weigh, and put roomer to a little River or Creeke, that is, called Creostova: where wee ridde untill the ninth day. Then we loosed, thinking to have gone forth to Sea, the wind being Easterly; but it blowing hard, and there running a great streame of fresh water, that it put us on ground againe, wee were in great danger againe of losing all. So wee were forced to get all things on [III.iii.546.]

shoare againe, and then got her off the eleventh day, and went into the Creake againe: and stopping our leakes as well as we could, we got our goods aboord againe.

The fourteenth, the winde comming to the East South-east, wee got forth to Sea with much adoe; and soone after, the winde came to the East North-east, a faire gale: and wee stood it alongst the Land South-east and by South, and North-west and by North all that afternoone untill mid-night; at what time we were thwart of Callenose. The fifteenth, about three of the clocke in the morning, the winde came to the North-east, and blew very hard, so we steered away South South-west, and at night wee fell with a shoald, which they said, is thwart of the *Knocke John.* Mezen mouth; but I take it, it was Knocke John.

The sixteenth, in the morning about eight or nine of the clocke, having carried but an hullocke of our sayle all *Danielove Stolbe.* night, we fell with Danielove Stolbe on the Coast of Lappia, the wind being at South, and blowing hard, so that we went into Harbour at the West of the Iland, there standing five Crosses on it, it being a Rocke. And there are foure Warlocks on the Mayne, and another on a Rocke to the Westwards: yet it is but for Lodyes, and that a bad one also, beeing full of Rockes round about, where we rid untill the six and twentieth. Then we departed forth of Daniela Stolbe about noone, and at night we came to Sosnovets, where we rid all night. The seven *Churva Nose.* and twentieth, in the morning we fell with Churva Nose. *Arkania.* The eight and twentieth, wee arrived at Arkania, where wee landed our Oyle. The nine and twentieth, wee *Colmogro.* arrived at Colmogro.

Extracts taken out of two Letters of Josias Logan from Pechora, to Master Hakluyt Prebend of Westminster.

THere use to come hither in the Winter about two thousand Samoieds with their Commodities, which may be such as we dreamed not on yet. For by chance

one came to us with a piece of an Elephants Tooth, which he said he bought of a Samoied. And heere are men called Tingussies, whose Countrey is beyond the Rivers of Obi, and Taes; and bordereth upon the great River Yenisse: which is a good River and a deepe, and falleth into the Sea Naromzie: And it should seeme it is not farre from China. Therefore you may conceive what hope there is of this Enterprize, if it please God it may be followed as it ought to be. Thus beseeching Almightie God to blesse you and us, I commit you to the protection of him, who is the giver of all goodnesse, Jul. 24. 1611.

This piece of an Elephants Tooth was sent into England.

The Sea Naromzie.

THere come two or three thousand Samoieds hither to trade with their Sables, Beavers, Blacke Foxes, Squirrels, Wolfes, Rosomackes, Ermines. And here is caught in September, good store of Salmon, Traine of a certayne great fish, called a Bealouga, and Morsses, and Seales Oyle in the Sommer time, and White Foxes and Feathers. I had some conference with a Russe, who told mee that the Samoieds told him, that there lye Minchins, which in their Language is strangers, buried in the Sand in Coffins, with their armes a crosse their brests: which they estimate to be about sixtie yeeres ago: And that they found Writing Tables in one of their pockets, and other small Trifles which they tooke away. The Vaygats is sometimes open and sometimes shut: and upon them groweth Christall of the Mount. The Russes and Permacks trade yeerely with them of the River Obi, and beyond. They goe by Sea into the great Bay beyond Pechora, called Yowgorsky Shar: into which there fall foure Rivers; The Eastermost whereof they call Cara Reca, or the Blacke River; beyond which they passe unto another, called Moetnaia Reca; then they come to a Voloc or necke of Land, which continueth but three Versts; over which they draw their Boats and goods, and so come to another River, called Zelena Reca, or The Greene River, which bringeth them into Obi: Into which on the Easter side, the River Taes falleth, making but one mouth with

In another Letter from Pechora, August 16.

Chrystall upon the Vaygats.

Yowgorsky Shar.

Cara Reca.

Moetnaia Reca.

The Voloc or necke of Land.

Zelena Reca.

Obi River.

Taes River.

the River Obi, being shoald, and they report it to bee as broad toward the mouth, as a man can discerne over, having many Ilands therein.

Yenissey River. Moreover, there is another great River, called Yenissey beyond Taes: which they say, is rather bigger and deeper then Obi; and it runneth up into the Land no man knoweth how farre: Although they have discovered some fourteene dayes rowing up therein: neither can they learne of the Inhabitants thereof how farre it stretcheth; whom they call Tingussey: who are a proper people of themselves. *Tinguissey a people.* And the Samoieds report that they have travelled so farre, that they came within sight of a White Citie or Towne: which should seeme to be builded of stone, for they durst not goe to make triall: and they heard great ringing of Bels. *A White Citie.* *Great ringing of Bels.* Also they say, that they saw beasts, but they were not like their Deere; for they had a great Mane, a long Taile, no Hornes, and their footing was round, not cloven, as their Deeres are: and they use to ride upon their backs, and not to draw in Sleds as their Deere use to doe. *Horses.* These I assure my selfe are Horses. And further they report, that there came people unto them all made of Iron, their heads, armes, hands, and legges: so that neither Arrowes, Swords, nor Speares, could enter; which, as I conjecture, were people in Armour. *People in Armour.* For they said, that two hundred of them they thought were able to conquer all their Realme. By this you may gather, that they are not farre from Cataia and China. *They are not farre from Cataia and China.* Thus have I shewed unto you the greatest secret, and the neerest to the truth that I know. Requesting you, if you thinke it meet, that the Right Honourable the Earle of Salisburie might have a Copie thereof. Thus wishing you health and prosperitie in this World, and felicitie in the World to come, I cease.

[III.iii.547.]

Chap. XI.

A briefe Relation of a Voyage to Pechora, and wintering there, began in the yeere 1611. Written by William Pursglove.

MAster Josias Logan, and William Gourdon, having received directions from the Right Worshipfull Company of English Merchants, Trading Russia. The eleventh of Aprill, 1611. departed from Blackewall in the River of Thames, in a good ship, called the Amitie; whereof James Vadum of Rederiffe was Master.

The sixteenth of July, we arrived at Pustozera, being much wondred at by the Inhabitants, a Permac received us into his House, and let us have a Warehouse for our goods. We all continued there untill the five and twentieth of July. Then wee returned in our Shallop againe to our ship, having a small Russe Boate in our company, to carrie some of the Feathers and Downe, which we brought there, our owne Boat not beeing able to carrie all, being pestered with our Provision, and some Feathers, and White Foxes. Wee came aboord our ship the seven and twentieth of July, where wee delivered those White Foxes, Feathers, and Downe, and an exceeding rich blacke Foxe skinne, having laded the Russe Boate with part of our goods. The rest of our goods they laid upon the Sand to be sent up afterward, leaving mee and Marmaduke Wilson, and an hired Russe with them, where wee attended to heare of Boates from the Towne. But Master Logan not hearing of any above a tunne and an halfe, could not get any to come downe to us; because they feared to goe over the dry or shoald Sea in their little Boates being laden.

They were first received into a Permacks House.

The one and thirtieth, our ship departed over the Barre, purposing to make their Voyage in Nova Zembla, or some Ilands not farre distant from thence. At their

departure there were five and twentie Coaches or Soymas, in that Road of Pechora, with at least two hundred men in them bound for Molgomsey; but hindered by contrary Windes and Ice, our shippes being over the Barre, they all came on shoare to us; some threatning, others flattering us, but after I had bestowed two Bottles of Beere among some of the best of them, they all went up to Pustozeras where most of them that had any goods to sell stayed all Winter, and sold their Commodities in barter with the Inhabitants, and when they could happen secretly upon any Samoieds, they would be trading with them also: which is contrarie to the Priviledges granted by the Emperour to the Pustozerits. Their Wintering there was no little hinderance to us for the sale of our goods.

August. We arrived at the Towne the seventh of August. In mine absence Master Logan had hired part of an House of one, called Tiffon Vriawich, a Polonian, who was turned Russe.

November. His Voyage over-land to Slobotca and Colmogro. Mountaynes & Cameni, or Rockes. The three and twentieth of November, I departed from Pustozera to goe for Russia, at three of the clocke in the afternoone, in the Company of certayne Russes, Permacks, and Samoieds, which Samoieds were our Guides over the Mountaynes: and one dayes journey over the Rocks, which they call Cameni, which are not Rockie Hills, as in Norway, but high Lands, yet in most places smooth, and most marish grounds full of little Hillocks, which being covered with Snow and frozen, did not much annoy us. Our Argeshey or Caravan were about two hundred and ten Sleds, drawne the most part with two Deere in a Sled. They had also about two hundred spare Deere, to ease the wearied. We kept company untill the fourth of December together, having passed two third parts of our way to Slobotca, being the first Towne in the Countrey of Mesen, that we saw. And then in company of foure Sleds, having each two choice Buckes, with a Samoied in the fift for our Guide, we left the Argeshey, and rid post for Slobotca, where wee arrived the ninth of December, at ten of the clocke at night. In this Towne I found one

He arriveth at Slobotca, the 9. of December in 16. dayes

Thomas Ligon an Englishman, who had served Master Richard Cockes of London, who saluting mee in English, marvelled much to meet me there: and carried me from the rest of my company to his Lodging, and gave me there very kind entertaynment. The next morning I departed thence in his Sled, having over night hired an Horse to the next Towne, which was fifteene Versts off: And so travelling day and night, changing Horses at every convenient place, I came to Colmogro the twelfth of December: and delivered my Letters from Master Josias Logan our Factor in Pustozera, to Master Fabian Smith, then Agent for the English Company. Having rested my selfe foure dayes there, and received certayne Money to helpe to put off some of our goods at Pechora, I departed from Colmogro the seventeenth of December, and came to Slobotca the nineteenth day; the height of the Pole being there some sixtie five degrees. I stayed there till the two and twentieth of the said moneth, by which time the Permacks and the Inhabitants of Pustozera, were readie to returne to Pechora with their goods, being Rie, Malt, Hops, Salt, Aqua-vitæ, and some course Cloth. Moreover, divers Russes having their Sonnes or Kinsmen Leigers there, in Winter doe send Cloth and Money over Land.

Thomas Ligon.

He arriveth at Colmogro the 12. of Decemb.

[III.iii.548.]

Having made my provision for my journey, and taken my leave of Master Thomas Ligon, wee set forward that night, and rid not above five and twentie Versts, to a place where wee found the Argeshey which set out from Slobotca the two and twentieth day in the morning by breake of day. We had better passage in our returne, then we had in our journey from Pustozera, by reason of much Snow fallen in the time of our being in Russia, and frozen so hard, that it bare both Deere and Sleds in all places. Wee kept together with the Argeshey, being then two hundred and fiftie Sleds, till we had passed more then two thirds of our way over the Mountaynes: and then long before day having chosen Buckes of the best, wee departed the fourth of Januarie, being eight Sleds in

Snow bettereth their Travell.

The fourth of Januarie.

company, and rid post all that day and night following, beeing Moone-light, save sometimes for the space of an houre that wee stayed where the Samoied our Guide knew there was good store of Mosse, (which is white) to refresh our Deere. The fifth of Januarie, we came to Pustozera, having in fortie houres travelled three hundred and fiftie Versts with our choice Buckes. Our Argeshey or Caravan arrived there after us the twelfth of Januarie.

Mosse food for the Deere.

The manner of travelling with the Samoieds.

The Samoieds being the onely Guides in Winter, either from Pustozera to Slobotca, or to any other places Eastward, as Ougoria, Siberia, or Molgomsey know, by their continuall travell, the way, though it be never so thick weather, as also where most store of white Mosse is growing: and according as they find themselves neere unto some mossie place, be it somthing before night, or within night foure or five houres before they can come thither: there for that Night they pitch their Tents, being for the most part made of Deere and Elkes skinnes: we had in our companie foure great Tents set up, and some twentie under each Tent. This worke of pitching the Tents belongeth unto the Women. In the meane time the men unyoake the Deere, and turne them loose to digge through the Snow, bee it never so deepe, for their food and sustenance. Then the Samoieds (of every Tent one) out of the next Wood, provide as much Fuell as shall serve their turnes for their abode there. First, they set on Kettles full of Snow water, which being melted, they drinke thereof every one a good draught: then they seeth their Supper, using as before Snow water melted for their Drinke. Our lodgings were upon the Snow within our Tents, round about the Fire, having under us for our Beds the skinnes of Deere, covered with our day apparell. For all the time of our journey, the Merchants, whether Stranger, Russe, or Permac, according to the number of them, make provision of Victuals to feed the whole familie in every Tent, every man his day about, together with the Samoieds, their Wives and Children; who carrie all their Houshold every where with them; and out of

Their Tents.

Hard-soft lodging.

Poore Samoieds.

their Sonnes and Daughters, they appoint a watch over their Deere, for feare of the Wolfe and other Beasts, which notwithstanding their watch sometimes kill in a night one or two of their Deere, as it fell out two nights in our journey to Slobotca. This Slobotca is a pretie Towne, having in December and Januarie, great resort of people repayring thither, as well Rich Russes out of many places, with money to buy Furres, as others with provision of Meale and Malt, and other Commodities, to furnish the Pustozerits, as also to buy Fish, to wit, Salmons, Oyle of Bealugos, Deere skinnes, and Furres of them.

Dangerous Wolves.

Slobotca.

The tenth of January, the Inhabitants of Pustozera, returned from Trading with the Samoieds of Ougoria, on which Journey they set forward the five and twentieth of November: and within three dayes after, came betwixt eight or nine hundred Samoieds with a small quantitie of their Commodities, in respect of former yeeres, by reason of Warre betweene the Samoieds of Ougoria, and Molgomsey, who were wont to Trade one with another, and not to warre one against another. So Sables, and other Commodities being scant, the inhabitants sold them very deare: yet notwithstanding, the Russes bought up all, striving one to have them before another. So that after that little money, which we had was bestowed, wee could not doe any thing in barter. Moreover, the Russes did not onely informe against us to the Inhabitants to stirre them up against us, but also used the like meanes to the Samoieds to disswade them from trading with us, either in their owne Countries, or else-where; alleadging that wee would betray them, and not onely carrie them away to make them Slaves, and robbe them, but also would murther and destroy all the rest, wheresoever wee should come. The Inhabitants also of Pustozera, being incensed by the Russes, doubting wee would enter farther into their Trade Eastward, began also to hinder, and forbid the Samoieds to come to us. Yet by meanes of our Hoast being a Polac borne, we spake with divers of the principall of the Samoieds, hee being our Interpreter, and wee our

Trade with the Samoieds of Ougoria.

Eight or nine hundred Samoieds come to Pustozera.

The false suggestions of the Russes against us.

selves understood certayne Samoieds speaking broken Russe, and by these meanes we found out more at large the despitefulnesse of the Russes, and the envie of some of the Inhabitants against us; as also their feare, least wee or any other Stranger, should enter into further Discoverie of their trafficking toward the East, but especially about the River Ob. Some sayd we were sent as spyes to betray their Land to the Pole or the Swethen, with whom they then had warre. Some gave counsell to put us under the Water: others advised to set us upon the Sand, where wee should have beene without all doubt drowned in short space, others thought best to send us up to the Nobilitie, and to seaze on all our goods to the use of the State. But divers of the best in the Towne, with whom wee kept all friendship that possible we could, withstood those bloudie practises. The Lord therefore bee blessed.

[III.iii.549.]

March. The fifth of March, the Inhabitants of Pustozer went againe to Slobotca, carrying the Russes with their Commodities thither.

Aprill, 1612. They returned home the eleventh of Aprill, 1612. The one and twentieth of Aprill, water was first seene upon the maine River Pechora above the Ice, descending from above Oust-zilma.

May 20. *the Ice brake up.* The twentieth of May, the Ice brake up. The five and twentieth of May, certayne of the Inhabitants of Pustozer, went by water unto Oust-zilma.

Our men intreated to winter at Oust-zilma. The sixe and twentieth, Josias Logan with our Hoast the Polonian, hired a Boate and went toward Oust-zilma, carrying with him certayne Cloath and Copper Kettles, in hope to sell them well there, being intreated in the Summer before by one of their Townesmen to come thither, or to send one to Winter there: alledging that they got great store of Losh-hydes, Squirrels, Sables, and Bevers. Which some yeeres indeed, as we were credibly informed, falleth out according to his report. But at his arrivall there, divers of the Townesmen came against him, and would not suffer him nor any of his Boate to Land for the space of ten houres: but in the end, they let him goe

on shoare, after, as wee suppose, the Inhabitants of Pustozer had bought most of their Commodities. So that hee staying there two dayes, could get but nine Losh-hydes, and halfe a timber of course Sables, in barter for some Cloath and Copper. The principall cause of his going thither, was, to meete with some of the Permacks out of Permia, who some yeeres come downe with Rie, and Rie-meale, and thought to have given notice to those Permacks of our being at Pustozer, and to have willed them to have perswaded their Countrey-men to bring thither the next Spring following all their Commodities, being Waxe, Honey, Losh-hydes, and Furres, which they might doe for halfe the charge that they are at in bringing them to Archangell, on the River Duina.

Oust-zilma. Oust-zilma is a pretie Towne of some sixtie Houses: and is three or foure dayes sayling with a faire wind against the streame from Pustozer, but backe againe they may sayle it in two dayes.

June 3. The third of June, came the first Russes in their Cayooks by River out of Russia to Pustozer. These Cayooks, be small Boates of two tunnes, having two men in each Boate.

Sixteene Soymas depart for Molgomsey. The twentieth of June, nine Russe Coaches or Soymas, passed by Pustozer from Oust-zilma for Molgomsey. The one and twentieth, sixe Russe Soymas more departed from Pustozer: all the rest having given over their Voyage, which came thither the Summer before, 1611. The two and twentieth, one Soyma belonging to the Towne of Pustozer, departed for Molgomsey.

Fishing for Bealugos under the Bolvan. The three and twentieth, and foure and twentieth, the Inhabitants of Pustozer, went to Fish for Bealugos under the Bolvan, being the highest Land neere unto the Drie Sea, and two dayes sayling from the Towne.

The five and twentieth, I departed after them, and arrived there the seven and twentieth, hoping to have provided good store of Bealugos Oyle. But it fell out contrarie: though there were above fiftie Boates, having in every Boate three men, and in many foure, by reason

it pleased God to send such windie and stormie weather, that the Boates could not goe to Sea in many dayes together, during their wonted time of Fishing for those Beasts; being till the twentieth of July. Then every man leaveth that Fishing, and repaire to their owne Fisherie, to hunt Ducks, Geese, and Swannes, which most yeeres they get in abundance, and make good profit of their Feathers and Downe: as also of their Flesh, which they salt up in Caske for Winter provision, serving them also all the Summer for Flesh dayes. These Bealugos they catch with harping Irons, tyed fast to a long rope of ninetie or an hundred fathoms, with a staffe of the length of two yards or somewhat longer, being put loose into the Iron, wherewith when the beast commeth within the reach of him that striketh, he smiteth him with the Iron, leaving it in the Beast: then the rope being layed out cleere to vere out, the man holding his Staffe still in his hand: but the Beast being wounded hasteneth to the bottome, where having beate himselfe neare to death, they hall in their rope by little and little, the Beast ascending thereby. And if they finde him not neere death, they strike him againe: and being dead they cut off his skinne with the fat on it in many parts, some the breadth of two hands, some more or lesse. Then comming on shoare, they take the Fat from the skinne, and cut it in small peeces to dissolve it to Oyle, casting away the Flesh which is red, to the Fowles of the Sea; except some poore Samoied come that way, who taketh it, though it have lyen putrifying two or three dayes, and dryeth it, and maketh good cheare with it with his Familie. This Beast is as bigge as two good Sturgions. Moreover, I was informed by an ancient Traveller, that the Flesh and Fat of that Beast, being cut as Beefe and salted in Caske, is a great and rich Commoditie in Italie; which cannot chuse but to bee much better then young Whales, which I have heard that the Biskayners use to preserve for good meate. With the Fat of some one of these Beasts, they will fill three Barrels, of some lesser two barrels, and some yeeld but one barrell

Manner of killing them. The Russes upon the Ice use to kill the Morse as they doe their Bealugo: but their rope is longer, and a barrell made fast at one end to buoy it.

Samoieds povertie.

Bealugo made meate in Italie.

of Blubber, which they call Shilliga. In that Summer when I was there, by reason of Northerly windes blowing hard, they killed by all their Boates not above fortie Beasts: with some Boate they killed two, with other three, with some foure. But with most not one.

[III.iii.550.] The thirteenth of July, I received a Letter from Master Josias Logan, the effect whereof was; That the Company of our English Merchants of Russia, had sent a Boate out of Russia by River, which stood them in foureteene Rubbels or Marks, for us to goe in her, or by Lodia for Russia. For they were purposed not to send a Ship for us that yeere.

July 13. A Boate sent by River to Pustozera, to fetch home Master Logan and his Company into Russia.

The ninth of August, Master Josias Logan, and Marmaduke Wilson, came from the Towne of Pustozera in a Lodia to goe for Russia, and Anchored in the Glowbuc, which is a deepe place of the River. Heere wee stayed ten dayes to make up our Oyle. In the meane time the Lodia got her full lading with Omelies, and Seegies salted in Caske, attending a faire winde.

August.

The Gloubuc.

The ninth of August, wee set sayle out of the Glowbuc, and entred the Suchoi-morie, that is, The Drie or shoald Sea, and stirred away next hand North North-east.

The nine and twentieth, a little before day, not thinking wee had beene so neere the Land, we were on the Breches of Promoi Coskoi, or the Sands of Promoi, a bad Harbour so called by the Russes, and beate over one Sand by Gods providence onely, so high, being halfe full of water, that in dispaire of ever getting her off againe, wee unladed most of the goods, as Fish, Oyle, Feathers, Downe, and Losh-hydes, as soone as it began to bee day-light, and that the Russes knew us to bee upon the mayne Land. The thirtieth day, being somewhat calme, and the wind Easterly, but thicke weather still, there came three men from Vasilie Beregen his Lodia, who was our Consort, while wee were working to get our Lodia a floate againe, and told us, that their Lodia was beaten in peeces upon the mayne Land, some seven or eight Versts to the Westward off us. The one and thirtieth, wee laboured againe,

Promoi Coskoi.

and by Gods assistance got her a floate, having taken out almost all her goods: and that night laded some part againe.

September. The first of September, wee got all our goods aboord, and at Night-tide being faire weather, the winde North-west and Moone-light, wee put from that comfortlesse place, and went into the Promoi Harbour, having on the Barre nine or ten foote water; but within foure or five fathoms. A South-west Moone maketh there a full Sea. It is in the great Bay betweene Suetinos and Candinos. The second, the winde at East North-east faire weather, wee set sayle with our leake Lodia, the Pumpe never resting.

The third, the winde variable, wee sayled along the shoare till about Noone: then the wind comming to the West, wee put backe againe for Christova Stanovecha, which is the Crosse Harbour, where wee rode in a fine River, having a bad Barre.

The ninth, in the Morning wee purposed to put to Sea againe, the winde Easterly: but the Barre was so growne and warped up with sands, when wee came upon the entrance of it, that we could not passe over, neither with Wind nor Oares, but were forced upon the mayne: where our Lodia was beaten so high upon the sand, that all hope of saving her was past. That day wee got out of her an hundred Barrels of Fish and Oyle, and yet we could not get her off againe.

North-west windes cause high Tides on this Coast. Much Snow. The tenth, the winde being at North-west, caused high Tides, by which meanes we got her off, and brought her againe into Harbour. The eleventh wee had so much winde and Snow, that we could not get our goods aboord all that day. The twelfth, we got all aboord, having stopped most of our leakes with Mosse and old Cloutes.

The thirteenth, the wind at East, faire weather, wee put to Sea out of that bad Harbour, leaving one of our Boates there, and eight Barrels of Fish to ease our leake Lodia. The fourteenth, about mid-night we were thwart of *Candinos.* Candinos, and stirred South-west, and South South-west

all the next day: but the Night following being much winde, the Russes esteeming themselves to bee on the Westerne shoare, strooke sayle, and by Day-light we saw Land to the Westward of the White Sea, being the sixteenth day: and wee were forced againe into another bad Harbour, called Danilo Stolb, that is, Daniels Piller, on the Coast of Lapland, where we made our Lodia fast among the Rockes: where shee lay drie halfe-tide, and lay there beenept and wind-bound untill the sixe and twentieth day: and then at Tide-time wee got out of that place. *Danilo Stolb in Lapland.*

The eight and twentieth, wee entred into the River of Duyna, and landed that night at the Castle of Archangel in the English House, all our Oyle, Losh-hydes, and other goods, as Feathers, Downe, &c. *Archangel.*

The nine and twentieth, about mid-night we came to the English House at Colmogro, and there continued all the Winter. *Colmogro.*

The three and twentieth of Aprill 1613. the River of Duyna brake up at Archangel.

Other Observations of the sayd William Pursglove.

FRom Medenskoie Zavorot to the Ile of Vaygats, is two dayes sayling with a Russe Lodia. From Vaygats to the River Ob, is foure dayes sayling. The River Ob lyeth North and South. The course from Vaygats to Toukoi-coscoy, is North-east; and from thence East to the mouth of Ob. Within the Ob some three dayes sayling, is a River on the East side called Tas, having as it were a Barre at the entrance thereof: yet there is alwayes eleven or twelve foote water upon it, but within it is very deepe. Within two dayes sayling within the Tas, the Russe hath builded a Towne and a Castle, being called Molgomsey; where all the Hunters of Beasts assemble, and bring their Furs with them. Also the Russe Soymas or Boats and those of Pustozera, come thither with their Meale and other Merchandizes. And having sold or bartered their Commodities, every one

Medeniskoie Barre. Vaygats Iland. The River Ob.

The River Tas.

[III iii.551.]

Molgomsey a great Mart.

returneth home, some to Pustozera, and others to Russia. The Hunters also provide against the next Winter for Hunting againe.

Ougoria and Naramzai. There are three Rivers under the high Land of Ougoria and Naramzey, and great store of Morsses about the point of Naramzei, whither the Inhabitants of Pustozera doe send a Lodia in the Autumne, with divers Commodities to trade with the Ougorian Samoieds. Also they kill many Morsses, onely taking their Teeth, and travell among the Samoieds all the Winter to trade with them, and returne over Land to Pustozera in Januarie next following. Some yeeres, if the winde doe not serve them instantly, they are glad to give over that Voyage by Sea. As for example, in the yeere 1611. when we wintered there, the frost came upon them before they had wind to serve them; whereupon they were forced to give over that Voyage. And assoone as they could travell by Sled, some of the richest of the Sonnes and Servants of the Townsmen, were sent with certayne Commodities to barter with the Samoieds, against their Fathers or other Friends should come after in the Winter, and to buy up all the best Furs and other Commodities.

Store of Morses.

They returne from Ougoria in Januarie.

The Russes when they sayle for Molgomsey in their Soymas, goe not about Naramzei point to the mouth of the River Ob, but sayle up a narrow River, called Moetnaia Reca, that is to say, the Muddie River, & at the head therof they hale their Boats over a little neck of land into the River Zelenai, that is, the Green River, & so fall down into the River Ob: and so saile Southward up the River Ob till they come to the River Tas. From the Barre of Tas to the Rivers mouth, is above a daies & a nights sailing. There is an Iland in the mouth of Tas, being very high land. From thence the River to the Towne, leaving the Iland on the left hand are eight dayes sayling. But ere you come to the Tas River, there is a small River called Power, or Piet; where they get the best Sables of all Molgomsey. And up the River Tas to Volochanko, against the streame are sixe dayes sayling

Moetnaia Reca.

Zelenai Reca.

Ob Reca.

Tas River.

An Iland in the mouth of Tas.

A Towne.

Eastward, till you come to a Voloc, or necke of Land a mile and an halfe over, beeing marish ground, over which the Russes and Pustozerits hale their Boats into another River, called Torowhan, and rowing downe with the streame three dayes, they fall into the mightie River Yenisce. At the mouth of the River Torowhan, there dwell people on an Iland, having builded them a little Towne and a Church. And from thence they sayle downe the River to Hawtick, which is a great River, and runneth unto the East.

A necke of Land.

The River Torowhan.

The River Hawtick.

The River of the Tingussies, is three dayes and three nights sayling within the River Yeniscey. There are no Woods neere unto the mouth of Jenisce. But in the River of Tingussie are great store of Woods. There are two or three Rivers betweene the mouth of Yenisce and Tingussie, but not so large as the Tingussie River is; neere unto which the Russes doe fish: and assoone as it freezeth, they go againe to their old trade of hunting the Sables, Bevers, and Foxes. And having in two winters so laboured for themselves, those that be good Husbands return rich into Russia: And except they fall againe into povertie through fire or other wayes, never returne thither againe.

The River of the Tingussies.

Two or three Rivers from Tingussie to the mouth of Yenisce.

The Tingussies are a taller people then the Samoieds, and weare their Garments made of skins shorter, and made closer to their bodies then the Samoieds. They be a very gentle people to converse withall.

From the mouth of Ob to the great River Jenisce, as a Russe told mee, is foure dayes and foure nights sayling. Betwixt Ob and Yenisce, is high blacke Land.

Beyond Jenisce Eastward is another great River, called Pisida. The Land trendeth due East beyond the River Jenisce to Pisida: and to another River, called Catowga, which commeth out of Cathay, whose King the Permackes call Teulka Tsar. The River lyeth North and South, they know not how farre. For the Tingussies, of whom they had intelligence of this River, are afraid of Gun-shot that they doe heare, which they use on the South part of that

The River Pisida.

The River Catowga.

River, and dare not travell up it. In it they saw Vessels with two or three sayles; which in the Spring, sayle downe the River Northward, and in the Autumne, returne againe to the South. But they know not whether they fish, or goe to gather some Mynes, which are supposed to be in those Countreyes, not daring to goe neere them. It was told me, that betwixt Pisida and Catowga, about the midway upon the Sea-coast were found divers Stones, some like unto Gold in colour, other white and like Silver. Also the Tingussies have seene people about that great River, called Catowga, riding on Horses: and it is said, that there is great store of Corne, Beefes, Horses, Sheepe, and Goates in this Countrey.

Ships with two or three sailes.

Horses about the River Catowga.

The travell from Pechora to Permia, Ougoria, and to the River Ob, and the Townes situated thereupon, over Land.

FRom Pustozera up the River Pechora, with a faire wind to the River Ouse, is fourteene dayes sayling by River. From Ouse to Podcamen, ten dayes. From [III.iii.552.] Podcamen to Ob eight dayes by Deere in Winter time, assoone as the Snow is fallen and frozen. From thence to Bereseva sixteene dayes; which is a Towne of Trade, it is from Pustozera to Vade in Ougoria, beeing on the West side of Ob, a monethes journey or travell by Deere. This Vade is a little Towne, having the Houses thereof builded under the ground.

Bereseva.

The River of Pechora, runneth through great Permia; and the head thereof is five Weekes travell from Pustozera.

From Great Permia, is nine dayes travell by Horse and Sled to Vercho-towria. Vercho signifieth in the Russe Tongue, The higher: as Vercho-towria, is Towria The higher. From thence by River is ten dayes journey to Tumen. From Tumen to Tobolsca, sixe dayes downe the River Irtish. Tobolsca is the chiefest Citie in Siberia. From Tobolsca to Surgout, or Sergalt, is sixe Weekes

Verchio-towria.

Tumen.

Tobolsca.

Surgout.

journey up the River Ob. From Surgout to the Citie Tom, seated among the Tartars, is three Weeks up the River Ob. The Russes know no farther of the River Ob; nor how farre it stretcheth to the Southward: But they suppose that it runneth much farther to the South, by reason there come so many severall Nations downe the said River to trade at Surgout, and Tobolsca: as namely, the people of Boughar, the Tesicks or Persian Merchants, and many sorts of Tartars. Abraham Michaelovich was chiefe Customer at Surgout, 1611. And hee told me, that hee received for the Emperours Custome for goods, bought and sold that yeere, the summe of sixteene thousand Robles, or Markes.

Tom.

Many Nations come downe the River Ob, from the South to trade at Surgout and Tobolsca.

Moreover, he told me, that the people of Cathay doe trade to Surgout, and people from divers other Kingdomes, as from Alteen Tzar, or King Alteen, who among other things bring Plates of Silver and sell them. Another Russe named Philat, who had travelled farther among the Tingussies, then any other Russe, and speaketh their Language, told mee he had bought of a Tingussie, a Plate of Silver weighing in Russe Money fortie two Alteens, foure Dingoes, for twentie blue Glasse Beades.

The Country of King Alteen.

An Altine is six pence, a Dingo is a penie.

Beresova upon the Ob, before you come neere Tobolsca, is a Towne of Trade for Furres, but especially for Losh-hides; which are bought for tenne Alteenes a piece. I was told by a Permac, that there was a Russe which bought foure thousand Elkes, or Losh-hides there for a fourth part of a Roble or Marke a piece.

To the Eastward of Pechora are store of Hawkes, which I hold to bee as good as the Turkie Hawkes, namely, slight Falcons, Goshawkes, and Jer-falcons, whereof some are as white as Snow, others speckled White and Red. Likewise, there are all kinds of the richest Sables brought from Molgomsey, and blacke Foxes. There is also Christall of the Mountayne. If we might have libertie to travell those Countreyes, wee might have these Commodities cheaper there then at Pechora. And within the Ob we might vent our Commodities at a better rate.

Hawkes as white as snow.

Commodities for Pechora, Siberia, Permia, Ougoria, and among the Tingussies.

Russe Money. FIrst, at Pechora readie Money, being Russe Money, is the best and principallest both to put off other goods to profit, as also to get credit among the Merchants strangers at our first comming thither, till Trade be setled and knowne through Permia, and Siberia. Salt, Rie, Meale, white Danske Rie Kil-dryed for heating in the ship, Oat-meale and Butter for the Samoieds; all sorts of course Cloth, some fine Cloth, Copper, and Brasse Kettles of the middle size, from two pound to thirtie, or thirtie five. But Brasse not above fifteene pound with eares of Brasse, all the Kettles and eares of one piece. Also Files to sharpe Arrowes and other things, small Horse-bels, course Canvasse for upper Gownes. Foure peny, sixe peny, and ten peny Nayles: small Anchors of foure and twentie pound a piece. Frankincense for their Churches and Houses.

Commodities for the Tingussies.

PEwter, Pewter Sawcers, Little Platters, Flat Poringers, some graven, some ungraven. Nests of Cups, some graven, others ungraven. Salt-sellers. Plates, or sheets of Latten being white. Hamborough Lichenaes, Blue, Red, and Tawny. But I think our course Northerne dozens, and course Kersies Northerne dyed into those colours, would vent as well and better then they: they being thicker walked. And the Samoieds delight altogether in thicke Cloth. Grey doozens of an easie price would vent well among the Permacks, which weare much grey or mingled coloured course Cloth. And some course doozens died Yellow, or Northerne course Cloth Red and Yellow, would bee no bad Commoditie.

A course Hamborough Cloth.

Aqua vitæ of two sorts, the best and indifferent for the Samoieds. Glasse Beades, Skie coloured. Needles

round and three square. Brasse Basons, Russe Linnen Cloth, or Polish Linnen Cloth. Hops, Mault, Russe Sope. All sorts of strong Wines, as Sacke and Canarie Wine. Bacon is a good Commoditie in Siberia.

Chap. XII. [III.iii.553.]

Later Observations of William Gourdon, in his Wintering at Pustozera, in the yeares 1614. and 1615. with a Description of the Samoyeds life.

THe twentieth of November, I departed from Pustozera, to goe to Yougorie, at foure in the after-noone, and did ride most of the Night, before wee came to the Choome, going East South-east. The one and twentieth, Mihiloe returned to the Towne, and we removed and went our Journey, faire and little wind. The two and twentieth, little wind North, wee kept on our course East South-east, having gone from the Towne 50. miles, at night Mihiloe came to us. The three and twentieth, little wind, we went on our Journey, and at Noone passed over a little River, called Coy, falling North into Pechora, 14. leagues below the Towne, and at Night came all the Russes from the Towne, having gone 24. miles East South-east.

November, 1614. His Journey within 30. leagues of Ob, and neere to Bersoma.

The River Coy, falling into Pechora.

The foure and twentieth, wee removed on our Journey being very cold, and went not above ten miles East South-east, at Night wee broke one of our Sleds, which went laden with Victuals.

The five and twentieth, wee went forward very slowly, at Noone I received a Letter from Master Copman by Foma Creticove, this after-noone another had his Sled broken, we went 10. or 12. miles. The sixe and twentieth, we continued on our Journey, and at Eeven we passed over a River, called Shapkina, falling South into Pechora;

The River Shapkina, falling into Pechora.

halfe way betwixt Pustozer and Oust-zilma, a Sled broken and mended out of hand, going East South-east 15. miles. The seven and twentieth being Sunday, the wind at South-west, did blow very hard, and Snow all the day, the snow driving that wee could hardly see which way to goe, yet we kept on East South-east 18. miles.

The River Novgorotko, falling into Shapkina.

The eight and twentieth, in the Morning, wee passed over Novgorotka River, which falleth West South-west into Shapkina River, sixe dayes Journey above Oust-zilma, the wind South-west, and Snow all day, wee kept on still East South-east 15. miles. The nine and twentieth, the wind South, with Snow all day, being not cold, we went on East South-east 20. miles. The thirtieth, the wind East South-east, very cold in the after-noone, we passed over Habeaga River, which falleth into Pechora, sixe dayes Journey above Oust-zilma, going 20. miles.

Habeaga River falling into Pechora.

December.

The first of December, the wind East blowing very hard, the Snow did drive so hard, that we could not goe forward, but stood still all day and did not remove. The second, calme and not so cold, wee went on East South-east 10. miles. The third, in the Morning it was very warme, at Noone the wind North, it was extreame cold, the Snow driving very thicke, in the after-noone we passed over the River Haryena, which falleth into Colvoy South-east, having gone East South-east 15. miles.

The River Haryena, falling into Colvoy.

The River Colvoy, falling into Ouse.

The fourth day warme, we went East, at Eeven we came to a River called Colvoy, which falleth South into the River Ouse, where wee stayed all Night, having gone 20. miles. The fift, in the Morning we went on upon the River six or seven miles East and by North, and came where it parted in two, the one keeping North-east, the other being called Sandavets; from the South-east wee went betwixt them both East and by South 12. miles, and tooke up our lodging upon a Playne where no Wood is to bee seene.

Saint Nicholas Day.

The sixt, being Saint Nicholas day, which with the Russes is held a principall day, in the morning they caused their Images to bee brought into the Choome, lighting

Wax-candles before them, making their Prayers to them, according to their order; after which, I gave them a bottle of Aqua vitæ, wherewith the Guides were drunke that they could not guide their Deeres, but set me to direct the way by Compasse, which I did all the day, although I had but little skill, we went South-east and by East 20. miles.

The seventh, being very faire weather, our Guides lay all the day with Pohmeall, and could not goe forward. The eight, faire and calme, we went forward South-east and by East 10. miles, and tooke up our lodging by a small River which falleth into Sandavets River. The ninth, very cold, that we had much adoe to keepe our selves from freezing, going on foot all the day over a playne where no Wood groweth, going South-east 15. miles, and lay by a Wood side all night. The tenth, the Frost was so extreame, that wee lay still and could not proceed. The eleventh, being Sunday, the Frost continued extreame, we removing, there were few in the Companie that had not some part of their faces frozen, and my selfe, although I was something better provided then any of them, yet I had something to doe to keepe my selfe from freezing, going on foot most part South-east and by East 15. miles. The twelfth, the Frost was so extreame, that there was no looking forth, but lay still all day. The thirteenth, not altogether so cold, wee proceeded on our Journey 20. miles South-east & by East, and at night we passed over the River Hoseda, which falleth South-east into the River Azua. The fourteenth, the winde South, with Snow and not so cold, we went thorow Woods 20. miles, East South-east. The fifteenth, the wind South, with Snow, and not so cold, we went East South-east, at Noone wee passed over Azua River, which falleth South into Ouse, we continued still East South-east 30. miles.

A small River falling into Sandavets.

Terrible Frost.

The River Hoseda, falling into Azua.

[III.iii.554.]

The River Azua, falling into Ouse.

The sixteenth, the wind South, in the Morning we set forth East South-east, over a high ridge or Mountayne, called Yangoda, and upon the top of the same the wind shifting North, with Snow so thicke, that our Guides

The Mountain Yangoda.

did not know well which way to goe, yet sometimes backe and somtimes forward, with much adoe we got over, in the Eevening passing over the River Rogavaya Mensha, falling South into Ouse, where we stayed all Night, having gone 20. miles.

The River Rogavaya Mensha, falling into Ouse.

The seventeenth, faire and warme, wee passed thorow Woods, where the Snow was very deepe, and came to a Playne, called Correapin Tundra, where a Russe whose name was Correapa dyed, (and was buried, therefore they gave that place that Name) some thirtie yeeres past, where we stayed all Night, having gone 15. miles South-east and by East. The eighteenth, in the Morning wee went on thorow Woods, the Snow being very deepe, and at Mid-night we came to the River Rogavaya Bolsha, where the Russes had a Gorodocke, and bartering with the Samoits, having gone 30. miles East South-east, the River falleth with turnings to the Southward into Ouse; heere I stayed till the sixth of January.

The River Rogavaya Bolsha, falling into Ouse.

Altitude and Variation.

The thirtieth of December, I observed with my Astrolobia, and had the Sun 2. degrees above the Horizon. Latitude 65. degrees and 48. minuts, the variation of the Compasse being 20. degrees.

Januarie. Returne.

The sixth of January, at three in the after-noone, wee departed from the Gorodocke, the wind South South-west blowing very hard, going North-west 30. miles, and at mid-night came to the Choome. The seventeenth, the wind South South-west, blowing very hard, the Snow driving so thicke, that we could not goe over the Mountayne, called Yangoda, but stayed by a Wood side, having gone West North-west 15. miles. The eight, in the Morning wee passed over the River, called Rogavaya Mensha, and at Noone over the Yangoda, keeping backe our way 30. miles West North-west, faire and warme. The ninth, little wind North but sharpe, we went on North-west and by West, at Noone we passed over Azua River, and in the after-noone came to a Herd of wilde Deere, the Samoits killed three, giving me a haunch; going in all 30. miles.

Wilde Deere.

The tenth, calme and very cold, we went on 20. miles, West North-west. The eleventh, little wind South-east; at Noone we passed over Hoseda River, which falleth South-east into Azua, we went 30. miles North-west & by West. The twelfth, the wind South and cold, we went West and by South, over many Creeks & Ponds 25. miles. The thirteenth, this day the wind South and not cold, we went West & by South 30. miles, thorow many woods and plaines. The fourteenth, faire and warme, at Noone we passed over Saudaets River, which falleth South-west into Colvoy, we went West and by North 30. miles.

The fifteenth, being Sunday, we went West North-west over a broad playne, with many great Ponds, at Night we passed over Colvoy River, going South into the River Ouse, which falleth into Pechora, nine dayes journey from Oust-zilma, we went 30. miles, having most of our Deere tyred, the Snow was so deepe. The sixteenth, little wind, we went on West North-west, at noone we passed over Haryena River, which falleth South-east into Colvoy, going 20. miles. The seventeenth, the wind South, blowing very hard, the Snow driving, wee went West North-west 25. miles, at Night we tooke up our lodging upon the River Habeaga, which falleth into Pechora, sixe dayes journey from Oust-zilma.

The eighteenth, we went on West North-west 10. miles, where the Townesmen over-tooke us, riding post to the Towne, where making our selves ready, wee followed, the same Eevening we passed over Novgorotka River, which falleth West South-west into Shapkina River, which falleth South-west into Pechora, halfe way betwixt Pustozer and Oust-zilma, and in the Morning we passed over Coy River, which falleth into Pechora 14. leagues Northward from Pustozer; and the same day, being the nineteenth day in the after-noone, wee came to the Towne, having rid above 150. miles without rest. The last of Aprill, 1615. being Sunday, was the first appearing of the water, increasing at Pustozera. The seventh of May, Evan

Aprill. River increasing.

May.

Croticove, had almost slaine with a knife his two Uncles, Foma Croticove, and Erasmi Croticove.

The eighteenth, the water was at the highest, being so extreame that many were forced out of their Houses, and we our selves in like manner, having the water a foot deepe in our bed Chamber. The twentieth, the water did a little begin to fall, and so continued falling by degrees.

Oust-zilma. The ninth of June, my servant Marmaduke Wilson came from Oust-zilma, having Wintered there, to buy and sell goods, bringing with him such Commodities as the place doth affoord, as Sables, Rosomacks, Wolves, Ermins, Squirrils, &c.

The fifteenth, we laded three small Lodias with goods, to carrie downe to the Glouboka. The three and twentieth, I departed from Pustozer, and came to the Glouboka the five and twentieth, with two small Lodias laden with goods. The eight and twentieth of June, I observed at the Glouboka, which I found to lye in the height of 67. degrees 55. minutes, and the Compasse varyed 18. degrees. The last of June, I went from the Glouboka to passe over the Drie Sea, the wind at South, but the wind comming to the North, I returned backe the next day. The second of July, being Sunday, the wind at South South-east, I departed the second time, to come to the Zavorot, but comming neere Dolgoy, an Iland lying in the Drie Sea, the Ice lay so firme, that we could not passe but returned backe to the Glouboka.

Glouboka is 67. degrees 55. minutes.

[III.iii.555.] *July.* The fourth of July, John Copman came to the Glouboka, bringing with him all our goods for sayle, having payed all Customes and duties for the same. The sixth of the same, I departed the third time from the Glouboka, the wind at South, but did not continue, but came to the East, and East North-east, so rowing alongst the shoare, wee passed to the West side betwixt the shoalds and the shoare, and having passed the Wester Iland, called Lovetskoy, we came to the Zackharreoveberoge or Coast, which doth lye South-west and North-east, and put into

a small River, where we stayed (the seventh) all night, and the next day with Sayle and Oares, wee came to a Bay to the South of Casnets Nose, where we stayed all night, the wind East South-east.

The eight, in the Morning we passed by Cuznets-Nose amongst the Ice, having much adoe to get cleare, the wind at North North-west, and at Night we came to the Zavorot, where were five and twentie sayle of small Lodias, some going for Munganzea, other for Fish, and some going to Pustozer, who told me they had beene aboord our Ship at Sea. The ninth, this day being Sunday, our Ship came over the Barre, where I was received, not looked for. The eleventh, at Night we departed from the ship, and went to get downe our goods from the Glouboka and the Towne.

The sixteenth, I departed from the Glouboka, with three small Lodias laden with goods, but the wind at East North-east, two of them returned backe, but I kept on and came aboord our Ship the eighteenth in the morning. The twentieth, the other two came with the goods aboord, and the one and twentieth, we returned to the Glouboka with three Boates, and got thither that night. The three and twentieth, I came the second time from the Glouboka, with three Boates with goods, and the next morning came to our Ship, where I remayned, sending up all the Boats the sixe and twentieth of July.

The eight of August, came John Copman with Thomas Dogget, bringing two Boats laden with goods, fitting to set sayle for Holland, but did not depart till the 21. of August. And the three and twentieth of September, (giving heartie thankes to God) we arrived at Dort in Holland.

Apparell of Samoyeds.

NOw for the manner of the Samoits in their Journey, their upper Coat is called a Parka, which is for the most part of Deere-skin, and some of white Foxe or Wolverin, which they weare the hayre or furre outward, under that they have another Coat, which is called a

Mallek, made of young Fawne-skins, or Hare-skins, or Swan-skins, very soft and well dressed, a Cap of Bever, double and close to their heads, with two flaps for their Eares, tyed under their Chin, a payre of Breeches of Deere-skin with the hayre inwards, upon their Feete they have sockes or stockins of Deere-skin, the hayre to their skin, upon that long Bootes which they call Pemyes, made of the legges of Deere-skins, thus apparelled, they sit upon their Sleds crosse-legged, with a Deere-skin under them.

Sleds. Two Deere being yoaked to a Sled, they will runne with

Deere swiftnesse. such swiftnesse, and so long to continue, as is not to be beleeved, except to those that have seene the same. For riding post, they will ride without rest or sleepe, two hundred miles in foure and twentie houres; but with their Argish or stuffe, thirtie miles in twelve houres; their

Women. Women usually doe guide their Argish, which is ten Sleds, and to every Sled a Bucke, all made fast one after another, the Men in the way doe provide Wood for firing, and doe hunt for all manner of Beasts & Fowle, which the women dresse. It is the Womans labour to set up the

Tent and Chappell. Choome or Tent, making one place therein alwayes Holy,

Superstition. which the woman must not set her foot into, neither goe about the Tent round; which if they chance to doe, they will presently remove all, for feare of the Wolfe or Beare, which they say, would devoure them if they did not remove.

Their Tent or Choome, is made in this manner; first, they set up long Firre-poles, then they have sixe quarters double of Deere-skin, which being set up, they throw Snow round about the edges a yard thicknesse, leaving the top open for to vent smoake, making a Fire in the middle, spreading Deere-skins, upon which they lye, in which manner, it is altogether as warme as the Stoves in Russia,

No Townes. they have no Townes, neither any certaine place of abode, but with their Deere they travell from place to place, where they finde the best Mosse for their Deere.

Marrie Wives, bought and sold. Their Wives they buy for Deere, and will have if hee have abilitie foure or five Wives, with whom he lyeth by

turn every night several; he is the richest man that hath most Deere or Daughters, selling them to any that will give most for them. In their Marriages having agreed of price, they use not great Ceremonies; onely they make a Feast to their friends, after which the Woman is brought to the Man that hath bought her, shee being hung with many Iron Rings and Brazen Bels, all departing out of the Tent save they two till the next Morning, and then he departeth; but if he bee one of wealth, they will continue their Feast seven dayes. It falleth out many times, that after they have had their Wives halfe a yeere or a yeere, they will turne them backe to their Friends, taking their Deeres againe, paying for the charge of the Feast, which is alwayes to bee made at her Fathers charge, and losing the increase of his Deere.

Marriages.

Rings and Bels.

Divorce.

They have not knowledge of the true God, but worship Blocks and Images of the Devill, unto which, they will strangle tame Deere, rubbing the bloud on the Idols, and eating the meate themselves.

Religion.

When a Rich man dyeth, because hee should not travell on foot, his friends will kill three Deere to draw him in the new World, and they will strangle a Slave to tend on him. The Deere they kill in this manner to serve the dead man, they make a Stake sharpe, which they thrust into the Beasts fundament, with many howlings and cryings, till they be dead. The Master with the Slave they burie, the Deere they eate as well raw, as boyled or roast, although they use all three.

Funerals.

[III.iii.556.]

If a young Child dye under foureteene of their yeeres, which is seven of ours, they doe hang it by the necke on some Tree, saying, it must flie to Heaven.

Their yeere but halfe a yeere.

If any Controversie bee, which cannot bee decided or the truth knowne, then one of the two betwixt whom the Controversie is, must bee sworne, which is in this manner; they will make an Image of a Man of Snow, bringing a Wolves nose, delivering a Sword to him that must sweare, he rehearsing by name all his Friends, desiring that they might all bee cut in peeces in that manner, as

Judgement or Oath.

hee doth cut that Image of Snow. Then he himselfe, doth cut the Image of Snow all to peeces with the Sword; then after, the Wolves nose being layd before him, he desires that the Wolfe may destroy all his tame Deere, and that hee may never more take or kill any wilde Deere after that, if hee speake not the Truth, so cutting the Wolves nose in peeces, there is no more to bee sayd of that Controversie.

Their persons. The Samoit is stout and bold of Spirit, not very tall but broad Brested, broad Faces, with hollow Eyes. Their ordinary instruments for Warre, are Bowes and Arrowes, very dangerous, they have long Speares, (the heads bee made in Monganzey, by another sort of Samoits) and short Swords, not much unlike some that I have seene brought from East India.

Divination. When they would know any thing to come, they send for their Priest or Witch to converse with the Devill, sitting in one side of the Tent, having before his face a peece of an old shirt of Mayle, hung with Bels and peeces of Brasse, in his right hand a great Tabor made with a Wolves skinne, beating upon the same with a Hares foot, making a very dolefull sound, with singing and calling for the Devill, to answer his demand, which being ended, they strangle a Deere for a Sacrifice, making merrie with the Flesh.

Womens hardinesse. The Women be very hard of Nature; for at their Child-bearing, the Husband must play the Midwife, and being delivered, the Child is washed with cold water or Snow, and the next day the Woman able to conduct her Argish.

The Russes have a yeerely Trade with the Merchants of Boghar, at a place called Tumen in Tartarie, whither they of Boghar come with Camels every yeere.

From Tumen in Tobal in Siberia, they come in foure-teene dayes.

From Tobal, they come to Beresova in nine dayes, all downe the River Ob.

From Beresova, partly by the River Ob, then over a

necke of Land of halfe a mile over, into the River Ouse, and downe the River Ouse into the River Pechora, and so to Pustozera in three weekes. At Pustozera, the English have Wintered three yeeres.

Chap. XIII.

Divers Voyages to Cherie Iland, in the yeeres 1604. 1605. 1606. 1608. 1609. Written by Jonas Poole.

WEe set sayle * from London the fifteenth of Aprill 1604. in a Ship called the God Speed, of sixtie Tunnes, with thirteene Men and a Boy; our Merchant was one Master Thomas Welden, our Master was one Steven Bennit of Saint Catherins. We arrived at Cola in Lapland, the first of May, where wee tarried till the last of the same Moneth, at which time wee set sayle from Cola, and went to an Harbour called Pechingo, which lyeth betweene Cola and Ward-house. In which Harbour of Pechingo, we continued untill the thirtieth of June. At which time wee set sayle from thence, and through contrarie windes and foule weather, were put into Ward-house, where we tooke in fresh water, and stayed untill the sixth of July.

**This was Master Bennets second Voyage thither. His first Voyage thither A. 1603. I have added at the end of this Chapter, after Pooles Relations: this being set before I saw that.*

The same day, the wind came Southerly, and we steered away Northwest and by North about 56. leagues, wee observed the Sunne at twelve of the clocke at Noone, and found our selves to be in 73. degrees 5. minutes of Northerly Latitude. The seventh of July, it was all day calme, and wee sounded, but had no ground in two hundred and fiftie fathoms. The eight day, we had little winde, which was at South-east, and foggie weather; and at eight of the clocke at Night, wee saw great flockes of Sea-fowles, which we call Willockes: some of these Fowles had each of them a small Fish in their bills, and flew toward the North-west and by North. The other without

Fish, some of them flew contrarie to the former, and some sate in the Sea very neere our Ship.

About twelve of the clocke at night we sounded, and had ground at one hundred and twentie fathomes. We steered away North-west and by North, till foure of the clocke the eight day in the morning, then it fell calme: and as the ship lay still, our Master spied a Morsse, which came to our ship and swamme round about it. While we were all gazing at this Monster, I spied the Iland ten leagues off, bearing North North-west halfe a point Westerly, which shewed very high Land, and much Snow upon it. The wind came to the North-east. The ninth day, wee came to an Anchor on the South South-east side, in five and twentie fathomes streamie ground. We hoysed out our Boate, and Master Welden went toward the Land: but thinking to have landed he could not, because there went a great Sea, and great store of Ice all along the shoares side. Within one houre the Boate came aboard, and they said, there were so many Fowles, that they covered the Rockes, and flew in such great flockes, that they shewed like a Cloud. While thus they were talking close by the Boate, rose up an huge Morsse, putting his head above the water, looking earnestly at the Boate, and made such an horrible noyse and roaring, that they in the Boate thought he would have sunke it.

A Morse.

[III.iii.557.]

Cherie Iland described.

Store of fowles.

Morses roaring.

The same day, at eight of the clocke at night, we weighed and stood away South-west and by South about foure miles, where wee doubled the Southermost point of the Iland, and found the Land to trend North North-west, and all along the shoare some scattering Ice. We sayled along the shoare, finding seventeene, eighteene, and sometimes twentie fathomes, streamie ground with white shels. We held this course till wee saw all the Northermost part of the Iland: and being within three miles of it, and about thirteene miles from the Point, wee came round about it. And some two miles from the Land, we anchored in sixteene fathomes, streamie ground. We had not ridden one houre to an end, but a great piece of Ice

came directly with the tyde upon us; and before wee could weigh, it strooke the ship with such force, that it hilded on the one side. Assoone as it was past, we went on shoare, where wee found abundance of Sea Fowles, as Willocks, Gulles, Noddies, Sea-mewes, a small Fowle like a Willocke, and divers others, as wilde Geese, Sea-pidgeons, Oxbirds, and such like: whereof Master Thomas Welden killed so many with his Peece, that we almost laded our Boate with them. The same night we shot three heaps of fishing-lines, but when we haled them, wee found neither fish nor bayte: for the Seales had eaten them all off.

Abundance of Sea-fowles found on shoare.

The ninth day, Master Welden and our Master went on shoare, to see what they could finde. They went in the fore-noone about eight of the clocke, and came againe about foure in the after-noone very weary, seeing nothing but small Foxes, almost like Dogges in every respect, save their smell and their tayles. In the meane time, the Masters Mate and my selfe observed the Sunne, and found that part of the Iland to be in 74. degrees and 45. minutes.

Small Foxes.

74. *degrees.*
45. *minutes.*

The tenth day we weighed, having the wind Southerly, and found the Land to trend away East South-east. The length of this side is about ten miles, good ground. We had not sailed past sixe miles, but we saw a sandie Bay, against which we came to an Anchor in nine fathomes. We had not furled our Sayles, but we saw many Morses swimming by our ship, and heard withall so huge a noyse of roaring, as if there had beene an hundred Lions. Immediately wee manned our Boate, wherein was Master Welden and sixe men more: we landed, and saw abundance of Morsses on the shoare, close by the Sea-side; and drawing neere unto them, wee perceived that they were all of the same company, which wee had seene before. It seemed very strange to us to see such a multitude of Monsters of the Sea, lye like Hogges upon heapes: In the end wee shot at them, not knowing whither they could runne swiftly or seize upon us or no. To be briefe,

Note.

wee had but three Peeces, Master Welden a Fowling Peece, my selfe a Musket, and another a Musket. Their Peeces were spoyled instantly. For Master Weldens was clyoed, the other man when hee had shot one by himselfe, thought to knocke him on the head with the stock, but split his Peece. I shot still, and some when they were wounded in the flesh, would but looke up and lye downe againe. Some were killed with the first shot; and some would goe into the Sea with five or sixe shot: they are of such an incredible strength. When all our Powder and shot was spent, wee would blow their eyes out with a little Pease shot, and then come on the blind side of them, and with our Carpenters Axe cleave their heads. But for all that we could doe, of above a thousand we killed but fifteene. We tooke off their heads, and when we had done, we went stragling up and downe to see what we could find. I found the first Tooth that was cast upon the Iland, and going a little farther alone, I found as many Teeth more, as I and three men more could carrie, which filled an Hogshead: all which we did deliver to Master Welden.

They kill the Morses.

The Morses Teeth.

The next day following, being the eleventh day, we went on shoare againe, and killed about sixe more: And afterward wee went up into the Land, and saw nothing but Fowle and Foxes. I perceived in deed a great print of a Beares foote; and after that many other footings, but yet saw no Beare or other wild beast.

The twelfth, wee weighed from thence, and stood to the Eastward: wee had not gone past foure miles, but we found the Land to fall away South-east and by South. The length of this side is about twelve miles. All this side we went close by the shoare with our Boate, and the ship sayled along about three miles off. We went oftentimes on shoare, but could see nothing on all that side but Fowle, and abundance of Drift Wood, the most part whereof was Firres, which have beene beaten up and downe the Sea. This day being Sunday, about eight of the clocke at night, we anchored within two miles of the place

Abundance of Drift Wood.

where we arrived at the first. The same night wee went on shoare, and in a Bay under an huge Cliffe of a Rocke, upon the Beach, wee found neere a thousand Morses: we killed thirtie or thereabouts, and when wee had taken off their heads, we went aboord. [III.iii.558.] *A thousand Morses found.*

The thirteenth, wee went on shoare againe, and with our Pieces fell a killing of the beasts. One of our company, named Richard Lang-castle split his Piece, and with all his hand: but Master Welden with Salves of his owne, healed it so skilfully, that he hath the use of it againe. We killed that day sixtie Morses, all the heads whereof were very principall. When we had done, wee went about a mile to the Eastward, to see what wee could finde: And landing at a Bay where Master Bennit had beene the yeere before, and found a piece of Lead Ure, wee looked for the same, but found none. The same day returning aboord, wee set sayle for Pechingo in Lapland, where wee arrived the five and twentieth of July; and stayed there foure dayes: at which time we set sayle for Cola, and arrived there the eight of August, where wee continued till the sixteenth day, at which time we departed thence for England, and arrived in the Thames the fifteenth of October, of the yeere aforesaid 1604.

1603. *Lead Ure was found.*

Pechingo.

Cola.

When wee came to London, because Sir Francis Cherie Knight and Merchant was at the charges of this Discoverie, this Iland was called Cherie Iland.

Why the Iland was called Cherie Iland.

The third Voyage to Cherie Iland, performed by Master Welden Merchant, and Stephen Bennet Master, in the yeere 1605.

IN the yeere above said, wee set sayle from London, the first of May, with one ship of sixtie tunnes, and two and twentie men and boyes. The three and twentieth of the said moneth, we were taken by a ship of Dunkirke. They tooke from us two Hogsheads of strong Beere, our Muskets, a Fowling Peece of Master Weldens, which cost three pounds sterling. After the Captayne had mis-

used us at his pleasure, though we were in peace with his Countrey, he let us goe.

Assumption. The eight and twentieth of June, we put off from Assumption Point, which is a place not farre from the North Cape, and about 70. degrees in latitude, but by contrarie winds wee were put backe againe. Yet the *July 2. Cherie Iland.* second of July, we came to Cherie Iland, and anchored on the South-east side: and having a Shallop in pieces to set up, we carried it on shoare, and went to worke upon it; and the third day after we had it on flote. The sixth day we entred into a Cove, having all our men on shoare *Many Morses killed with shot and Javelings.* with shot and javelings, and slue abundance of Morses. The yeere before we slue all with shot, not thinking that a javeling could pierce their skinnes: which we found now contrarie, if they be well handled, for otherwise, a man may thrust with all his force and not enter: or if he doe enter, he shall spoyle his Lance upon their bones; for they will strike with their fore-feet, and bend a Lance round, and breake it, if it *The fight of the Morse.* bee not all the better plated. They will also strike with their Teeth at him that is next them: but because their Teeth grow downward, their strokes are of small force and danger. After we had opened the beasts which we had slaine, we tooke out the blubber, and carried it a mile into the Bay, where wee set up the shallop. The reason why we carried it thither, was, because we thought that the fire of our Furnace would scare them away: for *Oyle made of the fat of the Morses.* wee did boyle all their fat to bring it into Oyle. Thus wee followed our businesse till the foure and twentieth of July, at which time wee had very foule weather with fogs. Now the ship riding in the same Cove, where we *Eleven tuns of Oyle.* killed our Morses, had taken in eleven tunnes of Oile, and the teeth of all the beasts aforesaid. Then we made preparation to be gone home: and I was sent with our shallop, and eight men with me to fetch our Tent, and our boyling Coppers, our mens Clothes and some Teeth. At my returne, when I was almost aboord, comming through a place betweene the Iland and a Rocke, which

of necessitie we must needs passe, the tyde being against us, and a stiffe gale of winde blowing out of the Sea, made the Sea flye very high upon the Rockes, whereby we had like to have beene sunke: for our Boat was almost full of water; and if wee had not speedily rowed backe againe, wee had dyed each man of us. To make short, we got into a Cove, where the Rockes did keepe the growne Seas from us, & we lighted our Boat. In this Cove I found a Myne of Lead Ure, and digged up about thirtie pounds weight of it, which I brought into England. *A Myne of Lead.* And calling to mind that wee were in sight of our ship, when we shipped the water which I spake of before, I mistrusted that they thought, as they did indeed, that we were all drowned. Therefore I demanded who would goe with me, to the top of a Cliffe which stood over against the ship? And one John Jenings said, that he would goe: he had not gone halfe way, but hee would goe no farther because it was so cold, and the Hill stood sloping very steepe toward the Sea, and all the side of it was loose Earth, which we must needs passe. Then I went forward all alone, and found all our men on shoare, saving an old man, and a sicke man. But the Cliffe being so high and steep, that they under it could scarce understand what I said, nor I what they said, but with much adoe: They demanded, as I tooke it, if all our men were wel: I told them yea, as loud as I could: And then I threw downe a piece of the lead Ure which I had found, which M. Welden took up: And when I was going away I heard them shout, and looking behind me, I saw them [III.iii.559.] all point toward the Skiffe that lay at anchor hard by the shoare; whereby I perceived that the rope was broken, which made it fast to the shoare, and the Skiffe was gone off to the length of her rope; so that they could not go aboord except one of them did swim to the Skiffe, which was exceeding dangerous, both because it was extreame cold, and also for feare of being killed by the Morses, *Extreame cold the 25. of July.* that were in the Sea all about the Boat. Whereupon with all speed possible I ranne to helpe our men in that dis-

tresse; and comming to the Shallop, some were willing, and some unwilling: But I said that out I would; and taking nothing aboord with me but a few teeth, wee got out: and in the place where we had like to have beene sunke before, wee had a great hollow Sea: but our Boat being light, and the tyde with us, wee got through: whereat M. Welden, and Steven Bennet our Master, with all the company were not a little joyfull, and gave God humble thankes, that had of his great mercy defended us from a great many of dangers that day. For that day wee saw abundance of yce driving toward the Iland, but the winde and tyde shifting, put it another way. Likewise two boyes had like to have beene slaine with the fall of a rocke, which fell close by them, they being but newly stepped out of the place where the rocke fell.

Abundance of driving Ice.

In the time that we were in this distresse, I called the Mountaine by the name of Mount-miserie, which is so called at this day. Likewise there is a very high Mountaine on the East South-east point of this Iland: which, because Master Welden and I got two Foxes neere it, I called it Mount maleperdus, alluding to the name in the merrie booke of Reinold the Fox.

Mount Misery.

The sixe and twentieth of Julie, wee got out of the Cove with the Ship, having such a fogge, that although wee ridde so neere the land, that we could heare the fowle that were on shoare, yet wee could not see the land. This fogge continued untill the eight and twentieth of July: on which day having cleerer weather, wee got our water and other provision aboord; and set sayle for England, and passing by the coast of Finmarke and Norway, we arrived at London the foure and twentieth of August. 1605.

A monstrous fogge.

The fourth Voyage to Chery Iland, 1606.

August. 24. A Ship and Pinnasse set forth.

WE set sayle from London in a Ship and a Pinnasse; the Ship being of burden sixtie Tuns, and the same that I was in the Summer before; Master Thomas Welden was Merchant, and Master Bennet Master, having in all

two and twentie men and boyes. The Pinnasse was of twentie Tunnes, and had eight men in her, and I Jonas Pool was Master of her: we were set out by Master Russell, one of the Moscovie Company.

The eight and twentieth, wee had sight of land on the coast of Norway, in the latitude of sixtie degrees and a halfe; nine leagues off.

The sixteenth of June, we fell with the Assumption, it bearing South and by West eight leagues off: and we lay beating betweene the North Cape and it, till the eighteenth of June: At what time wee put off, and steered away North North-west about fiftie five leagues, and found much Ice: wee thought to have gotten through it, but could not: and when wee had spent twelve houres in it, and having the wind Northerly, we put backe againe. The two and twentieth, we fell with the North Cape againe, at twelve of the clock at noone. The foure and twentieth, we put off againe, and being five and fortie leagues from the Cape, wee met with Ice, and upon a piece of Ice we saw a Beare. The Ship being on head of us, bare close to the Ice; and Master Welden shot the said Beare dead at the first shot. This Beare was from the neerest land above seven and twentie leagues, and lived of Seales or other fish that he could prey upon.

The Assumption.

Much Ice 55. leagues from the North Cape.

Ice within 45. leagues of the North Cape. A Beare on Ice 27. leagues from any land.

The second of July, we saw Cherie Iland at a North sound: the land bearing North and by West about ten leagues off. The same time we sounded and had ground at seventie five fathoms, white small shelly ground with small blacke stones.

July 2.

The third of July wee anchored on the West side of the Iland in twentie fathoms, having verie much Ice. I observed the Sunne at the lowest, and found the latitude of that place to bee in 74. degrees, 55. minutes. It followeth there South-west and by South; and the floud commeth from the South-west.

Part of Cherie Iland in 74. degrees, and 55. minutes. The floud commeth from the South-west.

The fifth and sixth dayes, we were troubled with much Ice; but it being broken, we brought the ends of our Cables to our maine Masts; and having a good tyde, we

did sheere, as wee tearme it, cleere off the Ice. We ridde thus in Ice sixe dayes, to wit, untill the thirteenth day; at what time the Ice began to goe way, and the Morses came on shoare. For their nature is such, that they will not come on land as long as any Ice is about the land.

The thirteenth of July.

The nature of the Morse.

The fourteenth, we went on land; Master Welden, and Master Bennet, with the Ships company, and I with the company of the Pinnasse. And being altogether on shoare, and seeing of the beasts sufficient to make our voyage, wee prepared to goe to killing. Master Welden and Master Bennet appointed mee to take eleven men with mee, and to goe beyond the beasts where they lay; that they and wee might meet at the middest of them, and so inclose them, that none of them should get into the Sea.

[III.iii.560.] As I fetched a compasse about, before we were aware, rose a great white Beare within a Pikes length of us: whereupon we made a stand, and my selfe having both a Musket and a Lance, thought to have shot him: but remembring my selfe, that the report of my Peece might make all the Morses goe into the Sea, and so hazard our Voyage, I went to him with my Lance. All this while he sate foming at the mouth, and would not stirre, but gaped and roared as though he would have eaten us all: but presently wee pricked him in the snout; and then with an easie pace we proceeded on with our businesse; and before six houres were ended, we had slayne about seven or eight hundred Beasts. And after that Master Welden slue the Beare. For ten dayes space we plyed our businesse very hard, and brought it almost to an end.

A great white Beare.

Seven or eight hundred beasts slayne in sixe houres.

The foure and twentieth of July, wee had the winde at North-east: and it freezed so hard, that the Ice did hang on our Clothes.

A great Frost the 24. of July.

The sixe and twentieth, we had taken in two and twentie tuns of the Oyle of the Morses, and three hogsheads of their Teeth.

The seven and twentieth, Master Welden slue another Beare.

The eight and twentieth, we tooke in Water and Wood.
The nine and twentieth, we set sayle for England.
The fifteenth of August, 1606. we arrived in the Thames.

The sixth Voyage made to Cherie Iland, the South part whereof standeth in 74. degrees and 40. minutes of Northerly latitude, in the yeere 1608.

THe sixteenth of Aprill, in the yeere 1608. we set sayle from Blacke wall, and came to Gravesend in a ship called the Paul.

The one and twentieth of May, we were within 4. leagues of the North Cape, standing in 71. degrees and ⅔ of North latitude. The foure and twentieth, wee came to Ward-house. The five and twentieth, we weighed, and came to Tipany in Lapland the sixe and twentieth: where we stayed about our businesse till the thirteenth of June. *May. 21.* *Ward-house.* *Tipany.*

The thirteenth of June aforesaid, wee weighed anchor, and directed our course for Cherie Iland. The eighteenth, at foure of the clocke in the morning wee saw Cherie Iland, it bearing North North-west 10. leagues off: and at foure of the clocke at night wee anchored on the North-west side of it: and Master Welden went on Land on the North side, and slue a Beare. *June 13.* *Cherie Iland.* *A Beare slaine.*

The nineteenth, we rid still, and Master Welden went to the North side againe, and slue another Beare. The same day we sent two men to the South side of the land, to see if there were any Morses on shoare. They came againe the next day, and said, that there were great store. *Another Beare slayne.*

The twentieth and one and twentieth dayes it was calme, and the weather cleere, and wee had it as hot as I have commonly felt in England at that time of the yeere. For the Pitch did runne downe the ships sides; and that side of the Masts that was to the Sunne ward, was so hot, that the Tarre did frye out of it, as though it had boyled. *Great heate the 20. and 21. of June.*

The two and twentieth, at a North-east Sun, we weighed and went to the South side of the Iland, and came into a Cove, where the Morses were, and slue about 900. or 1000. of them in lesse then seven houres: and there wee plyed our businesse untill the second of July: at what time we had taken into our ship 22. tunnes and three hogsheads of Oyle.

1000. Morses killed in seven houres.

July 3. A Voyage set out by Master Duppa to Cherie Iland, 1607.

The third of July, being Sunday, one Richard Stevens of Harewich came to the said Cherie Iland, in a ship called the Dragon, being set out by Master Duppa, a Brewer dwelling in Saint Catharines neere the Tower of London; which set out a ship with Master Thomas Welden the yeere before 1607.

The ninth day, we made our Voyage, and came out of the Cove, having taken in 31. tunnes of Oyle, and one hogshead, one barrell, and one terce of Morses teeth: besides 400. other teeth.

A living Morse brought into England.

The twelfth, we tooke into our ship two young Morses, male and female, alive: the female died before we came into England: the male lived above ten weekes. When wee had watered, we set sayle for England about foure of the clocke in the morning.

The fourteenth day, we saw the Iland bearing North North-west, 15. leagues off us, and sounded, and had 85. fathoms, greene Oze, like Doves dung.

The twentieth of August, wee arrived at London; and having dispatched some private businesse, we brought our living young Morse to the Court, where the King and many honourable personages beheld it with admiration for the strangenesse of the same, the like whereof had never before beene seene alive in England. Not long after it fell sicke and died. As the beast in shape is very strange, so is it of strange docilitie, and apt to be taught, as by good experience we often proved.

The seventh Voyage to Cherie Iland, made in the yeere 1609. [III.iii.561.]

WEe were furnished with two ships, determining to goe to Tipany in Lapland, to buy fish of the Lappes and Russes, and afterward to goe to Cherie Iland: the one was called the Lionesse, in which I went for Master, the other, the Paul, which was there the last yeere, 1608.

The one and twentieth day of March, we weighed anchor at Gravesend: and the sixe and twentieth, we came to Harwich: where it was concluded, that the Lionesse should goe directly to Cherie Iland. The fifteenth of Aprill, we weighed at Harewich: and the last of the same moneth we fell betweene Lofoot and Zenam upon the Coast of Finmark. *Lofoot. Zenam.*

The second of May, we came to the North Cape; and the same day wee stood for Cherie Iland: but meeting with contrary winds and foule weather, we bare backe againe for the Cape, and fell with the Land the fourth day. The fift day in the morning, we put the second time from the North Cape; and the eight day wee anchored at Cherie Iland. It did freeze very hard, but we found no Ice about the Iland, save that which clave to the Rockes. We went into the Cove with our Shallop, and found eight Morses on the Ice hard by the shoares side: And we also found all the beasts that were killed the last yeere not washed away with the Sea, covered over with Snow and Ice. Wee thought to have gotten abundance of Fowle as wee had done in the yeeres before: but they would not sit; the reason was, because they were but new come to the Iland, and not setled as then: yet some Fowle we got, and came aboord. And because the wind was Northerly, that we could not conveniently goe to the North side with the ship, we determined to send some men over Land, to see if there were any Morses on shoare upon that side. The ninth day, I prepared to goe over Land to the North side, about a North-east Sunne, with three

May 2.

They arrive at Cherie Iland the 8. of May.

Fowle.

men in my companie. I my selfe had a Musket, and about a quarter of a pound of Powder, and sixe Bullets; an Halfe-pike in mine hand, and an Hatchet at my backe. One of the men had a birding Peece; the other two had each of them a Javelin. Wee went over the Snow and Ice apace outward; but came wearily homeward, by reason we rested not any where. And when we were within a mile of the other side, one of my companie said, he saw *Three Beares.* a Beare: whereupon we looked up, and saw three great ones. Whereupon I made a stand, and gave each of my companie some Aqua vitæ, and a little Bread, and told them, that wee must not in any case seeme fearefull, *Qualite of Beares. Feare a Traitor.* because the nature of them is such, that whosoever seemeth fearefull, or offereth to runne away, they will seize upon him. In this time I made my Musket readie: and the Beares seeing us to come toward them, stood upon their feet, and two of them went toward the Sea: The third stood still champing and foming, as though hee would have eaten us. When I was within shot of him, he beganne to follow his fellowes, still looking behind him with his former gesture: In the meane while I got ground of him, the three men following mee with their weapons. In the end the angry devill turned backe, and came directly toward mee: I let him come within two long Pikes lengths, *A Beare slaine.* and gave him such a welcome, that hee fell downe stone dead. The company that were with me were glad as well as I: yet I had beene at the killing of Beares before. After *17. Beares in sight.* this Beare was slayne, we told seventeene more, whereof three were young ones. This done, we went on to the Sea side, where we found the Shallop which we left the yeere before. Wee were no sooner set to eate a little food, *Young Beare-whelps.* but there came a Beare with two young ones as big as Lambes of a moneth old: they skipped about their dams necke, and played with one another very wantonly. The dame came so neere that I shot at her, and being loth to hurt the young ones, being playing about her fore-parts, I shot her through the top of the shoulder, then she went away. Immediatly we saw another Beare comming

toward us, which before came to us, stood upon his hinder feet twice or thrice, using the same countenance that the first did, which I slue. I let him come very neere, and thinking to give him his pasport, the flint of my Musket was broken, which made him come very neere us. Then the fellow that had the birding piece shot him into the foot: whereupon he ran away faster then wee could follow him. Wee seeing so many Beares, and having no store of Powder nor Shot, bent our journey toward our ship againe. Wee had not come a quarter of a mile, but wee saw a huge Beare fast a sleepe on the Snow. I went softly toward him, and gave him such a filip, that he never rose out of the place where he lay. His skin when he was flayed was thirteene foot long. A neere neighbour of his hearing the report of my Peece came toward me: and him I slue also. Now, having but one shot left, I thought it not best to bestow it there, although I saw another lie upon the Snow hard by. While we sate downe to rest us in the mid-way, there came toward us another Beare with one young one: they came almost within shot, and went backe againe: presently shee turned againe, and came within shot of me, and stood on her hinder legs directly upright, and so did the young one. I made account they would have come neerer; but they to the contrarie ran away. Wee came being very wearie aboord our ship about a North-west Sunne. Then wee weighed, and stood to the Northward, having the wind at South; and by three of the clocke the next morning, wee came to the North-east Point with the ship. There wee manned our Shallop, and Master Thomas Welden and I went on shoare, where hee slue five Beares, and I one, and I wounded two more very sore. And before a North Sunne, our men had fleyed them all; both them that I slue the day before, and them that wee slue this last time: for they were all together.

A Beare slayn, the skin wherof was 13. foot.

A third Beare slayne.

The tenth day.

[III.iii.562.]

Sixe Beares slayne.

All the Beares flayed.

The eleventh day, we went on Land, and washed some old fleyed Morses skinnes, which had lyen there two yeeres: but they will hardly prove good. The twelfth

day, we rid at the West side, and got some Fowle with shot, and there we rid till the thirteenth.

The thirteenth, wee saw very much Ice to the Southwards and Westwards, wich came driving so fast toward the shoare where wee rid, that wee were forced to weigh, and stood to the North side of the Iland. The Ice followed us still: then wee stood to the East side of the Iland: and there wee found both the Iland and our selves encompassed round with Ice. But the winde being Westerly, and a good stiffe gale, it blew the Ice about a mile and an halfe from the Eastern side: by which meanes wee got betwixt the Ice and the Iland, and stood to the Southward, but saw not any thing in all the Sea save Ice; saving close by the Land a little open Sea trending to the South-westward. That way wee stood with our fore topsayle, and stood one while one way, and another while another way, and could not see open Sea till the fifteenth of the same moneth; at a North-west Sunne wee saw the open Sea: onely a ledge of Ice which began to part insunder, was betwixt us and it. Toward that place we stood, and intending by Gods helpe to get through, we made provision to defend the ship from the Ice, by hanging Cables ends, and Plankes, and Capstan barres about the bowes of our ship. But for all our fendors, our ship had a great knocke upon a piece of Ice. About a North Sunne, we got out into the open Sea; with humble thankes to God for our deliverance.

Frost the 16. of May. The sixteenth day, the Iland did beare North-east and by North, eight leagues from us: and it did freeze all that day, the wind being at North, which was almost calme. The seventeenth, at noone the Iland did beare North-east and by North, about nine leagues off, the *Snow.* wind Southerly, snowy weather. The same day we saw a sayle, bearing East North-east off us about 5. leagues. The eighteenth, the Iland did beare North about 15. *Snow.* leagues off, the wind being at East and by North, Snow and frosty weather. The nineteenth, at twelve of the clocke at noone the Iland bare North and by East: and

we finding the Ice somewhat scattered, and the wind Southerly, put roome toward the Iland, and upon one piece of Ice we saw five Seales: one I killed, and one I tooke alive, and brought it aboord our ship. But wee could not come neere the Iland by sixe leagues. The wind came to the West with thicke weather and Snow. The twentieth, at twelve at noone the Iland beare North North-west, about twelve leagues off. We sounded, and had 100. fathoms, greenish Oze, faire weather, but cold.

Five seales.

Snow.

The one and twentieth, we saw the ship that wee had seene the seventeenth day; wee spake with them about 12. at noone. The Master told us he was of Hull. Wee demanded whether he was bound? He told us, to Cherie Iland, and that there he would make his Voyage. The Iland at this time did beare North and by East about nine leagues off; and it was faire, but cold frostie weather. The 22. 23. 24. and 25. dayes, we did beate up and downe in the Ice. The 26. 27. and 28. dayes, likewise wee sayled up and downe in the Ice; having the wind Northerly, and the Iland bearing betweene the North and the North North-east, cold weather. The nine and twentieth, the Iland beare North nine leagues off, the wind at North-east, snowy weather and Frost.

A ship of Hull.

Frosty wether.

Snow & frost.

The thirtieth day, we slue 26. Seales, and espied three white Beares: wee went aboord for Shot and Powder, and comming to the Ice again, we found a shee-Beare and two young ones: Master Thomas Welden shot and killed her: after shee was slayne, wee got the young ones, and brought them home into England, where they are alive in Paris Garden. The one and thirtieth, we beate up and downe in the Ice, but could not come neere the Land for Ice; the winde was Northerly.

26. Seales.

A Beare killed on the Ice.

Two young white Beares brought into England.

The first of June, we got within five or sixe miles of the Iland: but finding very much Ice close by the Land, we stood off againe, the wind being at North-east, cold weather. The second day, we got within three leagues of the Iland: but finding exceeding much Ice round about us, we stood off againe, the wind at North-east, cold frostie

June 1.

Frost.

weather. From the second day to the fift, wee sayled first one way, and then another, as the wind and Ice would give us leave. The wind being at North and by East, and the Iland being betweene the North-west and by North, within sixe leagues and lesse.

The Hull man. *20. leagues North-west off the Iland.*

The sixth day, we spake with the Hull man, who told us, that he was put twentie leagues to the North-west of the Iland, being fast in the Ice. We had the wind Northerly, and frosty weather; the Land bearing North North-west. The seventh and eight, we beate up and downe in the Ice: the Iland did beare North-west eight leagues off. The winde was Northerly, with cold and frostie weather.

No fog in a moneths space.

The ninth, the Land beare North-west off us about six leagues off. That day we had the first fogge since the time of our arrivall, which was the eight of May. Neither lost wee the sight of the Iland above eighteene houres in all this time. This day, about a North-east Sunne it began to thaw; and in sixe houres the snow was melted, which lay upon the Ice above sixe inches thicke: which put us in good hope that the Ice was almost past.

[III.iii.563.] *The first thaw.*

The tenth, we got within sixe miles of the shoare: where I made an attempt to have got to the land with the Shallop: but comming within three miles of the shoare, I could get no farther, the Ice was so thicke, and such foggy weather. I made another attempt the same day, and got within one mile of the Land: but the Ice was so thicke that I could get no farther. The same day wee saw good store of Morses on the Ice and in the Sea.

The eleventh and twelfth, we plyed up and downe fayre by the Iland, to see if wee could get on Land with our Shallop; but the Ice was so close about the Land, that wee could not by any meanes. This day the wind was at South-east, thicke foggie weather. The thirteenth, we had thicke fogge and calme weather; and when it began to cleere, wee had sight of the Souther part of the Iland, bearing South-east, about sixe miles off; but it fell thicke suddenly againe. There wee anchored in fortie fathoms,

Fogges.

white shelly ground; and rid till ten of the clocke at night: at what time I prepared to goe on shoare, as fast as I could with a Shallop and sixe men. About eleven of the clocke we put from the Ship, and with great labour got through the Ice to the Iland, by a North-east Sunne.

The fourteenth day, I landed on the Wester side of the Iland, and determined to goe from thence to the North side, where wee slew the Beares. The ninth of May I left three men with the Shallop, and tooke three men with me. In my journey I found such bad way, that I had no stomacke to goe through; for where there was no snow, the ground was so soft, and without grasse, that we went up to the anckles in dirt; and where the snow lay, which was in some holes, three or foure fathoms thicke, it was so soft, that we slipt each step up to the twist; so that wee were above three houres in going scarce two miles. Whereupon, considering it would bee long before I should get ten miles and backe againe, I returned to our Shallop, and found that the men which I left had killed some fowle, which wee sod, and when wee had eaten them, I prepared to goe in the Shallop to the North side. I went close by the shoare; for the Sea was full of Ice. As wee went along by the Cliffes, we got good store of Fowle; which made us glad and joyfull, because there was no hope to get aboord the Ship that day, nor the next. About a North-west Sun wee got to the place abovesaid, and found nine Beares, three of them I slew, the other tooke the Sea. Those three that were slaine we flead, and tooke their flesh and salted it in their skinnes; which I stowed in the Shallop for feare of a dearth. I had a terce full of salt there, which wee left in that place the eleventh of May.

The Beares slaine on the North side.

Three Beares slaine, powdered, and eaten.

The fifteenth day, when wee had ended our businesse, and eaten some of our Beares flesh, and set up an Ensigne in token of our possession of the Iland, wee prepared to be gone: and about an East North-east Sunne the wind came Westerly; which made me thinke, as it proved, that the Ship would be on the South-east side of the Iland; and when wee were comming, and almost at the North-east

Possession taken of Cherie Iland for the Muscovie Company.

point, we saw nine men; presently I knew them to bee the men of Hull. Along I came to the East side, where we tooke in drift wood, and a broad stone to make a fire upon in our Boat. While wee were there, wee espied our ship under her Fore-topsayle, and her Misen. We made all the haste we could, and came to the Cove, where wee made our voyage the Summer last past. There likewise I set up a Pike, with a white cloth upon it, and a letter signifying our possession for the right worshipfull Company trading to Moscovie. When I had done, I espied the Hull mans Boat rowing into the Cove, and a Tent set up in the bottom of the Bay. I went thither, and told him we had taken possession there, the eight of May last. He answered, That if the beasts came on shoare, he would kill them if he could; and that there were as good men which ventured in that Ship, as the Company. I told him he durst not answer these words in England, and so departed and got some Fowle. About a South-west Sunne wee stood toward our Ship, having the wind at West South-west, and the Ship bearing from us South-east about foure leagues. I had not sailed ten miles, but the Ice was so close and firme, that I could not get aboord, nor backe againe; for it closed with such force, that it made the Shallops sides cracke, as though they would have met together. Wee laboured very sore to save our Boat, because it did concerne our lives, and got her into a place where shee lay betweene two pieces of Ice. After this sort we drave with the Ice till we had lost sight of our Ship, which was about a North sun; and still wee drave, being not able otherwise to move till we were above eight leagues from the Iland.

Drift wood on the East side.

The Cove.

The sixteenth day, at an East South-east Sun, the Ice began to open. Then, although my Company were in despaire, and said it was impossible to get out, to worke wee went, and by cutting off Ice, and removing of it one piece from another, we made way through toward the Land. The neerer to the Land wee got, wee found the more open Sea; and by a North Sunne wee got on shoare.

After wee had given God thankes for our deliverance out of such extreame danger, wee eate some Fowle and Beares flesh, which wee sod under a Cliffe. There wee found nine young Foxes, and killed the old one. There also we slept upon the cold Sand, which was not past three inches thicke, and underneath Ice; and staied here till a South-east Sunne the seventeenth day.

They feed on Beares flesh.

Nine Foxes found.

The seventeenth, we went from this place to the Cove, where we found the Hull mans Boat. I made a tilt of the Shallops sayle, and sod some Beares flesh and Fowle; and stayed about the Cove all that day. And upon an Iland, commonly called Gull-Iland, I found three Mynes of Lead Ure; but having no fit tooles to breake the Rocks, and also because it was in the view of the Hull mans Tent, I was forced to let it rest, till the Ships could get into the Cove.

[III.iii.564.]

Three Mynes of Lead found on Gull Iland.

The eighteenth day, wee went to the North side of the Iland, and in our way wee found good Sea-coales to burne: some wee tooke with us to try them, and found them good. And on the North side I slew two Beares. Then wee shared the bread that was left; and wee had but two cakes to a man: for some of my Company while I was asleepe, or killing of the Beares, had broken open the chest wherein the bread was, and had conveyed some away. Our beere was spent before this time, and we were faine to drinke snow water.

Good Sea-coles found on the Iland.

Two Beares slaine.

The ninteenth, wee went to the Cove, the wind being Westerly, to see if wee could espy our Ship; but wee could not, neither could shee come neere the Iland for Ice; for all the Sea, as farre as I could see from the top of an high Hill was covered with Ice, saving that within a quarter of a mile off the shoare, it was cleere round about once in a tyde.

An huge compasse of Ice.

The twentieth day, I went to the North side againe, and slew a Beare. Thus wee spent the time, sometimes on one side, sometimes on the other, never staying above one day in one place till the Ship came in; which was the seven and twentieth of June, on which day I slew

Another Beare slaine.

Another Beare slaine. another Beare. I slew seven in all, whose flesh we eate full saverly, forgetting the oyly ranknesse of it; for hunger is a savourie sawce.

Their Ship got in the second time. The seven and twentieth, our ship came to an anchor on the North side, where we then were; assoone as we saw her, we needed no bidding to go aboord. When we were come to the ship side, they bad us welcome: but whereas we thought to have releeved our selves, wee found it farre otherwise; because the Ship had a knocke with a piece of Ice in the Sterne, which brake in the corner of a Planke under the water, so that our bread-roome was full of water, and all our bread spoyled, saving about one hundred weight: which was but a small quantitie for three and forty men. This day a Ship called *The Matthew.* the Matthew came to an anchor by us. Then Master Welden and I went on shoare, where we found one John Skinner, Masters mate of the Matthew, with eleven men by him. We set up our Tent, and told him there was no voyage for him to make: but our necessitie was such, that we were faine to take foure hundred of bread of them, upon some condition, which I will not speake of here. The same day wee thought to have taken a Copper aboord, which I digged out of the snow; but by negligence it was let fall into the Sea, yet afterward taken up againe and carried aboord. The same day, another Ship called the *The Marie Margarite.* Mary Margarite came into the said Cove on the South side.

The eighteenth, I went to the Cove with the Shallop and sixe men, where I found the Marie Margarite; there passed no great kindnesse betweene them and me. I slew three Morses there, two were lost, the others head I brought aboord. The next day I came aboord our Ship, and we rid on that side, looking still when any beasts *July.* would come on shoare, till the second of July. Then we weighed, and stood to the East side of the Iland; because the wind was at West North-west, and great store of Ice came from those parts. We had not rid one houre to an end, but we saw a Skiffe comming towards us. In this

Skiffe was one Josias Logan, and Thomas Edge, Factors in the Paul for the worshipfull Company. They told us that the Paul was in the Cove, and the ship of Hull. They went aboord againe, and when the tyde was spent, we weighed and thought to have anchored neere the Cove; but the wind was so far Easterly, that we could not; so wee went to the Wester side, and ridde there till the fourth day, where we got Fowle; for in all the time of our being about the Iland, and in the Ice, they were our chiefest food.

Logan and Edge.

Fowle their chiefest food in extreamitie.

The fourth, we weighed and went to the North side; where we were troubled with much Ice: The wind was at West and by North, which brought the Ice whole upon us; so that we were forced to weigh againe.

The sixth, we came into the Cove; where Master Welden slew a Beare. The eight day, he slew another Beare; and the same day I went to the North side, with the Shallop and victuals for the men which kept on that side. I stayed there till the fourteenth of July: on which day we had the wind Northerly, with snow and frost, and the Iland environed round with Ice. In this time the Ships Company on the South side did digge some Minerall Lead. And we caught above twentie Foxes, which we did eat as saverly as if they had beene Venison.

A Beare slaine. Another Beare slaine.

Snow and Frost.

Some Minerall Lead digged. Above twentie Foxes eaten.

The fifteenth day, by a North-east Sunne we came aboord the Ship, which lay in the Cove, with our Shallop and all our provision that was on the North side. And the Lionesse prepared to goe to Saint Nicolas in Russia, as it was appointed before in London.

The sixteenth, the wind being North-east brought such store of Ice to the Iland, that it was compassed round close to the shoare; and filled the Cove so full, that by no meanes possible the Ships could get out, but ridde still shut in for five dayes.

The seventeenth, the Ice began to open at the mouth of the Cove, and some were willing to goe out with their Ships; but covetousnesse had like to have brought us all to great misery: for each man striving to ride longest in

the Cove, supposing that there the Morses would come first on shoare, they found it cleane contrary; for the wind came Southerly, and blew all the Ice from this side of the Iland, save that which was in the Cove: which pressed so sore upon our Ships, that our Anchors could not hold us. For the Matthew was put from three Anchors, and drove with that small tyde, that runneth there within her length of a sunken Rocke: but a great piece of Ice on ground upon the Rocke did keepe her from it. And when the floud came againe, she was driven within halfe her length of the Rockes; so that they were glad to get most of their victuals out of her upon the Rockes, looking each minute when she should split in sunder. And though the rest of the ships did not drive as she did, yet they had many a sore stroke with the Ice. For the Southerly wind caused a hollow Sea to come in; so that our ships strooke with such force against the Ice, that wee could hardly stand on our feete in them. Then each man layed to his hand to save his ship, by putting Plancks and old Cables ends, and bundels of Hoops betweene their ships and the Ice. But they were beaten all to pieces presently. Then we put pieces of Elme Plancke betweene the bowes of the Paul, in which ship I was: Immediately, they also were beaten into small pieces, although they were above foure inches thicke. With the stroke that brake the Plancke, the Carpenter said, the ships side did cracke, and two timbers were broken. Then presently wee also got out of the ship most of our victuals, and carried it to the shoare. There might you see a sorrowfull spectacle. For all the ships, being five in number, were so fast in the Ice, that all the men that were in them all, which were one hundred eightie two, could not imagine how to save one. Among the rest, we made account that the Matthew would sinke, ere long: because the Ice had broken nine timbers on one side, and eleven on the other; so that the Greene Sea did come into the ship: and her mayne beame was broken at that instant likewise. In this sort we continued till the twentieth day following; when we looked still to bee put

Dangers by the Ice.

[III.iii.565.]

on the Cliffes with the force of the Ice, that pressed upon our ships so sore, that our Anchors could not possibly hold.

Upon the twentieth day, it pleased God to bring the wind Westerly, then the Ice began to open, and to drive out of the Cove by little and little, to our great comforts. But that Ice that did not get cleane out, came backe againe, and ranne round in a Circle; so that wee had a continual labor to defend the ships from it. Whereupon we made meanes to get out by long [1] Warps, as wee terme them. Wee were faine to let slip one Cable, and the Lionesse one. The Matthew had but one Cable and Anchor; but they borrowed one of us. By a North-west Sunne, all the ships got out of the Ice to the Coves mouth; where we stayed for the ebbe. When the ebbe was come, the Lionesse departed on her Voyage to Saint Nicholas in Russia. And presently the Matthew, and the Mary Margarite set saile and got out. Then wee in the Paul set sayle, and before our Anchor was up, it got hold upon one of Matthewes Cables, that shee lost, when shee drove out, and brought us up to a [m] Bitter, so that wee were very neere the Rockes: but wee got off againe, and rid there till a North-west Sunne the next day.

The one and twentieth day, we weighed and stood to the East side of the Iland, where wee found the Mary Margarite, which had lost her Boat. Streight way we sayled to the North side, where we anchored and rid till a North Sunne.

The two and twentieth day, it cleered up of a fogge, which had continued since the time of our comming out of the Cove. And wee thought it best to fetch the victuals aboord, which we carried on shoare when the ship was like to be split with Ice.

Then Josias Logan and I tooke seven men more with us, and came to the Cove on the South side: where wee found abundance of Morses lying on the Ice, that was in the Cove. I slue one of them, and tooke off his head:

A warpe, is a Rope (commonly a Hawser) used to warpe a ship, that is, with an Anchor bent to the Hawser and layd out to hale the ship forward: which is done when they want wind to carrie out, or into a Harbour.

[m] A Bitter, is a turne of the Cable about the Bitts, for when they come to Anchor, they take a turne with it about the Bitts (two mayne square pieces of Timber, which stand Pillar wise in the loose of the ship, to make fast the Cable unto) that they may by little and little vere it out at ease: otherwise, if a stopper faile, the Cable would runne out end for end, that is altogether; but thus stopped, the shippe is said to bee brought to a Bitter. The Bitter end is that end of the Cable within boord at the Bitts,

we could not get to the shoare where our victuals lay, but we made a fire under a Cliffe in the same Cove.

The three and twentieth day, wee got to our victuals, and Josias went with it to our shippe: but I tarried at the Cove, hoping that the beasts would come on Land when the Ice was gone; as they did afterward. There I tarried till the five and twentieth of July; at what time Josias Logan came to mee with the Shallop, and a Skiffe loden with Caske and other provision; and told mee, that they had slaine five or sixe hundred Morses on the North side.

Hee tarried with mee till the seven and twentieth of July: now seeing no beastes did come on Land, because the Ice did hang about the Cove, he went to the North side againe: but the same day after he was gone, they began to come on Land.

The next day following, being the eight and twentieth, wee slue about eightie, and tooke their Blubber and Teeth. Then they began to come on shoare againe the thirtieth day: at what time Master Bonner was come into the Cove to seeke his Anchors. Then his men came on shoare, and we slue about one hundred and fiftie beast more. But there rose a storme at South-east, that brought in such a surge, that it washed above sixtie beasts into the Sea; so that most of them were lost.

The next day being the last of July, Master Welden and Master Jones came to the Cove with about twelve men, being all very wearie. For they had left the Shallop in a Cove on the North-west side of the Iland, and came over Land. Then to worke wee went on all hands, and placed our Coppers. And by the fift day of August we had ended our businesse; and the ship came from the North side into the Cove.

[III.iii.566.] *August.* The sixt of August, I tooke the Skiffe and seven men to fetch the Shallop to the Cove, that Master Welden had left in a Cove, on the North-west side of the Iland, the last of July. When I came to the place, considering I was neere the North side, where we commonly make *Note.* our Voyage, and also desired by Master Welden, if I could

goe, to doe so, I went thither, and found about five and fortie as good headed beasts for Teeth, as ever I saw. Wee had no more Launces to kill them with all, but two, I tooke one, and a lustie fellow that was our Cooper had the other: we had not killed past ten but his Lance brake. Then I slue all the rest in lesse then two houres; and wee tooke their Teeth; and the next day by a West Sunne wee came aboord the Paul with them.

The eight day, wee got the Southermost Point of the Iland: where wee rid all that day. Their Skiffe from their long Boats sterne, and we manned our Boat to fetch her againe: but then rose such a fogge, that we had like to have lost both our Boats and men; but they got to the ship againe with much adoe.

The ninth day, it was calme; but wee had such a fogge, that wee could not see two Cables length from the ship. And about eight of the Clocke at night, wee lost our Skiffe altogether.

The tenth day, we had a little Wind at North-west and by West. Then seeing no amendment of the weather, wee left the ship of Hull behind us in the Iland, and about sixe of the Clocke set sayle for England, and arrived safely at London the last of August, 1609. Blessed bee God.

A Voyage performed to the Northwards, Anno 1603. in a ship of the burthen of fiftie tunnes, called the Grace, and set forth at the cost and charges of the Worshipfull Francis Cherie. Written by William Gorden; being the first Voyage to Cherie Iland; which came to my hands since the former (or rather later Voyages) were in the Presse.

THe ship being readie the tenth of Aprill, whereof was Master Stephen Bennet, and for Factor and Over-seer William Gorden, our Directions from the said Merchant, were first to proceed to Cola, and there

to make sale of such goods as we had, and to take in such other as the Countrey of Lappia did affoord, and then to proceed upon some Discoverie. Wherefore omitting our Journey to Cola, as a matter of small importance, being so well knowne before, after our Affaires ended, we were readie to proceed forward. But our men not being hired thereunto would have refused, if there had not beene made an agreement by meanes of Josias Logan, who was to lye there as Factor for Master Cherie, the Master and my selfe, partly with promises, partly with gifts. And thus setting forward the sixt of August, from the River of Cola, being determined to have sayled into 80. degrees of latitude, if nothing did hinder us; or if we did not light upon some land: our determination was *An Iland.* hindered by meanes of meeting with an Iland, and likewise the yeere being farre spent, keeping our course from the West end of Kilden, to the Ilands of Ward-house, which wee passed the tenth of August with little wind; then directing our course North North-west, the wind at South-west easie wind, so that the eleventh day we did reckon our selves to have sayled twentie leagues North-west. The twelfth day, it was most part calme and foggie. The thirteenth day, it was cleere, and the wind at South, and we had sayled twentie two leagues North North-west. The fourteenth day, the wind at East, we kept our course and sayled ten leagues, and the same day being thicke and foggie, we had thought wee had seene Land about foure of the clocke in the afternoone, bearing from us West North-west, and North-west by West, but sayling towards it three houres, keeping still his forme, and not altering till the wind increasing, caused it to fade away (for it was no other then a banke of fogges) after we had sayled three leagues changing our course, we sayled then fifteene dayes twentie leagues, North-west and by North, still having close weather, that we could not make any observation. The sixteenth day in the morning, at two of the clock, we did see two great high Hils, which did seeme to us above the Clouds, and did

seeme very neere, but we found it otherwise for sayling towards it, we found it further then we did expect, for it was sixe of the clocke at night before wee could come neere unto the Land, where wee anchored in thirtie fathomes. In which time we could not sayle lesse then eighteene leagues North and by West. That night our Master knowing, better what did belong unto those Affaires, would not suffer the Boat to goe aland till the morning: which was the seventeenth day of August, and before our going aland, the Master caused a shanke of Lines to bee shot for, to toy for fish, and then he and my selfe with foure of our Company went aland. First, upon a little Iland neere adjoyning, where we had much adoe to get to our Boat againe, by reason of the steepnes of the Rockes: then we went on shoare upon the Mayne, [III.iii.567.] where at our comming on Land, wee did see two Foxes, one White, the other Blacke. Thus spending most part of the day, wee returned aboord our ship without any profit: only one of our men tooke up a piece of Lead, and I found a piece of a Morses Tooth, by which we perceived that the Sea Morses did use thither, but the time for that yeere was past, for we did see none. After our comming aboord, having haled the Line, we found nothing but one fish thereon, wherefore presently weighing Anchor, we sayled West to see if we could have any true observation, the next day which wee had, and found our selves to bee in 74. degrees 30. minutes. The same day directing our course for London, where we arrived the tenth of September, by Gods helpe, in health and safetie.

Chap. XIIII.

Divers Voyages and Northerne Discoveries of that worthy irrecoverable Discoverer Master Henry Hudson. His Discoverie toward the North Pole, set forth at the charge of certaine Worshipfull Merchants of London, in May 1607. Written partly by John Playse one of the Company, and partly by H. Hudson.

ANno 1607. Aprill the nineteenth, at Saint Ethelburge in Bishops Gate street, did communicate with the rest of the Parishioners these persons Seamen, purposing to goe to sea foure dayes after, for to discover a Passage by the North Pole to Japan and China. First, Henry Hudson *Master*. *Secondly, William Colines his Mate*. Thirdly, James Young. Fourthly, John Colman. Fiftly, John Cooke. Sixtly, James Beubery. Seventhly, James Skrutton. Eightly, John Pleyce. Ninthly, Thomas Baxter. Tenthly, Richard Day. Eleventhly, James Knight. Twelfthly, John Hudson a Boy.

May. The first of May 1607. we weyed Anchor at Gravesend, and on Tuesday the sixe and twentieth day in the morning, we made the Iles of Shotland, and at noone we were in 60. degrees 12. minutes, and sixe leagues to the Eastward of them: the Compasse had no variation. We had sixtie foure fathomes at our sounding, blacke, ozie, sandie, with some yellow shels. Our ship made more way then we did suppose. On Saturday the thirtieth of May, by our observation we were in 61. degrees 11. minutes. This day I found the Needle to incline 79. degrees under the Horizon. For foure dayes space we made very little way by contrary winds.

The Iles of Shotland.

No variation.

61. degrees 11. minutes. The inclination of the Needle.

June. On Thursday the fourth of June, we were by our observation still in 61. degrees and 14. minutes, eight and

A.D. 1607.

twentie or thirtie leagues from the Norther part of Shotland: the Land bearing by our Accompt East and by North off us, I found variation in five degrees Westerly.

The seventh of June, wee were in 63. degrees 25. minutes. The eighth, all the fore-noone we had a fresh gale Southerly; we steered away North and by West, and by observation we were in 65. degrees 27. minutes.

65. degrees 27. minutes.

The eleventh, wee saw sixe or seven Whales neere our shippe: wee were in sixtie seven degrees thirtie minutes. About five of the clocke, the winde came up at North-east and by East; wee steered away North North-west with a fresh gale all the night at East. The twelfth, the winde was at East North-east, a stiffe gale, wee steered away as afore, and accounted wee had runne by this day noone thirtie leagues. In the after-noone wee steered away North and by West fifteene leagues, all the night prooved a great fogge with much wind.

67. degrees 30. minutes.

The thirteenth, betweene one and two in the morning, we saw some Land on head of us, and some Ice: and it being a thicke fogge, we steered away Northerly, and having much wind wee stood away South and by East, sixe or eight leagues. Our sayle and shroudes did freeze. At eight in the morning it cleered up, the wind being at North-east and by East, with much wind wee were hardly able to maintayne a sayle. This was a very high Land, most part covered with Snow. The neather part was uncovered. At the top it looked reddish, and underneath a blackish Clay, with much Ice lying about it. The part which we saw when wee cast about, trended East and West: And the Norther part which we saw, trended North-east and by North, and North-east: and the length which wee saw was nine leagues; wee saw much Fowle. Also wee saw a Whale close by the shoare. We called the Head-land which we saw, Youngs Cape; and neere it standeth a very high Mount like a round Castle, which wee called, the Mount of Gods Mercie. All the after-noone, and all the Eevening it rained. At eight in the

Youngs Cape.

The Mount of Gods mercie.

Eevening we cast about, and steered all night North and by West, and sometimes North North-west.

Snow. The fourteenth, being neere the Land we had Snow. At foure in the morning, the wind vering Northerly, we cast about and stood South-east and by South. This day wee had much wind and raine, we shorted sayle being neere the Land. The fifteenth, in the morning it blowed so much wind at North-east, that wee were not able to [III.iii.568.] maintayne any sayle, wee then strooke a hull, and let our ship drive, wayting for a fitter wind; this night was very much raine. The sixteenth, was much wind at North-east. The seventeenth, we set sayle at noone, we steered away East and by South, and East South-east. The eighteenth, in the afternoone a fine gale South-east, which toward the Eevening increased, and we steered North-east three Watches, twelve leagues. The nineteenth we steered away North North-east sixteene leagues. At noone wee had raine with fogge. From twelve to foure we steered North North-east eight leagues, and did account our selves in seventie degrees neerest hand: purposing to see whether the Land which we made the thirteenth day, were an Iland or part of Groneland. But then the fogge increased very thicke with much wind at South, which made us alter our course, and to shorten our sayle, and we steered away North-east. Being then as we supposed, in the Meridian of the same land, having no observation since the eleventh day, and lying a hull from the fifteenth to the seventeenth day, wee perceived a current setting to the South-west. This day wee saw three Whales neere our ship, and having steered away North-east almost one watch, five leagues, the Sea was growne every way: we supposed wee were thwart of the North-east part of that Land which we made the thirteenth day, and the current setting to wind-ward. The reason that mooved us to thinke so; was, that after we had sayled five or sixe leagues in this Sea, the wind neither increasing nor dulling, we had a pleasant and smooth Sea. All this night was foggie with a good gale of wind, we steered

away North-east untill the next day at noone, and sayled in that course twentie leagues.

The twentieth, all the morning was a thicke fogge with the winde at South: wee steered North-east till noone. Then we changed our course, and steered away North North-east, hoping for an open Sea in our course to fall with the bodie of Newland. This day at two in the afternoone it cleered up, and wee saw the Sunne, which wee had not seene since the second of this moneth. Having steered North North-east, two watches and an halfe, fifteene or sixteene leagues wee saw Land on our Larboord, about foure leagues off us, trending as wee could ghesse North-east and South-west. We steered away East North-east, the wind at South a good gale, but reasonable cleere: wee saw many Birds with blacke backes, and white bellies in forme much like a Ducke: we saw also many pieces of Ice driving at the Sea. We * loofed for one and went roomer for another. And this morning about foure, a thicke fogge we saw a head of us.

Note, Land on their Larboord.

Many Fowles.

Much drift Ice.

**To loofe, is to keepe close to the wind:* 100. *mer cont.*

The one and twentieth, in the morning we steered North-east, and East North-east two watches, five or sixe leagues. Then it grew thicke fogge. And we cast about, and steered North-east and East North-east two watches, sixe leagues, finding wee were embayed. The wind came at East South-east a little gale: we * tacked about and lay South. All this night was a thicke fog with little wind, East we lay with the stemme.

**To tacke the ship, is to bring her head about to lye the other way.*

The two and twentieth, in the morning it cleered up, being calme about two or three of the clocke: after we had a prettie gale, and we steered away East and by North three leagues. Our observation was in 72. degrees 38. minutes, and changing our course, we steered North-east, the wind at South-east a prettie gale. This morning when it cleered up, we saw the Land, trending neere hand East North-east, and West South-west, esteeming our selves from it twelve leagues. It was a mayne high Land, nothing at all covered with snow: and the North part of that mayne high Land was very high Mountaynes, but

Land not covered with Snow.

we could see no snow on them. We accounted by our observation the part of the mayne Land, lay neerest hand in 73. degrees. The many fogs and calmes with contrary winds, and much Ice neere the shoare, held us from farther Discovery of it. It may bee objected against us as a fault, for haling so Westerly a course. The chiefe cause that moved us thereunto, was our desire to see that part of Groneland, which (for ought that we know) was to any Christian unknowne: and wee thought it might as well have beene open Sea as Land, and by that meanes our passage should have beene the larger to the Pole: and the hope of having a Westerly wind, which would be to us a landerly wind if wee found Land. And considering wee found Land contrarie to that which our Cards make mention of; we accounted our labour so much the more worth. And for ought that wee could see, it is like to bee a good Land, and worth the seeing.

On the one and twentieth day, in the morning while we steered our course North North-east, we thought we had embayed our selves, finding Land on our Larboord, and Ice upon it, and many great pieces of Drift Ice: we steered away North-east, with diligent looking out every cleere for Land, having a desire to know whether it would leave us to the East, both to know the bredth of the Sea, and also to shape a more Northerly course. And considering wee knew no name given to this Land, wee thought good to name it, Hold with hope, lying in 73. degrees of latitude.

The Land of Hold with Hope in 73. degrees.

The Sunne was on the Meridian on the South part of the Compasse, neerest hand. Heere is to bee noted that when we made The Mount of Gods Mercie, and Youngs Cape, the Land was covered with snow for the most part, and extreame cold, when wee approached neere it: But this Land was very temperate to our feeling. And this likewise is to be noted, that being two dayes without observation; notwithstanding, our lying a hull by reason of much contrary wind, yet our observation and dead reckoning were within eight leagues together, our shippe

beeing before us eight leagues. This night untill next morning prooved little Winde. [III.iii.569.]

The three and twentieth, in the morning we had an hard gale on head of us, with much rayne that fell in very great drops, much like our Thunder showers in England; wee tacked about and stood East Northerly with a short sayle, to our feeling it was not so cold as before we had it. It was calme from noone to three of the clocke with fogge. After the winde came up at East and East South-east, we steered away North-east with the fogge and rayne. About seven or eight of the clocke, the winde increased with extreame fogge, wee steered away with short sayle East North-east, and sometimes East and by North. About twelve at mid-night, the wind came up at South-west, we steered away North, being reasonable cleere weather.

The foure and twentieth, in the morning about two of the clocke, the Masters mate thought he saw Land on the Larboord, trending North North-west Westerly, and the longer we ranne North, the more it fell away to the West, and did thinke it to bee a mayne high Land. This day the wind being Westerly, we steered away North, and by observation wee were in 73. degrees nearest hand. At noone we changed our course, and steered away North and by East, and at our last observation, and also at this, we found the Meridian all Leeward on the South and by West, Westerly part of the Compasse, when we had sayled two Watches eight leagues. *A mayne high Land.*

The five and twentieth, the wind scanted and came up at North North-west, we lay North-east two Watches 8. leagues. After the wind became variable betweene the North-east and the North, we steered away East and by North, and sometimes East, we had thicke fogge. About noone three Granpasses played about our shippe. This After-noone the wind vered to the East and South-east, we haled away North and by East. This night was close weather, but small fogge (we use the word Night for distinction of time, but long before this the Sunne was

alway above the Horizon, but as yet we could never see him upon the Meridian North.) This Night being by
75. Degrees. our accompt in the Latitude of 75. degrees, we saw small flockes of Birds, with blacke Backes and white Bellies, and
Land not farre off. long speare Tayles. We supposed that Land was not farre off, but we could not discrie any, with all the diligence which we could use, being so close weather, that many times we could not see sixe or seven leagues off.

The sixe and twentieth, in the morning was close weather, we had our wind and held our course as afore.
76. degrees 38. minutes. This day, our observation was 76. degrees 38. minutes, and we had Birds of the same sort as afore, and divers other of that colour, having red Heads; that we saw when we first made the Mount of Gods Mercy in Greenland, but not so many. After we steered away North and by East: two Watches 10. leagues, with purpose to fall with the Souther part of Newland, accounting our selves 10. or 12. leagues from the Land. Then wee stood away North-east one Watch five leagues.

The seven and twentieth, about one or two of the
Greenland or Newland discovered. clocke in the morning we made Newland, being cleere weather on the Sea; but the Land was covered with fogge, the Ice lying very thick all along the shoare for 15. or 16. leagues which we saw. Having faire wind wee coasted it in a very pleasing smooth sea, and had no ground at an hundred fathoms, foure leagues from the shoare. This
78. Degrees. day at noone, wee accounted we were in 78. degrees, and we stood along the shoare. This day was so foggie, that we were hardly able to see the Land many times, but by
Vogel Hooke. our account we were neare Vogel Hooke. About eight of the clocke this Eevening, we purposed to shape our course from thence North-west. Heere is to bee noted, that although we ranne along neere the shoare, we found no great cold, which made us thinke, that if we had beene
Temperate ayre. on shoare the place is temperate. Holding this North-west course, about ten of the clocke at night, we saw great store of Ice on head off us, bearing Wester off us; which we could not goe cleere off with the foresayd course.

Then we tact about, and stood away betweene the South and the South-east, as much desirous to leave this Land as we were to see it.

The eight and twentieth, was a hard gale of wind all the fore-noone betweene the South and the South-west. We shaped our course , we did it to bee farther from the Ice and Land. It pleased God that about twelve of the clocke this night it cleered up, and we found that we were betweene the Land and the Ice; Vogel Hooke then bearing nearest hand East off us. Then we tacked about, and stood in for the shoare, having Sea-roome between the Ice and the Land. The nine and twentieth, at foure in the morning the wind at North-east, a pretie gale, we thought best to shorten our way, so we tacked about and stood North North-west, the wind a little increasing. About twelve at noone, we saw Ice a head off us; we cast about again, and stood away East South-east with very much wind, so that we shortned our sayles for the space of two Watches. Then about eight this Eevening, we strucke a Hull, and it proved the hardest storme that we had in this Voyage. The thirtieth, in the morning was stormie; about noone it ceased, at seven in the Eevening it proved almost calme.

July. The first of July, all the fore-noone the wind was at South-east, we stood North-east for the shoare, hoping to finde an open Sea betweene the shoare and the Ice. About noone wee were embayed with Ice, lying betweene the Land and us. By our observation we were in 78. degrees 42. minutes, whereby we accounted we were thwart of The great Indraught. And to free our selves of the Ice, we steered betweene the South-east and South, and to the Westward, as we could have sea; And about six, this Eevening it pleased God to give us cleere weather; and we found we were shot farre into the Inlet, being almost a Bay, and environed with very high Mountaynes, with low Land lying betweene them; wee had no ground in this Bay at an hundred fathoms. Then being sure where we were, we steered away West, the wind at

78. *degrees* 42. *minutes.*

[III.iii.570.]

The great Inlet.

South-east and calme, and found all our Ice on the Norther shoare, and a cleare Sea to the Southward.

The second, it pleased God to give us the wind at North-east, a faire gale, with cleere weather, the Ice being to the Northward off us, and the weather shoare, and an open Sea to the Southwards under our Lee. We held on our course North-west till twelve of the clocke; having sayled in that course 10. leagues, and finding the Ice to fall from us to the , we gave thankes to God, who marvellously preserved us from so many dangers, amongst so huge a quantitie of Ice and Fogge. We steered away North-west, hoping to be free from Ice, we had observation 78. degrees 56. minutes, we fell with Ice againe, and trended it as it lay betweene the West and South South-east. The third, we had observation 78. degrees 33. minutes. This day wee had our shrouds frozen, it was searching cold, we also trended the Ice, not knowing whether we were cleare or not, the wind being at North.

78. Degrees 56. Minutes.

78. degrees 33. minutes.

The shroudes and sayles frozen.

The fourth, was very cold, and our shroudes and sayles frozen, we found we were farre in the Inlet. The wind being at North, we beare up and stood South South-east, and South and South-west by West till ten this night. The fift, was very much wind at North Easterly: at twelve we strooke a Hull, having brought our selves neare the mouth of the Inlet.

The mouth of the Inlet.

The sixth, in the morning the wind was as before, and the Sea growne. This morning we came into a very Greene Sea, we had our observation 77. degrees 30. minutes. This after-noone the wind and Sea asswaged. About foure of the clocke we set sayle, and steered North-west and by West, the wind being at North North-east. This day proved the clearest day we had long before. The seventh, at foure in the morning was very cleare weather, and the fairest Morning that we saw in three weekes before, we steered as afore, being by our account in 78. degrees nearest hand, and out of the Sacke. We found we were compassed in with Land and Ice, and were

77. degrees 30. minutes.

78. degrees. The end of the Sacke.

againe entred into a Blacke Sea, which by proofe we found to be an open passage. Now having the wind at North North-east, we steered away South & by East, with purpose to fall with the Southermost part of this Land: which we saw, hoping by this meane, either to defray the charge of the Voyage, or else, if it pleased God in time to give us a faire wind to the North-east, to satisfie expectation. All this day and night afterward proved calme. *A Blacke and open Sea.*

The eight, all the fore-noone proved calme, and very thicke fogge. This morning we saw many peeces of Drift-wood drive by us, we heaved out our Boate to stop a leake, and mended our riggings. This day wee saw many Seales, and two Fishes which we judged to bee Sea-horses, or Morses. At twelve, this night we had the winde at East and by South, wee stood away North-east. *Much Drift-wood.* *Many Seales.* *Morses.*

The ninth, all the fore-noone was little wind at South-east, with thicke fogge. This day we were in amongst Ilands of Ice, where we saw many Seales.

The tenth, in the morning was foggie, afterward it proved cleere, we found we were compassed with Ice every way about us; wee tacked about, and stood South and by *West, and South South-west one Watch five leagues, hoping to get more Sea-roome, and to stand for the North-east, we had the wind at North-west.

The eleventh, very cleere weather, with the winde at South South-east, we were come out of the Blue Sea into our Greene Sea againe, where we saw Whales. Now having a fresh gale of wind at South South-east, it behooved mee to change my course, and to sayle to the North-east, by the Souther end of Newland. But being come into a Greene Sea, praying God to direct mee, I steered away North ten leagues. After that, we saw Ice on our Larboord, we steered away East and by North three leagues, and left the Ice behind us. Then we steered away North till noone. This day wee had the Sunne on the Meridian South and by West, Westerly, his greatest height was 37. degrees 20. minutes. By this observation *From hence it seemeth is taken out of Hen. Hudsons owne Notes.* *Blue and Greene Seas.*

79. *degrees* 17. *minutes.* we were in 79. degrees 17. minutes, we had a fresh gale of wind and a smooth sea, by meanes whereof our ship had out-runne us. At ten this Eevening cleere weather, and then we had the company of our troublesome neighbours Ice with fogge. The wind was at South South-west. Heere we saw plentie of Seales, and we supposed Beares had beene heere, by their footing and dung upon the Ice. This day, many of my Companie were sicke with eating of Beares flesh the day before unsalted.

Sick of Beares flesh unsalted.

The twelfth, for the most part was thicke fogge, we steered betweene South and by East, and South South-east 2. ½. leagues, to cleere us of the Ice. Then we had the wind at South, we steered till noone North-east five leagues. This morning we had our shrouds frozen. At noone by our accompt we were in 80. degrees, being little wind at West South-west, almost calme with thicke fogge. This after-noone we steered away North, and sometimes North-east. Then we saw Ice a head off us, we cast about and stood South-east, with little wind and fogge. Before we cast about by meanes of the thicke fogge, we were very neere Ice, being calme, and the Sea setting on to the Ice, which was very dangerous. It pleased God at the very instant to give us a small gale, which was the meanes of our deliverance, to him be praise therefore. At twelve this night, it cleered up, and out of the top William Collins our Boat-swaine saw the Land, called Newland by the Hollanders, bearing South South-west twelve leagues from us.

80. *degrees.*

Newland or Greenland, of which the Hollanders hath made a little Discoverie by Barents, as before is delivered, but neither so farre, nor so exact, nor so usefull: nor first as before is observed of Sir H. Willoughbies English exacter Discoveries finding the Whale and Morse benefit, they also enterloped.

The thirteenth, in the Morning the wind at South and by East, a good gale, we cast about and stood North-east and by East, and by observation we were in 80. degrees 23. minutes. This day we saw many Whales. This fore-noone proved cleere weather, and we could not see any signe of Ice out of the top. Betweene noone and three of the clocke, we steered away North-east and by East five leagues, then we saw Ice on head off us, we steered East two Glasses one league, and could not be cleare of the Ice with that course. Then we steered away South-

[III.iii.571.]

east two leagues ½. after we sayled East and by North, and East foure leagues, till eight the next morning.

The foureteenth, in the morning was calme with fogge. At nine the wind at East, a small gale with thicke fogge, we steered South-east and by East, and running this course we found our Greene Sea againe, which by proofe we found to be freest from Ice, and our Azure Blue Sea to be our Icie Sea. At this time we had more Birds then we usually found. At noone being a thicke fogge, we found our selves neere Land, bearing East off us; and running farther we found a Bay open to the West and by North Northerly, the bottome and sides thereof being to our sight very high and ragged Land. The Norther side of this Bayes mouth being high land, is a small Iland, the which we called Collins Cape, by the name of our Boat-swaine, who first saw it. In this Bay we saw many Whales, and one of our company having a Hooke and Line over-boord to trie for Fish, a Whale came under the Keele of our ship, and made her held, yet by Gods mercie we had no harme, but the losse of the hooke and three parts of the line. At a South-west Sunne from the North-west and by North, a flood set into the Bay. At the mouth of this Bay we had sounding thirtie fathoms, and after sixe and twentie fathoms, but being farther in, we had no ground at an hundred fathoms, and therefore judged it rather a Sound then a Bay. Betweene this high ragged, in the swampes and vallies lay much snow. Heere wee found it hot. On the Souther side of this Bay, lye three or foure small Ilands or Rockes.

Greene Sea freest of Ice, and the Blue Sea Icie.

Collins Cape.

Whale danger.

A Sound is a greater and deeper indraught then a Bay.

In the bottome of this Bay, John Colman my Mate, and William Collins my Boat-swaine, with two others of our company went on shoare, and there they found and brought aboord, a payre of Morses teeth in the jaw, they likewise found Whales bones, and some dosen or more of Deeres Hornes, they saw the footings of Beasts of other sorts, they also saw Rote-geese, they saw much drift Wood on the shoare, and found a streame or two of Fresh water. Here they found it hot on the shoare, and dranke water

Heat beyond 80. degrees.

to coole their thirst, which they also commended. Here we found the want of a better Ship-boate. As they certified me, they were not on the shoare past halfe an houre, and among other things brought aboord a Stone of the Countrey. When they went from us it was calme, but presently after we had a gale of wind at North-east, which came with the Flood with fogge. We plyed too and againe in the Bay waiting their comming; but after they came aboord we had the wind at East and by South a fine gale, we minding our Voyage, and the time to performe it, steered away North-east, and North North-east. This night proved cleere, and we had the Sunne on the Meridian, on the North and by East part of the Compasse, from the upper edge of the Horizon with the Crosse-staffe, we found his height 10. degrees 40. minutes, without allowing any thing for the Semidiameter of the Sunne, or the distance of the end of the staffe from the Center in the Eye. From a North Sunne to an East Sunne, we sayled betweene North and North North-east, eight leagues.

Sunne 10. degrees 40. min. high, about midnight.

The fifteenth, in the morning was very cleere weather, the Sunne shining warme, but little wind at East Southerly. By a South-east Sunne we had brought Collins Cape to beare off us South-east, and we saw the high Land of Newland, that part by us Discovered on our starboord, eight or ten leagues from us, trending North-east and by East, and South-west and by West, eighteene or twentie leagues from us to the North-east, being a very high Mountaynous land, like ragged Rockes with snow betweene them. By mine account, the Norther part of this Land which now we saw, stretched into 81. degrees. All this day proved cleere weather, little Wind, and reasonable warme.

81. *degrees.*

The sixteenth, in the morning warme and cleere weather, the wind at North. This morning we saw that we were compassed in with Ice in abundance, lying to the North, to the North-west, the East and South-east, and being runne toward the farthest part of the Land by us

discovered, which for the most part trendeth nearest hand North-east and South-west, wee saw more Land joyning to the same, trending North in our sight, by meanes of the cleernesse of the weather, stretching farre into 82. degrees; and by the bowing or shewing of the skie much farther. Which when I first saw, I hoped to have had a free Sea betweene the Land and the Ice, and meant to have compassed this Land by the North. But now finding by proofe it was unpossible, by means of the abundance of Ice compassing us about by the North, and joyning to the land, and seeing God did blesse us with a faire wind to sayle by the South of this Land to the North-east, we returned, bearing up the Helme, minding to hold that part of the Land, which the Hollanders had discovered in our sight, and if contrary windes should take us, to Harbour there, and to trie what we could finde to the charge of our Voyage, and to proceed on our Discoverie, as soone as God should blesse us with Winde. And this I can assure at this present, that betweene 78. degrees and ½. and 82. degrees by this way there is no passage: but I thinke this Land may bee profitable to those that will adventure it. In this Bay before spoken of, and about this coast, we saw more abundance of Seales then we had seene any time before swimming in the water. At noone, this day having a stiffe gale of wind at North, we were thwart of Collins Cape, standing in 81. degrees and a halfe: and at one of the clocke the Cape beare North-east off us. From thence I set our course West South-west, with purpose to keepe in the open Sea free from Ice, and sayled in that course 16. leagues. At ten this night we steered away South-west, with the wind at North a hard gale, untill eight the next morning 18. leagues.

Land stretching into 82. degrees.

They returned.

[III.iii.572.]

Abundance of Seales.

The seventeenth, in the morning a good gale at North: at eight, we altered our course, and steered away South till eight in the Eevening, and ranne 12. leagues. This day proved reasonable cleere and warme. The eighteenth, in the morning the wind encreased at South and by East,

with thicke fogge. All this after-noone and night proved close weather, little fogge, and reasonable warme.

The nineteenth, at eight in the morning the wind at South, with thicke fogge, we steered South-east 4. leagues till noone: then the wind vered more large; wee steered South-east and by East 4. leagues till foure: then wee vered shete, and steered East and by South Easterly, 15. leagues, till eight the next morning. This day after the morning proved reasonable cleere and warme.

The twentieth, in the morning little wind: at eight this morning wee saw Land ahead of us under our Lee, and to weatherward of us distant from us 12. leagues, being part of Newland. It is very high mountainous Land; the highest that we had seene untill now. As we sayled neere it, we saw a Sound ahead of us, lying East and west. The Land on the Norther side of this Sounds mouth, trendeth neerest hand West North-west, and East South-east 12. leagues, in our sight being 10. leagues from us. And the Land on the Souther side being 8. or 10. leagues in our sight; at this time trendeth South South-east, and North North-west; from eight to noone was calme. This day by observation we were in 77. degrees 26. minutes. On the Norther side of the mouth of this Inlet lie three Ilands, not farre the one from the other, being very high mountainous Land. The farthest of the three to the North-west, hath foure very high Mounts like heapes of Corne. That Iland next the Inlets mouth, hath one very high Mount on the Souther end. Here one of our companie killed a red billed Bird. All this day after the morning, and all night proved calme, enclining rather to heate then cold. This night wee had some warme rayne.

77. degr. 26. m.

The one and twentieth, all the fore-noone calme; at foure in the after-noone we had a small gale of wind at South South-east, with fog; we steered away East to stand in with the Land, and sayled 3. leagues untill midnight: then the wind came at North-east, we cast about, and steered South 10. leagues till eight the next morning. The two and twentieth, at eight in the morning much wind

at East, and variable, with short sayle wee steered 3. leagues South and by East: then came downe very much wind; wee strooke a hull. All this after-noone and night, proved very much wind and raine.

The three and twentieth, all the fore-noone was very much wind at South, with raine and fogge. At foure this after-noone wee saw Land, bearing North-east of us 6. leagues from us. Then we had the wind at South South-west; wee steered away South-east, and South-east and by East 4. leagues, the Sea being very much growne. We accounted we had hulled North-west and by North 22. leagues; and North 3. leagues. Then fearing with much wind to be set on a lee shoare, we tackt about, and made our way good West and by North, halfe a point Northerly, all this night with much wind.

The foure and twentieth, in the morning much wind as afore, and the Sea growne. This morning wee strooke our mayne Top-mast to ease our ship, and sayled from the last Eevening eight to this noone 15. leagues West and by North halfe a point Northerly. From twelve to eight, 6. leagues as afore, with the wind at South and by West: at eight we tackt about with the winde at South South-west, and lay South-east and by East, with much winde, and the Sea growne.

The five and twentieth, was a cleere morning we set our mayne Top-mast, we saw Land bearing North of us, and under our Lee, we sayling South-east and by East. Then the wind scanted: we cast about, and lay South-west and by West 2. leagues ½ till noone. Then it began to overcast, and the wind to scant againe: we cast about, and lay South-east and by South, the wind at South-west and by West, and sayled in that course 3. leagues till foure in the after-noone. Then the wind scanted againe, and we sayled 3. leagues South. Now, seeing how contrarie the winde proved, to doe the good which wee desired this way; I thought to prove our fortunes by the West once againe: and this Eevening at eight, wee being the latitude of 78. with the better, and from Land 15. leagues, which

leagues part whereof beare from the North-east to the East off us, we steered away West, with the wind at South-east, and cleere weather.

The sixe and twentieth, all this day proved rayne with thicke fog, and an hard gale of wind at East and by North, and East North-east. From the last Eevening at eight to [III.iii.573.] this noone, wee ranne 25. leagues: from noone till mid-night 19. leagues, the wind at East and by South; from mid-night till two the next morning, 2. leagues West.

The seven and twentieth, extreme thicke fog, and little wind at East and by South. Then it proved calme, and the Sea very loftie. Wee heard a great rutte or noise with the Ice and Sea, which was the first Ice we heard or saw since we were at Collins Cape: the Sea heaving us Westward toward the Ice. Wee heaved out our Boat, and rowed to towe out our ship farther from the danger; which would have beene to small purpose, by meanes the Sea went so high: but in this extremitie it pleased God to give us a small gale at North-west and by West, we steered away South-east 4. leagues till noone. Here we had finished our Discoverie, if the wind had continued that brought us hither, or if it had continued calme: but it pleased God to make this North-west, and by West wind the meane of our deliverance: which wind wee had not found common in this voyage. God give us thankfull hearts for so great deliverance. Here we found the want of a good ship-boat, as once we had done before at Whales Bay: we wanted also halfe a dozen long Oares to rowe in our ship. At noone the day cleered up, and we saw by the skie Ice bearing off us: from West South-west to the North and North North-east. Then we had a good gale at West, we steered away South till foure 7. leagues. From foure to six South 4. leagues, and found by the Icy skie and our neerenesse to Groneland, that there is no passage that way: which if there had beene, I meant to have made my returne by the North of Groneland to Davis his Streights, and so for England. Here finding we had the benefit of a Westerly wind, which all this

Danger escaped.

Whales Bay.

Voyage we had found scant, we altered our course, and steered to the Eastward, and ran South-east foure leagues. From eight this Eevening till noone the next day; East South-east 30. leagues. All this day and night proved very cold, by meanes, as I suppose, of the winds comming off so much Ice.

The eight and twentieth, very cold, the wind at West, not very foggie. At noone this day we steered away South-east and by East, and by observation we were 76. degrees 36. minutes. From noone to eight 10. leagues. Then the wind scanted to South-east and by South, we steered away East and by North 18. leagues, till the next day noone.

The nine and twentieth, all the fore-noone a thicke fog and wet, the wind at South-east and by East, neerest hand, and raw cold. From noone to foure, wee sayled three leagues East and by North, halfe a point Northerly. Then the wind vered more large, we steered East and by South 8. leagues till twelve at night. At this time to windward we heard the rutte of Land; which I knew to be so, by the colour of the Sea. It was extreme thicke fog, so that we could hardly see a Cables length from our ship. We had ground 25. fathoms, small blacke peble stones. Wee sounded againe, and had ground at 30. fathomes small stones like Beanes, at the next cast no ground at 60. fathomes. I cast about againe, and steered South-west 6. leagues, West and by North two leagues till the next day noone. All this day and night extreme thicke fog.

The thirtieth, all the fore-noone very thicke fog. At noone almost calme: after we had little wind, and steered North North-west till two: then it cleered up, so that we could see from us 2. leagues with the wind at North-west. Then we steered East South-east: after it cleered. At South in the Eevening, we saw an Iland bearing off us North-west from us 5. leagues, and we saw land bearing off us from us 7. leagues. We had land likewise bearing off us from East South-east, to South-east and by East as

wee judged, 10. leagues. Then having the winde at West North-west, we steered South and by East. It presently proved calme till ten this Eevening: then wee had a little gale at South-west and by West, wee steered away South South-east till twelve this night, and accounted ourselves in 76. from Land 10. leagues: which was the likeliest Land that wee had seene on all the parts of Newland, being playne riggie Land of a meane height, and not ragged as all the rest was that we had seene this Voyage, nor covered with snow. At twelve this night we saw two Morses in the Sea neere us, swimming to Land. From twelve at night to foure, calme.

The one and thirtieth, at foure this morning we had the wind at South-east, we steered South South-west. Then it proved calme, and so continued all the fore-noone. The after-noone wee had the wind at East South-east, we steered South 8. leagues. Then being like to prove much wind, contrarie to our purpose, and finding our fog more thicke and troublesome then before, divers things necessarie wanting, and our time well nigh spent to doe further good this yeere, I commanded to beare up for our returne for England, and steered away South South-west. And this night proved a hard gale of wind at South-east and by East. Wee were thwart of Cheries Iland the next morning at foure of the clocke, being to windward off us 5. leagues: knowing we were neere it, we looked out carefully for the same, and it proving cleere, we saw it, being a very ragged Land on the Wester side, rising like Heycockes.

Cherie Iland.

The first of August, a very hard gale of wind at East South-east, we shorted sayle, and steered away South South-west. This night was very foggie, with a hard gale of wind at East and by South, we steered by our account 27. leagues: and from eight this Eevening till the next morning foure, 10. leagues as afore. All this night was very foggie, wet and raw cold.

The second, in the morning calme with a thicke fog, cold and slabbie weather. About noone we had a little

[III.iii.574.]

gale West and by North, wee steered away as afore. The third, in the morning calme and cleere weather, with a little gale East and by South, we sayled South South-west: then wee had the wind at South-east, wee sayled as afore. All this day and night proved close weather, a little fogge at noone, which continued not long. At twelve this night the wind vered to the East and by North, wee held our course South South-west, as afore.

The fifteenth of August, we put into the Iles of Farre, standing in 52. degrees; and the fifteenth of September, I arrived in Tilberie Hope in the Thames.

Chap. XV.

A second Voyage or Employment of Master Henry Hudson, for finding a passage to the East Indies by the North-east: written by himselfe.

THeir names employed in this action are as followeth: Henry Hudson, Master and Pilot; Robert Juet,* the Master his Mate; Ludlowe Arnall; John Cooke, Boatsonne; Philip Stacie, Carpenter; John Barns; John Braunch, Cooke; John Adrey, James Strutton, Michael Feirce, Thomas Hilles, Richard Tomson, Robert Raynar, John Hudson, and Humfrey Gilby. The courses observed in this Journall were by a Compasse, that the Needle and the North of the Flye were directly one on the other.

**I have Robert Juets Journall also, for brevitie omitted.*

Anno 1608. the two and twentieth of Aprill, being Friday, we set sayle at Saint Katherines, and fell downe to Blacke wall. *Aprill.*

The twentieth of May, at noone by observation we were in 64. degrees 52. minutes, and at this time and place the Needle declined under the Horizon by the Inclinatory 81. degrees, and wee had a smooth Sea, by meanes whereof my observation was good. *May.*

The one and twentieth, at night thicke fog, wee sayled

North North-east, with the wind at East. The two and twentieth, in the fore-noone the winde at South-east, wee steered North North-east, as afore: in the after-noone little wind and thicke fog; we accounted us in 67. degrees, the Sea smooth, the Needle declined 82. degrees, this night was calme and cleere. The three and twentieth, in the morning the wind was Easterly, we stood North North-East, and North and by East. All the fore-noone was foggie: in the after-noone it cleered, and the wind shortned upon us, we made our way good North all night. The foure and twentieth, the wind at East North-east, and East and by North, we lay as neere as wee could with a full sayle; wee accounted Lowfoot from us East Northerly, 16. leagues, distant from us; at foure a clocke this after-noone, we stood all night, as afore.

Lowfoot.

The five and twentieth, the wind at East North-east, we stood away North as we could lie: all this day was cleere weather, and searching cold, which cold begunne the one and twentieth day, and then my Carpenter was taken sicke, and so doth yet continue; and three or foure more of our companie were enclining to sicknesse, I suppose by meanes of the cold. All the night it was calme. The sixe and twentieth, cold but cleere weather, the wind betweene East and East North-east, we stood North-easterly till twelve a clocke at night: then wee had the wind at North-east & North North-east, we stood South-east and East till noone the next day. The seven and twentieth, cold and drie weather, at noone we had the wind North and North North-west; Wee stood away North-east, and East North-east, as we could, and accounted our selves in 69. degrees 40. minutes, and the Needle enclined, having a smooth Sea, neerest 84. degrees. All night we had wind and weather as afore.

The eight and twentieth, drie cold cleere weather; the wind betweene North North-west and North, we made our way good East North-east; wee saw the Sunne on the North Meridian above the Horizon 5. degrees 35. minutes. All this night we had much wind, as afore.

Sun 5. degrees 35. minutes at mid-night.

The nine and twentieth, a hard gale at North North-west: by account we ranne from mid-night to noone 21. leagues, East North-east. Wee had the Sunne on the Meridian 5. degrees, the latitude 73. degrees 13. minutes, whereby wee found our ship to have out-runne us. At mid-night the wind came to South-east: we cast about, and stood East North-east. This day partly cleere weather with some snow. The thirtieth, cold cleere weather, the wind betweene North-east, and East and by North; we went East South-east, and observing, were in 73. degrees 50. minutes. The one and thirtieth, cold and cleere weather: from the last day till this day noone, we stood South-east and by South, in the latitude of 72. degrees 45. minutes.

The first of June, a hard gale at East North-East, with snow: we made our way good South South-east. The second, a hard gale of wind at North-east: towards night, calme with fogge, our course was South-east all day. The third, in the morning we had a sight of the North Cape; and at a West and by North Sunne, the Cape bore off us South-west, halfe a point Southerly, being from us 8. leagues: and observing the variation, I found it to the Westward 11. degrees: and having a smooth Sea, the Needle enclined under the Horizon 84. degrees and a halfe, the neerest I could finde. We had the wind at South-west, and wee stood away North-east and by East. It was cleere weather, and we saw Norway Fisher-men at Sea.

June.

North Cape.

Variation west 11. degrees.

[III.iii.575.]

Needles inclination 84. degrees and a halfe.

The fourth, warme cleere sun-shine, we stood away North-east and by East. Now by Gods helpe our Carpenter recovered, and made a Mast for our ship-boat, and the companie made a Sayle, we had the Sunne in the sight on the North Meridian: his height was 5. degrees 40. minutes. Inclination 23. degrees 21. minutes: Poles height 72. degrees 21. minutes. The fift, in the morning calme weather: wee sounded, and had 140. fathoms, sand Oze: here wee saw a swelling Sea setting North-east and by East, and South-west and by West, with streame-

leches: and we saw drift wood. After we had wind; and we sayled and made our way North North-east: towards night we sounded, and found ground at 150. fathoms, sand Oze. This day cleere weather, and not cold. The sixt, wee had cleere weather, the wind being at East North-East, from the last day till this day noone; we shaped our way on divers courses North and by West, in the latitude of 73. degrees 24. minutes. We found that our ship had out-runne us, sounding in 160. fathoms: in the after-noone little wind.

The seventh, in the morning the wind at South, after at South South-east: from the last day till this day noone, wee accounted our way from divers courses North-east, 15. leagues. This day was close but cleere weather, and we had a good gale of wind at this time. And three dayes before this, our Cooke and one more of our companie were very sicke. In the morning, we had ground at 150. fathoms, and at night we had no ground at 180. fathoms, which encreased hope. This night we had some snow, which continued foure houres: then the wind came at North-east and by East with storme; and with short sayle we stood North and by West: here the Needle enclined 86. degrees. I accounted that we were in 74. degrees and a halfe at neerest hand. This night we saw the Sunne on the North Meridian, his height was 7. degrees 40. minutes, which maketh the Poles height 74. degrees 23. minutes. The eight, from twelve a clocke last night till noone, we accounted our way on divers courses, North and by East: then our latitude was 74. degrees 38. minutes, and we had no ground at 200. fathoms. In the after-noone the wind came at South South-east, and South-east and by East. This day and night wee had cleere weather, and we were here come into a blacke blue Sea.

74. degrees 30. minutes.

Darke blue Sea.

The ninth, cleere weather, the wind came at South-east and by East: from the last day till this day noone, wee had a good way North-east, in latitude of 75. degrees 29. minutes: then wee entred into Ice, being the first we

saw in this Voyage: our hope was to goe through it, we stood into it, and held our course betweene North-east, and East North-east, loosing for one, and bearing roome for another, till foure in the after-noone: at which time we were so farre in, and the Ice so thicke and firme ahead, being in it foure or five leagues, that wee had endangered us somewhat too farre; wee returned as wee went in, and with a few rubbes of our ship against the Ice; by eight a clocke this Eevening wee got free of it. Wee made our way till next day at noone, South-west and by South, 18. leagues: in the middest of this way wee had no ground at 180. fathoms. The tenth, in the morning hasey weather; but at noone it cleered up, and then we cast about, and stood away North and by East, the wind being at East South-east, two watches, five leagues: then we had the wind at East, we cast about, and stood South South-east, and made a South way, sixe leagues. The eleventh, in the morning a hard storme at East, and East and by South we strooke a hull.

The twelfth, in the morning fog, and all day after cleere weather, the wind at South South-west, we steered East and by North: at noone being in the latitude 75. degrees 30. minutes. From noone till foure a clocke, five leagues East and by North; then we saw Ice ahead of us, and under our Lee trending from the North-west to the North and East of us: We had sounding 100. fathom, greenish Oze. Here we saw divers pieces of drift wood by us driving, and streame Leeches lying South South-west, and North North-east. We many times saw the like since we saw the North Cape. The thirteenth, cleere weather, the wind at East, we made a South way 6. leagues, two watches: then we cast about, and made a North way one watch 3. leagues ½: At twelve at night, much wind with fog, we strooke ahull and layed our ships head to the Southward. The fourteenth, in the fore-noone fog, and our shroudes were frozen: the after-noone was cleere Sun-shine, and so was all the night.

The fifteenth, all day and night cleere sun-shine; the

wind at East, the latitude at noone 75. degrees 7. minutes. We held Westward by our account 13. leagues. In the after-noone the Sea was asswaged; and the wind being at East we set sayle, and stood South and by East, and South South-east as we could. This morning, one of our companie looking over boord saw a Mermaid, and calling up some of the companie to see her, one more came up, and by that time shee was come close to the ships side, looking earnestly on the men: a little after, a Sea came and overturned her: from the Navill upward, her backe and breasts were like a womans, (as they say that saw her) her body as big as one of us; her skin very white; and long haire hanging downe behind, of colour blacke: in her going downe they saw her tayle, which was like the tayle of a Porposse, and speckled like a Macrell. Their names that saw her, were Thomas Hilles and Robert Rayner.

Mermaide seene, and described.

[III.iii.576.] The sixteenth, cleere weather, the wind being at East. From the last day till this day noone, we made our way South and by East 9. leagues; and from noon to eight a clocke in the Eevening, 6. leagues: then we cast about and stood to the Northwards.

The seventeenth, cleere weather, the wind at South-east and by East: from the last day till this day noone, our way was North-east and by East, at noone being in the latitude of 74. degrees 40. minutes. At after-noone we sounded, and had ground at 86. fathom, greene Oze, and our water whitish greene: Here we saw Whales, Porpoises, and the Sea full of Fowles: from noone to mid-night North-east and by East we had the Sunne at lowest, on the North and by East, Easterly part of the Compasse: latitude 74. degrees 54. minutes. Sounding we had 92. fathoms water, Oze as before.

The eighteenth, faire weather, the wind at South-east and by East, from mid-night till this day noone, wee sayled North-east and by East, in the Latitude of 75. degrees 24. minutes, and had ground at ninetie five fathome Oze, as afore. Heere we had Ice in our sight to the Northward off us. In the after-noone, having little

wind at North-east, we cast about and lay East South-east, and at sixe a clocke, had ground at ninetie five fathoms and a halfe Oze, as afore. From noone to twelve a clocke at night, our way was South-east, and South-east and by East, and had the Sunne on the Meridian, North and by East halfe a point Eastward. The Sunnes height was eight degrees 40. minutes. Sounding ninetie fathom. All this day, we had Ice on our Larboord trending: and at this time, from the North-west off us to the East South-east, I have some reason to thinke there is a Tide or Current setting to the Northwards; the course wee held and the way we made betweene this noone and mid-night Observations, doe make mee suspect it the more. *Current.*

The nineteenth, faire and warme weather, the sea smooth. Here the Needle inclined under the Horizon 89. degrees and a halfe, being in the Latitude at noone of 75. degrees 22. minutes; Sounding wee had ground in an hundred fathom. From twelve a clocke last night till this day at noone, we accounted our way from East and by North to South-east, ten leagues, having Ice alwayes in our sight trending on our Larboord, wee had the winde betweene North, and North North-west. We saw the Sunne at the lowest on the North and by East, halfe a point Easterly, his height was 8. degrees 10. minutes, which maketh the Poles height 74. degrees 56. minutes; Sounding we had ground in one hundred and twentie sixe fathom. From noone to this time, wee accounted our way East and by South, and East South-east, twelve leagues. *Needles inclination 89. degrees and a halfe, in 75. degrees 22. min.*

The twentieth, faire warme weather, this morning at foure of the clocke, wee had depth one hundred and twentie five fathom. Heere we heard Beares roare on the Ice; and we saw upon the Ice and neare unto it, an incredible number of Seales. We had sounding one hundred and fifteen fathom, and after ground at ninetie five fathom sandie Oze. We had the Sun on the Meridian North and by East, halfe a point Easterly; his height was 7. degrees 20. minutes. From twelve a clocke *Beares roaring.* *Store of Seals.*

last night, to twelve a clocke this night, our way was made good by our account South-east and by South, twelve leagues, and South-east, three leagues and a halfe, the Ice alwayes being on our Larboord. The wind this day, betweene North and North-west.

The one and twentieth, at foure a clocke in the morning wee sounded, and had one hundred and twentie fathome greene Oze, and the Ice bore off us East, the winde variable; in divers courses wee made our way good South South-east; our Latitude at noone being 74. degrees 9. minutes, we were haled to the Northward beyond expectation. All this day faire, cleere, and warme weather, and Ice on our Larboord at a North and by East Sunne; being then at lowest, his height was 7. degrees 40. minutes, which made the Poles height 74. degrees 33. minutes. From the last day at noone, till twelve a clocke this night, by account of our ships way, wee made our way good East North-east, sixe leagues and a halfe; whereby it doth appeare how we were haled to the Northward. Heere wee had ground at one hundred and thirteene fathome, greene sandie Oze.

Sunne at midnight high 7. degrees 40. minutes, in 74. degrees 33. minutes.

Juets notes tell of a sudden variation of the Compasse, from the North to the East one point, which had been two immediately before.

The two and twentieth, faire cleare weather, the winde at West North-west. At eight a clocke in the Morning, we had ground at one hundred and fifteene fathom, greene Oze. From mid-night to noone, our course was North-east and by East, being in the Letitude of 74. degrees 35. minutes, and we found that our ships way, and our observation were not but there was carefull heed taken of both. Heere we had Ice a head off us, trending to the South-east; and all day before Ice on our Larboord. Here we stood South-east five leagues, then the Ice trended South and by West sixe leagues; we sayled by it, and doubled it by eight a clocke in the Eevening, and then it bore East off us. Heere having a smooth sea, the Needle inclined 85. degrees, from eight a clocke to twelve, North and by East Easterly. Then we had the Sunne on the Meridian, North and by East ½. a poynt Easterly. The Sunnes height was

7. degrees 45. minutes, which made the Latitude 74. degrees 43. minutes.

The three and twentieth, in the morning, thicke fogge, the wind at North North-west. From mid-night till foure a clocke this morning, we sayled North-east five leagues, and then we were among the Ice; we cast about, and stood two houres South-west, two leagues, and had no ground at one hundred and eightie fathom. Then we cast about againe, and stood East till eight a clocke two leagues, and then it cleered up, and we had Ice a [III.iii.577.] head off us. And from North, we stood to South-east, and our shroudes were frozen. Then till noone wee went East and by South, foure leagues, and were neere Ice on our Larboord, in the Latitude of 74. degrees 30. minutes. In the after-noone the wind being at North, wee stood two houres and a halfe, five leagues and a halfe; three houres South South-east, five leagues; one houre South-east and by South, one league and a halfe; an houre East halfe a league, which brought eight in the Eevening alwayes Ice on our Larboord. This after-noone, wee had some snow. From eight a clocke to mid-night, South South-west foure leagues, with Ice as afore. We saw the Sunne at the lowest, North North-east, his height was 7. degrees 15. minutes, the Poles height 74. degrees 18. minutes.

The foure and twentieth, cleere, but cold and some snow, the wind betweene North North-east, and North-east, from mid-night to foure a clocke, wee stood Southward two leagues, and South-east and by East two leagues. And from foure a clocke till noone, South-east Southerly nine leagues, sounding we had ground in one hundred and fortie fathome. From noone to three a clocke, we stood South-east and by South three leagues; from three to foure, South-west and by South one league; and had Ice from the North-east to the South-east off us. From foure a clocke to eight, we stood South-west two leagues and a halfe, Southward halfe a league, with Ice neere us under our Lead.

The five and twentieth, cold and cleare, the wind at East South-east; from eight a clocke last night till foure this morning, our way was South and by East, foure leagues and a halfe; sounding we had ground in eightie fathome, then we had little wind till noone, at East North-east, and the Sunne on the Meridian, on the South-west and by South point of the Compasse, ere it began to fall, wee were in the Latitude of 72. degrees 52. minutes, and had Ice on our Larboord, and our hope of passage was gone this way, by meanes of our nearenesse to Nova Zembla, and the abundance of Ice. We had from Noone to eight a clocke in the Eevening, the wind between North North-east, and North-east, we stood South-east three leagues and a halfe, and had Ice on our Larboord, and shoalding sixtie eight fathome.

The sixe and twentieth, faire Sun-shining weather, and little wind at East North-east. From twelve a clocke at night till foure this morning, we stood Southward two leagues, sounding wee had sixtie sixe fathome Oaze, as afore. From foure a clocke to noone, South-east and by South foure leagues, and had the Sunne on the Meridian, on the South-east and by South point of the Compasse, in the Latitude of 72. degrees 25. minutes, and had sight of Nova Zembla foure or five leagues from us, and the place called by the Hollanders, Swart Cliffe, bearing off South-east. In the after-noone, wee had a fine gale at East North-east, and by eight of the clocke, we had brought it to beare off us East Southerly, and sayled by the shoare a league from it.

No passage that way.

Swart Cliffe.

The seven and twentieth, all the fore-noone it was almost calme; wee being two mile from the shoare, I sent my Mate Robert Juet, and John Cooke my Boat-swaine on shoare, with foure others, to see what the Land would yeeld that might bee profitable, and to fill two or three Caskes with water. They found and brought aboord some Whales Finnes two Deeres Hornes, and the Dung of Deere, and they told me that they saw Grasse on the shoare of the last yeere, and young Grasse came up

They goe ashoare.

amongst it a shaftman long; and it was boggie ground in some places, there are many streames of Snow water nigh, it was very hot on the shoare, and the snow melted apace, they saw the footings of many great Beares, of Deere, and Foxes. They went from us at three a clocke in the morning, and came aboord at a South-east Sunne; and at their comming, wee saw two or three companies of Morses in the sea neere us swimming, being almost calme. I presently sent my Mate, Ladlow the Carpenter, and sixe others a shoare, to a place where I thought the Morses might come on the shoare, they found the place likely, but found no signe of any that had beene there. There was a Crosse standing on the shoare, much Driftwood, and signes of Fires that had beene made there. They saw the footing of very great Deere and Beares, and much Fowle, and a Foxe; they brought aboord Whale finnes, some Mosse, Flowers and greene things that did there grow. They brought also two peeces of a Crosse, which they found there. The Sunne was on the Meridian on the North North-east, halfe a point Easterly, before it began to fall. The Sunnes height was 4. degrees 45. minutes, Inclination 22. degrees 33. minutes, which makes the Latitude 72. degrees 12. minutes. There is disagreement betweene this and the last observation; but by meanes of the cleerenesse of the Sunne, the smoothnesse of the Sea, and the neernesse to Land, wee could not bee deceived, and care was taken in it.

The eight and twentieth, at foure a clocke in the Morning our Boat came aboord, and brought two dozen of Fowle, and some Egges, whereof a few were good, and a Whales finne; and wee all saw the Sea full of Morses, yet no signes of their being on shoare. And in this calme, from eight a clocke last Eevening, till foure this Morning, we were drawne backe to the Northward, as farre as wee were the last Eevening at foure a clocke, by a Streame or a Tide; and we chose rather so to drive, then to adventure the losse of an Anchor, and the spoyle of a Cable. Heere our new Ship-boate began to doe us

service, and was an incouragement to my Companie, which want I found the last yeere.

[III.iii.578.] The nine and twentieth, in the morning calme, being halfe a league from the shoare, the Sea being smooth, the Needle did encline 84. degrees, we had many Morses in the Sea neere us, and desiring to find where they came on shoare, wee put to with Sayle and Oares, towing in our Boat, and rowing in our Barke to get about a point of Land, from whence the Land did fall more Easterly, and the Morses did goe that way. Wee had the Sunne on the Meridian on the South and by West point, halfe a point to the Wester part of the Compasse, in the latitude of 71. degrees 15. minutes. At two a clocke this afternoone we came to anchor in the mouth of a River, where lieth an Iland in the mouth thereof, foure leagues: wee anchored from the Iland in two and thirtie fathomes, blacke sandy ground. There drove much Ice out of it with a streame that set out of the River or Sound, and there were many Morses sleeping on the Ice, and by it we were put from our Road twice this night; and being calme all this day, it pleased God at our need to give us a fine gale, which freed us out of danger. This day was calme, cleere and hot weather: all the night we rode still.

River and Iland.

The thirtieth, calme, hot, and faire weather, we weighed in the morning, and towed and rowed, and at noone we came to anchor neere the Ile aforesaid in the mouth of the River, and saw very much Ice driving in the Sea, two leagues without us lying South-east and North-west; and driving to the North-west so fast, that wee could not by twelve a clocke at night see it out of the top. At the Iland where wee rode, lieth a little Rocke, whereon were fortie or fiftie Morses lying asleepe, being all that it could hold, it being so full and little. I sent my companie ashoare to them, leaving none aboord but my Boy with mee: and by meanes of their neerenesse to the water, they all got away, save one which they killed, and brought his head aboord; and ere they came aboord they went on the Iland,

which is reasonable high and steepe, but flat on the top. They killed and brought with them a great Fowle, whereof there were many, and likewise some Egges, and in an houre they came aboord. This Ile is two flight-shot over in length, and one in breadth. At mid-night our Anchor came home, and wee tayld aground by meanes of the strength of the streame, but by the helpe of God, wee hoved her off without hurt. In short time wee moved our ship, and rode still all night; and in the night wee had little wind at East, and East South-east. Wee had at noone this day an observation, and were in the latitude of 71. degrees 15. minutes.

July. The first of July, we saw more Ice to Seaward of us; from the South-east to the North-west, driving to the North-west. At noone it was calme, and we had the Sunne on the Meridian, on the South and by West point, halfe a point to the Westerly part of the Compasse, in the latitude of 71. degrees 24. minutes. This morning I sent my Mate Everet, and foure of our companie to rowe about the Bay, to see what Rivers were in the same, and to find where the Morses did come on land; and to see a Sound or great River in the bottome of the Bay, which did alwaies send out a great streame to the Northwards, against the tide that came from thence: and I found the same in comming in, from the North to this place before this. When by the meanes of the great plenty of Ice, the hope of passage betweene Newland and Nova Zembla was taken away; my purpose was by the Vaygats to passe by the mouth of the River Ob, and to double that way the North Cape of Tartaria, or to give reason wherefore it will not be: but being here, and hoping by the plentie of Morses wee saw here, to defray the charge of our Voyage; and also that this Sound might for some reasons bee a better passage to the East of Nova Zembla, then the Vaygats, if it held according to my hope conceived by the likenesse it gave: for whereas we had a floud came from the Northwards; yet this Sound or River did runne so strong, that Ice with the streame of

His purpose altered.

Strong stream.

this River was carried away, or any thing else against the floud: so that both in floud and ebbe, the streame doth hold a strong course; and it floweth from the North three houres, and ebbeth nine.

The second, the wind being at East South-east, it was reasonable cold, and so was Friday; and the Morses did not play in our sight as in warme weather. This morning at three of the clocke, my Mate and companie came aboord, and brought a great Deeres horne, a white locke of Deeres haire; foure dozen of Fowle, their Boat halfe laden with drift Wood; and some Flowers and greene things, that they found growing on the shoare.

Herd of white Deere.

They saw a herd of white Deere, of ten in a companie on the land; much drift wood lying on the shoare, many good Bayes, and one River faire to see to on the North shoare, for the Morses to land on: but they saw no Morses there, but signes that they had beene in the Bayes. And the great River or Sound, they certified me, was of breadth two or three leagues, and had no ground at twentie fathoms, and that the water was of the colour of the Sea, and very salt, and that the streame setteth strongly out of it. At sixe a clocke this morning, came much Ice from the Southward driving upon us, very fearefull to looke on: but by the mercy of God and his mightie helpe, wee being moored with two Anchors ahead with vering out of one Cable, and heaving home the other, and sending off with Beames and Sparres, escaped the danger: which labour continued till sixe a clocke in the Eevening, and then it was past us, and we rode still and tooke our rest this night.

The third, the wind at North a hard gale. At three a clocke this morning wee weighed our anchor, and set sayle, purposing to runne into the River or Sound before spoken of.

[III.iii.579.] The fourth, in the morning it cleered up with the wind at North-west, we weighed and set sayle, and stood to the Eastwards, and past over a Reefe, and found on it five and a halfe, sixe, sixe and a halfe, and seven fathoms

water: then we saw that the Sound was full, & a very large River from the North-eastward free from Ice, and a strong streame comming out of it: and wee had sounding then, foure and thirtie fathoms water. Wee all conceived hope of this Northerly River or Sound, and sayling in it, wee found three and twentie fathomes for three leagues, and after twentie fathomes for five or sixe leagues, all tough Ozie ground. Then the winde vered more Northerly, and the streame came downe so strong, that wee could doe no good on it: wee came to anchor, and went to supper, and then presently I sent my Mate Juet, with five more of our companie in our Boat, with Sayle and Oares to get up the River, being provided with Victuall and Weapons for defence, willing them to sound as they went; and if it did continue still deepe, to goe untill it did trende to the Eastward, or to the Southwards, and wee rode still.

The River searched.

The fift, in the morning we had the wind at West: we began to weigh anchor, purposing to set sayle and to runne up the Sound after our companie: then the wind vered Northerly upon us, and we saved our labour. At noone our companie came aboord us having had a hard rought; for they had beene up the River sixe or seven leagues, and sounded it from twentie to three and twentie; and after brought it to eight, sixe, and one fathome; and then to foure foot in the best: they then went ashoare, and found good store of wilde Goose quills, a piece of an old Oare, and some Flowers, and greene things which they found growing: they saw many Deere, and so did we in our after-dayes sayling. They being come aboord, we presently set sayle with the wind at North North-west, and we stood out againe to the South-westwards, with sorrow that our labour was in vaine: for, had this Sound held as it did make shew of, for breadth, depth, safenesse of harbour, and good anchor ground, it might have yeelded an excellent passage to a more Easterly Sea. Generally, all the Land of Nova Zembla that yet wee have seene, is to a mans eye a pleasant Land; much

Nova Zembla pleasant to the eye.

mayne high Land with no Snow on it, looking in some places greene, and Deere feeding thereon: and the Hills are partly covered with Snow, and partly bare. It is no marvell that there is so much Ice in the Sea toward the Pole, so many Sounds and Rivers being in the Lands of Nova Zembla, and Newland to ingender it; besides the coasts of Pechora, Russia, and Groenland, with Lappia, as by proofes I finde by my travell in these parts: by meanes of which Ice I suppose there will be no navigable passage this way. This Eevening wee had the wind at West and by South: wee therefore came to anchor under Deere Point; and it was a storme at Sea, wee rode in twentie fathomes, Ozie ground: I sent my Mate, Ladlow, with foure more ashoare to see whether any Morses were on the shoare, and to kill some Fowle, (for we had seene no Morses since Saturday, the second day of this moneth, that wee saw them driving out of the Ice.) They found good landing for them, but no signe that they had beene there: but they found that fire had beene made there, yet not lately. At ten of the clocke in the Eevening, they came aboord, and brought with them neere an hundred Fowles called Wellocks; this night it was wet fogge, and very thicke and cold, the winde at West South-west.

Cause of much Ice in those Seas, which make no navigable passage.

The sixt, in the morning wee had the wind stormie and shifting; betweene the West and South-west, against us for doing any good: we rode still and had much Ice driving by us to the Eastward of us. At nine of the clocke, this Eevening wee had the wind at North North-west: we presently weighed, and set sayle, and stood to the Westward, being out of hope to find passage by the North-east: And my purpose was now to see whether Willoughbies Land were, as it is layd in our Cardes; which if it were, wee might finde Morses on it; for with the Ice they were all driven from hence. This place upon Nova Zembla, is another then that which the Hollanders call Costing Sarch, discovered by Oliver Brownell: and William Barentsons observation doth witnesse the same.

Willoughbies Land, a conceit of Cardmakers: it seeming to be no other then Newland or Greenland (as is before observed cap. 2.) as Costing Sarch of Brunell is to others Nova Zembla. Note.

It is layd in plot by the Hollanders out of his true place too farre North: to what end I know not, unlesse to make it hold course with the Compasse, not respecting the variation. It is as broad and like to yeeld passage as the Vaygats, and my hope was, that by the strong streame it would have cleered it selfe; but it did not. It is so full of Ice that you will hardly thinke it. All this day, for the most part, it was fogge and cold.

The seventh, cleere but cold weather: in the morning the wind was at the North; from the last Eevening to this morning, we set saile and kept our course West and by South, fifteene leagues, from morning to eight a clocke in the Eevening it was calme: then we had the wind againe at North, and we sayled till nine a clocke next morning West South-west, eight leagues; then the wind being West and by South, wee went North and by West, three leagues, and wee had the Sunne at the highest South South-west, in the latitude of 71. degrees 2. minutes. The eight, faire weather; at noone we had the wind at East North-east, we stood North three leagues till foure a clocke: then the wind being at west and by North, wee stemmed North and by West one league and a halfe, till six a clocke in the Eevening; then the wind was at North-east a hard gale, and wee stood till next day at noone West and by North, by account three and twentie leagues: we had the Sunne on the Meridian, South and by West, halfe a point neerest West in the latitude of 70. degrees 41. minutes. The [III.iii.580.] ninth, cleere weather: from this to the next day at noone, we sayled South-west and by West, twelve leagues, and Northward three leagues: and in these courses had these soundings, 41. 42. 46. 48. and 45. fathoms: we had the Sunne South and by West, halfe a point to the West part of the Compasse. The Sea was loftie: our latitude was 70. degrees 20. minutes.

The tenth, cleere but close weather: from this till next day noone, wee had little wind at West North-west: by account we made our way five leagues North-easterly.

Wee had the Sun at the highest on the South and by West point, and a terce Westward, in the latitude of 70. degrees 55. minutes, and I thinke we had a rustling tide under us; and in this time had sounding betweene fortie five and fortie fathomes, white sand. The eleventh, cleere weather: from this to the next day at noone, little wind at North North-east, and sometimes calme; wee sayled West and by North by account five leagues; and had the Sunne on the Meridian on the South and by West point ⅓. West in the latitude of 70. degrees 26. minutes, and found a rustling under us. This fore-noone we were come into *Greene Sea.* a greene Sea, of the colour of the mayne Ocean, which we first lost the eight of June: since which time wee have had a Sea of a blacke blue colour, which (both by the last and this yeeres experience) is a Sea pestered with Ice.

The twelfth, faire weather: from noone to mid-night wee had the wind shifting betweene the North and West; our course was betweene West North-west, and South South-west. Then we had the wind at South, we sayled till the next day at noone, West and by North, thirteene leagues: wee accounted our way from the last day till this day noone Westward, eighteene leagues. This after-noone wee saw more Porpoises then in all our Voyage afore. The thirteenth, close weather: in the after-noone having much wind at South, with short sayle we stood away West and by North, till eight a clocke in the Eevening: then we had the wind at South, but most times calme till noone the next day: wee stood away as afore, foure leagues, which made in all twelve leagues: we had the Sunne ere it began to fall, South and by West, in the latitude of 70. degrees 22. minutes.

The fourteenth, wee stood West North-west till mid-night, seventeene leagues: then the wind scanted and came at West, we stood North North-west, one league and a halfe; then the wind being more Southerly, wee sayled West North-west, five leagues. From the last till this day at noone, our way was out of divers courses North-

west and by West, foure and twentie leagues. We had the Sunne beginning to fall at South and by West, in the latitude of 70. degrees 54. minutes.

The fifteenth, faire; but towards night like to be stormie with thunder, the wind betweene South and South South-east; from this, till the sixteenth day at noone, our course was West and by North, seven and twentie leagues, and the Sunne then began to fall at South, three quarters of a point Westward, in the latitude of 70. degrees 42. minutes. The sixteenth, faire; our way was from this till next day at noone North-west, twelve leagues, out of divers courses: and we had the wind shifting, sometimes at East, at West South-west, and West and by North; the latitude by a bad observation, 71. degrees 44. minutes. The seventeenth, in the fore-noone faire; the wind being at West and by North. At foure a clocke this morning we saw Land beare off us, West and South South-west, which was about Ward-house: this afternoone wee had a storme at West and by North, we layed it to trie till eight a clocke in the Eevening, and then set sayle with the wind betweene West North-west, and North-west: our course till the next day at noone, was South-west and by South, twelve leagues: the Cape Hopewell bore off us South South-west, and we were foure or five leagues from land. *Thunder.*

The eighteenth, gusty, with raine all the fore-noone; then we had the wind shifting till next day at noone from South South-east to East, and South-east: our course in generall was North-west, foure and twentie leagues: then did North Kene beare off us West halfe a point Southward, being from us foure leagues; and the North Cape in sight bearing West and by North, &c.

The seven and twentieth, cold with raine and storme; this night we began to burne Candle in the Betacle, which we had not done since the nineteenth of May: by reason wee had alwaies day from thence till now. The thirtieth, we had the Sunne upon the Meridian due South, in the latitude of 68. degrees 46. minutes; whereby we found us *No night in ten weekes.*

to bee afore our ship, ten or twelve leagues, and Lowfoot bore East of us, but not in sight.

The seventh of August, I used all diligence to arrive at London, and therefore now I gave my companie a certificate under my hand, of my free and willing returne, without perswasion or force of any one or more of them: for at my being at Nova Zembla, the sixt of July, voide of hope of a North-east passage, (except by the Vaygats, for which I was not fitted to trie or prove) I therefore resolved to use all meanes I could to sayle to the North-west; considering the time and meanes wee had, if the wind should friend us, as in the first part of our Voyage it had done, and to make triall of that place called Lumleys Inlet, and the furious over-fall by Captayne Davis, hoping to runne into it an hundred leagues, and to returne as God should enable mee. But now having spent more then halfe the time I had, and gone but the shortest part of the way, by meanes of contrary winds; I thought it my dutie to save Victuall, Wages, and Tackle, by my speedy returne, and not by foolish rashnesse, the time being wasted, to lay more charge upon the action then necessitie should compell, I arrived at Gravesend the six and twentieth of August.

See Hak. to. 3.

Chap. XVI.

The third Voyage of Master Henrie Hudson toward Nova Zembla, and at his returne, his passing from Farre Ilands, to New-found Land, and along to fortie foure degrees and ten minutes, and thence to Cape Cod, and so to thirtie three degrees; and along the Coast to the Northward, to fortie two degrees and a half, and up the River neere to fortie three degrees. Written by Robert Juet of Lime-house.

ON Saturday the five and twentieth of March, 1609. after the old Account, we set sayle from Amsterdam; and by the seven and twentieth day, we were downe at the Texel: and by twelve of the clocke we were off the Land, it being East of us two leagues off. And because it is a journey usually knowne, I omit to put downe what passed, till we came to the height of The North Cape of Finmarke, which we did performe by the fift of May (stilo novo) being Tuesday. On which day we observed the height of the Pole, and found it to bee 71. degrees and 46. minutes; and found our Compasse to vary six degrees to the West: and at twelve of the clocke, the North Cape did beare South-west and by South, tenne leagues off, and wee steered away East and by South, and East. *May 5. stilo novo.*

After much trouble with fogges, sometimes, and more dangerous of Ice. The nineteenth, being Tuesday, was close stormie weather, with much wind and snow, and very cold: the wind variable betweene the North North-west, and North-east. We made our way West and by North till noone. Then we observed the Sunne having a slake, and found our heigth to bee 70. degrees 30. minutes. And the ship had out-runne us twentie leagues, by reason of the set of the streame of The White Sea: and *Beala More.*

Wardhouse. we had sight of Wardhouse. Then at two of the clocke
They doubled the North Cape. wee tackt to the Eastward: for we could not get about the North Cape, the wind was so scant; and at eight of the clocke at night, on the one and twentieth, the North Cape did beare South-east and by South seven leagues off.
Assumption Point. And at mid-night Assumption Point did beare South and by East, five leagues off us.

The two and twentieth, gusting weather with haile and snow, the Sunne breaking out sometimes: we continued our course along the Land West South-west. And at
Zenam. tenne of the clocke at night we were thwart off Zenam. The bodie of it did beare East off us five leagues: and the course from the North Cape to Zenam, is for the most part West and by South, and West South-west, fiftie foure leagues.

The three and twentieth, faire Sun-shining weather; the wind at East and by South, and East South-east, wee steered along the Land South-west, and South-west and by West, eight leagues a Watch, for so we found the Land to lye from Zenam to Lofoote. And the distance is fiftie leagues from the bodie of Zenam, to the Westermost
Lofoote. Land of Lofoote. And from the one to the other, the course is South-west and by West. For the Needle of our Compasse was set right to the North. At twelve of the clocke at night, the bodie of Lofoote did beare South-east, sixe leagues off.

The foure and twentieth, faire cleere Sun-shining weather: the wind variable upon all points of the Compasse, but most upon the South-east, and sometimes calme. We continued our course West South-west as before. And at eight of the clocke at night, the Souther part of Lofoote did beare South-east ten leagues off us.

The five and twentieth, much wind at North-east, with some snow and haile. The first watch the wind came to the East a fine gale, and so came to the North-east, the second watch at foure of the clocke, and freshed in: And at eight of the clocke it grew to a storme, and so continued. At noone we observed, and made the ship to be

in 67. degrees 58. minutes. Wee continued our course South-west, twelve leagues a watch. At nine of the clocke, Lofoote did beare East of us 15. leagues off. And we found the Compasse to have no variation. The wind increased to a storme. *No variation.*

The six and twentieth, was a great storme at the North North-east, and North-east. Wee steered away South-west afore the wind with our fore-course abroad: for wee were able to maintayne no more sayles, it blew so vehemently, and the Sea went so high, and brake withall, that it would have dangered a small ship to lye under the Sea. So we skudded seventy leagues in foure and twentie houres. The storme began to cease at foure of the clocke.

The seven and twentieth, indifferent faire weather, but a good stiffe gale of wind at North, and North North-east, wee held on our course as before. At noone wee observed and found our heigth to be 64. degrees 10. minutes. And wee perceived, that the Current had hindred us in fortie eight houres to the number of 16. leagues to our best judgement. We set our mayne-sayle, sprit-sayle, and our mayne-top-sayle, and held on our course all night, having faire weather. [III.iii.582.] *A great current setting to the North-east.*

The eight and twentieth, faire weather and little wind at North-east, we held on our course South-west. At noone wee observed the heigth, and were in 62. degrees and 30. minutes. The after-noone was little wind at North North-west. The second watch it fell calme. At foure of the clocke wee had sight of the Iles called Farre, and found them to lye out of their place in the Sea Chart fourteene leagues to farre Westerly. For in running South-west from Lofoote, wee had a good care to our steerage and observations; and counted our selves thirtie leagues off by our course and observation: and had sight of them sixteene or eighteene leagues off. *Farre Iles set 14. leagues to farre West.*

The nine and twentieth, faire weather sometimes calme, and sometimes a gale with the wind varying at South-west, and so to the North-east. Wee got to the Ilands,

but could not get in. So we stood along the Ilands. The ebbe being come, we durst not put in.

The thirtieth faire weather; the wind at South-east and East South-east. In the morning we turned into a Road in Stromo, one of the Ilands of Farre, betweene Stromo and Mugge-nes, and got in by nine of the clocke: for it flowed so there that day. And assoone as we came in, we went to Romage, and sent our Boat for water, and filled all our emptie Caskes with fresh water. Wee made an end of our Romaging this night by ten of the clocke.

Stromo.

The one and thirtieth, faire Sun-shining weather, the wind at East South-east. In the forenoone our Master with most of his Company went on shoare to walke, and at one of the clocke they returned aboord. Then we set sayle.

June.

The first of June, stilo novo, faire Sun-shining weather, the wind at East South-east. We continued on our course South-west and by West. At noone wee observed the Sunne, and found our heigth to be 60. degrees 58. minutes: and so continued on our course all night with faire weather. This night we lighted Candles in the [m] Bittacle againe.

[m] *The Bittacle is a close place in which the Compasse standeth.*

The second mystie weather, the wind at North-east. At noone we steered away West South-west, to find Busse Iland, discovered in the yeere 1578. by one of the ships of Sir Martin Frobisher, to see if it lay in her true latitude in the Chart or no: wee continued our course as before all night, with a faire gale of wind: this night we had sight of the first stars, and our water was changed colour to a white greene. The Compasse had no variation.

Busse Iland.

Their first sight of stars: for further North, they had continuall Sun-light.

Change of water.

The third, faire Sun-shining weather; the wind at North-east. We stered on our course South-west and by West, with a stiffe gale of wind. At noone we observed and found our heigth to bee 58. degrees 48. minutes. And I was before the ship 16. leagues, by reason of the Current that held us so strong out of the South-west. For it is eight leagues in foure and twentie houres. We

A strange current out of the South west.

accounted our selves neere Busse Iland: by mid-night we looked out for it, but could not see it.

The fourth, in the morning was much wind with fogge and raine. Wee steered away South-west by west all the fore-noone, the wind so increasing, that wee were enforced to take in our top-sayle: the winde continuing so all the after-noone. Wee steered away South-west all the fore-part of the night; and at ten of the clocke at night it was little wind; and that was at South, and so came up to the South South-east.

The fift, stormie weather, and much wind at South, and South by East, so that at foure of the clocke in the morning, we tooke in our fore-sayle, and lay a try with our mayne corse, and tryed away West North-west foure leagues. But at noone it was lesse wind, and the Sunne shewed forth; and we observed, and found our heigth to be 56. degrees 21. minutes. In the after-noone the wind vered to and fro betweene the South-west and the South-east, with raine and fogge, and so continued all night. Wee found that our ship had gone to the Westward of our course. *Note well.* The sixth, thicke hasie weather with gusts of wind, and showers of raine. The wind varied betweene East South-East and South-west, wee steered on many courses a West South-west way. The afternoone watch the wind was at East South-east, a stiffe gale with myst and raine. Wee steered away South-west, by West eight leagues. At noone the Sunne shone forth, and we found the heigth to bee 56. degrees 8. minutes. The seventh, faire sun-shining weather all the fore-noone, and calme untill twelve of the clocke. In the after-noone the wind came to the North-west, a stiffe gale. We steered South-west by West, and made a South-west way. At noone we found the height to bee 56. degrees one minute, and it continued all night a hard gale. The eight, stormy weather, the wind variable, betweene West and North-west much wind: at eight of the clocke wee tooke off our Bonnets. At noone the Sunne shewed forth, and wee observed, and our height was 54. degrees 30. minutes.

Bonets are those which are laced and eeked to the sayles to enlarge them: with reference whereto the mayne course, missen course, fore course, is understood of those sayles without their Bonets.

The ninth, faire sun-shining weather, and little wind all the fore-part of the day untill eleven of the clocke. Then the wind came to the South South-east, and we steered away West South-west. At noone we found our height to bee 53. degrees and 45. minutes, and we had made our way South by West ten leagues. In the after-noone the wind increased and continued all night at East North-east and East.

The twelfth, faire weather, the wind variable betweene East North-east and South-east, wee steered on our course as before. At foure of the clock in the afternoon the wind [III.iii.583.] came up at South-east. And we held our course as before. At noone wee observed and found our height to be 52. degrees 35. minutes.

The eleventh, in the morning was thicke and foggie, the winde varying betweene South South-west, and North-west. At foure of the clocke in the morning, wee tackt about to the Southward: At eleven of the clocke the winde came to the North-west, and so to the West North-west. This day we had change of water, of a whitish greene, like to the Ice water to the North-west. At noone it cleered up, and became very faire weather: wee put out our mayne top-sayle: then we observed the Sunne, and found our height to be 51. degrees 24. minutes. We had sayled many courses and found our ship gone to the Southward of our account ten leagues, by reason of a current from the North-ward. The Compasse varied on point to the East.

A current from the North. Variation one point East.

The twelfth, faire Sun-shining weather, but much wind at the West: we stood to the Southward all day, the wind shifting betweene the South-west and the West and by North. Wee made our way South halfe a point West, eight and twentie leagues. Our height at noone was 50. degrees 9. minutes. At eight of the clock at night we took off our Bonets, the wind increasing.

The thirteenth, faire Sun-shining weather: the wind variable betweene the West, and North North-west. We made our way South South-west seven and twentie leagues.

At noone we observed, and found our heigth to be 48. degrees 45. minutes. But not to be trusted, the Sea went so high. In the after-noone the winde was calmer, and wee brought to our Bonets, and stood to the Southward all night with a stiffe gale.

The fourteenth, faire and cleere Sun-shining weather: the winde variable betweene the North-west and South-west by West. At mid-night I observed the North starre at a North-west by West Guarde; a good observation 49. degrees 30. minutes. And at noone wee observed the Sunne, and our heigth was 48. degrees 6. minutes. And I made account we ranne betweene the two observations twelve leagues. At one of the clocke in the after-noone, wee cast about to the Westward, and stood so all night: the winde increased to a storme, and was very much winde with Raine.

Latitude 48. *degrees* 6. *minutes.*

The fifteenth, we had a great storme, and spent * overboord our fore-mast, bearing our fore corse low set. The sixteenth, we were forced to trie with our mayne sayle, by reason of the unconstant weather. So wee tried foure watches South-east and by South eight leagues and an halfe, and two watches sixe leagues. The seventeenth, reasonable faire weather: the wind variable betweene West South-west, and West North-west. And a stiffe gale of wind, and so great a swelling Sea out of the West South-west, that wee could doe nothing. So one watch and an halfe wee drove North foure leagues and an halfe, and foure watches and an halfe South and by East halfe a point East twelve leagues. The eighteenth, reasonable weather but close and cloudie, and an hard gale of wind, and a great Sea. The winde being at the North-west, wee lay to the Southward, and made our drift South and by West, five leagues. The after-noone prooved little wind, and the night part calme. The nineteenth, in the fore-noone faire weather and calme. In the morning we set the piece of our fore mast, and set our fore corse.

**To spend the Mast, is understood of breaking it by foule weather only.*

The one and twentieth, faire Sun-shining weather, but much wind and a great Sea. We split our fore saile at

A.D. 1609.

ten of the clocke; then we laid it a trie * with our mayne sayle, and continued so all day. In the night it fell to be little wind. This day our heigth was 45. degrees 48. minutes.

*That is, bare no more sayle but the mayne sayle, &c. Variation.

The two and twentieth, very faire Sun-shining weather, and calme all the after-noone. At noone we made a very good observation, and found our height 44. degrees 58. minutes. At eight of the clocke at night wee had a small gale of winde at South-east. And wee steered away West for Newfound Land. The true Compasse varied one point East.

The three and twentieth, thicke weather with much wind and some raine. At eight of the clocke in the morning, the wind came to the West South-west, and West so stiffe a gale, that we were forced to take our top-sayle, and steered away North North-west untill foure of the clock in the after-noone. Then we tact to the Southward the winde at West North-west. At eight of the clocke at night wee tooke in our top-sayles, and laid it a trie with our mayne sayle, the winde at West.

The foure and twentieth, a stiffe gale of wind, varying betweene the West and North North-west, we tried till sixe of the clocke: at which time we set our foresaile, and steered way West and by South by our Compasse eight leagues in foure watches: and wee tried away South in one watch and an halfe.

The five and twentieth, faire Sun-shining weather, the wind at North North-west and North, we steered away West by South by our Compasse till twelve of the clocke: at which time we had sight of a sayle, and gave her chase but could not speake with her. She stood to the Eastward; and we stood after her till sixe of the clocke in the after-noone. Then wee tact to the Westward againe, and stood on our course. It was faire all night, and little wind sometimes.

The six and twentieth, all the fore-part of the day very faire weather and hot, but at foure of the clocke in the after-noone it grew to bee much winde and raine: the

winde was at South South-east. At noone wee observed and found our heigth to bee 44. degrees 33. minutes. At eight of the clocke at night, the wind came to South-west, and West South-west. Wee steered North-west, [III.iii.584.] one Watch, and at twelve in the night, to the West, and West and by South, very much wind. So we could lye but North North-west.

The seven and twentieth, very much winde and a soare storme, the wind Westerly. In the morning at foure of the clocke, wee tooke in our fore-corse, and layd it a trie with our mayne-corse low set; and so continued all the day and night, two watches to the Northward. At eight of the clocke at night, we tackt to the Southward.

The eight and twentieth, faire sun-shining weather, the wind at West and by South; we lay a trie to the Southward till eight of the clocke in the morning. Then wee set our fore-corse, and stood to the Southward a stiffe gale of wind, but faire weather and a great Sea, out of the Wester-boord, and so continued all night.

The nine and twentieth, faire sun-shining weather, the wind at West and by South; we stood to the Southward untill sixe of the clocke at night, and made our way South and by East, foure leagues. Then the winde came to the South-west, and wee cast about to the Westward, and made our way West North-west all night. At noone, I found the height 43. degrees 6. minutes. The variation one point West.

The thirtieth, faire sun-shining weather, the winde at South-west and by West, we steered North-west and by West. And made our way so, by reason of the variation of the Compasse. At noone, I found the height to bee 43. degrees 18. minutes; wee continued our course all night, and made our way North-west and by West, halfe a point Westerly, five and twentie leagues.

The first of July, close, mystie and thicke weather, but *July.* a faire gale of wind at South-west, and South-west by South. We steered away North-west and by West, Westerly, and made our way so, by reason of the variation

of the Compasse. At eight of the clocke at night, wee sounded for the Banke of New-found Land, but could get no ground.

The Banke of New found Land.

The second, thicke mystie weather, but little wind, and that at West, and West and by South. At eight of the clocke in the morning, we cast about to the Southward, and when our ship was on stayes, we sounded for the Banke, and had ground in thirtie fathoms, white sand and shells, and presently it cleered: and we had sight of a sayle, but spake not with her. In the night we had much Rayne, Thunder and Lightning, and wind shifting.

The third, faire Sun-shining weather, with a faire gale of wind at East North-east, and wee steered away West South-west by our Compasse, which varyed 17. degrees Westward. This morning we were among a great Fleet of French-men, which lay Fishing on the Banke; but we spake with none of them. At noone wee found our heighth to bee 43. degrees 41. minutes. And we sounded at ten of the clocke, and had thirtie fathoms gray sand. At two of the clocke wee sounded, and had five and thirtie fathoms gray sand. At eight of the clocke at night, we sounded againe, and had eight and thirtie fathoms gray sand, as before.

Variation west 17. degrees.

French-men Fishing on the Banke.

The fourth, at the fore-part of the day cleere, with a faire gale of wind, but variable betweene the East North-east, and South and by East, wee held on our course as before. The after-noone was mystie, the wind shifting betweene the South and the West, till foure of the clocke. Then we tooke in our top-sayle and sprit-sayle, and sounded and had no ground in seventie fathoms. The winde shifted still untill eight of the clocke, then it came to the North North-east, and North-east and by North, and we steered away West North-west, by our varyed Compasse, which made a West way halfe point North. The Compasse varyed 15. degrees from the North to the West.

Variation 15. degrees North-west.

The fift, faire sun-shining weather, the wind at North-east and by North, we steered away West North-west,

which was West halfe a point North. At noone we found our heighth to be 44. degrees 10. minutes, and sounded, and had no ground in one hundred fathoms. The after-noone proved calme sometimes, and somtimes little wind, untill nine of the clocke in the night. Then the wind came to the East, and we held on our course. At mid-night I observed and found the height to bee 44. degrees 10. minutes, by the North Starre and the Scorpions heart. The Compasse varyed 13. degrees. *Variation 13. degrees.*

The sixth, the fore-part of the day faire weather, and a stiffe gale of wind, betweene South South-east, and South-west, wee steered West and by North, and West North-west. The after-part of the day from two of the clocke, was all foggie and thicke weather; the wind a hard gale, varying betweene South-west and by South, and West and by North, we made our way North-west halfe a point Northerly, nineteene leagues, upon many points foure Watches. At night at eight of the clocke, we sounded and had no ground at one hundred fathoms. *Foggie and thick weather.*

The seventh, faire sun-shining weather, the wind varying betweene West and by North, and West and by South. At foure of the clocke in the morning, we cast about to the Southward, and stood so till one in the after-noone. At noone we found our height to be 44. degrees 26. minutes. At seven of the clocke, we tackt to the Northward. At eight at night, we tackt to the Southward, and sounded, and had nine and fiftie fathoms, white sand.

The eight, in the fore-noone faire weather, but the morning foggie till seven of the clocke. At foure of the clocke in the morning we sounded, and had five & fortie fathoms, fine white sand, and we had runne five leagues South and by West. Then wee stood along one Glasse, and went one league as before. Then we stood one Glasse [III.iii.585.] and sounded, and had sixtie fathoms. Then wee takt and stood backe to the Banke, and had five and twentie fathoms; and tryed for Fish, and it fell calme, and we caught one hundred and eighteene great Coddes, from eight a clocke till one, and after Dinner wee tooke twelve, *Many great Cods taken.*

Many great Scoales of Herrings.

and saw many great Scoales of Herrings. Then wee had a gale of wind at South, and it shifted to the West North-west, and we stood three Glasses and sounded and had sixtie fathomes, and stood two Glasses, and had two and fortie fathoms, red stones and shells. So wee sounded every Glasse and had severall soundings 35. 33. 30. 31. 32. 33. and 34. fathoms.

To sound is to trie the depth by Line and Lead, or Pole, &c.

The ninth, faire calme weather, we lay becalmed all day and caught some Fish, but not much, because we had small store of salt. At three of the clocke in the afternoone, wee had a gale at South-east, and South South-east, and we steered away Westerly, our Compasse was West and by South halfe a point South. At foure of the clocke, we sounded and had but fifteene, seventeene, and nineteene fathoms on a fishing Banke; and we sounded every Glasse. Then we could get no ground in five and twentie fathoms, and had sight of a sayle on head off us. At noone our height was 44. degrees 27. minutes. We stood to the Westward all night, and spake with a French-man, which lay Fishing on the Banke of Sablen, in thirtie fathoms, and we saw two or three more.

The tenth, very mystie and thicke weather, the wind at South-west, a faire gale. We stood to the South-ward, and made our way South-east and by East. At twelve of the clocke we sounded, and had eight and fortie fathoms: againe at two we sounded, and had fiftie fathoms. And at sixe of the clocke we sounded: and had eight and fortie fathoms on the end of the Banke. Againe, at eight of the clocke at night wee sounded, and had no ground in eightie fathomes, and were over the Banke.

Variation 17. *degrees.*

So wee stood along till mid-night. The Compasse varyed 17. degrees to the Westward.

The eleventh, very thicke and mystie weather. At twelve of the clocke at night, we cast about to the Westward, and stood so all day, and made our way West North-west. We sounded at twelve of the clocke, but had no ground; so we stood to the Westward all the fore-part of the night, and sounded but could get no ground

in fiftie or sixtie fathoms till mid-night. Then I sounded and had ground at fifteene fathoms, white sand.

The twelfth, was very foggie, we stood our course all the morning till eleven of the clocke; at which time we had sight of the Land, which is low white sandie ground, right on head off us; and had ten fathoms. Then we tackt to the Southward, and stood off foure Glasses: then we tackt to the Land againe, thinking to have rode under it, and as we came neere it, the fog was so thicke that we could not see; so wee stood off againe. From mid-night to two of the clocke, we came sounding in twelve, thirteene, and foureteene fathoms off the shoare. At foure of the clocke, we had 20. fathoms. At eight of the clocke at night 30. fathoms. At twelve of the clocke 65. fathoms, and but little winde, for it deeped apace, but the neerer the shoare the fairer shoalding.

Land, being low, white and sandie.

The thirteenth, faire sun-shining weather, from eight of the clocke in the fore-noone all day after, but in the morning it was foggie. Then at eight of the clocke we cast about for the shoare, but could not see it; the wind being at South by our true Compasse, wee steered West and by North. At noone we observed, and found our height to bee 43. degrees 25. minutes; so we steered away West and by North all the after-noone. At foure of the clocke in the after-noone, we sounded and had five and thirtie fathoms. And at sixe of the clocke, wee had sight of the Land, and saw two sayles on head off us. The land by the waters side is low Land, and white sandie Bankes rising full of little Hils. Our soundings were 35. 33. 30. 28. 32. 37. 33. & 32. fathoms.

43. degrees 25. minutes.

Sight of Land againe, and of two Ships.

The foureteenth, full of mysts flying and vading, the wind betweene South and South-west, we steered away West North-west, and North-west and by West. Our soundings were 29. 25. 24. 25. 22. 25. 27. 30. 28. 30. 35. 43. 50. 70. 90. 70. 64. 86. 100. fathoms, and no ground.

The fifteenth, very mystie, the winde varying betweene South and South-west, wee steered West and by North,

and West North-west. In the morning we sounded, and had one hundred fathoms, till foure of the clocke in the after-noone. Then we sounded againe, and had seventie five fathoms. Then in two Glasses running, which was not above two English miles, we sounded and had sixtie fathoms, and it shoalded a great pace untill we came to twentie fathoms. Then we made account we were neere the Ilands that lie off the shoare. So we came to an Anchor, the Sea being very smooth and little wind, at nine of the clocke at night. After supper, we tryed for Fish, and I caught fifteene Cods, some the greatest that I have seene, and so we rode all night.

Five Ilands. The sixteenth, in the morning it cleered up, and wee had sight of five Ilands lying North, and North and by West, from us, two leagues. Then wee made ready to set sayle, but the myst came so thicke, that we durst not enter in among them.

Sixe Salvages come aboord them. The seventeenth, was all mystie, so that wee could not get into the Harbour. At ten of the clocke two Boates came off to us, with sixe of the Savages of the Countrey, seeming glad of our comming. We gave them trifles, and they eate and dranke with us; and told us, that there were Gold, Silver, and Copper mynes hard by us; and that the French-men doe Trade with them; which is very likely, for one of them spake some words of French. So wee rode still all day and all night, the weather continuing mystie.

[III.iii.586.] The eighteenth, faire weather, wee went into a very good Harbour, and rode hard by the shoare in foure *A large River.* fathoms water. The River runneth up a great way, but there is but two fathoms hard by us. We went on shoare and cut us a fore Mast, then at noone we came aboord 44. *Degrees* 10. *minutes.* againe, and found the height of the place to bee in 44. degrees 1. minute; and the Sunne to fall at a South South-west Sunne. We mended our sayles, and fell to make our fore-Mast. The Harbour lyeth South and North, a mile in where we rode.

The nineteenth, we had faire sun-shining weather, we

rode still. In the after-noone wee went with our Boate to looke for fresh water, and found some; and found a shoald with many Lobsters on it, and caught one and thirtie. The people comming aboord, shewed us great friendship, but we could not trust them. The twentieth, faire sunne-shining weather, the winde at South-west. In the morning, our Scute went out to catch fresh Fish halfe an houre before day, and returned in two houres, bringing seven and twentie great Coddes, with two hookes and lines. In the after-noone wee went for more Lobsters, and caught fortie, and returned aboord. Then wee espied two French Shallops full of the Countrey people come into the Harbour, but they offered us no wrong, seeing we stood upon our guard. They brought many Beaver skinnes, and other fine Furres, which they would have changed for redde Gownes. For the French trade with them for red Cassockes, Knives, Hatchets, Copper, Kettles, Trevits, Beades, and other trifles.

The trade of the French with the Salvages.

The one and twentieth, all mystie, the wind Easterly, wee rode still and did nothing, but about our Mast. The two and twentieth, faire Sun-shining weather, the winde all Northerly, we rode still all the day. In the after-noone our Scute went to catch more Lobsters, and brought with them nine and fiftie. The night was cleere weather.

The three and twentieth, faire sun-shining weather and very hot. At eleven of the clocke, our fore Mast was finished, and we brought it aboord, and set it into the step, and in the after-noone we rigged it. This night we had some little myst and rayne.

The foure and twentieth, very hot weather, the winde at South out of the sea. The fore-part of the day wee brought to our sayles. In the morning, our Scute went to take Fish, and in two houres they brought with them twentie great Coddes, and a great Holibut, the night was faire also. We kept good watch for feare of being betrayed by the people, and perceived where they layd their Shallops.

The five and twentieth, very faire weather and hot.

In the morning wee manned our Scute with foure Muskets, and sixe men, and tooke one of their Shallops and brought it aboord. Then we manned our Boat & Scute with twelve men and Muskets, and two stone Pieces or Murderers, and drave the Salvages from their Houses, and tooke the spoyle of them, as they would have done of us. Then wee set sayle, and came downe to the Harbours mouth, and rode there all night, because the winde blew right in, and the night grew mystie with much rayne till mid-night. Then it fell calme, and the wind came off the Land at West North-west, and it began to cleere. The Compasse varyed 10. degrees North-west.

They spoyle Houses of the Salvages.

The sixe and twentieth, faire and cleere sunne-shining weather. At five of the clocke in the morning, the winde being off the shoare at North North-west, we set sayle and came to sea, and by noone we counted our ship had gone fourteene leagues South-west. In the after-noone, the winde shifted variably betweene West South-west, and North-west. At noone, I found the height to bee 43. degrees 56. minutes. This Eevening being very faire weather, wee observed the variation of our Compasse at the Sunnes going downe, and found it to bee 10. degrees from the North to the Westward.

Variation 10. degrees toward the North-west.

The seven and twentieth, faire sun-shining weather, the winde shifting betweene the South-west, and West and by North, a stiffe gale, we stood to the Southward all day, and made our way South and by West, seven and twentie leagues. At noone, our height was 42. degrees 30. minuts. At foure of the clocke in the after-noone, wee cast about to the Northward. At eight of the clocke, we tooke in our top-sayles and our fore-bonnet, and went with a short sayle all night.

The eight and twentieth, very thicke and mystie, and a stiffe gale of wind, varying betweene South South-west, and South-west and by West; we made our way North-west and by West, seven and twentie leagues, wee sounded many times and could get no ground. At five of the clocke, we cast about to the Southward, the wind at South-

west and by West. At which time we sounded, and had ground at seventie five fathoms. At eight, wee had sixtie five fathoms. At ten, sixtie. At twelve of the clocke at mid-night, fiftie sixe fathoms, gray sand. The Compasse varyed 6. degrees the North point to the West. *Variation 6. degrees to the West.*

The nine and twentieth, faire weather, we stood to the Southward, and made our way South and by West a point South, eighteene leagues. At noone, we found our height to bee 42. degrees 56. minutes, wee sounded oft, and had these 60. 64. 65. 67. 65. 65. 70. and 75. fathoms. At night, wee tryed the variation of our Compasse by the setting of the Sunne, and found that it went downe 37. degrees to the North-ward of the West, and should have gone downe but 31. degrees. The Compasse varyed 5. ½ degrees. *Variation 5. & a halfe degrees.*

The thirtieth, very hot, all the fore-part of the day calme, the wind at South South-east, wee steered away West South-west and sounded many times, and could find no ground at one hundred and seventie fathomes. We found a great current and many over-falls. Our current had deceived us. For at noone we found our height to be 41. degrees 34. minutes. And the current had heaved us to the Southward fourteene leagues. At eight of the clocke at night, I sounded and had ground in fiftie two fathomes. In the end of the mid-night watch, wee had fiftie three fathomes. This last observation is not to be trusted. [III.iii.587.] *A great current and many over-falls.*

The one and thirtieth, very thicke and mystie all day, untill tenne of the clocke. At night the wind came to the South, and South-west and South. We made our way West North-west nineteene leagues. Wee sounded many times, and had difference of soundings, sometimes little stones, and sometimes grosse gray sand, fiftie six, fiftie foure, fortie eight, fortie seven, fortie foure, fortie six, fiftie fathomes; and at eight of the clocke at night it fell calme, and we had fiftie fathomes. And at ten of the clocke we heard a great Rut, like the Rut of the shoare. Then I sounded and found the former Depths; *A great Rut.*

and mistrusting a current, seeing it so still that the ship made no way, I let the lead lie on the ground, and found a tide set to the South-west, and South-west by West, so fast, that I could hardly vere the Line so fast, and presently came an hurling current, or tyde with over-fals, which cast our ship round; and the Lead was so fast in the ground, that I feared the Lines breaking, and we had no more but that. At mid-night I sounded againe, and we had seventie five fathomes; and the strong streame had left us.

A current to the South-west and South-west by West, with over-fals.

August. The first of August, all the fore-part of the day was mystie, and at noone it cleered up. We found that our height was 41. degrees 45. minutes, and we had gone nineteene leagues. The after-noon was reasonable cleere. We found a rustling tide or current, with many over-fals to continue still, and our water to change colour, and our sea to bee very deepe, for wee found no ground in one hundred fathomes. The night was cleere, and the winde came to the North, and North North-east, we steered West.

The second, very faire weather and hot: from the morning till noone we had a gale of wind, but in the after-noone little wind. At noone I sounded and had one hundred and ten fathomes; and our height was 41. degrees 56. minutes. And wee had runne foure and twentie leagues and an halfe. At the Sun-setting we observed the variation of the Compasse, and found that it was come to his true place. At eight of the clocke the gale increased, so wee ranne sixe leagues that watch, and had a very faire and cleere night.

The third, very hot weather. In the morning, we had sight of the Land, and steered in with it, thinking to goe to the North-ward of it. So we sent our shallop with five men, to sound in by the shore: and they found it deepe five fathomes within a Bow-shot of the shoare; and they went on Land, and found goodly Grapes, and Rose trees, and brought them aboord with them, at five of the clocke in the Eevening. We had seven and twentie

They goe on Land neere Cape Cod.

fathomes within two miles of the shoare; and we found a floud come from the South-east, and an ebbe from the North-west, with a very strong streame, and a great hurling and noyses. At eight of the clocke at night, the wind began to blow a fresh gale, and continued all night but variable. Our sounding that wee had to the Land, was one hundred, eightie, seventie foure, fiftie two, fortie sixe, twentie nine, twentie seven, twentie foure, nineteene, seventeene, sometimes Oze, and sometimes gray sand.

The fourth, was very hot: we stood to the North-west two watches, and one South in for the Land, and came to an Anchor at the Norther end of the Headland, and heard the voyce of men call. Then we sent our Boat on shoare, thinking they had beene some Christians left on the Land: but wee found them to bee Savages, which *Savages.* seemed very glad of our comming. So wee brought one aboord with us, and gave him meate, and he did eate and drinke with us. Our Master gave him three or foure glasse Buttons, and sent him on Land with our shallop againe. And at our Boats comming from the shoare he leapt and danced, and held up his hands, and pointed us to a river on the other side: for we had made signes that we came to fish there. The bodie of this Headland lyeth in 41. degrees 45. minutes. We set sayle againe after dinner, thinking to have got to the Westward of this Headland, but could not; so we beare up to the Southward of it, & made a South-east way; and the Souther point did beare West at eight of the clocke at night. Our soundings about the Easter and Norther part of this Headland, a league from the shoare are these: at the Easterside thirtie, twentie seven, twentie seven, twentie foure, twentie five, twentie. The North-east point 17. degrees 18. minutes, and so deeper. The North-end of this Headland, hard by the shoare thirtie fathomes: and three leagues off North North-west, one hundred fathomes. At the South-east part a league off, fifteene, sixteene, and seventeene fathomes. The people have greene Tabacco,

and pipes, the boles whereof are made of Earth, and the pipes of red Copper. The Land is very sweet.

The fift, all mystie. At eight of the clocke in the morning, wee tact about to the Westward, and stood in till foure of the clocke in the after-noone; at which time it cleered, and wee had sight of the Head-land againe five leagues from us. The Souther point of it did beare West off us: and we sounded many times, and had no ground. And at foure of the clocke we cast about, and at our staying wee had seventie fathomes. Wee steered away [III.iii.588.] South and South by East all night, and could get no ground at seventie and eightie fathomes. For wee feared a great Riffe, that lyeth off the Land, and steered away South and by East.

The sixth, faire weather, but many times mysting. Wee steered away South South-east, till eight of the clocke in the morning; Then it cleered a little, and wee cast about to the Westward. Then we sounded and had thirtie fathomes, grosse sand, and were come to the Riffe. Then wee kept our Lead, and had quicke shoalding, from thirtie, twentie nine, twentie seven, twentie foure, twentie two, twentie and an halfe, twentie, twentie, nineteene, nineteene, nineteene, eighteene, eighteene, seventeene; and so deeping againe as proportionally as it shoalded. For we steered South and South-east till we came to twentie sixe fathomes. Then we steered South-west for so the tyde doth set. By and by it being calme we tryed by our Lead; for you shall have sixteene or seventeene fathomes, and the next cast but seven or six fathomes. And farther to the Westward you shall have foure and five foot water, and see Rockes under you; and you shall see the Land in the top. Upon this Riffe we had an observation, and found that it lyeth in 40. degrees 10. minutes. And this is that Headland which Captaine Bartholomew Gosnold discovered in the yeere 1602. and called Cape Cod; because of the store of Cod-fish that hee found thereabout. So we steered South-west three leagues, and had twentie, and twentie foure fathomes.

This dangerous Riffe is in 41. degrees 10 minutes, and lyeth off East from Cape Cod into the Sea.

Then we steered West two Glasses halfe a league, and came to fifteene fathomes. Then we steered off South-east foure Glasses, but could not get deepe water; for there the tyde of ebbe laid us on; and the streame did hurle so, that it laid us so neere the breach of a shoald, that wee were forced to Anchor. So at seven of the clocke at night, wee were at an Anchor in tenne fathomes: And, I give God most heartie thankes, the least water wee had was seven fathomes and an halfe. We rode still all night, and at a still water I sounded so farre round about our ship as we could see a light; and had no lesse then eight, nine, ten, and eleven fathomes: The myst continued being very thicke.

The seventh, faire weather and hot, but mystie. Wee rode still hoping it would cleere, but on the floud it fell calme and thicke. So we rode still all day and all night. The floud commeth from the South-west, and riseth not above one fathome and an halfe in nepe streames. Toward night it cleered, and I went with our shallop and sounded, and found no lesse water then eight fathomes to the South-east off us: but we saw to the North-west off us great Breaches.

The eight, faire and cleere weather. In the morning, by sixe of the clocke at slake water wee weighed; the wind at North-east, and set our fore-sayle and mayne top-sayle, and got a mile over the Flats. Then the tyde of ebbe came, so we anchored againe till the floud came. Then wee set sayle againe, and by the great mercie of God, wee got cleere off them by one of the clocke this after-noone. And wee had sight of the Land from the West North-west, to the North North-west. So we steered away South South-east all night; and had ground untill the middle of the third watch. Then we had fortie five fathomes, white sand, and little stones. So all our soundings are twentie, twentie, twentie two, twentie seven, thirtie two, fortie three, fortie three, fortie five. Then no ground in seventie fathomes. *The Flats.*

The ninth, very faire and hot weather, the wind a very

stiffe gale. In the morning, at foure of the clocke, our shallop came running up against our sterne, and split in all her stemme; So we were faine to cut her away. Then wee tooke in our mayne sayle, and lay atrie under our fore-sayle untill twelve of the clocke at mid-day. Then the wind ceased to a faire gale, so wee stood away South-west. Then we lay close by, on many courses a South by West way fifteene leagues; and three watches South-east by East, ten leagues. At eight of the clocke at night, wee tooke in our top-sayles, and went with a low sayle; because we were in an unknowne sea. At noone we observed and found our heigth to be 38. degrees 39. minutes.

The tenth, in the morning some raine and cloudie weather: the winde at South-west, wee made our way South-east by East, ten leagues. At noone, wee observed and found our heigth to bee 38. degrees 39. minutes. Then wee tackt about to the Westward, the wind being at South and by East, little wind. At foure of the clocke it fell calme, and we had two Dolphines about our ship, and many small fishes. At eight of the clocke at night, wee had a small lingring gale. All night we had a great Sea out of the South-west, and another great Sea out of the North-east.

The eleventh, all the fore-part of the day faire weather, and very hot. Wee stood to the West South-west till noone. Then the wind shorted, and we could lye but South-west and by South. At noone, wee found our heigth to bee 39. degrees 11. minutes. And that the current had laid us to the Northward thirtie two minutes contrary to our expectation. At foure of the clocke in the after-noone there came a myst, which endured two houres. But wee had it faire and cleere all night after. The Compasse varied the North point to the West one whole point.

A current setting to the North.

Variation one point.

The twelfth, faire weather, the wind variable betweene the South-west and by South, and the North little wind. In the morning we killed an extraordinary fish, and stood

to the Westward all day and all night. At noone we found our heigth to be 38. degrees 13. minutes. And the observation the day before was not good. This noone, we found the Compasse to vary from the North to the West ten degrees. *Variation 10. degrees.*

The thirteenth, faire weather and hot: the wind at North-east. Wee steered away West and by our Compasse two and twentie leagues. At noone wee found our height to bee 37. degrees 45. minutes, and that our way from noone to noone was West South-west, halfe a point Southerly. The Compasse was 7. degrees and a halfe variation, from the North point to the West. [III.iii.589.]

The fourteenth, faire weather, but cloudie, and a stiffe gale of wind, variable betweene North-east and South-west, wee steered away West by South, a point South all day untill nine of the clocke at night; then it began to Thunder and Lighten, whereupon we tooke in all our sayles, and layd it a hull, and hulled away North till mid-night, a league and a halfe.

The fifteenth, very faire and hot weather, the winde at North by East. At foure of the clocke in the morning we set sayle, and stood on our course to the Westward. At noone wee found our height to bee 37. degrees 25. minutes. The after-noone proved little wind. At eight of the clocke at night, the winde came to the North, and wee steered West by North, and West North-west, and made our way West. The Compasse varyed 7. degrees from the North to the West. *37. Degrees 25. minutes.*

The sixteenth, faire shining weather, and very hot, the wind variable betweene the North and the West, wee steered away West by North. At noone wee found our height to bee 37. degrees 6. minutes. This morning we sounded and had ground in ninetie fathomes, and in sixe Glasses running it shoalded to fiftie fathoms, and so to eight and twentie fathoms, at foure of the clocke in the after-noone. Then wee came to an Anchor, and rode till eight of the clocke at night, the wind being at South and Moone-light, we resolved to goe to the Northward to *37. Degrees 6. minutes.*

finde deeper water. So we weighed and stood to the Northward, and found the water to shoald and deepe, from eight and twentie to twentie fathomes.

The seventeenth, faire and cleere Sun-shining weather, the winde at South by West, wee steered to the Northward till foure of the clocke in the morning, then wee came to eighteene fathomes. So we Anchored untill the Sunne arose to looke abroad for Land, for wee judged there could not but be Land neere us, but we could see none. Then we weighed and stood to the Westward till noone. And at eleven of the clocke wee had sight of a low Land, with a white sandie shoare. By twelve of the clocke we were come into five fathomes, and Anchored; and the Land was foure leagues from us, and wee had sight of it from the West, to the North-west by North. Our height was 37. degrees 26. minutes. Then the wind blew so stiffe a gale, and such a Sea went, that we could not weigh; so we rode there all night an hard rode.

A low Land with a white sandie shoare.

37. degrees 26. minutes.

The eighteenth, in the morning faire weather, and little winde at North North-east and North-east. At foure of the clocke in the morning, we weighed and stood into the shoare to see the deeping or shoalding of it, and finding it too deepe, we stood in to get a rode; for wee saw as it were three Ilands. So wee turned to windward to get into a Bay, as it shewed to us to the Westward of an Iland. For the three Ilands did beare North off us. But toward noone the wind blew Northerly with gusts of wind and rayne. So we stood off into the Sea againe all night; and running off we found a Channell, wherein we had no lesse then eight, nine, ten, eleven, and twelve fathomes water. For in comming over the Barre, wee had five, and foure fathomes and a halfe, and it lyeth five leagues from the shoare, and it is the Barre of Virginia. At the North end of it, it is ten leagues broad, and South and North, but deepe water from ninetie fathoms to five, and foure and a halfe. The Land lyeth South and North. This is the entrance into the Kings River in Virginia, where our English-men are. The North side of it lyeth

Barre of Virginia.

Kings River.

in 37. degrees 26. minutes, you shall know when you come to shoald water or sounding; for the water will looke Greene or thicke, you shall have ninetie and eightie fathomes, and shoalding a pace till you come to ten, eleven, nine, eight, seven, ten, and nine fathomes, and so to five, and foure fathomes and a halfe.

The nineteenth, faire weather, but an hard gale of winde at the North-east, wee stood off till noone, and made our way South-east by East, two and twentie leagues. At noone wee cast about to the Westward, and stood till sixe of the clocke in the after-noone, and went five leagues and a halfe North-west by North. Then wee cast about againe to the Eastward, and stood that way till foure the next morning. *Note.*

The twentieth, faire and cleere weather, the winde variable betweene East North-east, and North-east. At foure of the clocke in the morning, wee cast about to the Westward, and stood till noone; at which time I sounded; and had two and thirtie fathomes. Then we takt to the Eastward againe; wee found our height to bee 37. degrees 22. minutes. We stood to the Eastward all night, and had very much wind. At eight of the clocke at night we tooke off our Bonnets, and stood with small sayle. *37. degrees 22. minutes.*

The one and twentieth, was a sore storme of winde and rayne all day and all night, wherefore wee stood to the Eastward with a small sayle till one of the clocke in the after-noone. Then a great Sea brake into our fore-corse and split it; so we were forced to take it from the yard and mend it; wee lay a trie with our mayne-corse all night. This night our Cat ranne crying from one side of the ship to the other, looking over-boord, which made us to wonder; but we saw nothing.

The two and twentieth, stormy weather, with gusts of rayne and wind. In the morning at eight of the clocke we set our fore-corse, and stood to the Eastward under our fore-sayle, mayne-sayle and misen, and from noone to noone, we made our way East South-east, fourteene leagues. The night reasonable drie but cloudie, the winde [III.iii.590.]

Variation 4. degrees Westward.

variable all day and night. Our Compasse was varyed 4. degrees Westward.

The three and twentieth, very faire weather, but some Thunder in the morning, the winde variable betweene East by North. At noone wee tackt about to the Northward, the winde at East by North. The after-noone very faire, the wind variable, and continued so all night. Our way we made East South-east, till noone the next day.

The foure and twentieth, faire and hot weather, with the wind variable betweene the North and the East. The after-noone variable winde. But at foure of the clocke, the wind came to the East and South-east; so wee steered away North by West, and in three Watches wee went thirteene leagues. At noone our height was 35. degrees 41. minutes, being farre off at Sea from the Land.

The five and twentieth, faire weather and very hot. All the morning was very calme untill eleven of the clocke; the wind came to South-east, and South South-east; so wee steered away North-west by North, two Watches and a halfe, and one Watch North-west by West, and went eighteene leagues. At noone I found our height to bee 36. degrees 20. minutes, being without sight of Land.

The sixe and twentieth, faire and hot weather, the winde variable upon all the points of the Compasse. From two of the clocke in the morning untill noone, wee made our way North by East, seven leagues. In the after-noone the wind came to the North-east, and vering to the East South-east, wee steered away North-west fifteene leagues, from noone till ten of the clocke at night. At eight of the clocke at night wee sounded, and had eighteene fathomes, and were come to the Banke of Virginia, and could not see the Land. Wee kept sounding, and steered away North, and came to eight fathomes, and Anchored there; for the wind was at East South-east, so that wee could not get off. For the Coast lyeth along South South-west, and North North-east. At noone our height was 37. degrees 15. minutes. And wee found that we were

The Banke of Virginia. The Coast lyeth South South-west, and North North-west. Latitude 37. degrees 15. minutes.

returned to the same place, from whence we were put off at our first seeing Land.

The seven and twentieth, faire weather and very hot, the winde at East South-east. In the morning as soone as the Sunne was up, wee looked out and had sight of the Land. Then wee weighed, and stood in North-west two Glasses, and found the Land to bee the place, from whence wee put off first. So wee kept our loofe, and steered along the Land, and had the Banke lye all along the shoare; and wee had in two leagues off the shoare, five, sixe, seven, eight, nine, and ten fathomes. The Coast lyeth South South-west, and is a white Sandie shoare, and sheweth full of Bayes and Points. The streame setteth West South-west, and East North-east. At sixe of the clocke at night, wee were thwart of an Harbour or River, but we saw a Barre lye before it; and all within the Land to the North-ward, the water ranne with many Ilands in it. At sixe of the clocke we Anchored, and sent our Boate to sound to the shoare-ward, and found no lesse then foure and a halfe, five, sixe, and seven fathomes.

This agreeth with Robert Tyndall.

The eight and twentieth, faire and hot weather, the winde at South South-west. In the morning at sixe of the clocke wee weighed, and steered away North twelve leagues till noone, and came to the Point of the Land; and being hard by the Land in five fathomes, on a sudden wee came into three fathomes; then we beare up and had but ten foote water, and joyned to the Point. Then as soone as wee were over, wee had five, sixe, seven, eight, nine, ten, twelve, and thirteene fathomes. Then wee found the Land to trend away North-west, with a great Bay and Rivers. But the Bay wee found shoald; and in the offing wee had ten fathomes, and had sight of Breaches and drie Sand. Then wee were forced to stand backe againe; so we stood backe South-east by South, three leagues. And at seven of the clocke wee Anchored in eight fathomes water; and found a Tide set to the North-west, and North North-west, and it riseth one fathome, and floweth South South-east. And hee that will

The Point of the Land.

A great Bay and Rivers.

A small Shallop needfull.

throughly Discover this great Bay, must have a small Pinnasse, that must draw but foure or five foote water, to sound before him. At five in the morning wee weighed, and steered away to the Eastward on many courses, for the Norther Land is full of shoalds. Wee were among them, and once wee strooke, and wee went away; and steered away to the South-east. So wee had two, three, foure, five, sixe, and seven fathomes, and so deeper and deeper.

The Norther Land is full of shoalds.

The nine and twentieth, faire weather, with some Thunder and showers, the winde shifting betweene the South South-west, and the North North-west. In the morning wee weighed at the breake of day, and stood toward the Norther Land, which we found to bee all Ilands to our sight, and great stormes from them, and are shoald three leagues off. For we comming by them, had but seven, sixe, five, foure, three, and two fathoms and a halfe, and strooke ground with our Rudder, we steered off South-west, one Glasse, and had five fathoms. Then wee steered South-east three Glasses, then wee found seven fathomes, and steered North-east by East, foure leagues, and came to twelve and thirteene fathoms. At one of the clocke, I went to the top-mast head, and set the Land, and the bodie of the Ilands did beare North-west by North. And at foure of the clocke, wee had gone foure leagues East South-east, and North-east by East, and found but seven fathoms, and it was calme, so we Anchored. Then I went againe to the top-mast head, to see how farre I could see Land about us, and could see no more but the Ilands. And the Souther point of them did beare North-west by West, eight leagues off. So wee rode till mid-night. Then the winde came to the North North-west, so wee waighed and set sayle.

Many Ilands.

They strike.

[III.iii.591.]

The thirtieth, in the morning betweene twelve and one, we weighed, and stood to the Eastward, the winde at North North-west, wee steered away and made our way East South-east. From our weighing till noone, eleven leagues. Our soundings were eight, nine, ten, eleven,

twelve, and thirteene fathomes till day. Then we came to eighteene, nineteene, twentie, and to sixe and twentie fathoms by noone. Then I observed the Sunne, and found the height to bee 39. degrees 5. minutes, and saw no Land. *Latitude 39. degrees 5. minutes.* In the after-noone, the winde came to North by West; So wee lay close by with our fore-sayle: and our mayne-sayle, and it was little winde untill twelve of the clocke at mid-night, then wee had a gale a little while. Then I sounded, and all the night our soundings were thirtie, and sixe and thirtie fathomes, and wee went little.

The one and thirtieth, faire weather and little wind. At sixe of the clocke in the morning we cast about to the Northward, the wind being at the North-east, little wind. At noone it fell calme, and I found the height to bee 38. degrees 39. minutes. *Latitude 38. degrees 39. minutes.* And the streames had deceived us, and our sounding was eight and thirtie fathoms. In the afternoone I sounded againe, and had but thirtie fathoms. *Deceitfull streames.* So we found that we were heaved too and fro with the streames of the Tide, both by our observations and our depths. From noone till foure of the clocke in the after-noone, it was calme. At sixe of the clocke wee had a little gale Southerly, and it continued all night, sometimes calme, and sometimes a gale; wee went eight leagues from noone to noone, North by East.

The first of September, faire weather, the wind variable betweene East and South, we steered away North North-west. *September.* At noone we found our height to bee 39. degrees 3. minutes. *Latitude 39. degrees 3. minutes.* Wee had soundings thirtie, twentie seven, twentie foure, and twentie two fathomes, as wee went to the Northward. At sixe of the clocke wee had one and twentie fathomes. And all the third watch till twelve of the clocke at mid-night, we had soundings one and twentie, two and twentie, eighteene, two and twentie, one and twentie, eighteene, and two and twentie fathoms, and went sixe leagues neere hand North North-west.

The second, in the morning close weather, the winde at South in the morning; from twelve untill two of the clocke we steered North North-west, and had sounding one

and twentie fathoms, and in running one Glasse we had but sixteene fathoms, then seventeene, and so shoalder and shoalder untill it came to twelve fathoms. We saw a great Fire, but could not see the Land, then we came to ten fathoms, whereupon we brought our tackes aboord, and stood to the Eastward East South-east, foure Glasses. Then the Sunne arose, and we steered away North againe, and saw the Land from the West by North, to the North-west by North, all like broken Ilands, and our soundings were eleven and ten fathoms. Then wee looft in for the shoare, and faire by the shoare, we had seven fathoms. The course along the Land we found to be North-east by North. From the Land which we had first sight of, untill we came to a great Lake of water, as wee could judge it to bee, being drowned Land, which made it to rise like Ilands, which was in length ten leagues. The mouth of that Lake hath many shoalds, and the Sea breaketh on them as it is cast out of the mouth of it. And from that Lake or Bay, the Land lyeth North by East, and wee had a great streame out of the Bay; and from thence our sounding was ten fathoms, two leagues from the Land. At five of the clocke we Anchored, being little winde, and rode in eight fathoms water, the night was faire. This night I found the Land to hall the Compasse 8. degrees. For to the Northward off us we saw high Hils. For the day before we found not above 2. degrees of Variation. This is a very good Land to fall with, and a pleasant Land to see.

The Land like broken Ilands.

The course along the Land from the mouth of one River, to the mouth of the Norther Bay or Lake.

Variation 8. degrees neere the Hills.

2. degrees variation off at Sea.

The third, the morning mystie untill ten of the clocke, then it cleered, and the wind came to the South South-east, so wee weighed and stood to the Northward. The Land is very pleasant and high, and bold to fall withall. At three of the clocke in the after-noone, wee came to three great Rivers. So we stood along to the Northermost, thinking to have gone into it, but we found it to have a very shoald barre before it, for we had but ten foot water. Then wee cast about to the Southward, and found two fathoms, three fathoms, and three and a

High and a bold shoare.

Three great Rivers.

The Northermost barred.

quarter, till we came to the Souther side of them, then we had five and sixe fathoms, and Anchored. So wee sent in our Boate to sound, and they found no lesse water then foure, five, sixe, and seven fathoms, and returned in an houre and a halfe. So wee weighed and went in, and rode in five fathoms, Ozie ground, and saw many Salmons, and Mullets, and Rayes very great. The height is 40. degrees 30. minutes.

An excellent River.

Latitude 40. *degrees* 30. *minutes.*

The fourth, in the morning as soone as the day was light, wee saw that it was good riding farther up. So we sent our Boate to sound, and found that it was a very good Harbour; and foure and five fathoms, two Cables length from the shoare. Then we weighed and went in with our ship. Then our Boate went on Land with our Net to Fish, and caught ten great Mullets, of a foot and a halfe long a peece, and a Ray as great as foure men could hale into the ship. So wee trimmed our Boate and rode still all day. At night the wind blew hard at the North-west, and our Anchor came home, and wee drove on shoare, but tooke no hurt, thanked bee God, for the ground is soft sand and Oze. This day the people of the Countrey came aboord of us, seeming very glad of our comming, and brought greene Tabacco, and gave us of it for Knives and Beads. They goe in Deere skins loose, well dressed. They have yellow Copper. They desire Cloathes, and are very civill. They have great store of Maiz or Indian Wheate, whereof they make good Bread. The Country is full of great and tall Oakes.

[III.iii.592.]

A very good Harbour.

The people of the Countrey come aboord, they are very civill.

Yellow Copper.

Tall Oakes.

The fifth, in the morning as soone as the day was light, the wind ceased and the Flood came. So we heaved off our ship againe into five fathoms water, and sent our Boate to sound the Bay, and we found that there was three fathoms hard by the Souther shoare. Our men went on Land there, and saw great store of Men, Women and Children, who gave them Tabacco at their comming on Land. So they went up into the Woods, and saw great store of very goodly Oakes, and some Currants. For one of them came aboord and brought some dryed, and

The great Bay in 40. *degrees and* 30. *minutes.*

Dryed Currants.

gave me some, which were sweet and good. This day many of the people came aboord, some in Mantles of Feathers, and some in Skinnes of divers sorts of good Furres. Some women also came to us with Hempe. They had red Copper Tabacco pipes, and other things of Copper they did weare about their neckes. At night they went on Land againe, so wee rode very quiet, but durst not trust them.

Mantles of Feathers, Furs. Hempe. Red Copper.

The sixth, in the morning was faire weather, and our Master sent John Colman, with foure other men in our Boate over to the North-side, to sound the other River, being foure leagues from us. They found by the way shoald water two fathoms; but at the North of the River eighteen, and twentie fathoms, and very good riding for Ships; and a narrow River to the Westward betweene two Ilands. The Lands they told us were as pleasant with Grasse and Flowers, and goodly Trees, as ever they had seene, and very sweet smells came from them. So they went in two leagues and saw an open Sea, and returned; and as they came backe, they were set upon by two Canoes, the one having twelve, the other fourteene men. The night came on, and it began to rayne, so that their Match went out; and they had one man slaine in the fight, which was an English-man, named John Colman, with an Arrow shot into his throat, and two more hurt. It grew so darke that they could not find the ship that night, but labored too and fro on their Oares. They had so great a streame, that their grapnell would not hold them.

Another River foure leagues to the Northward.

A narrow River to the Westward.

Colman slaine, and two more hurt.

The seventh, was faire, and by ten of the clocke they returned aboord the ship, and brought our dead man with them, whom we carryed on Land and buryed, and named the point after his name, Colmans Point. Then we hoysed in our Boate, and raised her side with waste boords for defence of our men. So we rode still all night, having good regard to our Watch.

Colmans Point.

The eight, was very faire weather, wee rode still very quietly. The people came aboord us, and brought Tabacco and Indian Wheate, to exchange for Knives and

Beades, and offered us no violence. So we fitting up our Boate did marke them, to see if they would make any shew of the Death of our man; which they did not.

The ninth, faire weather. In the morning, two great Canoes came aboord full of men; the one with their Bowes and Arrowes, and the other in shew of buying of Knives, to betray us; but we perceived their intent. Wee tooke two of them to have kept them, and put red Coates on them, and would not suffer the other to come neere us. So they went on Land and two other came aboord in a Canoe: we tooke the one and let the other goe; but hee which wee had taken, got up and leapt over-boord. Then we weighed and went off into the channell of the River, and Anchored there all night. *Treacherous Savages.*

The tenth, faire weather, we rode still till twelve of the clocke. Then we weighed and went over, and found it shoald all the middle of the River, for wee could finde but two fathoms and a halfe, and three fathomes for the space of a league; then wee came to three fathomes, and foure fathomes, and so to seven fathomes, and Anchored, and rode all night in soft Ozie ground. The banke is Sand.

The eleventh, was faire and very hot weather. At one of the clocke in the after-noone, wee weighed and went into the River, the wind at South South-west, little winde. Our soundings were seven, sixe, five, sixe, seven, eight, nine, ten, twelve, thirteene, and fourteene fathomes. Then it shoalded againe, and came to five fathomes. Then wee Anchored, and saw that it was a very good Harbour for all windes, and rode all night. The people of the Countrey came aboord of us, making shew of love, and gave us Tabacco and Indian Wheat, and departed for that night; but we durst not trust them. *Good Harbour.*

The twelfth, very faire and hot. In the after-noone at two of the clocke wee weighed, the winde being variable, betweene the North and the North-west. So we turned into the River two leagues and Anchored. This morning at our first rode in the River, there came eight and twentie Canoes full of men, women and children to betray us: [III.iii.593.] 28. *Canoes full of men.*

but we saw their intent, and suffered none of them to come aboord of us. At twelve of the clocke they departed. *Oysters and Beanes.* They brought with them Oysters and Beanes, whereof wee bought some. They have great Tabacco pipes of yellow *Copper Pipes.* Copper, and Pots of Earth to dresse their meate in. It floweth South-east by South within.

The thirteenth, faire weather, the wind Northerly. At seven of the clocke in the morning, as the floud came we weighed, and turned foure miles into the River. The tide being done wee anchored. Then there came foure Canoes aboord: but we suffered none of them to come into our ship. They brought great store of very good Oysters aboord, which we bought for trifles. In the night I set *Variation 13. degrees.* the variation of the Compasse, and found it to be 13. degrees. In the after-noone we weighed, and turned in with the floud, two leagues and a halfe further, and anchored all night, and had five fathoms soft Ozie ground, and had an high point of Land, which shewed out to us, bearing North by East five leagues off us.

The fourteenth, in the morning being very faire weather, the wind South-east, we sayled up the River twelve leagues, and had five fathoms, and five fathoms and a quarter lesse; and came to a Streight betweene two Points, and had eight, nine, and ten fathoms: and it trended North-east by North, one league: and wee had twelve, *The River a mile broad.* thirteene and fourteene fathomes. The River is a mile broad: there is very high Land on both sides. Then wee went up North-west, a league and an halfe deepe water. Then North-east by North five miles; then North-west by North two leagues, and anchored. The Land grew *Very high and mountainous Land.* very high and Mountainous. The River is full of fish.

The fifteenth, in the morning was misty untill the Sunne arose: then it cleered. So wee weighed with the wind at South, and ran up into the River twentie leagues, passing by high Mountaines. Wee had a very good depth, as sixe, seven, eight, nine, ten, twelve, and thirteene fathoms, and great store of Salmons in the River. This morning our two Savages got out of a Port and swam

away. After we were under sayle, they called to us in scorne. At night we came to other Mountaines, which lie from the Rivers side. There wee found very loving people, and very old men: where wee were well used. Our Boat went to fish, and caught great store of very good fish. *Very loving people.*

The sixteenth, faire and very hot weather. In the morning our Boat went againe to fishing, but could catch but few, by reason their Canoes had beene there all night. This morning the people came aboord, and brought us eares of Indian Corne, and Pompions, and Tabacco: which wee bought for trifles. Wee rode still all day, and filled fresh water; at night wee weighed and went two leagues higher, and had shoald water: so wee anchored till day. *Maiz, Pompions and Tabacco.*

The seventeenth, faire Sun-shining weather, and very hot. In the morning as soone as the Sun was up, we set sayle, and ran up sixe leagues higher, and found shoalds in the middle of the channell, and small Ilands, but seven fathoms water on both sides. Toward night we borrowed so neere the shoare, that we grounded: so we layed out our small anchor, and heaved off againe. Then we borrowed on the banke in the channell, and came aground againe; while the floud ran we heaved off againe, and anchored all night. *Shoalds and small Ilands.*

The eighteenth, in the morning was faire weather, and we rode still. In the after-noone our Masters Mate went on land with an old Savage, a Governour of the Countrey; who carried him to his house, and made him good cheere. The nineteenth, was faire and hot weather: at the floud being neere eleven of the clocke, wee weighed, and ran higher up two leagues above the Shoalds, and had no lesse water then five fathoms: wee anchored, and rode in eight fathomes. The people of the Countrie came flocking aboord, and brought us Grapes, and Pompions, which wee bought for trifles. And many brought us Bevers skinnes, and Otters skinnes, which wee bought for Beades, Knives, and Hatchets. So we rode there all night. *Grapes and Pompions: Beavers and Otters skins.*

The twentieth, in the morning was faire weather. Our

Masters Mate with foure men more went up with our Boat to sound the River, and found two leagues above us but two fathomes water, and the channell very narrow; and above that place seven or eight fathomes. Toward night they returned: and we rode still all night. The one and twentieth, was faire weather, and the wind all Southerly: we determined yet once more to goe farther up into the River, to trie what depth and breadth it did beare; but much people resorted aboord, so wee went not this day. Our Carpenter went on land, and made a Foreyard. And our Master and his Mate determined to trie some of the chiefe men of the Countrey, whether they had any treacherie in them. So they tooke them downe into the Cabbin, and gave them so much Wine and Aqua vitæ, that they were all merrie: and one of them had his wife with him, which sate so modestly, as any of our Countrey women would doe in a strange place. In the end one of them was drunke, which had beene aboord of our ship all the time that we had beene there: and that was strange to them; for they could not tell how to take it. The Canoes and folke went all on shoare: but some of them came againe, and brought stropes of Beades: some had sixe, seven, eight, nine, ten; and gave him. So he slept all night quietly.

The two and twentieth, was faire weather: in the morn-
[III.iii.594.] ing our Masters Mate and foure more of the companie went up with our Boat to sound the River higher up. The people of the Countrey came not aboord till noone: but when they came, and saw the Savages well, they were glad. So at three of the clocke in the after-noone they came aboord, and brought Tabacco, and more Beades,
Oration. and gave them to our Master, and made an Oration, and shewed him all the Countrey round about. Then they sent one of their companie on land, who presently returned, and brought a great Platter full of Venison, dressed by themselves; and they caused him to eate with them: then they made him reverence, and departed all save the old man that lay aboord. This night at ten of the clocke, our

Boat returned in a showre of raine from sounding of the River; and found it to bee at an end for shipping to goe in. For they had beene up eight or nine leagues, and found but seven foot water, and unconstant soundings. *End of the Rivers Navigablenesse.*

The three and twentieth, faire weather. At twelve of the clocke wee weighed, and went downe two leagues to a shoald that had two channels, one on the one side, and another on the other, and had little wind, whereby the tide layed us upon it. So, there wee sate on ground the space of an houre till the floud came. Then we had a little gale of wind at the West. So wee got our ship into deepe water, and rode all night very well. *They returne downe the River.*

The foure and twentieth was faire weather: the winde at the North-west, wee weighed, and went downe the River seven or eight leagues; and at halfe ebbe wee came on ground on a banke of Oze in the middle of the River, and sate there till the floud. Then wee went on Land, and gathered good store of Chest-nuts. At ten of the clocke wee came off into deepe water, and anchored. *Store of Chestnuts.*

The five and twentieth was faire weather, and the wind at South a stiffe gale. We rode still, and went on Land to walke on the West side of the River, and found good ground for Corne, and other Garden herbs, with great store of goodly Oakes, and Wal-nut trees, and Chest-nut trees, Ewe trees, and trees of sweet wood in great abundance, and great store of Slate for houses, and other good stones. *Okes, Wal-nut trees, Chestnut trees, Ewe trees, Cedar trees, &c.*

The sixe and twentieth was faire weather, and the wind at South a stiffe gale, wee rode still. In the morning our Carpenter went on Land with our Masters Mate, and foure more of our companie to cut wood. This morning, two Canoes came up the River from the place where we first found loving people, and in one of them was the old man that had lyen aboord of us at the other place. He brought another old man with him, which brought more stropes of Beades, and gave them to our Master, and shewed him all the Countrey there about, as though it were at his command. So he made the two old men dine

with him, and the old mans wife: for they brought two old women, and two young maidens of the age of sixteene or seventeene yeeres with them, who behaved themselves very modestly. Our Master gave one of the old men a Knife, and they gave him and us Tabacco. And at one of the clocke they departed downe the River, making signes that wee should come downe to them; for wee were within two leagues of the place where they dwelt.

The seven and twentieth, in the morning was faire weather, but much wind at the North, we weighed and set our fore top-sayle, and our ship would not flat, but ran on the Ozie banke at halfe ebbe. Wee layed out anchor to heave her off, but could not. So wee sate from halfe ebbe to halfe floud: then wee set our fore-sayle and mayne top-sayle, and got downe sixe leagues. The old man came aboord, and would have had us anchor, and goe on Land to eate with him: but the wind being faire, we would not yeeld to his request; So hee left us, being very sorrowfull for our departure. At five of the clocke in the after-noone, the wind came to the South South-west. So wee made a boord or two, and anchored in fourteene fathomes water. Then our Boat went on shoare to fish right against the ship. Our Masters Mate and Boat-swaine, and three more of the companie went on land to fish, but could not finde a good place. They tooke foure or five and twentie Mullets, Breames, Bases, and Barbils; and returned in an houre. We rode still all night.

The eight and twentieth, being faire weather, as soone as the day was light, wee weighed at halfe ebbe, and turned downe two leagues belowe water; for, the streame doth runne the last quarter ebbe: then we anchored till high water. At three of the clocke in the after-noone we weighed, and turned downe three leagues, untill it was darke: then wee anchored.

The nine and twentieth was drie close weather: the wind at South, and South and by West, we weighed early in the morning, and turned downe three leagues by a lowe water, and anchored at the lower end of the long Reach;

for it is sixe leagues long. Then there came certaine Indians in a Canoe to us, but would not come aboord. After dinner there came the Canoe with other men, whereof three came aboord us. They brought Indian Wheat, which wee bought for trifles. At three of the clocke in the after-noone wee weighed, as soone as the ebbe came, and turned downe to the edge of the Mountaines, or the Northermost of the Mountaines, and anchored: because the high Land hath many Points, and a narrow channell, and hath many eddie winds. So we rode quietly all night in seven fathoms water. *Mountaines.*

The thirtieth was faire weather, and the wind at South-east a stiffe gale betweene the Mountaynes. We rode still the after-noone. The people of the Countrey came aboord us, and brought some small skinnes with them, which we bought for Knives and Trifles. This a very pleasant place to build a Towne on. The Road is very neere, and very good for all winds, save an East North-east wind. The Mountaynes looke as if some Metall or Minerall were in them. For the Trees that grow on them were all blasted, and some of them barren with few or no Trees on them. The people brought a stone aboord like to Emery (a stone used by Glasiers to cut Glasse) it would cut Iron or Steele: Yet being bruised small, and water put to it, it made a colour like blacke Lead glistering; It is also good for Painters Colours. At three of the clocke they departed, and we rode still all night. [III.iii.595.] *Small skins.* *A pleasant place to build a Towne on.* *Likelihood of Minerals.*

The first of October, faire weather, the wind variable betweene the West and the North. In the morning we weighed at seven of the clocke with the ebbe, and got downe below the Mountaynes, which was seven leagues. Then it fell calme and the floud was come, and wee anchored at twelve of the clocke. The people of the Mountaynes came aboord us, wondring at our ship and weapons. We bought some small skinnes of them for Trifles. This after-noone, one Canoe kept hanging under our sterne with one man in it, which we could not keepe from thence, who got up by our Rudder to the Cabin *October.*

A.D. 1609.

window, and stole out my Pillow, and two Shirts, and two Bandeleeres. Our Masters Mate shot at him, and strooke him on the brest, and killed him. Whereupon all the rest fled away, some in their Canoes, and so leapt out of them into the water. We manned our Boat, and got our things againe. Then one of them that swamme got hold of our Boat, thinking to overthrow it. But our Cooke tooke a Sword, and cut off one of his hands, and he was drowned. By this time the ebbe was come, and we weighed and got downe two leagues, by that time it was darke. So we anchored in foure fathomes water, and rode well.

The second, faire weather. At breake of day wee weighed, the wind being at North-west, and got downe seven leagues; then the floud was come strong, so we anchored. Then came one of the Savages that swamme away from us at our going up the River with many other, thinking to betray us. But wee perceived their intent, and suffered none of them to enter our ship. Whereupon two Canoes full of men, with their Bowes and Arrowes shot at us after our sterne: in recompence whereof we discharged sixe Muskets, and killed two or three of them. Then above an hundred of them came to a point of Land to shoot at us. There I shot a Falcon at them, and killed two of them: whereupon the rest fled into the Woods. Yet they manned off another Canoe with nine or ten men, which came to meet us. So I shot at it also a Falcon, and shot it through, and killed one of them. Then our men with their Muskets, killed three or foure more of them. So they went their way, within a while after, wee got downe two leagues beyond that place, and anchored in a Bay, cleere from all danger of them on the other side of the River, where we saw a very good piece of ground: and hard by it there was a Cliffe, that looked of the colour of a white greene, as though it were either Copper, or Silver Myne: and I thinke it to be one of them, by the Trees that grow upon it. For they be all burned, and the other places are greene as grasse, it is on that side of the River that is called Manna-hata. There we saw no people

Treacherie of these Savages,

A skirmish and slaughter of the Savages.

A Myne of Copper or Silver.

The Countrey of Manna-hata.

to trouble us: and rode quietly all night, but had much wind and raine.

The third, was very stormie; the wind at East North-east. In the morning, in a gust of wind and raine our Anchor came home, and we drove on ground, but it was Ozie. Then as we were about to have out an Anchor, the wind came to the North North-west, and drove us off againe. Then we shot an Anchor, and let it fall in foure fathomes water, and weighed the other. Wee had much wind and raine, with thicke weather: so we roade still all night.

The fourth, was faire weather, and the wind at North North-west, wee weighed and came out of the River, into which we had runne so farre. Within a while after, wee came out also of The great mouth of the great River, that runneth up to the North-west, borrowing upon the Norther side of the same, thinking to have deepe water: for wee had sounded a great way with our Boat at our first going in, and found seven, six, and five fathomes. So we came out that way, but we were deceived, for we had but eight foot & an halfe water: and so to three, five, three, and two fathomes and an halfe. And then three, foure, five, sixe, seven, eight, nine and ten fathomes. And by twelve of the clocke we were cleere of all the Inlet. Then we tooke in our Boat, and set our mayne-sayle and sprit-sayle, and our top-sayles, and steered away East South-east, and South-east by East off into the mayne sea: and the Land on the Souther-side of the Bay or Inlet, did beare at noone West and by South foure leagues from us.

The great mouth of the great River.

They leave the Coast of Virginia.

The fift, was faire weather, and the wind variable betweene the North and the East. Wee held on our course South-east by East. At noone I observed and found our height to bee 39. degrees 30. minutes. Our Compasse varied sixe degrees to the West.

We continued our course toward England, without seeing any Land by the way, all the rest of this moneth of October: And on the seventh day of November, stilo novo, being Saturday: by the Grace of God we safely

arrived in the Range of Dartmouth in Devonshire, in the yeere 1609.

[III.iii.596.]

Chap. XVII.

An Abstract of the Journall of Master Henry Hudson, for the Discoverie of the North-west Passage, begunne the seventeenth of Aprill, 1610. ended with his end, being treacherously exposed by some of the Companie.

Aprill 17. THe seventeenth of Aprill, 1610. we brake ground, and went downe from Saint Katharines Poole, and fell downe to Blacke-wall: and so plyed downe with the ships to Lee, which was the two and twentieth day.

The two and twentieth, I caused Master Coleburne to bee put into a Pinke, bound for London, with my Letter to the Adventurers, importing the reason wherefore I so put him out of the ship, and so plyed forth.

May. The second of May, the wind Southerly, at Eeven we were thwart of Flamborough Head.

The Iles of Orkney. The fift, we were at the Iles of Orkney, and here I set the North end of the Needle, and the North of the Flie all one.

Note. The sixt, wee were in the latitude of 59. degrees 22. minutes, and there perceived that the North end of Scotland, Orkney, and Shotland are not so Northerly, as is commonly set downe. The eight day, wee saw Farre Ilands, in the latitude of 62. degrees 24. minutes. The eleventh day, we fell with the Easter part of Island, and then plying along the Souther part of the Land, we came to Westmony, being the fifteenth day, and still plyed about the mayne Iland, untill the last of May with contrary winds, and we got some Fowles of divers sorts.

Farre Ilands 62 degrees 24. minutes.

Westmony.

June. The first day of June, we put to Sea out of an Harbour,

in the Westermost part of Island, and so plyed to the Westward in the latitude of 66. degrees 34. minutes, and the second day plyed and found our selves in 65. degrees 57. minutes, with little wind Easterly.

The third day, wee found our selves in 65. degrees 30. minutes, with winde at North-east, a little before this we sayled neere some Ice.

Groneland.

The fourth day, we saw Groneland over the Ice perfectly, and this night the Sunne went downe due North, and rose North North-east. So plying the fift day, we were in 65. degrees, still encombred with much Ice, which hung upon the Coast of Groneland.

Frobishers Streights.

The ninth day, wee were off Frobishers Streights with the winde Northerly, and plyed unto the South-westwards untill the fifteenth day.

Desolation.

The fifteenth day, we were in sight of the land, in latitude 59. degrees 27. minutes, which was called by Captayne John Davis, Desolation, and found the errour of the former laying downe of that Land: and then running to the North-westward untill the twentieth day, wee found the ship in 60. degrees 42. minutes, and saw much Ice, and many Riplings or Over-fals, and a strong streame setting from East South-east, to West North-west.

A current West North-west.

The one and twentie, two and twentie, and three and twentie dayes, with the winde variable, we plyed to the North-westward in sight of much Ice, into the height of 62. degrees 29. minutes.

East entrance into the Streights.

The foure and twentie, and five and twentie dayes, sayling to the West-ward about midnight, wee saw Land North, which was suddenly lost againe. So wee ranne still to the West-ward in 62. degrees 17. minutes.

July.

The fift of July, wee plyed up upon the Souther side, troubled with much Ice in seeking the shoare untill the fift day of July, and we observed that day in 59. degrees 16. minutes. Then we plyed off the shoare againe, untill the eight day, and then found the height of the Pole in 60. degrees no minutes. Here we saw the Land from

the North-west by West, halfe Northerly unto the South-west by West, covered with snow, a Champaigne Land, and called it, Desire provoketh.

Desire provoketh.

We still plyed up to the Westward, as the Land and Ice would suffer untill the eleventh day; when fearing a storme, we anchored by three Rockie Ilands in uncertayne depth, betweene two and nine fathomes; and found it an Harbour unsufficient by reason of sunken Rockes, one of which was next morning two fathomes above water. Wee called them the Iles of Gods Mercies. The water floweth here better then foure fathomes. The Floud commeth from the North, flowing eight the change day. The latitude in this place is 62. degrees 9. minutes. Then plying to the South-westward the sixteenth day, wee were in the latitude of 58. degrees 50. minutes, but found our selves imbayed with Land, and had much Ice: and we plyed to the North-westward untill the nineteenth day, and then wee found by observation the height of the Pole in 61. degrees 24. minutes, and saw the Land, which I named, Hold with Hope. Hence I plyed to the North-westward still, untill the one and twentieth day, with the wind variable. Heere I found the Sea more growne, then any wee had since wee left England.

Iles of Gods Mercies.

Hold with Hope.

A mightie growne Sea.

The three and twentieth day, by observation the height of the Pole was 61. degrees 33. minutes. The five and twentieth day, we saw the Land; and named it Magna Britannia. The sixe and twentieth day, wee observed and found the latitude in 62. degrees 44. minutes. The eight and twentieth day, we were in the height of 63. degrees 10. minutes, and plyed Southerly of the West. The one and thirtieth day, plying to the Westward, at noone wee found our selves in 62. degrees 24. minutes.

[III.iii.597.]

Magna Britannia.

August.

The first of August, we had sight of the Northerne shoare, from the North by East to the West by South off us: the North part twelve leagues, and the Wester part twentie leagues from us: and we had no ground there at one hundred and eightie fathomes. And I thinke I saw Land on the Sunne side, but could not make it perfectly,

bearing East North-east. Here I found the latitude 62. degrees 50. minutes.

The second day, we had sight of a faire Head-land, on the Norther shoare six leagues off, which I called Salisburies Fore-land; we ranne from them West South-west, fourteene leagues: In the mid-way of which wee were suddenly come into a great and whurling Sea, whether caused by meeting of two streames, or an Over-fall, I know not. Thence sayling West and by South seven leagues farther, we were in the mouth of a Streight and sounded, and had no ground at one hundred fathomes: the Streight being there not above two leagues broad, in the passage in this Wester part: which from the Easter part of Fretum Davis, is distant two hundred and fiftie leagues there abouts.

Salisburies fore-land.

A great and whurling Sea.

A Streight which led us into the deepe Bay of Gods great Mercies.

The third day, we put through the narrow passage, after our men had beene on Land, which had well observed there, That the Floud did come from the North, flowing by the shoare five fathomes. The head of this entrance on the South side I named Cape Worsenholme; and the head on the North-wester shoare, I called Cape Digs. After wee had sailed with an Easterly winde, West and by South ten leagues, the Land fell away to the Southward, and the other Iles and Land left us to the Westward. Then I observed and found the ship at noone in 61. degrees 20. minutes, and a Sea to the Westward.

Cape Worsenholme.

Cape Digs.

A larger Discourse of the same Voyage, and the successe thereof, written by Abacuk Pricket.

WE began our Voyage for the North-west passage; the seventeenth of April, 1610. Thwart of Shepey, our Master sent Master Colbert backe to the Owners with his Letter. The next day we weighed from hence, and stood for Harwich, and came thither the eight and twentieth of Aprill. From Harwich we set sayle the first of May, along the Coast to the North, till we came to the Iles of Orkney, from thence to the Iles of

Orkney.

Farre Iles. Island. Faro, and from thence to Island: on which we fell in a fogge, hearing the Rut of the Sea, ashoare, but saw not the Land whereupon our Master came to an Anchor.

The South-east part of Island. Heere we were embayed in the South-east part of the Land. Wee weighed and stood along the Coast, on the West side towards the North: but one day being calme, we fell a fishing, and caught good store of fish, as Cod and Ling, and Butte, with some other sorts that we knew not. The next day, we had a good gale of wind at South-west,

Westmonie Island. and raysed the Iles of Westmonie, where the King of Denmarke hath a Fortresse, by which we passed to rayse the Snow Hill foot, a Mountayne so called on the North-west part of the Land. But in our course we saw that

Mount Hecla casteth out fire. famous Hill, Mount Hecla, which cast out much fire, a signe of foule weather to come in short time. Wee leave

A mayne of Ice. Island a sterne of us, and met a Mayne of Ice, which did hang on the North part of Island, and stretched downe to the West, which when our Master saw, he stood backe for Island to find an Harbour, which we did on the North-

**Or Diraford.* west part, called * Derefer, where wee killed good store of Fowle. From hence wee put to Sea againe, but (neither wind nor weather serving) our Master stood backe for this Harbour againe, but could not reach it, but fell with another to the South of that, called by our Englishmen,

Lousie Bay. An hot Bath. Lousie Bay: where on the shoare we found an hot Bath, and heere all our Englishmen bathed themselves: the water was so hot that it would scald a Fowle.

The first of June. From hence the first of June we put to Sea for Groneland, but to the West wee saw Land as we thought, for which we beare the best part of a day, but it proved but a foggie banke. So wee gave it over, and made for Gronland, which we raysed the fourth of June. Upon the Coast thereof hung good store of Ice, so that our Master could not attayne to the shoare by any meanes. The Land in this part is very Mountaynous, and full of round Hils, like to Sugar-loaves, covered with snow. We turned the Land on the South side, as neere as the Ice would suffer us. Our course for the most part was betweene the West

and North-west, till we raysed the Desolations, which is a great Iland in the West part of Groneland. On this Coast we saw store of Whales, and at one time three of them came close by us, so as wee could hardly shunne them: then two passing very neere, and the third going under our ship, wee received no harme by them, praysed bee God.

Iland of Desolation.

Store of Whales.

From the Desolations our Master made his way North-west, the wind being against him, who else would have gone more to the North: but in this course we saw the first great Iland or Mountayne of Ice, whereof after we saw store. About the latter end of June, we raysed Land to the North of us, which our Master tooke to bee that Iland which Master Davis setteth downe in his Chart. On the West side of his Streight, our Master would have gone to the North of it, but the wind would not suffer him: so we fell to the South of it, into a great Rippling or over-fall of current, the which setteth to the West. Into the current we went, and made our way to the North of the West, till we met with Ice which hung on this Iland. Wherefore our Master casting about, cleered himselfe of this Ice, and stood to the South, and then to the West, through store of floting Ice, and upon the Ice store of Seales. We gained a cleere Sea, and continued our course till wee meete Ice; first, with great Ilands, and then with store of the smaller sort. Betweene them we made our course North-west, till we met with Ice againe. But, in this our going betweene the Ice, we saw one of the great Ilands of Ice overturne, which was a good warning to us, not to come nigh them, nor within their reach. Into the Ice wee put ahead, as betweene two Lands. The next day we had a storme, and the wind brought the Ice so fast upon us, that in the end we were driven to put her into the chiefest of the Ice, and there to let her lie. Some of our men this day fell sicke, I will not say it was for feare, although I saw small signe of other griefe.

[III.iii.598

Iland of Ice overturneth.

The storme ceasing, we stood out of the Ice, where wee saw any cleere Sea to goe to: which was sometime more,

Danger by Ice.

and sometime lesse. Our course was as the Ice did lye, sometime to the North, then to the North-west, and then to the West, and to the South-west: but still inclosed with Ice. Which when our Master saw, he made his course to the South, thinking to cleere himselfe of the Ice that way: but the more he strove, the worse he was, and the more inclosed, till we could goe no further. Here our Master was in despaire, and (as he told me after) he thought he should never have got out of this Ice, but there have perished. Therefore hee brought forth his Card, and shewed all the company, that hee was entred above an hundred leagues further then ever any English was: and left it to their choice, whether they would proceed any further; yea, or nay. Whereupon, some were of one minde, and some of another, some wishing themselves at home, and some not caring where, so they were out of the Ice: but there were some who then spake words, which were remembred a great while after.

Hudson entred 100. leagues further then any had been.

Discontents.

There was one who told the Master, that if he had an hundred pounds, hee would give fourescore and ten to be at home: but the Carpenter made answere, that if hee had an hundred, hee would not give ten upon any such condition, but would thinke it to be as good money as ever he had any, and to bring it as well home, by the leave of God. After many words to no purpose, to worke we must on all hands, to get our selves out, and to cleere our ship. After much labour and time spent, we gained roome to turne our ship in, and so by little and little, to get cleere in the Sea a league or two off, our course being North and North-west.

Desire provokes.

In the end, we raysed Land to the South-west, high Land and covered with Snow. Our Master named this Land, Desire provokes. Lying here, wee heard the noyse of a great over-fall of a tyde, that came out of the Land: for now we might see well, that wee had beene embayed before, and time had made us know, being so well acquainted with the Ice, that when night, or foggie, or foule weather tooke us, we would seeke out the broadest

Iland of Ice, and there come to anchor and runne, and sport, and fill water that stood on the Ice in Ponds, both sweete and good. But after we had brought this Land to beare South of us, we had the tyde and the current to open the Ice, as being carried first one way, and then another: but in Bayes they lye as in a pond without moving. In this Bay where wee were thus troubled with Ice, wee saw many of those Mountaynes of Ice aground, in sixe or sevenscore fathome water. In this our course we saw a Beare upon a piece of Ice by it selfe, to the which our men gave chase with their Boat: but before they came nigh her, the tyde had carried the Ice and the Beare on it, and joyned it with the other Ice: so they lost their labour, and came aboord againe.

Exercises of pleasure and profit on the Ice.

Difference of Tydes and Bayes.

Ice above 100. fathome.

We continued our course to the North-west, and raysed Land to the North of our course, toward which we made, and comming nigh it, there hung on the Eastermost point, many Ilands of floting Ice, and a Beare on one of them, which from one to another came towards us, till she was readie to come aboord. But when she saw us looke at her, she cast her head betweene her hinder legges, and then dived under the Ice: and so from one piece to another, till she was out of our reach. We stood along by the Land on the Southside ahead of us, wee met with Ice that hung on a point of Land that lay to the South, more then this that we came up by: which when our Master saw, he stood in for the shoare. At the West end of this Iland (for so it is) we found an Harbour, and came in (at a full Sea) over a Rocke, which had two fathome and an halfe on it, and was so much bare at a low water. But by the great mercie of God, we came to an Anchor cleere of it: and close by it, our Master named them, the Iles of Gods Mercie. This is an Harbour for need, but there must be care had how they come in. Heere our Master sent me, and others with me, to discover to the North and North-west: and in going from one place to another, we sprung a Covey of Partridges which were young: at the which Thomas Woodhouse shot, but killed only the

A dangerous Rocke.

Iles of Gods Mercie.

Partridges.

old one. This Iland is a most barren place, having
[III.iii.599.] nothing on it but plashes of water and riven Rockes, as if it were subject to Earthquakes. To the North there is a great Bay, or Sea (for I know not what it will prove) where I saw a great Iland of Ice aground, betweene the two Lands, which with the Spring-tide was set afloat, and carried into this Bay or Sea to the North-westward, but came not backe againe, nor within sight. Here wee
Drift-wood. tooke in some Drift wood that we found ashoare.

From hence we stood to the South-west, to double the Land to the West of us, through much floting Ice: In the end wee found a cleere Sea, and continued therein, till wee raysed Land to the North-west. Then our Master made his course more to the South then before: but it was not long ere we met with Ice which lay ahead of us. Our Master would have doubled this Ice to the North, but could not; and in the end put into it downe to the South-west through much Ice, and then to the South, where we were embayed againe. Our Master strove to get the shoare, but could not, for the great store of Ice that was on the coast. From out of this Bay, we stood to the North, and were soone out of the Ice: then downe to the South-west, and so to the West, where we were enclosed (to our sight) with Land and Ice. For wee had Land from the South to the North-west on one side, and from the East to the West on the other side: but the Land that was to the North of us, and lay by East and West, was but an Iland. On we went till we could goe no further for Ice: so we made our ship fast to the Ice which the tide brought upon us, but when the ebbe came, the Ice did open, and made way; so as in seven or eight houres we were cleere from the Ice, till we came to weather; but onely some of the great Ilands, that were carried along with us to the North-west.

Having a cleere Sea, our Master stood to the West
Three Capes. along by the South shoare, and raysed three Capes or Head-lands, lying one above another. The middlemost is an Iland, and maketh a Bay or Harbour, which (I take)

will prove a good one. Our Master named them Prince Henries Cape, or Fore-land. When we had layd this we raised another, which was the extreme point of the Land, looking towards the North: upon it are two Hills, but one (above the rest) like an Hay-cocke; which our Master named, King James his Cape. To the North of this, lie certaine Ilands, which our Master named, Queene Annes Cape, or Fore-land. Wee followed the North shoare still. Beyond the Kings Cape there is a Sound or Bay, that hath some Ilands in it: and this is not to be forgotten, if need be. Beyond this, lieth some broken Land, close to the Mayne, but what it is I know not: because we passed by it in the night.

Prince Henries Cape.

King James his Cape.

Queene Annes Cape.

Wee stood to the North to double this Land, and after to the West againe, till wee fell with Land that stretched from the Mayne, like a shewer from the South to the North, and from the North to the West, and then downe to the South againe. Being short of this Land, a storme tooke us, the wind at West, we stood to the North, and raised Land: which when our Master saw, he stood to the South againe; for he was loath at any time that wee should see the North shoare. The storme continuing, and comming to the South shoare againe, our Master found himselfe shot to the West, a great way, which made him muse, considering his Leeward way. To the South-west of this Land, on the Mayne, there is an high Hill, which our Master named Mount Charles. To the North and beyond this, lieth an Iland, that to the East hath a faire head, and beyond it to the West other broken Land, which maketh a Bay within, and a good Road may be found there for ships. Our Master named the first, Cape Salsburie.

Note.

Mount Charles.

Cape Salsburie.

When we had left this to the North-east, we fell into a Rippling or Over-fall of a Current, which (at the first) we tooke to bee a Shoald: but the Lead being cast, wee had no ground. On we passed still in sight of the South shoare, till we raised Land lying from the Mayne some two leagues. Our Master tooke this to bee a part of the

Mayne of the North Land; but it is an Iland, the North side stretching out to the West more then the South. This Iland hath a faire Head to the East, and very high *Deepes Cape.* Land, which our Master named Deepes Cape: and the Land on the South side, now falling away to the South, makes another Cape or Head-land, which our Master *Worsenhams Cape.* named, Worsenhams Cape. When wee were nigh the North or Iland Cape, our Master sent the Boat ashoare, with my selfe (who had the charge) and the Carpenter, and divers others, to discover to the West and North-west, and to the South-west: but we had further to it then we thought; for the Land is very high, and we were over-taken with a storme of Raine, Thunder and Lightning. But to it we came on the North-east side, and up we got from one Rocke to another, till we came to the highest of that part. Here we found some plaine ground, and saw *Deere.* some Deere; as first, foure or five, and after, a dozen or sixteene in an Herd, but could not come nigh them with a Musket shot.

Thus, going from one place to another, wee saw to the West of us an high Hill above all the rest, it being nigh us: but it proved further off then we made account; for, when wee came to it, the Land was so steepe on the East and North-east parts, that wee could not get unto it. To the South-west we saw that wee might, and towards that part wee went along by the side of a great Pond of water, which lieth under the East side of this Hill: and there runneth out of it a streame of water, as much as would drive an over-shot Mill: which falleth downe from an high Cliffe into the Sea on the South side. In this place *Store of fowle and grasse.* great store of Fowle breed, and there is the best Grasse that I had seene since we came from England. Here wee *Sorell and Scurvy grasse.* found Sorell, and that which wee call Scurvy-grasse, in great abundance. Passing along wee saw some round [III.iii.600.] Hills of stone, like to Grasse cockes, which at the first I tooke to be the worke of some Christian. Wee passed by them, till we came to the South side of the Hill; we went unto them, and there found more; and being nigh

them, I turned off the uppermost stone, and found them hollow within, and full of Fowles hanged by their neckes. Then Greene, and I, went to fetch the Boat to the South side, while Robert Billet and hee got downe a Valley to the Sea side, where wee tooke them in. *Fowles hanged.*

Our Master (in this time) came in betweene the two Lands, and shot off some Peeces to call us aboord; for it was a fogge. Wee came aboord, and told him what we had seene, and perswaded him to stay a day or two in this place, telling him what refreshing might there bee had: but by no meanes would he stay, who was not pleased with the motion. So we left the Fowle, and lost our way downe to the South-west, before they went in sight of the Land, which now beares to the East from us, being the same mayne Land that wee had all this while followed. Now, we had lost the sight of it, because it falleth away to the East, after some five and twenty or thirty leagues. Now we came to the shallow water, wherewith wee were not acquainted since we came from Island; now we came into broken ground and Rockes, through which we passed downe to the South. In this our course we had a storme, and the water did shoald apace. Our Master came to an anchor in fifteene fathoms water.

Wee weighed and stood to the South-east, because the Land in this place did lie so. When we came to the point of the West Land (for we now had Land on both sides of us) we came to an anchor. Our Master sent the Boat ashoare, to see what that Land was, and whether there were any way through. They soone returned, and shewed that beyond the point of Land to the South, there was a large Sea. This Land on the West side, was a very narrow Point. Wee weighed from hence, and stood in for this Sea betweene the two Lands, which (in this place) is not two leagues broad downe to the South, for a great way in sight of the East shoare. In the end we lost sight thereof, and saw it not till we came to the bottome of the Bay, into sixe or seven fathomes water. Hence we stood

up to the North by the West shoare, till wee came to an Iland in 53. where we tooke in water and ballast.

Discord: see Widhouse his Relations following.

From hence wee passed towards the North: but some two or three dayes after (reasoning concerning our comming into this Bay, and going out) our Master tooke occasion to revive old matters, and to displace Robert Juet from being his Mate, and the Boat-swaine from his place, for words spoken in the first great Bay of Ice. Then hee made Robert Billet his Mate, and William Wilson our Boat-swaine. Up to the North wee stood, till we raised Land, then downe to the South, and up to the North, then downe againe to the South: and on Michaelmasse day came in, and went out of certaine Lands: which our Master sets downe by the name of Michaelmasse Bay, because we came in and went out on that day. From hence wee stood to the North, and came into shoald water; and the weather being thicke and foule, wee came to an anchor in seven or eight fathome water, and there lay eight dayes: in all which time wee could not get one houre to weigh our anchor. But the eight day, the wind beginning to cease, our Master would have the anchor up, against the mind of all who knew what belonged thereunto. Well, to it we went, and when we had brought it to a peake, a Sea tooke her, and cast us all off from the Capstone, and hurt divers of us. Here wee lost our Anchor, and if the Carpenter had not beene, we had lost our Cable too: but he (fearing such a matter) was ready with his Axe, and so cut it.

Michaelmasse Day, and Bay.

Anchor lost.

From hence we stood to the South, and to the Southwest, through a cleere Sea of divers sounding, and came to a Sea of two colours, one blacke, and the other white, sixteene or seventeene fathome water, betweene which we went foure or five leagues. But the night comming, we tooke in our Top-sayles, and stood afore the wind with our Maine-sayle and Fore-sayl, and came into five or sixe fathomes, and saw no Land for it was darke. Then we stood to the East, and had deepe water againe, then to the South and Southwest, and so came to our Westermost

Sea of two colours.

Bay of all, and came to an anchor neerest to the North shoare. Out went our Boat to the Land that was next us, when they came neere it, our Boat could not flote to the shoare it was so shallow: yet ashoare they got. Here our men saw the footing of a man and a Ducke in the snowy Rockes, and Wood good store, whereof they tooke some and returned aboord. Being at anchor in this place, we saw a ledge of Rockes to the South of us, some league of length; It lay North and South, covered at a full Sea; for a strong tide setteth in here. At mid-night wee weighed, and stood to goe out as we came in; and had not gone long, but the Carpenter came and told the Master, that if he kept that course he would be upon the Rockes: the Master conceived that he was past them, when presently wee ranne on them, and there stucke fast twelve houres: but (by the mercy of God) we got off unhurt, though not unscarred.

Footing of a Man.

Sticke on a Rocke.

Wee stood up to the East and raysed three Hills, lying North and South: wee went to the furthermost, and left it to the North of us, and so into a Bay, where wee came to an anchor. Here our Master sent out our Boat, with my selfe and the Carpenter to seeke a place to winter in: and it was time; for the nights were long and cold, and the earth covered with Snow. Having spent three moneths in a Labyrinth without end, being now the last of October, we went downe to the East, to the bottome of the Bay: but returned without speeding of that we went for. The next day we went to the South, and the South-west, and found a place, whereunto we brought our ship, and haled her aground: and this was the first of November. By the tenth thereof we were frozen in: but now we were in, it behooved us to have care of what we had; for, that we were sure of; but what we had not, was uncertaine.

[III.iii.601.]

Last of October.

November the tenth frozen in.

Wee were victualled for sixe moneths in good proportion, and of that which was good: if our Master would have had more, he might have had it at home and in other places. Here we were now, and therefore it behoved us

so to spend, that wee might have (when time came) to bring us to the Capes where the Fowle bred, for that was all the hope wee had to bring us home. Wherefore our Master tooke order, first for the spending of that wee had, and then to increase it, by propounding a reward to them that killed either Beast, Fish, or Fowle, as in his Journall you have seene. About the middle of this moneth of November, dyed John Williams our Gunner: God pardon the Masters uncharitable dealing with this man. Now for that I am come to speake of him, out of whose ashes (as it were) that unhappy deed grew which brought a scandall upon all that are returned home, and upon the action it selfe, the multitude (like the dog) running after the stone, but not at the caster: therefore, not to wrong the living, nor slander the dead, I will (by the leave of God) deliver the truth as neere as I can.

John Williams dyeth.

You shall understand, that our Master kept (in his house at London) a young man, named Henrie Greene, borne in Kent, of Worshipfull Parents, but by his leud life and conversation hee had lost the good will of all his frinds, and had spent all that hee had. This man, our Master would have to Sea with him, because hee could write well: our Master gave him meate, and drinke, and lodging, and by meanes of one Master Venson, with much adoe got foure pounds of his mother to buy him clothes, wherewith Master Venson would not trust him: but saw it laid out himselfe. This Henrie Greene was not set downe in the owners booke, nor any wages made for him. Hee came first aboord at Gravesend, and at Harwich should have gone into the field, with one Wilkinson. At Island the Surgeon and hee fell out in Dutch, and hee beat him a shoare in English, which set all the company in a rage; so that wee had much adoe to get the Surgeon aboord. I told the Master of it, but hee bade mee let it alone, for (said hee) the Surgeon had a tongue that would wrong the best friend hee had. But Robert Juet (the Masters Mate) would needs burne his finger in the embers, and told the Carpenter a long tale (when hee was drunke)

Henry Greenes bad conditions.

that our Master had brought in Greene to cracke his credit that should displease him: which words came to the Masters eares, who when hee understood it, would have gone backe to Island, when he was fortie leagues from thence, to have sent home his Mate Robert Juet in a Fisher-man. But, being otherwise perswaded, all was well. So Henry Greene stood upright, and very inward with the Master, and was a serviceable man every way for manhood: but for Religion he would say, he was cleane paper whereon he might write what hee would. Now, when our Gunner was dead, and (as the order is in such cases) if the company stand in need of any thing that belonged to the man deceased, then is it brought to the Mayne Mast, and there sold to them that will give most for the same: This Gunner had a gray cloth gowne, which Greene prayed the Master to friend him so much as to let him have it, paying for it as another would give: the Master saith hee should, and thereupon hee answered some, that sought to have it, that Greene should have it, and none else, and so it rested.

Greenes conspiracie.

Now out of season and time, the Master calleth the Carpenter to goe in hand with an house on shoare, which at the beginning our Master would not heare, when it might have beene done. The Carpenter told him, that the Snow and Frost were such, as hee neither could, nor would goe in hand with such worke. Which when our Master heard, hee ferreted him out of his Cabbin to strike him, calling him by many foule names, and threatning to hang him. The Carpenter told him that hee knew what belonged to his place better then himselfe, and that hee was no House Carpenter. So this passed, and the house was (after) made with much labour, but to no end. The next day after the Master and the Carpenter fell out, the Carpenter tooke his Peece and Henry Greene with him, for it was an order that none should goe out alone, but one with a Peece, and another with a Pike. This did move the Master so much the more against Henry Greene, that Robert Billet his Mate must have the gowne, and had

it delivered unto him; which when Henry Greene saw, he challenged the Masters promise: but the Master did so raile on Greene, with so many words of disgrace, telling him, that all his friends would not trust him with twenty shillings, and therefore why should he? As for wages he had none, nor none should have, if he did not please him well. Yet the Master had promised him to make his wages as good, as any mans in the ship; and to have him one of the Princes guard when we came home. But you shall see how the devil out of this so wrought with Green, that he did the Master what mischiefe hee could in seeking to discredit him, and to thrust him and many other honest men out of the Ship in the end. . To speake of all our trouble in this time of Winter (which was so cold, as it lamed the most of our Company, and my selfe doe yet feele it) would bee too tedious.

Their hard wintring.

But I must not forget to shew, how mercifully God dealt with us in this time; for the space of three moneths wee had such store of Fowle of one kinde (which were Partridges as white as milke) that wee killed above an hundred dozen, besides others of sundry sorts: for all was fish that came to the net. The Spring comming, this Fowle left us, yet they were with us all the extreame cold. Then in their places came divers sort of other Fowle, as Swanne, Geese, Duck, and Teale, but hard to come by. Our Master hoped they would have bred in those broken grounds, but they doe not: but came from the South, and flew to the North, further then we were this Voyage; yet if they be taken short with the wind at North, or North-west, or North-east, then they fall and stay till the winde serve them, and then flye to the North. Now in time these Fowles are gone, and few or none to bee seene. Then wee went into the Woods, Hilles, and Valleyes, for all things that had any shew of substance in them, how vile soever: the mosse of the ground, then the which I take the powder of a post to bee much better, and the Frogge (in his ingendring time as loathsome as a Toade) was not spared. But amongst the divers sorts of buds,

[III.iii.602.]

Store of Partridges.

Other Fowles succeeding in their seasons.

Miserable diet.

it pleased God that Thomas Woodhouse brought home a budde of a Tree, full of a Turpentine substance. Of this our Surgeon made a decoction to drinke, and applyed the buddes hot to them that were troubled with ach in any part of their bodies; and for my part, I confesse, I received great and present ease of my paine. *Medicinable budde.*

About this time, when the Ice began to breake out of the Bayes, there came a Savage to our Ship, as it were to see and to bee seene, being the first that we had seene in all this time: whom our Master intreated well, and made much of him, promising unto himselfe great matters by his meanes, and therefore would have all the Knives and Hatchets (which any man had) to his private use, but received none but from John King the Carpenter, and my selfe. To this Savage our Master gave a Knife, a Looking-glasse, and Buttons, who received them thankefully, and made signes that after hee had slept hee would come againe, which hee did. When hee came, hee brought with him a Sled, which hee drew after him, and upon it two Deeres skinnes, and two Beaver skinnes. Hee had a scrip under his arme, out of which hee drew those things which the Master had given him. Hee tooke the Knife and laid it upon one of the Beaver skinnes, and his Glasses and Buttons upon the other, and so gave them to the Master, who received them; and the Savage tooke those things which the Master had given him, and put them up into his scrip againe. Then the Master shewed him an Hatchet, for which hee would have given the Master one of his Deere skinnes, but our Master would have them both, and so hee had, although not willingly. After many signes of people to the North, and to the South, and that after so many sleepes he would come againe, he went his way, but never came more. *A Savage.* *Turke.*

Now the Ice being out of the Sounds, so that our Boat might go from one place unto another, a company of men were appointed by the Master to go a fishing with our net; their names were as followeth: William Wilson, Henry Greene, Michael Perce, John Thomas, Andrew *Fishing.*

Moter, Bennet Matthewes, and Arnold Lodlo. These men, the first day they went, caught five hundred fish, as big as good Herrings, and some Troutes: which put us all in some hope to have our wants supplied, and our Commons amended: but these were the most that ever they got in one day, for many dayes they got not a quarter so many. In this time of their fishing, Henry Green and William Wilson, with some others, plotted to take the net and the shallop, which the Carpenter had now set up, and so to shift for themselves. But the shallop being readie, our Master would goe in it himselfe, to the South and South-west, to see if hee could meete with the people; for, to that end was it set up, and (that way) wee might see the Woods set on fire by them. So the Master tooke the Sayve and the Shallop, and so much victuall as would serve for eight or nine dayes, and to the South hee went. They that remained aboord, were to take in water, wood, and ballast, and to have all things in a readinesse against hee came backe. But hee set no time of his returne; for he was perswaded, if he could meet with the people, hee should have flesh of them, and that good store: but hee returned worse then hee went forth. For, hee could by no meanes meete with the people, although they were neere them, yet they would set the woods on fire in his sight.

Being returned, hee fitted all things for his returne, and first, delivered all the bread out of the bread roome (which came to a pound a piece for every mans share) and delivered also a Bill of Returne, willing them to have that to shew, if it pleased God, that they came home: and he wept when hee gave it unto them. But to helpe us in this poore estate with some reliefe, the Boate and Sayve went to worke on Friday morning, and stayed till Sunday noone: at which time they came aboord, and brought fourescore small Fish, a poore reliefe for so many hungry bellies. Then we wayed, and stood out of our wintering place, and came to an Anchor without, in the mouth of the Bay: from whence we wayed and came to

an anchor without in the Sea, where our bread being gone, that store of cheese we had was to stop a gap, whereof there were five, whereat the company grudged, because they made account of nine. But those that were left, were equally divided by the Master, although he had counsell to the contrarie: for there were some who having it, would make hast to bee rid thereof, because they could not governe it. I knew when Henrie Greene gave halfe his bread, which hee had for fourteene dayes, to one to keepe, and prayed him not to let him have any untill the next Munday: but before Wednesday at night, hee never left till hee had it againe, having eaten up his first weekes bread before. So Wilson the Boatswaine hath eaten (in one day) his fortnights bread, and hath beene two or three dayes sicke for his labour. The cause that moved the Master to deliver all the Cheese, was because they were not all of one goodnesse, and therefore they should see that they had no wrong done them: but every man should have alike the best and the worst together, which was three pounds and a halfe for seven dayes.

Belly straits.

[III.iii.603.]

The wind serving, we weighed and stood to the North-west, and on Munday at night (the eighteenth day of June) wee fell into the Ice, and the next day the wind being at West, we lay there till Sunday in sight of Land. Now being here, the Master told Nicholas Simmes, that there would be a breaking up of chests, and a search for bread, and willed him (if hee had any) to bring it to him, which hee did, and delivered to the Master thirty cakes in a bagge. This deed of the Master (if it bee true) hath made mee marvell, what should bee the reason that hee did not stop the breach in the beginning, but let it grow to that height, as that it overthrew himselfe and many other honest men: but there are many devices in the heart of man, yet the counsell of the Lord shall stand.

Being thus in the Ice on Saturday, the one and twentieth of June at night, Wilson the Boatswayne, and Henry Greene came to mee lying (in my Cabbin) lame, and told

Wilson & Green, their wickednesse.

mee that they and the rest of their Associates, would shift the Company, and turne the Master, and all the sicke men into the shallop, & let them shift for themselves. For, there was not fourteen daies victual left for all the Company, at that poore allowance they were at, and that there they lay, the Master not caring to goe one way or other: and that they had not eaten any thing these three dayes, and therefore were resolute, either to mend or end, and what they had begun they would goe through with it, or dye. When I heard this, I told them I marvelled to heare so much from them, considering that they were married men, and had wives and children, and that for their sakes they should not commit so foule a thing in the sight of God and man, as that would bee; for why should they banish themselves from their native Countrie? Henry Greene bad me hold my peace, for he knew the worst, which was, to be hanged when hee came home, and therefore of the two he would rather be hanged at home then starved abroad: and for the good will they bare me, they would have mee stay in the Ship. I gave them thankes, and told them that I came into her, not to forsake her, yet not to hurt my selfe and others by any such deed. Henry Greene told me then, that I must take my fortune in the Shallop. If there bee no remedie (said I) the will of God bee done.

Away went Henry Greene in a rage, swearing to cut his throat that went about to disturbe them, and left Wilson by me, with whom I had some talke, but to no good: for he was so perswaded, that there was no remedie now, but to goe on while it was hot, least their partie should faile them, and the mischiefe they had intended to others, should light on themselves. Henry Greene came againe, and demanded of him what I said. Wilson answered, He is in his old song, still patient. Then I spake to Henry Greene to stay three dayes, in which time I would so deale with the Master, that all should be well. So I dealt with him to forbeare but two dayes, nay twelve houres; there is no way then (say they) but out

of hand. Then I told them, that if they would stay till Munday, I would joyne with them to share all the victuals in the ship, and would justifie it when I came home; but this would not serve their turnes. Wherefore I told them, it was some worse matter they had in hand then they made shew of, and that it was bloud and revenge hee sought, or else he would not at such a time of night undertake such a deed. Henry Greene (with that) taketh my Bible which lay before me, and sware that hee would doe no man harme, and what hee did was for the good of the voyage, and for nothing else; and that all the rest should do the like. The like did Wilson sweare.

Robert Juet. See Widhouses notes.

Henry Greene went his way, and presently came Juet, who because hee was an ancient man, I hoped to have found some reason in him; but hee was worse then Henry Greene, for hee sware plainely that he would justifie this deed when he came home. After him came John Thomas, and Michel Perce, as birds of one feather: but because they are not living I will let them goe, as then I did. Then came Moter and Bennet, of whom I demanded, if they were well advised what they had taken in hand. They answered, they were, and therefore came to take their oath.

Now, because I am much condemned for this oath, as one of them that plotted with them, and that by an oath I should bind them together to performe what they had begun, I thought good heere to set downe to the view of all, how well their oath and deedes agreed: and thus it was. You shall sweare truth to God, your Prince and Countrie: you shall doe nothing, but to the glory of God, and the good of the action in hand, and harme to no man. This was the oath, without adding or diminishing. I looked for more of these companions (although these were too many) but there came no more. It was darke, and they in a readinesse to put this deed of darknesse in execution. I called to Henry Greene and Wilson, and prayed them not to goe in hand with it in the darke, but to stay till the morning. Now, everie man (I hope)

Oath abused.

[III.iii.604.] would goe to his rest, but wickednesse sleepeth not; for Henry Greene keepeth the Master company all night (and gave mee bread, which his Cabbin-mate gave him) and others are as watchfull as he. Then I asked Henrie Greene, whom he would put out with the Master? he said, the Carpenter John King, and the sicke men. I said, they should not doe well to part with the Carpenter, what need soever they should have. Why the Carpenter was in no more regard amongst them, was; first, for that he and John King were condemned for wrong done in the victuall. But the chiefest cause was, for that the Master loved him, and made him his Mate, upon his returne out of our wintering place, thereby displacing Robert Billet, whereat they did grudge, because hee could neither write nor read. And therefore (said they) the Master and his ignorant Mate would carry the Ship whither the Master pleased: the Master forbidding any man to keepe account or reckoning, having taken from all men whatsoever served for that purpose. Well, I obtained of Henrie Greene and Wilson, that the Carpenter should stay, by whose meanes I hoped (after they had satisfied themselves) that the Master, and the poore man might be taken into the Ship againe. Or, I hoped, that some one or other would give some notice, either to the Carpenter John King, or the Master; for so it might have come to passe by some of them that were the most forward.

The Carpenter spared.

Now, it shall not bee amisse to shew how we were lodged, and to begin in the Cooke roome; there lay Bennet and the Cooper lame; without the Cooke roome, on the steere-board side, lay Thomas Wydhouse sicke; next to him lay Sydrack Funer lame, then the Surgeon, and John Hudson with him; next to them lay Wilson the Boatswaine, and then Arnold Lodlo next to him: in the Gun-roome lay Robert Juet and John Thomas; on the Lar-boord side, lay Michael Bute and Adria Moore, who had never beene well since wee lost our Anchor; next to them lay Michael Perce and Andrew Moter. Next to them without the Gun-roome, lay John King, and with

him Robert Billet: next to them my selfe, and next to me Francis Clements: In the mid-ship, betweene the Capstone and the Pumpes, lay Henrie Greene and Nicholas Simmes. This night John King was late up, and they thought he had been with the Master, but he was with the Carpenter, who lay on the Poope, and comming downe from him, was met by his Cabbin-mate, as it were by chance, and so they came to their Cabbin together. It was not long ere it was day: then came Bennet for water for the Kettle, hee rose and went into the Hold: when hee was in, they shut the Hatch on him (but who kept it downe I know not) up upon the Deck went Bennet.

In the meane time Henrie Greene, and another went to the Carpenter, and held him with a talke, till the Master came out of his Cabbin (which hee soone did) then came John Thomas and Bennet before him, while Wilson bound his armes behind him. He asked them what they meant? they told him, he should know when he was in the Shallop. Now Juet, while this was a doing, came to John King into the Hold, who was provided for him, for he had got a sword of his own, and kept him at a bay, and might have killed him, but others came to helpe him: and so he came up to the Master. The Master called to the Carpenter, and told him that he was bound; but, I heard no answere he made. Now Arnold Lodlo, and Michael Bute rayled at them, and told them their knaverie would shew it selfe. Then was the Shallop haled up to the Ship side, and the poore, sicke, and lame men were called upon to get them out of their Cabbins into the Shallop. The Master called to me, who came out of my Cabbin as well as I could, to the Hatch way to speake with him: where, on my knees I besought them, for the love of God, to remember themselves, and to doe as they would be done unto. They bad me keepe my selfe well, and get me into my Cabbin; not suffering the Master to speake with me. But when I came into my Cabbin againe, hee called to me at the Horne, which gave

They bind the Master.

light into my Cabbin, and told mee that Juet would overthrow us all; nay (said I) it is that villaine Henrie Greene, and I spake it not softly.

The Carpenter let goe.

Now was the Carpenter at libertie, who asked them, if they would bee hanged when they came home: and as for himselfe, hee said, hee would not stay in the Ship unlesse they would force him: they bad him goe then, for they would not stay him: I will (said hee) so I may have my chest with mee, and all that is in it: they said, hee should, and presently they put it into the Shallop. Then hee came downe to mee, to take his leave of mee, who perswaded him to stay, which if he did, he might so worke that all should bee well: hee said, hee did not thinke, but they would be glad to take them in againe. For he was so perswaded by the Master, that there was not one in all the ship, that could tell how to carrie her home; but (saith he) if we must part (which wee will not willingly doe, for they would follow the ship) hee prayed me, if wee came to the Capes before them, that I would leave some token that wee had beene there, neere to the place where the Fowles bred, and hee would doe the like for us: and so (with teares) we parted. Now were the sicke men driven out of their Cabbins into the Shallop; but John Thomas was Francis Clements friend, and Bennet was the Coopers, so as there were words betweene them and Henrie Greene, one saying, that they should goe, and the other swearing that they should not goe, but such as were in the shallop should returne. When Henrie Greene heard that, he was compelled to give place, and to put out Arnold Lodlo, and Michael Bute, which with much adoe they did.

[III.iii.605.]

In the meane time, there were some of them that plyed their worke, as if the Ship had beene entred by force, and they had free leave to pillage, breaking up Chests, and rifling all places. One of them came by me, who asked me, what they should doe. I answered, hee should make an end of what hee had begun; for I saw him doe nothing but sharke up and downe. Now, were all the poore men

in the Shallop, whose names are as followeth; Henrie Hudson, John Hudson, Arnold Lodlo, Sidrack Faner, Phillip Staffe, Thomas Woodhouse, or Wydhouse, Adam Moore, Henrie King, Michael Bute. The Carpenter got of them a Peece, and Powder, and Shot, and some Pikes, an Iron Pot, with some meale, and other things. They stood out of the Ice, the Shallop being fast to the Sterne of the Shippe, and so (when they were nigh out, for I cannot say, they were cleane out) they cut her head fast from the Sterne of our Ship, then out with their Top-sayles, and towards the East they stood in a cleere Sea. In the end they tooke in their Top-sayles, righted their Helme, and lay under their Fore-sayle till they had ransacked and searched all places in the Ship. In the Hold they found one of the vessels of meale whole, and the other halfe spent, for wee had but two; wee found also two firkins of Butter, some twentie seven piece of Porke, halfe a bushell of Pease, but in the Masters Cabbin we found two hundred of bisket Cakes, a pecke of Meale, of Beere to the quantitie of a Butt, one with another. Now, it was said, that the Shallop was come within sight, they let fall the Main-sayle, and out with their Top-sayles, and flye as from an Enemy.

The names of the company exposed in the Shallop.

Then I prayed them yet to remember themselves: but William Wilson (more then the rest) would heare of no such matter. Comming nigh the East shoare they cast about, and stood to the West and came to an Iland, and anchored in sixteene or seventeene fathome water. So they sent the Boat, and the Net ashoare to see if they could have a Draught: but could not for Rocks and great stones. Michael Perse killed two Fowle, and heere they found good store of that Weede, which we called Cockle grasse in our wintering place, whereof they gathered store, and came aboard againe. Heere we lay that night, and the best part of the next day, in all which time we saw not the shallop, or ever after. Now Henrie Greene came to me and told mee, that it was the Companies will, that I should come up into the Masters Cabbin, and take

Last sight of the Shallop.

charge thereof. I told him it was more fit for Robert Juet: he said, he should not come in it, nor meddle with the Masters Card, or Journals. So up I came, and Henrie Greene gave me the Key of the Masters Chest, and told me then, that he had laid the Masters best things together, which hee would use himselfe when time did serve: the bread was also delivered me by tale.

The wind serving, we stood to the North-east, and this was Robert Billets course, contrarie to Robert Juet, who would have gone to the North-west. We had the Easterne shoare still in sight, and (in the night) had a stout gale of wind, and stood afore it, till wee met with Ice, into the which we ranne from thinne to thicke, till we could goe no further for Ice, which lay so thicke ahead of us (and the wind brought it after us asterne) that wee could not stirre backward, nor forward: but so lay imbayed fourteene daies in worse Ice, then ever wee met to deale withall, for we had beene where there was greater store, but it was not so broad upon the water as this: for this floting Ice contained miles, and halfe miles in compasse, where we had a deepe Sea, and a Tide of flood and ebbe, which set North-west and South-east. Heere Robert Juet would have gone to the North-west, but Robert Billet was confident to go through to the North-east, which he did. At last, being cleere of this Ice, he continued his course in sight of the Easterne shoare, till *Foure Ilands.* he raised foure Ilands which lay North and South: but we passed them sixe or seven leagues, the wind tooke us so short. Then wee stood backe to them againe, and came to an Anchor betweene two of the most Northermost. We sent the Boat ashoare, to see if there were any thing there to be had, but found nothing, but cockle Grasse, whereof they gathered store, and so returned aboard. Before we came to this place, I might well see, that I was kept in the ship against Henry Greenes minde, because I did not favour their proceedings better then I did. Then hee began (very subtilly) to draw me to take upon me to search for those things, which himselfe had

stolne: and accused me of a matter no lesse then Treason amongst us, that I had deceived the company of thirtie Cakes of bread. Now they began to talke amongst themselves, that England was no safe place for them, and Henry Greene swore, the shippe should not come into any place (but keepe the Sea still) till he had the Kings Majesties hand and Seale to shew for his safetie. They had many devices in their heads, but Henry Greene in the end was their Captaine, and so called of them.

The wicked flee where none pursueth.

From these Ilands we stood to the North-east and the Easter Land still in sight: wee raysed those Ilands, that our Master called Rumnies Ilands. Betweene these Ilands and the shallow ground to the East of them, our Master went downe into the first great Bay. We kept the East shoare still in our sight, and comming thwart of the low Land, wee ranne on a Rocke that lay under water, and strooke but once; for if shee had, we might have beene made Inhabitans of that place: but God sent us soone off without any harme that wee saw. Wee continued our course and raysed Land a head of us, which stretched out to the North: which when they saw, they said plainly, that Robert Billet by his Northerly course had left the Capes to the South, and that they were best to seeke downe to the South in time for reliefe, before all was gone: for we had small store left. But Robert Billet would follow the Land to the North, saying, that he hoped in God to find somewhat to releeve us that way, as soone as to the South. I told them that this Land was the Mayne of Worsenhome Cape, and that the shallow rockie ground, was the same that the Master went downe by, when he went into the great Bay. Robert Juet and all said, it was not possible, unlesse the Master had brought the ship over Land, and willed them to looke into the Masters Card, and their course how well they did agree. We stood to the East, and left the mayne Land to the North, by many small Ilands into a narrow gut betweene two Lands, and there came to an Anchor. The Boat went ashoare on the North side, where wee found the great

[III.iii.606.]

Horne, but nothing else. The next day wee went to the
Cockle grasse. South side, but found nothing there, save Cockle grasse of which we gathered. This grasse was a great releefe unto us, for without it, we should hardly have got to the Capes for want of victuall. The wind serving we stood out, but before we could get cleane out, the wind came to the West, so that we were constrayned to anchor on the North side.

The next day wee weighed and doubled the point of the North Land, which is high Land, and so continueth to the Capes, lying North and South, some five and twentie or thirtie leagues. To the North we stood to see store of those Fowles that breed in the Capes, and to kill some with our shot, and to fetch them with our Boat. We raised the Capes with joy, and bare for them, and came to the Ilands that lie in the mouth of the streight: but
A Rocke. bearing in betweene the Rockie Iles, we ranne on a Rocke that lay under water, and there stucke fast eight or nine houres. It was ebbing water when we thus came on, so the floud set us afloat, God guiding both wind and Sea, that it was calme, and faire weather: the ebbe came from
Note. the East, and the floud from the West. When wee were afloat, wee stood more neere to the East shoare, and there anchored.

July 27. The next day being the seven and twentieth of July, we sent the Boat to fetch some Fowle, and the ship should way and stand as neere as they could: for the wind was against us. They had a great way to row, and by that meanes they could not reach to the place where the Fowle bred: but found good store of Gulls, yet hard to come by, on the Rocks and Cliffes, but with their Peeces they killed some thirtie, and towards night returned. Now we had brought our ship more neere to the mouth of the Streights, and there came to an anchor in eighteen or twentie fathom water, upon a Riffe or shelfe of ground: which after they had weighed their Anchor, and stood more neere to the place where the Fowle bred, they could not find it againe, nor no place like it: but were faine to

turne to and fro in the mouth of the Streight, and to be in danger of Rockes, because they could not find ground to let fall an Anchor in, the water was so deepe.

The eight and twentieth day, the Boat went to Digges his Cape for Fowle, and made directly for the place where the Fowle bred, and being neere, they saw seven Boates come about the Easterne point towards them. When the Savages saw our Boate, they drew themselves together, *Savages.* and drew their lesser Boats into their bigger: and when they had done, they came rowing to our Boat, and made signes to the West, but they made readie for all assayes. The Savages came to them, and by signes grew familiar one with another, so as our men tooke one of theirs into our Boate, and they tooke one of ours into their Boate. Then they carried our man to a Cove where their Tents stood toward the West of the place, where the Fowle bred: so they carried him into their Tents, where he remayned till our men returned with theirs. Our Boat went to the place where the Fowle bred, and were desirous to know how the Savages killed their Fowle: he shewed them the manner how, which was thus, They take a long *Savages manner of fowling.* Pole with a snare at the end, which they put about the Fowles necke, and so plucke them downe. When our men knew that they had a better way of their owne, they shewed him the use of our Peeces, which at one shot would kill seven or eight. To be short, our Boat returned to their Cove for our man, and to deliver theirs. When they came they made great joy, with dancing and leaping, and stroking of their brests: they offered divers things to our men, but they only tooke some Morses Teeth, which they gave them for a Knife, and two glasse buttons: and so receiving our man they came aboard, much rejoycing at this chance, as if they had met with the most simple and kind people of the World.

And Henry Greene (more then the rest) was so con- *Greenes confidence.* fident, that (by no meanes) we should take care to stand upon our Guard: God blinding him so, that where hee made reckoning to receive great matters from these people,

he received more then he looked for, and that suddenly by being made a good example for all men: that make no conscience of doing evill, and that we take heed of the Savage people, how simple soever they seeme to be.

The next day, the nine and twentieth of July, they made haste to be ashoare, and because the ship rid too farre off, they weighed and stood as neere to the place where the Fowle bred, as they could: and because I was lame, I was to go in the Boat, to carrie such things, as I had in the Cabbin of every thing somewhat: and so with more haste then good speed (and not without swearing) away we went, Henry Greene, William Wilson, John Thomas, Michael Perse, Andrew Moter, and my selfe. When we came neere the shoare, the people were on the Hils, dancing and leaping: to the Cove we came, where they had drawne up their Boates: wee brought our Boate to the East side of the Cove, close to the Rockes. [III.iii.607.] Ashoare they went, and made fast the Boat to a great stone on the shoare, the people came, and every one had somewhat in his hand to barter: but Henry Greene swore they should have nothing, till he had Venison, for that they had so promised him by signes.

Savages dogges. Now when we came, they made signes to their Dogges (whereof there were many like Mongrels, as bigge as Hounds) and pointed to their Mountaine, and to the Sunne, clapping their hands. Then Henry Greene, John Thomas, and William Wilson, stood hard by the Boate head, Michael Perse, and Andrew Moter were got up upon the Rocke, a gathering of Sorrell: not one of them had any weapon about him, not so much as a sticke, save Henry Greene only, who had a piece of a Pike in his hand: nor saw I any thing that they had wherewith to hurt us. Henry Greene and William Wilson had Looking-glasses, and Jewes Trumps, and Bels, which they were shewing the people. *Savages treacherie.* The Savages standing round about them, one of them came into the Boats head to me to shew me a Bottle: I made signes to him to get him ashoare, but he made as though he had not understood me, where-

upon I stood up, and pointed him ashoare. In the meane-time, another stole behind me to the sterne of the Boat, and when I saw him ashoare, that was in the head of the Boat, I sate downe againe: but suddenly I saw the legge and foote of a man by mee. Wherefore I cast up my head, and saw the Savage with his Knife in his hand, who strooke at my brest over my head: I cast up my right arme to save my brest, he wounded my arme, and strooke me into the bodie under my right Pappe. He strooke a second blow which I met with my left hand, and then he strooke me into the right thigh, and had like to have cut off my little finger of the left hand. Now, I had got hold of the string of the Knife, and had woond it about my left hand, he striving with both his hands, to make an end of that he had begunne, I found him but weake in the gripe (God enabling me) and getting hold of the sleeve of his left arme, so bare him from me. His left side lay bare to me, which when I saw, I put his sleeve off his left arme into my left hand, holding the string of the Knife fast in the same hand: and having got my right hand at libertie, I sought for somewhat wherewith to strike him (not remembring my Dagger at my side) but looking downe I saw it, and therewith strooke him into the bodie, and the throate.

Trecherie just to unjust Traytors.

Whiles I was thus assaulted in the Boat, our men were set upon on the shoare. John Thomas and William Wilson had their bowels cut, and Michael Perse and Henry Greene being mortally wounded, came tumbling into the Boat together. When Andrew Moter saw this medley, hee came running downe the Rockes, and leaped into the Sea, and so swamme to the Boat, hanging on the sterne thereof, till Michael Perse tooke him in, who manfully made good the head of the Boat against the Savages, that pressed sore upon us. Now Michael Perse had got an Hatchet, wherewith I saw him strike one of them, that he lay sprawling in the Sea. Henry Greene crieth Coragio, and layeth about him with his Truncheon: I cryed to them to cleere the Boat, and Andrew Moter cryed

to bee taken in: the Savages betooke them to their Bowes and Arrowes, which they sent amongst us, wherewith *Greene slaine.* Henry Greene was slaine out-right, and Michael Perse received many wounds, and so did the rest. Michael Perse cleereth the Boate, and puts it from the shoare, and helpeth Andrew Moter in: but in turning of the Boat, I received a cruell wound in my backe with an Arrow: Michael Perse and Andrew Moter rowed the Boate away, which when the Savages saw, they ranne to their Boats, and I feared they would have launched them, to have followed us, but they did not, and our ship was in the middle of the channell, and could not see us.

Now, when they had rowed a good way from the shoare, Michael Perse fainted, and could row no more: then was Andrew Moter driven to stand in the Boat head, and waft to the ship, which (at the first) saw us not, and when they did, they could not tel what to make of us, but in the end they stood for us, and so tooke us up. Henry Greene was throwne out of the Boat into the Sea, and the rest were had aboard, the Savage being yet alive, yet without sense. But they died all there that day, William *Wicked and wretched end of wretched wicked men.* Wilson swearing and cursing in most fearefull manner: Michael Perse lived two dayes after, and then died. Thus you have heard the Tragicall end of Henry Greene and his Mates, whom they called Captaine, these foure being the only lustie men in all the ship.

The poore number that was left, were to ply our ship too and fro, in the mouth of the streight, for there was no place to anchor in neere hand: besides, they were to goe in the Boate to kill Fowle, to bring us home, which they did, although with danger to us all. For if the wind blew, there was an high Sea, and the eddies of the Tydes would carrie the ship so neere the Rockes, as it feared our Master, for so I will now call him. After they had killed some two hundred Fowle, with great labour on the South Cape, wee stood to the East: but when wee were sixe or seven leagues from the Capes, the wind came up at East. Then wee stood backe to the Capes againe, and killed an

hundred Fowle more. After this, the wind came to the West, so wee were driven to goe away, and then our Master stood (for the most) along by the North shoare, till he fell into broken ground about the Queenes Foreland, and there anchored. From thence wee went to Gods Mercies, and from thence to those Ilands, which lye in the mouth of our Streight, not seeing the Land, till we were readie to runne our Bosprite against the Rockes in a fogge. But it cleered a little, and then we might see our selves inclosed with Rockie Ilands, and could find no ground to anchor in. There our Master lay atrie all night, and the next day the fogge continuing, they sought for ground to anchor in, and found some in an hundred and odde fathomes of water. The next day we weighed and stood to the East, but before wee came heere, we had put our selves to hard allowance, as halfe a foule a day with the pottage: for yet we had some meale left, and nothing else. Then they beganne to make triall of all whatsoever: wee had flayed our Fowle, for they wil not pull: and Robert Juet was the first, that made use of the skins by burning of the Feathers: so they became a great dish of meate, and as for the garbidge, it was not throwne away. [III.iii.608.]

Miserie pursueth the rest.

After we were cleere of these Ilands, which lie out with two points, one to the South-east, and the other to the North, making a Bay to the sight as if there were no way through, we continued our course East South-east, and South and by East, to raise the Desolations, from thence to shape our course for Ireland. Thus we continued divers dayes: but the wind comming against us, made us to alter our course, and by the meanes of Robert Juet, who perswaded the company, that they should find great reliefe in Newfound Land, if our Countrey-men were there, and if they were gone before we came, yet should we find great store of bread and fish left ashoare by them: but how true, I give God thankes, we did not trie. Yet we stood to the South-west, and to the West, almost to fiftie seven degrees: when (by the will of God) the winde came up at

South-west. Then the Master asked me, if he should take the benefit of this wind, and shape his course for Ireland. I said it was best to goe, where we knew Corne grew, and not to seeke it, where it was cast away, and not to be found. Towards Ireland now wee stood, with prosperous winds for many dayes together: then was all our Meale spent, and our Fowle restie and dry: but (being no remedie) we were content with the Salt broth for Dinner, and the halfe Fowle for Supper. Now went our Candles to wracke, and Bennet our Cooke made a messe of meate of the bones of the Fowle, frying them with Candle-grease, till they were crispe, and with Vineger put to them, made a good dish of meate. Our Vinegar was shared, and to every man a pound of Candles delivered for a weeke, as a great daintie. Now Robert Juet (by his reckoning) saith, wee were within sixtie or seventie leagues of Ireland, when wee had two hundred thither. And sure our course was so much the longer, through our evill steeredge: for, our men became so weake, that they could not stand at the Helme, but were faine to sit.

Poore Diet.

Robert Juets death.

Then Robert Juet dyed, for meere want, and all our men were in despaire, and said wee were past Ireland, and our last Fowle were in the steep-tub. So, our men cared not which end went forward, insomuch as our Master was driven to looke to their labour, as well as his owne: for some of them would sit and see the fore-sayle, or mayne-sayle flie up to the tops, the sheetes being either flowne or broken, and would not helpe it themselves, nor call to others for helpe, which much grieved the Master. Now in this extremitie it pleased God to give us sight of Land, not farre from the place our Master said he would fall withal, which was the Bay of Galloway, and we fell to the West of the Derses, and so stood along by the coast, to the South-west. In the end, there was a joyful cry, a sayle, a sayle, towards which they stood, then they saw more, but to the neerest we stood, and called to him: his Barke was of Fowy, and was at anchor a Fishing: he came

A sayle of Fowy.

to us, and brought us into Bere Haven. Here we stayed a few dayes, and delt with the Irish, to supply our wants, but found no reliefe: for in this place there was neither Bread, Drinke, nor mony to be had amongst them. Wherfore they advised us to deale with our Countrymen, who were there a fishing, which we did: but found them so cold in kindnesse, that they would doe nothing without present money, whereof we had none in the Ship. In the end, we procured one John Waymouth, Master of the Barke that brought us into this Harbour, to furnish us with money, which hee did, and received our best Cable and Anchor in pawne for the same. With this money, our Master with the helpe of John Waymouth, bought Bread, Beere, and Beefe. *Bere Haven in Ireland.*

Now, as wee were beholding to Waymouth for his money, so were wee to one Captaine Taylor, for making of our contracts with Waymouth, by whose meanes hee tooke a Bill for our Cable and Anchor, and for the mens Wages, who would not goe with us, unlesse Waymouth wold passe his word for the same: for they made shew, that they were not willing to goe with us for any wages. Whereupon Captaine Taylor swore hee would presse them, and then, if they would not goe, hee would hang them.

In conclusion, wee agreed for three pound ten shillings a man, to bring our Ship to Plimouth, or Dartmouth, and to give the Pilot five pound: but if the winde did not serve, but that they were driven to put into Bristow, they were to have foure pound ten shillings a man, and the Pilot sixe pound. Omitting therefore further circumstances, from Bere Haven wee came to Plimouth, and so to an anchor, before the Castle: and from Plimouth, with faire winde and weather without stop or stay, wee came to the Downes, from thence to Gravesend, where most of our men went a shoare, and from thence came on this side Erith, and there stopped: where our Master Robert Billet came aboord, and so had mee up to London with him, and so wee came to Sir Thomas Smiths together. *They arrive at Plimouth.*

Forasmuch as this report of Pricket may happely bee suspected by some, as not so friendly to Hudson, who returned with that Companie which had so cruelly exposed [III.iii.609.] Hudson and his, and therefore may seeme to lay heavier imputation, and rip up occasions further then they will beleeve; I have also added the report of Thomas Widhouse, one of the exposed Companie, who ascribeth those occasions of discord to Juet. I take not on mee to sentence, no not to examine; I have presented the Evidence just as I had it: let the Bench censure, hearing with both eares, that which with both eyes they may see in those, and these notes; to which, I have first prefixed his Letter to Master Samuel Macham.

MAster Macham, I heartily commend mee unto you, &c. I can write unto you no newes, though I have seene much, but such as every English Fisherman haunting these Coasts can report better then my selfe.

Wee kept our Whitsunday in the North-east end of Island; and I thinke I never fared better in England then *Ilanders poore.* wee feasted there. They of the Countrey are very poore, and live miserably: yet we found therein store of fresh Fish and daintie Fowle. I my selfe in an after-noone killed so much Fowle, as feasted all our Companie, being three and twentie persons at one time, onely with Partridges; besides Curlue, Plover, Mallard, Teale, and Goose. I have seene two hot Bathes in Island, and have beene in one of them. Wee are resolved to trie the uttermost, and lye onely expecting a faire winde, and to refresh our selves to avoyd the Ice, which now is come off the West Coasts, of which wee have seene whole Ilands, but God bee thanked, have not beene in danger of any. *The cause of their stay at Island.* Thus I desire all your prayers for us. From Island this thirtieth of May, 1610.

A note found in the Deske of Thomas Wydowse, Student in the Mathematickes, hee being one of them who was put into the Shallop.

THe tenth day of September, 1610. after dinner, our Master called all the Companie together, to heare and beare witnesse of the abuse of some of the Companie (it having beene the request of Robert Juet) that the Master should redresse some abuses and slanders, as hee called them, against this Juet: which thing after the Master had examined and heard with equitie what hee could say for himselfe, there were prooved so many and great abuses, and mutinous matters against the Master, and action by Juet, that there was danger to have suffred them longer: and it was fit time to punish and cut off farther occasions of the like mutinies.

It was prooved to his face, first with Bennet Mathew our Trumpet upon our first sight of Island, and hee confest, that hee supposed that in the action would bee man-slaughter, and prove bloodie to some.

Secondly, at our comming from Island, in hearing of the companie, hee did threaten to turne the head of the Ship home from the action, which at that time was by our Master wisely pacified, hoping of amendment.

Thirdly, it was deposed by Philip Staffe our Carpenter, and Ladlie Arnold, to his face upon the holy Bible, that hee perswaded them to keepe Muskets charged, and Swords readie in their Cabbins, for they should bee charged with shot, ere the Voyage were over.

Fourthly, wee being pestered in the Ice, hee had used words tending to mutinie, discouragement, and slander of the action, which easily tooke effect in those that were timorous; and had not the Master in time prevented, it might easily have overthrowne the Voyage: and now lately beeing imbayed in a deepe Bay, which the Master had desire to see, for some reasons to himselfe knowne, his word tended altogether to put the Companie into a

fray of extremitie, by wintering in cold: Jesting at our Masters hope to see Bantam by Candlemasse.

For these and divers other base slanders against the Master, hee was deposed; and Robert Bylot, who had shewed himselfe honestly respecting the good of the action, was placed in his stead the Masters Mate.

Also Francis Clement the Boatson, at this time was put from his Office, and William Wilson, a man thought more fit, preferred to his place. This man had basely carryed himselfe to our Master and to the action.

Also Adrian Mooter was appointed Boatsons mate: and a promise by the Master, that from this day Juats wages should remaine to Bylot, and the Boatsons overplus of wages should bee equally divided betweene Wilson and one John King, to the owners good liking, one of the Quarter Masters, who had very well carryed themselves to the furtherance of the businesse.

Also the Master promised, if the Offenders yet behaved themselves henceforth honestly, hee would bee a meanes for their good, and that hee would forget injuries, with other admonitions.

These things thus premised touching Hudsons exposing, and Gods just judgements on the Exposers, as Pricket hath related (whom they reserved as is thought, in hope by Sir Dudley Digges his Master to procure their pardon at their returne) I thought good to adde that which I have further received from good Intelligence, that the Ship comming aground at Digges Iland, in 62. degrees 44. minutes, a great flood came from the West and set them on floate: an argument of an open passage from the South Sea to that, and consequently to these Seas.

[III.iii.610.] The Weapons and Arts which they saw, beyond those of other Savages are arguments hereof. Hee which assaulted Pricket in the Boate, had a weapon broad and sharpe indented of bright Steele (such they use in Java) riveted into a handle of Morse tooth.

Chap. XVIII.

The Discoveries of M. M. Nicolo and Antonio Zeni, gathered out of their Letters, by Francisco Marcolino: whereto is added Quirino his Ship-wracke.

IN the yeere 1380. Master Nicolo Zeno being wealthy, and of a haughtie spirit, desiring to see the fashions of the world, built and furnished a Ship at his owne charges, and passing the Straits of Gibralter, held on his course Northwards, with intent to see England and Flanders. But a violent tempest assailing him at Sea, hee was carried hee knew not whither, till at last his Ship was carried away upon the Ile of Frisland; where the men and most part of the goods were saved. In vaine seemes that deliverie, that delivers up presently to another Executioner. The Ilanders like Neptunes, hungry groomes, or his base and blacke Guard, set upon the men whom the Seas had spared: but heere also they found a second escape by meanes of a Prince named Zichmui, Prince of that and many Ilands thereabouts: who being neere hand with his Armie, came at the out-crie, and chasing away the people, tooke them into protection.

They are related by Master Hakluit, in his 3. vol. pag. 121.

Friesland.

This Zichmui had the yeere before given the overthrow to the King of Norway, and was a great adventurer in feates of Armes. He spake to them in Latine, and placed them in his Navie, wherewith hee wonne divers Ilands. Nicolo behaved himselfe so well, both in saving the Fleet by his Sea-skill, and in conquest of the Ilands by his valour, that Zichmui made him Knight and Captaine of his Navie.

After divers notable exploits, Nicolo armed three Barkes, with which hee arrived in Engroneland: where hee found a Monasterie of Friers of the Preachers Order, and a Church dedicated to Saint Thomas, hard by a Hill,

Saint Thomas Monasterie in Groenland.

Hote Spring and the strange effects thereof.

that casteth out fire like Vesuvius and Ætna. There is a Fountaine of hot water, with which they heate the Church of the Monasterie, and the Friers chambers. It commeth also into the Kitchin so boyling hote, that they use no other fire to dresse their meate; and putting their Bread into brasse Pots without any water, it doth bake as it were in an hot Oven. They have also small Gardens, which are covered over in the Winter time, and being watered with this water, are defended from the violence of the Frost and cold, and bring forth Flowers in their due seasons. The common people astonished with these strange effects, conceive highly of those Friers, and bring them presents of Flesh and other things. They with this Water, in the extremitie of the cold, heate their Chambers, which also (as the other buildings of the Monasterie) are framed of those burning stones, which the mouth of the Hill casts foorth. They cast water on some of them, whereby they are dissolved, and become excellent white Lime, and so tough, that being contrived in building, it lasteth for ever. The rest, after the fire is out, serve in stead of stones to make walls and vaults, and will not dissolve or breake, except with some Iron toole.

Their Winter lasteth nine moneths: and yet there is a faire Haven, where this water falleth into the Sea, not frozen: by meanes whereof there is great resort of wild Fowle and Fish, which they take in infinite multitudes. The Fishers Boates are made like to a Weavers shuttle, of the skinnes of Fishes, fashioned with the bones of the same Fishes, and being sowed together with many doubles, they are so strong, that in foule weather they will shut themselves within the same, not fearing the force either of Sea or winde. Neither can the hard-hearted Rockes breake these yeelding Vessels. They have also as it were a Sleeve in the bottome thereof, by which with a subtill device, they convey the water foorth, that soaketh into them. The most of these Friers spake the Latine tongue.

A little after this, Nicolo returned and dyed in Friesland, whither his brother Antonio had before resorted to

him, and now succeeded both in his goods and honour; whom Zichmui employed in the Expedition of Estotiland: which happened upon this occasion. Sixe and twentie yeeres before, foure Fisher-Boates were apprehended at Sea by a mightie and tedious storme; wherewith after many dayes, they were brought to Estotiland, above a thousand miles West from Friesland: upon which, one of the Boates was cast away, and sixe men that were in it, were taken and brought to a populous Citie; where, one that spake Latine, and had been cast by chance upon that Iland, in the name of the King asked them what Country-men they were; and understanding their case, hee acquainted the King therewith. They dwelt there five yeeres, and found it to bee an Iland very rich, being little lesse then Iseland, but farre more fruitfull. One of them said hee saw Latine bookes in the Kings Librarie, which they at this present doe not understand. They have a peculiar Language, and Letters or Characters to themselves. They have mines of Gold and other Mettals, and have Trade with Engroneland. They sow Corne, and make Beere and Ale. They build Barkes (but know not the use of the Compasse) and have many Cities and Castles. The King sent these Fisher-men with twelve Barkes Southwards, to a Countrey which they call Drogio: in which Voyage escaping dreadfull tempests at Sea, they encountred with Canibals at Land, which devoured many of them. These Fishers shewing them the manner of taking Fish with Nets, escaped, and for the presents which they made of their Fish to the chiefe men of the Country, were beloved and honoured. One of these (more expert it seemeth then the rest) was holden in such account, that a great Lord made warre with their Lord to obtaine him: and so prevayled, that he and his companie were sent unto him. And in this order was hee sent to five and twentie Lords, which had warred one with another to get him, in thirteene yeeres space: whereby hee came to know almost all those parts; which, he said, was a great Countrey, and (as it were) a new World. The people are all rude, and

Estotiland.

[III.iii.611.]

Drogio.

voide of goodnesse: they goe naked, neither have they wit to cover their bodies with the Beasts skinnes which they take in Hunting, from the vehement cold. They are fierce, and eate their enemies, having divers Lawes and Governours. Their living is by hunting.

Further to the South-west, they are more civill, and have a more temperate ayre: They have Cities and Temples dedicated to Idols, where they sacrifice Men, and after eate them; and have also some use of Gold and Silver.

Hee fledde away secretly, and conveying himselfe from one Lord to another, came at length to Drogio, where hee dwelt three yeeres. After this time finding there certaine Boates of Estotiland, hee went thither with them: and growing there very rich, furnished a Barke of his owne, and returned into Friesland: where hee made report unto his Lord of that wealthy Countrey. Zichmui prepared to send thither: but three dayes before they set foorth, this Fisherman dyed. Yet taking some of the Marriners which came with him in his stead, they prosecuted the Voyage, and encountred after many dayes an Iland; where ten men of divers Languages, were brought unto them, of which they could understand none, but one of Iseland. Hee told them, that the Iland was called Icaria, and the Knights thereof called Icari, descended of the ancient pedigree of Dedalus, King of Scots, who conquering that Iland, left his Sonne there for King, and left them those Lawes, which to that present they retayned. And, that they might keepe their Lawes inviolate, they would receive no Stranger. Onely they were contented to receive one of our men, in regard of the Language, as they had done those ten Interpreters.

Zichmui sayling hence, in foure dayes descried Land, where they found abundance of Fowle, and Birds egges, for their refreshing. The Haven they called Cap Trin. There was a Hill, which burning, cast out smoake: where was a Spring, from which issued a certayne water like Pitch, which ranne into the Sea. The people of small

stature, wilde, and fearefull, hid themselves in Caves. Zichmui built there a Citie, and determining to inhabite, sent Antonio backe againe, with the most of his people to Friesland.

This Historie I have thus inserted at large, which perhaps, not without cause in some things, may seeme fabulous; not in the Zeni, which thus writ, but in the relations which they received from others. Howsoever, the best Geographers are beholden to these Brethren, for that little knowledge they have of these parts; of which none before had written: nor since have there beene any great in-land Discoveries.

Abrah. Ortel. Chart. 6. Hak. vol. 3. Botero. Maginus. Hondius, &c.

The Ship-wracke of Master Piero Quirino, described by Christoforo Fioravanti, and Nicolo Di Michiel*, who were present there: heere contracted.

**There is also the relation hereof by Quirino himselfe, extant together with this in Ramusio, Tom. 2. Out of which I have heere added divers annotations.*

IT semeth to bee a convenient dutie to make a memoriall, and not suffer to bee buryed in oblivion, that most lamentable, and cruell Voyage full of innumerable and extreame miseries, which befell a Venetian Ship, wherein wee carryed above seven hundred Buttes of Wine, Spices, Cottons, and other Merchandises of great value, furnished in Candia with threescore and eight men, to goe towards the * West. The Master whereof was Master Piero Quirino, a Venetian Gentleman, in the yeare 1431. Who after many troubles *, misfortunes, and wants befalne him, after his departure from Candia towards the West, on the sixth of November, in the foresaid yeere of the Lord, by chance came into the mouth of the Channels of Flanders, and went farre beyond them, by a storme from the South, towards the North-west, about one hundred and fortie miles, running still upon the Iland of Ussenti, where, by agreement, wee Christoforo Fioravanti, and

**The Italians call the sayling into the Mediterranean, the Levantor East; and thence into the Spanish Ocean, and these parts the Ponent or West. *These are particularly related by Quirino the Patron or Owner. They lost their Rudder on a Rocke, not farre from Cales in Spaine, and were faine to make thither to repaire it: and other disasters followed.*

A.D. 1431.

Nicolo Michiel, say, that at noone wee sounded the
[III.iii.612.] bottome of the Sea with the Lead, and found our selves in five and fiftie fathome of water, and afterward toward the Eevening wee sounded, and found our selves in ninetie fathomes and more, but the storme and furie of the windes was so great, that it brake five of the hinges off our rudder.

On the twelfth, in the morning, the storme not ceasing, but increasing every houre more and more, beat upon our weake rudder with so great violence and furie, that it broke away all that held it, in such sort, that it hung on the one side, where, for the last remedie, wee fastened a great Cable unto it, with the which, for three dayes wee drew it after us, not being able to doe it otherwise, in *which time in our judgement, wee thought wee had runne two hundred miles and more, against our wills.

Afterward we tooke away the two Rudders, and with many pieces of Timber we made another, which might rather be called a shadow then a true Rudder, and wee put it in his place to guide and direct the ship. But it could not endure longer, then till the six and twentieth of November, when the violence of the Sea carried it all away: so that then wee remayned deprived of all hope of government and direction. On the fourth of December, the furie of the winde grew so outragious againe, that it carried away all this third sayle, and so being spoyled and bereft of Sayle and Rudder, we went at adventure untill the eight day, alwayes wandering, not knowing by any meanes how to provide for our safetie. Afterward the winde alwayes increasing from the East, and with so great violence and furie, that the Sea beganne to swell so high, that the waves seemed Mountaynes, and farre greater then we had ever seene before, with the darknesse of the extreame long night, so that we seemed to goe in the bottomlesse depth of Hell: whereby you may imagine how great the anguish and trembling of our hearts was, because although we were living, yet at that instant wee seemed to bee dead, expecting death every houre, which we saw present: In this darknesse the Heaven was some-

times seene to open with the lightnings and sudden flashes of fire so bright, that they tooke away the sight of our eyes. And sometimes we seemed to touch the starres, the ship mounted so aloft, and then againe we saw our selves buried in Hell, insomuch as being all astonished, we had lost our strength and force. And being in this miserable case we did nothing else, but with pittie behold one another: & running with so great violence for many houres, in the end a surge of the Sea came over the ship under the wind with such furie, that the water entred into it, filled it almost halfe full, whereby being now much weakened, it was readie to sinke, and turned up the Keele. And surely that was the last houre, and our end, and truly we had beene swallowed up of the Sea, if our Lord Jesus Christ had not beene, who forsaketh not them that religiously call upon him, who put such power and strength into our afflicted minds, that seeing the ship in so dangerous a case, full of water, as it could not be cast out by any humane force, we determined to cut downe the mayne Mast, and cast it together with the mayne Yard and Tackling into the Sea, and so wee did, whereby the ship being disburdened, paused awhile, and we then taking courage, beganne to cast out the water, which with our great trouble and labour we overcame in the end. In this manner wee went scouring away all that long night. Now when the day was almost come, they agreed to make readie the Boat and the Schiffe, with that little provision of victuall which was remayning, equally parted. And the Patron said, With your consent I command you Nicolo di Michiel the Notary, that you set downe in a note the names of those that are willing to enter into the Schiffe and Boat: so presently he gave him fortie five persons in a note, who were willing to enter into the Schiffe, which was capeable but of one and twentie men only, and therefore it was necessary to cast Lots who should goe therein: and so it was done, and they prepared it, and set it in order, and did the like to the Boate, into the which the Master with fortie seven men entred. The one and

They leave the ship.

twentie persons to whom the lot fell, entred the Schiffe, and a rate was given them according to the proportion of the victuall which was remayning of Bisket, and also of Frisoppi, three hundred pound weight, of Cheese of Candia eightie pounds, of dried Bacon eight pounds, of Tallow to trim their Schiffe fortie pounds, of Oyle about two pound waight and no more: but besides wee bestowed there seven Carrattells of Tyrian Wine, which is a kind of Malvasie, for the Pinnasse or Schiffe would hold no more. In like manner fortie seven men, reckoning the Master, entred into the Boate or Pinnasse, unto whom rateably fell their proportion of victuals, adding thereto a little Greene Ginger in Sirrope, and Sirrope of Limons, with some small quantitie of Spices, which wee had taken. We were (in our judgement) distant from the neerest Iland or Land about five hundred miles or more, from the point of Land to Lee-ward of the North part, and we sayled with these Conserves in a quiet and calme Sea, that little time of the day together with our one and twentie companions, comforting our selves in that which we had seene the beginning of so faire a fortune. But when the night came, a dark mist rose, which was a token of the evill successe and end, which our companions of the Schiffe were to have, of whom we had now lost the sight, so that we never saw them any more.

The Schiffe lost.

The ninteenth day, the morning appearing, and not seeing any token of the Schiffe, it made us suspitious of their death, whereupon our mindes were much troubled, doubting what might befall them, because the windes raged in such manner, that a wave of the Sea mounted with so great violence into the Pinnasse, behinde the Poope, where wee Christopher and Nicholas were set downe, that through the force of the furie thereof, two stayes were battered and bent, which left a token of unsupportable trouble and griefe, by meanes that the Pinnasse was more charged with the weight of the water, then with her owne burthen. Wherefore to remedie it, wee ranne all to lade it out with our hands, and being constrained through feare

[III.iii.613.]

and necessitie, for the freeing of her, wee were faine to cast out all that, whether with water or without, which came most fit and ready to our hands. The Pinnasse becomming drie againe, presently in this storme, wee agreed to cast over-boord the greatest part of the Wine, and wee found our selves in so great extremitie, that if wee would taste thereof to comfort our troubled senses, no more then one goblet of Wine apeece fell to every mans share for the whole day, and who so would drinke more, was constrayned to take the Sea-water: and this measure and quantitie of Wine held out eight dayes, and no more. *Hard dyet.*

And afterward being driven to greater necessitie, wee brought our selves to a greater extremitie, by restrayning our proportion to halfe a goblet a day, and none of us could securely sleepe, for the divers doubts and dangers, wherein wee alwayes presently stood. Wee continued every day and night, foure or sixe of us at the Helme, and those that were at the Pumpe, stood alwayes firme and upright changing their courses, where wee endured cold beyond comparison farre greater then that, which not many yeeres since was in Venice, when all the Channels were frozen, so that from Margara to Venice, not onely Men and Women, but Oxen, Horses, Carts, and Waggons, went over upon the Ice in great multitudes, to the admiration of all the people, because that Region is (without comparison) much colder then the Countrey of Italy. Now consider what our case was, being without Clothes to cover us, and not having any thing to eate, or drinke, or other necessary thing for the maintenance of mans life, except a few Frisoppi which were left, and the nights one and twentie houres long, and also darke. Through the which cold, wee began to lose the feeling of our feete, and by little and little, the cold becomming more vehement, possessed the whole body, procuring a dogged and raging appetite and hunger, so that every one sought to devoure that which was hid in a corner, and whatsoever hee had next at hand, wheresoever hee could finde it, as *Great Frost at Venice.* *Extreame cold.*

well as hee might, with that weake and little strength which hee had remayning. Afterward, death seasing upon them, you might see them shake the head, and fall downe presently dead.

The death of sixe and twentie.

In the which Diseases, of seven and fortie men (which wee found in that case) sixe and twentie yeelded up the ghost, and it was not any wonder, considering wee could not have any succour, nay, it is a divine miracle that any one remayned alive. And those few of us that are remayning, live onely to commend to memorie, and highly to exalt the great power of God. Those sixe and twentie dyed, from the three and twentieth of December untill the fifth of January, now one, now two, and sometimes more, in one day, whom we buryed in the Sea.

The one and thirtieth of December, our Wine being wholly spent, and having seene the cruell and lamentable experience of our sixe and twentie Companions, who dyed with drinking of the Sea-water, necessities gave us a good stomacke, that is to say, to take our owne water to quench our thirst. Now, there were some of the companie exceedingly troubled with giddinesse: for, wanting the abundant plentie of Wine, they were not able to indure thirst, nor to expell it, but they accounted it a great favour to bee able to obtayne of their companions, whereof there were some who denyed it to their dearest friend, to keepe it for themselves. It is true, that some of us warily mortified it, by mingling a little sirrop of greene Ginger, or Limons therewith, which by chance we had remayning. During this time, untill the fifth of January, we were every houre more accustomed to greater extremities.

Great thirst.

Sight of Land.

The third of January, 1431. wee had sight of the first Land, which gave us great hope, although it so fell out, that it was very farre distant, where wee saw certayne Rockes to weather-ward covered to the top with infinite heapes of Snow, to the which, the windes being contrary, wee were not able to approach with the sayles, and much lesse with Oares, because our armes were exceedingly weakened: wherefore wee strove to come neere them with

the winde, but passing beyond them through the current of the water, wee lost sight of them altogether.

And after difficult escape from the Rockes, sayling forward towards a very high Rocke, wee had sight of a Valley scituated betweene the two next Mountaynes, into the which desiring to enter about the fourth houre of the night, the cruell and outragious windes would not suffer us. Notwithstanding, inflamed through an exceeding great desire to goe on Land, wee tooke courage and strength, and (through force of the Oares, and the helpe of God) entred into the sayd Valley, at a point of Land in the least doubtfull and dangerous place, as it were at the very beginning and entrie thereof, in the which, as soone as they perceived the Pinnasse to touch upon the sand, five of our companie being more desirous of drinke, then of any other refreshing and recreation, leaped into the water without any regard, although it were very deepe, and went their way toward the Snow, and so glutted themselves therewith, that it was an incredible thing. And afterward, they brought a great quantitie thereof unto us, who remayned in the Pinnasse, to defend it from the beating of the Sea, of the which wee also with great greedinesse, received without measure.

Hot strong stomackes to cold small drinke.

[III.iii.614.]

And running according to our judgement, as wee had runne in this Pinnasse for eighteene dayes, from the day that wee departed from the ship, untill this sixth of Januarie, sayling alwayes betweene the North-east and the East, and not with lesse winde then after sixe miles an houre, wee had runne about two thousand five hundred miles and more, without ever seeing any Land.

They goe on Land. Iland of Saints or Santi, bearing off the coast of Norway. See Ortelius his Map of Scandia: hee placeth Santi and Rustene in 74. degrees, but too Northerly then they are from the North Cape, from which this Rocke (saith Quirino) bare Westward 70. miles:

On the sixth of January, at the time of the solemne day of the Epiphanie, nineteene of us went on land in this desolate and drie place, called the Iland of the Saints, in the Coast of Norway, subject to the Crowne of Denmarke, leaving two other to looke to the weak Pinnasse, that it might not bee broken with the beating of the Sea. And being landed there by meanes of an Oare, we endeavoured to kindle fire, and with a tynder boxe and

steele to strike fire, wee retired our selves into the closest place from the winde, and at the sight of the fire, nature thereby received a little strength.

other Rockes not farre distant, some inhabited some not. This is off Rustene three miles in compasse, and called in their Language for the extreame remotenesse, The arse of the World.

Finding this Iland not inhabited, and seeking to goe in the Pinnasse to another Iland five miles off, shee so leaked, that part of us landing, as it were all in the water, and some of us up to the middle in shallower water, wee strove to draw her on land, and despairing to bee ever able to goe in her againe, wee determined to fit her in such sort, that shee might serve our turne to cover us, after the best manner that wee could. Wee broake her into two parts: and of the greater wee made a shelter, or Cottage for thirteene of us, and of the lesser a shedde, capable of five men, under the which wee entred covering them with part of our sayles, and with the rest, and the cordage of the sayd Pinnasse, wee made continuall fire to preserve our lives.

Now being utterly destitute of all sustenance of meate and drinke, wee went wandring upon the Sea shoare, where Nature gave us food to maintayne life, with certaine Perewinckles, or Shel-fish and Barnacles. And of these, not as many nor when wee would, but in very small quantitie. And removing the Snow in some places, wee found a certayne Herbe, which together with the Snow wee cast into the Caldron, and when wee thought it was boyled, wee eate it. Nor could wee satisfie our selves therewith, and thus wee lived for thirteene dayes together, with small charitie amongst us, by reason of the great scarcitie of all thinges and extreame famine, leading rather a brutish life, then the life of men.

Foure dye and others after.

Continuing in this rude and homely kinde of life, it happened, that through the intollerable wants foure of our companions of the greater retiring place, failed even where the afflicted Master was, with those remedies and slender comforts for their soules and bodies: so that you may thinke their bodies remayning neere unto us, who being very weake had lost all our strength, wee were not able to remove them two yardes out of sight: and yet I

will say more, that wee had no sooner taken the frozen or warme water in our mouthes, but presently Nature of it selfe cast it up againe, wee not beeing able to abstaine from it, nor almost to stand on our feete.

Great weakenesse.

The cold season of the yeere had brought us to such necessitie, that (to warme us) wee stood close thronged, in such sort, that wee seemed (as it were) to bee sewed together. Wherefore I entred under the sayles, which covered both our Cottages round about downe to the ground, the smoake not being able to issue foorth, which proceeded (as I thinke) from the Pitch which was within certaine peeces of the Pinnasse, which we burned, so that our eyes were swolne that wee could not see: nevertheless wee indured all, that wee might bee warme. And our garments which wee never put off, were full of vermine, and the Lice swarmed in such number, that taking them from our backes, wee cast them by whole handfuls into the fire, and they had entred into the flesh in such manner through the skinne, even to the bones, that finally they brought a young man of our company (that was a Notarie) even unto death, so that hee was never able to defend himselfe from so loathsome a litle vermine. A thing of most manifest example, to abase and abate our pride, and haughtinesse of minde.

Miserable cold.

Abundance of Lice.

Now concord fayling among us, every one used his owne proper advise, whereupon part of our companie wandring through the Savage and un-inhabited place, came to the knowledge of a solitarie and ancient retiring place made by the Shepherds heretofore, for the time of their abode, and it was seated on the highest part of the Coast of the sayd Iland towards the West, distant from ours about a mile and a halfe. Unto the which, sixe of the companie of the number of those eight, which were found in that first and greater retiring place, determined to remoove themselves to that new-found solitarie habitation, for their lesse inconvenience leaving the other two, their other companions alone, in an abandoned and forsaken place, as well because they were not able to travell,

as also for that wee were altogether unable to conduct them.

They finde a Fish.

It came to passe, that those sixe through the gracious goodnesse and gift of God, found an exceeding great Fish, to the which I know not what name to give, whether [III.iii.615.] Whale, or Porpisse of the Sea, which wee are to thinke was sent from the Divine and excellent bountie to feed us. And considering that wee saw it cast up by the Sea upon the shoare, dead, fresh, good and great, and at the time of our so great necessitie, wee rendred thankes unto our most gracious Lord God, who at that time would sustayne our so weake and diseased bodies, with that foode, appeased peradventure through the prayers of some vigilant and devout soule.

With this Fish, wee fedde our selves for nine dayes sufficiently. And as it happened, those very nine dayes were so tempestuous with windes, rayne and snow, that by no meanes the cruell storme would have suffered us to goe one pace out of our Cottage.

The miraculous Fish being spent, the furious tempest was somewhat asswaged, wherefore not having wherewith to maintayne life, like Wolves that oppressed with famine, goe to seeke out other places of abode, wee arose out of the Cottage, and went wandring through the desert Rockes to finde any succour to sustayne our life with Perewinckles of the Sea and Barnacles; with the which wee were of necessitie to bee contented, although they were very little thinges, and so wee maintayned our selves untill the last of January, 1431. and therefore wee were leane, pale, afflicted, and but halfe alive. In which time finding certayne dung of Oxen scorched and dryed with the cold and winde, (whereof wee gathered every day to make a fire) wee certainely knew that place to bee frequented by Oxen: which thing gave us assured hope of some good end, and through this perswasion wee indured part of our grievous cares and sorrowes.

1432. *in Foraine account.*

In the end the houre came, wherein our benigne Creator and most gracious Lord, purposed to conduct his little

flocke so much afflicted, into the Haven of their safetie: and it was in this manner. Two young Heifers of a Fisher-man neere unto this Iland within five miles, beeing strayed the former yeere from the place where hee used to dwell, and never understanding any newes of them within the yeere, nor having any hope to finde them againe, on the very first day of February, 1431. at night, one of the Sonnes of the said Fisher-man of Rustene (for so the said Iland was called) being of the age of sixteene yeeres, dreamed that certainly the two Heifers were escaped, and gone up to the Iland of Saints distant from them, where wee were lodged, at the point of the West part, upon the which no man durst ever goe at the low water. Whereupon the Sonne who had such a vision or dreame, prayed the Father, and an elder Brother of his, that they would accompany him to goe to seeke them. *Ile of Rustene.*

And so, all three in a Fisher-boate tooke their way towards the sayd Iland, and came to the point where wee were, and the sayd young men landing there, left their Father to looke to the Boate, and having ascended a little upon the Cliffe, they saw a smoake arise in the ayre, from their retiring place which they had formerly used. Whereupon through feare and astonishment they marvelled, and that not a little, how, whence, and by what meanes it might come to passe. Wherefore, they stood a long time much amazed. And desiring to know the cause, they began to talke one with another. And although wee perceived the noyse, and heard the voyce; yet wee could not conceive whence it should bee, but rather judged it to bee the crying of Crowes, then the voyce of men. And wee were the rather induced thereunto, because some few dayes before, wee had seene (upon the miserable Carkasses of our eight companions cast to the winde) multitudes of Crowes, that rent the ayre with their croking, feeding themselves upon them: whereupon wee thought it could bee no other.

But continuing from good to better, the voyces of the children of God sent to save us, wee cleerely perceived

that they were the voyces of Men, and not the crying of Fowles. And at that instant Christophoro Fioravanti arose out of the Cottage, and seeing the two young striplings, crying with a loude voyce came towards us, saying, Rejoyce, behold two come to seeke us. Whereupon, inflamed with an earnest desire, wee raysed our selves on our feete, going rather with the heart then with the feete, and drawing neere unto them, wee perceived that through the sudden and extreame strangenesse of the matter, they were afraid, and their countenances began to waxe pale. But contrarily wee cheered our selves, and being comforted with an assured hope, shewed with actions and gestures of humilitie, that wee came not to offend them in any wise. Divers thoughts came in our mindes, whether wee should detaine one of them or both, or whether one or two of us should goe with them. The first determination was against us, because wee knew not with whom, nor with how many wee had to doe, for that wee understood not them, nor they us.

But being advised by the holy Ghost, wee went downe to their Boate, in the best and most amiable manner that wee could, where the Father was, who expected them: and when he saw us, hee also remayned astonished and amazed. In this meane space, wee looked whether there were any thing in their Boate to succour our necessities, to maintayne life: but wee found nothing there. So, they moved through pitie, seeing us affamished, by signes and actions which wee made unto them, were contented to carrie with them Ghirardo da Lione, a Sewer, and Cola di Otranto, a Marriner, who had some knowledge, and were able to speake the French and the high Dutch, leaving us in great hope of present safetie and helpe.

[III.iii.616.] Their Boate comming to Rustene with our two companions, all the people flocked together, and seeing the countenance and habite of our companions, astonished at so great and strange a matter, they demanded among themselves, whence, & how such like fellowes as these appeared, or from what place they landed: and that they

might be the better advertised, they attempted to speake unto them in divers Languages, but in the end an Almaine Priest of the Order of the Preachers, spake with one of the said companions in the high Dutch, and by that meanes, they were certified what wee were, from whence, and how wee had arrived there. The which matter the morning following, which was the second day of Februarie dedicated to the glorious Mother of Christ, the said Priest published to all the people of Rustene, exhorting them, that through our misfortune, they would bee mooved to pitie and to helpe us, according to their abilitie.

A Germaine Priest.

In this meane space, through the Catholike remembrance of the Almaine Priest, on the third day of February, 1431. at the very instant of the day of Saint Biagio, the curteous and pittifull Inhabitants of Rustene came unto us with great plentie of all sustenance, which they use for their provision, to feed us and preserve us, being desirous to conduct us to their kinde habitations, to refresh our weake bodies. And so wee were guided and received into Rustene upon the sayd day, where wee had great restoratives, which were rather hurtfull for us, through the exceeding abundance thereof, because wee could never satisfie our selves with eating, and our weake stomackes not being able to indure it, it made our hearts to grieve, so that wee thought wee should have dyed.

There were remayning in the first and greater of our two retiring places, two of the companie which were impotent and weake, who knew nothing of this our so miraculous succour. Wherefore giving these Catholike Countrey people notice of them, and likewise of the other eight that were dead and unburied, assembling themselves together, they went with the Priest singing Psalmes and Hymnes, as well to burie those eight that were dead, as to conduct to the Haven of safetie the two that were remayning behinde, and arriving at the Iland of Saints, they performed a worke of mercy to the eight that were dead, to the which number, one of the two remayning was added, whom they found dead. Now imagine, how

the other could continue being deprived of companie and all humaine sustenance, and yet hee was brought to Rustene with some little shew of life, where, at the end of two dayes hee departed this transitorie life.

Eleven of us being come to Rustene, wee landed and went into the house of our Guide, Host, and Lord, as hee and the rest desired, whereinto our most prudent Master, Master Piero Quirino entring, using his wisedome and discretion, performed an action of exceeding great humilitie, as soone as hee saw the companion of our Conductor and Sergeant Major, declaring by semblance that hee would acknowledge her to bee the Mistresse of the house, hee cast himselfe downe at her feet: but shee refused and lifted him up from the ground, embracing him and bringing him to the fire, and with her owne hand gave him somewhat to eate.

Rustene described.

In this Iland there are twelve little Houses, with about one hundred and twentie persons, for the most part Fishermen, and they are by nature indued with understanding to know how to make Boates, Buckets, Tunnes, Baskets, Nets of all sorts, and every other thing necessarie for their use and trade. And they are very curteous one toward another and serviceable, desirous to please rather for love, then for hope of any gift or good turne to bee done them againe. Fishes called Stock-fish, in all their payments and bartering, are used in stead of coyned money, and they are all as it were of one bignesse and measure, of the which every yeere they drie an infinite number in the winde: and in the time of May fraight themselves with them, carrying them through the Realmes of Denmarke, that is to say, Sweden, Denmarke, and Norway, being all Subject to the King of Dacia: where they barter and exchange the said Fish, for Leather, Cloathes, Iron, Pulse and other things, whereof they have scarcitie.

Stock-fish instead of mony.

Few other things for maintenance of life are found there, except Fish, yet at certaine times, they have some small quantitie of Beefe, and Milke of Kine, of the which,

with Rice, and I know not what other mixture, they make Bread of a naughtie taste. Their Drinke is sowre Milke, displeasing unto them, who have not beene accustomed thereunto. They use also Ale, that is to say, Wine drawne out of Rie. Wee eate of the Plaice or Halibut fish, which are exceeding great, so that you would not beleeve it. Wee saw some of them somewhat longer then sixe feete of the common Venetian measure, above two foote broad upon the Chine, and more then three quarters of a foote in thicknesse: a wonderfull thing to bee spoken. They cloath the men with redde Hides, and likewise blacke, able to defend them from the water, and they use cloathes very course, of azure, redde, and ash-colour, brought from Denmarke, of small price and estimation.

Their drinke and bread.

Halibuts very great.

These Countrey people use much to frequent the Church, because they are very devout, and yeeld great reverence to the worship and service of God. Avarice, is as it were altogether extinguished, for, they understand not in any sort, nor know not what thing of anothers may become theirs, but by barter: and therefore they use not to locke Doore, House, nor Windowes, nor any Chest for feare to bee robbed, but onely by reason of the wilde Beasts.

Sinceritie.

Simplicitie.

[III.iii.617.] *Thus the Italians thought in regard of their differing jealousie, which scarsly permits the growne Sonne or Brother to sleepe under the same roofe with the Mother or Sister.*

The Inhabitants of this place both young and old, are of so great simplicitie of heart, and obedient to the Commandement of God, that they neither understand, know, nor imagine in any wise, what Fornication, or Adulterie may bee: but use Marriage according to Gods Commandement. And to give you a true proofe hereof I Christophoro say, that we were in the house of our foresaid Host, and slept in one and the same Cottage, [m] where hee also and his Wife slept, and successively in one Bed neere adjoyning, were their Daughters and Sonnes of ripe

[m] *Quirino saith in the same Chamber their houses being built of timber in round forme, with one light in the top, which in winter by reason of the unsupportable cold is covered with skinnes of great fishes, which cast a great lustre. Their children after foure daies old are set under the same for the snow to fal on them, that they may bee hardened for the cold.*

age together, neere to the which Beds we also slept, almost close adjoyning to them: so that when they went to sleepe, or when they arose, or when they stripped themselves naked, and wee in like manner, we indifferently saw one another, and yet with that puritie, as if wee had beene little children. But I will tell you more, that for two dayes together, our said Host, with his elder Sonnes arose to goe a fishing, even at the time of the most delightfull houre of sleepe, leaving his Wife and Daughters in the Bed, with that securitie and puritie, as if he had properly left them in the armes and embracements of the Mother, not returning to his home in lesse time then the space of eight houres.

The Inhabitants of this Iland, especially the elder sort, are found so united in their wils to the will of God, that in every casualtie of naturall death, which befalleth Father, Mother, Husband, Wife, Children, or whatsoever other Kinsman, or Friend, when the houre of their passage unto another life appeareth, presently without any griefe of heart and complaining, they assemble themselves together unto the Cathedrall Church, to thanke and prayse the Heavenly Creator, who hath permitted such an one to live so many yeeres, and at that present, as his creature vouchsafed to call him, or her into his gracious favour, and neere unto him: and at the appointed houre they cause them to be washed cleane, to have them pure and neate, as they were borne. Whereupon rejoycing and contenting themselves with his infallible will and pleasure, they give him prayse and glorie, not shewing any passion either in words or gestures, as if properly they had but slept. Surely we may say, that from the third of February 1431. untill the fourteenth of May 1432. which amounteth to an hundred dayes and one, we were within the circuit of Paradise, to the reproch and shame of the Countries of Italie.

Funerall.

From the fift of Febr. to the 14. of May, it almost alway snowed. Their garments are of course cloth of London, &c. more then of Lether.

There at the beginning of May we saw great varietie and alteration. First, their women use to goe unto the Bathes, which are very neere and commodious, as well for

Bathing.

puritie, as for the custome they observe, which they hold agreeable unto Nature: they use to come forth of their houses starke naked, as they came out of their Mothers wombe, going without any regard to their way, carrying only in their right hand an heape of grasse, in manner of a broome, as they say, to rub the sweat from their backe, and the left hand they hold upon their hip, spreading it as it were for a shadow to cover their hinder parts, that they should not much appeare: where having twice seene them, we passed away by them, as easily as their owne people, the Countrey was so cold, and the continuall seeing of them, that it caused us to make no account thereof. On the contrary part, these very women were seene on the Sunday to enter into the Church in long and comely Garments. And that they might not by any meanes be seene in the face, they weare on their head a thing like a compleat Morion with a Gorget, which hath an hole to see through at the end, like the hole of a Pipe, through the which they behold within that, no further off from their eyes then the hole is long, so that they seeme to have it in their mouthes to pipe: and worse then that, they can neither see nor speake, unlesse they turne themselves a yard or more, from the hearer. I thought good to note these two extreame varieties, as worthy to bee understood.

Long nights. Quirino saith, that it is three moneths night with continual light of the Moone; and three others day with continuall sight or light at least of the Sunne.

From the twentieth of November, untill the twentieth of February, the night continueth and lasteth there about one and twentie houres or more, the Moon never wholly hiding her bodie or her rayes at least. And from the twentieth of May untill the twentieth of August, either the whole Sunne is alwayes seene, or else his beames never faile.

Birds, Muxi.

In this Countrey there is infinite plentie of white Birds, in their Language called Muxi, but we called them Cockes of the Sea, which by nature converse, and willingly abide where men inhabit, whether they find them in Barkes or on the Land. And they are so domesticall and tame, as House-doves are with us.

In this Iland, and in the Countries of Suecia, we saw

very white skins of Beares as white as Armelins, much longer then twelve Venetian feete. Wee abode in Rustene three moneths and eleven dayes, expecting a fit time to passe with our Host into Sueden, with his usuall fraight of Stock-fish, which is in the time of May, when these Countrey people depart, carrying with them infinite plentie thereof through the Realmes of the aforesaid King of Dacia.

They returne. On the fourteenth day of May 1432. came the houre so much desired, to turne our faces towards our amiable and beloved Countrey, as our minde and desire alwayes was, and leave the charitable place of Rustene, which was the last succour and refreshing to our miseries. So wee tooke our leave of our Domesticall friends of the House, and of our Mistresse and Hostesse, to whom in token of our love we left, not that whereunto we were in dutie bound, but what wee had remayning: and that was certayne small [III.iii.618.] trifling things of little value in our opinion, as Goblets, Girdles, and small Rings. And likewise wee tooke leave of the Neighbours, and the Priest, and generally of all, shewing them by signes and words, as the Interpreter might understand then, that we acknowledged our selves bound unto them all. And having performed due salutations, we entred into a Barke of the burthen of twentie tunnes, or thereabouts, laden with the said fish, guided by our Patrone and Host, with three of his Sonnes, and certayne of their Kindred. And we departed on the said *Berga.* day bending our course towards Bergie, which is the first convenient and fit Haven for the dispatch and riddance of such fish, which place is distant from Rustene, about some thousand miles. So we conducted the said Barke through certaine direct and safe channels, rowing most commodiously and at ease.

Tokens of the Skiffe drowned. But after we were about two hundred miles off from Rustene, wee found certaine Relikes of the plankes and ribs of our Skiffe, whereby we plainly knew, that our companions which were in it, were perished and drowned, the first night that they departed from us.

The nine and twentieth of May 1432. we arrived with the said Barke at Trondon, upon the Coast of Norway, *Trondon.* the Princely Seate of the King of Denmarke, where the Honourable bodie of glorious Saint Olaus resteth. There *Saint Olaus.* wee stayed ten dayes to waite for passage, and a fit time for our Voyage: but not finding it, because we would lose no more time, wee tooke leave of our beloved Host, his Sonnes and the rest, to proceed on our journey by Land.

The ninth of June we departed from Trondon, travelling on foot, going towards Vastena, a place subject to the *Vastena.* King of Denmarke, within the Province of Sweden, where the cheek-bone and part of the bone of the head of Saint Bridget remayneth. Being there, wee understood by the Venetians, that the Inhabitants for the reverence of their glorious King Saint Olaus, unto whom (as they well knew) our Signiorie of Venice did great favour in his going and returning from his Voyage to Hierusalem, were disposed with deeds to provide for us by their counsell, helpe and money. And first, they advised us not to goe the direct way into Dacia, by reason of the dangers of wilde beasts, which might befall us, but to addresse our selves to goe directly to Stichimborgi, to find out a valiant Venetian Knight called M. Giovan Francho, from whom wee should receve favour and helpe in plentifull manner, for love of our Countrey, although the way were thirtie dayes journey, quite contrary to our direct way. On the eighteenth day we came to the Court of the said Cavallier M. Giovan Francho, an Honourable Baron, and highly esteemed of the Crowne of Dacia, where (with great joy) we found our two straggling companions.

The valorous Knight being now informed of our com- *Venetian* ming, with a cheereful countenance declared well unto us *Knight.* how great the love of his Countrey was, and especially knowing the calamitie and penurie of us his Countreymen, and being easily able to releeve it. And therefore he could not sufficiently satisfie himselfe in honouring, clothing and feeding us, but gave us money for our necessities, and furnishing us afterward with good Horses, in

his owne proper person, together with his only Sonne M. Mapheo, with an hundred and twentie Horses of his owne Servants he accompanied us many dayes journeyes through his Territories, travelling alwayes at his owne charge. Afterward, upon his limits and bounds wee tooke our leave to depart, thanking him with the most reverent and kind speeches that possibly we could. Whereupon he being departed, left us for our Guide, his said sonne M. Mapheo with twentie servants on Horse-backe, who kept us company unto Vastena, the place from whence about fortie dayes before we had departed, unto the which place, for the avoyding of two monethes travell, wee were faine to returne: so that on the thirtieth day of July wee entred into Vastena, where wee abode untill the second of August, being alwayes accompanied, and our charges borne by the said M. Mapheo.

On the second of August, we tooke our leave of the foresaid M. Mapheo, yeelding him such thankes as we could. And being departed from him wee went to *Lodese.* Lodese, where wee arrived the eleventh of the said moneth: in which place we found two passages, the one for England, and the other for the Low Countries: and there we voluntarily divided our selves into two parts.

**Quirino saith when he set foot on England, hee seemed to bee comme out of Hell and revived. Hee came to Combridge, an Universitie where a Benedictine gave him sixteene Crownes, thence to London, where he stayed two moneths, &c.*

The two and twentieth of August 1432. we Christophoro Fioravante, one of the Councell of the unfortunate ship, together with Girardo da Lione, the Sewer, and Nicolo di Michiel of Venice the Notarie, now Writer of this present Discourse, departed from the other eight of our companions, they going towards London and we to Venice, by the way of Rostoch, pretending to goe to Rome for a Pardon: and after many troubles and molestations, passing over Mountaynes, Valleyes, Rivers, sometimes on foot, and sometimes on Horse-backe, through the helpe of the Omnipotent God, we came unto our so much desired Countrey of Venice, on the twelfth of October, 1432. safe and found, leaving the said Girardo da Lion at Vasenech, who from thence went unto his Countrey: and those that went into * England were these; Master

Francesco Quirino, Sonne of Master Jacomo a Venetian Gentleman, being Merchant of the unhappie ship. Master Piero Gradenico, Sonne of Master Andrea, of the age of eighteene yeeres, a young Merchant, Bernardo da Caghire, Pilot of the ship, whose Wife being young, aswell through the long delay of time passed, as for that it was many times certainly reported, that the said ship with all them that were therein, were in great danger, and no token at all appearing to the contrary, being advised more hastily, then upon mature consideration, as is the manner of needie women, she married her selfe at Triviso. [III.iii.619.] But hearing of our comming, and the certayne newes of her living and true Husband, she presently separated the bond of the second Marriage, and shut her selfe up in an honest Monasterie, aswell to declare the Integritie of her minde, as to expect the returne of her true Husband, who about some three moneths after came to Venice safe and sound, and tooke her againe unto him, &c.

Chap. XIX.

Ancient Commerce betwixt England and Norway, and other Northerne Regions.

GReat Alexander is said in hearing a Flatterers Historie of his conquests, making them (how great soever in themselves) farre greater then they were, to have caused that booke to bee throwne into the Sea, with just indignation exclaiming, that those incredibilities would make that which hee had indeed done, seeme incredible to posteritie. And a Liar (said Alexanders Master, Aristotle) gets this by lying, that when he speakes truth he cannot be beleeved. So hath it fared with that Brittish worthy, King Arthur, whose Great Acts by great Flatterers, seeking to light candles to the Sunne, have made others suppose it to be night, and his worth to be a worke of darknesse and lyes. Neither doth the later posteritie

know how to distinguish the one from the other; and the Writers for and against the truth of the Brittish storie, as Jeffery of Monmouth and William of Newbridge of old, and others since, have seemed to me to let the truth (as in altercation is usuall) to fall downe betwixt them, for others moderate spirits to take up. Although therefore many things related of Arthur are absurd, yet so are not all, nor that altogether which is spoken of his Northerne conquests, eleven hundred yeeres since, and of commerce at least, if not some kind of tributarie acknowledgment, of Guillaumurius the King of Ireland, Gunfacius of the Orcades, Malvasius of Island,* Doldavis of Gotland, Aschilius of the Danes, and Lot King of Norway. Some * adde, that King Arthur left people to inhabite the Ilands, and that the Norwegian Nobles tooke them Brittish wives, and that the Norwegians professing their Brittish bloud, and liking Englands fertilitie better then that their own sterilitie and rockie barrennesse, sought by force of warres often to conquer that which would not be peaceably yeelded; till King Edward, a maintainer of peace, with consent of the Kingdome, permitted them to dwell heere at pleasure, as sworne brethren to the English. Octher, subject and servant to King Alfred above seven hundred yeeres since, related to his said Lord his voyage from Helgoland (where he then dwelt) to the North Cape, and (as probable circumstances argue) along the coast to the Bay of Saint Nicolas.

Galf. Monmuth, l. 9. *c.* 10, 12, 19. *& l.* 11. *c.* 17. **Ger. Mercator, Lambart his* Ἀρκαιονομια. *f.* 137.

Octhers voyage see Hak. to. 1.

Ædgar, that famous founder of Monasteries, is said by Ranulphus Cestrensis to have in annuall use foure thousand ships, and by Flores Historiarum foure thousand eight hundred, using yeerely to compasse this Iland, with his Navie quadripartite, twelve hundred in the East, as many in the West, and like proportions on the North, and on the South coasts, to scoure the Seas and secure his subjects: And in the Charter of the foundation of the Cathedrall Church of Worcester, he useth these words; Mihi autem concessit propitia divinitas cum Anglorum

Ædgars greatnesse.

Imperio, omnia Regna Insularium Oceani cum suis fercissimis Regibus usque Noruegiam, Maximamque partem Hyberniæ, cum sua nobilissima civitate Dublinia, Anglorum Regno subjugare, &c. Hee also stiles himselfe King and Emperour of the Ocean, and the Ilands about Britaine, beginning, Ego Ædgarus Anglorum Basileus, omniumque Regum, Insularum, Oceanique Britanniam circumjacentis cunctarumque Nationum quæ infra eam includuntur, Imperator & Dominus. So potent was he first of the English Kings (for Arthur was a Briton) by his strong shipping, and well manned and mannaged Navie.

Florentius Wigorniensis stileth him, Flos & decus antecessorum Regum, Pacificus Rex Ædgarus non minus memorabilis Anglis quàm Romulus Romanis, Cyrus Persis, Alexander Macedonibus, Arsaces Parthis, Carolus Magnus Francis: and addeth, as before is notified, Is itaque dum viveret 3600. robustas sibi congregaverat naves, ex quibus Paschali emensa solemnitate omni Anno 1200. In orientali, 1200. in occidentali, 1200. in septentrionali insulæ plaga coadunare & ad occidentalem cum orientali classe, & illa remissa ad borealem cum occidentali, ipsaque remissa cum boreali ad orientalem classem remigare, eoque modo totam insulam omni æstate consueverat circumnavigare, viriliter hoc agens ad defensionem contra exteros Regni sui, & suum suorumque ad bellicos usus exercitium. Both Florentius and Malmesbury, and Mat. Westminster record, that hee sitting at the Sterne, was rowed by eight Kings his Tributaries; Kined King of Scots, Macolm of Cumberland, Macon of Man and many Ilands, Dufnal of Demetia, Siferth and Howel Kings of Wales, Jacob King of Galwales, and Jukil of Westmar, having the same day there met at his summons, and sworne fealtie and assistance to him by Sea and Land. These rowed him in the River Dee, to the Monastery from his Palace, and thence after service backe againe: So rightly did he instile himselfe in his Charter to Malmesbury, Ego Ædgarus totius Albionis Basileus, nec non Maritimorum seu insulanorum Regum circumhabitantium, &c. [III.iii.620.]

Ranulphus Cestrensis saith 4000. *Matthew Westminster hath* 4800. *viz.* 1200. *for the South coast also.*

Danes.

Wiccinga Sig. a Pirate.

Scanza is the Chersonesus, containing the Country of Norway, Sweden, &c.

Men sacrificed to Thur.

**Mat. West.*

Lamberts perambulation of Kent.

This Sunne being set, darke and stormy times followed, by reason of Danish incursions. These Danes (as M. Camden recordeth) began to be knowne to the world, about the yeere of Christ 570. for their piracies called Wiccings; of them Dudo de S. Quintino hath this testimony, Dani è Scanza (that is, Scandia) velut examen apum è canistro & gladius è vagina, diversitate multimoda, &c. The Danes, like a swarme of Bees out of their hive, and a sword out of a sheath, in diversifyed manner and barbarous custome leaped forth from Scanza (or Scandia) after that with petulant lust they had multiplied their innumerable generations. These being growne, contended with their parents and progenitors about their possessions, and overflowing their native Bankes, a multitude of them (according to their ancient custome) are compelled by lot to seeke forraine places, where by force they might plant themselves. In the consummating this expulsion of expedition, they anciently sacrificed to Thur, not with beasts, but the bloud of men, esteeming that the most precious Holocaust. Their Priest used to divine with yokes of Oxen, the heads of each chosen by lot being cloven asunder by one stroke, the heart veyne on the left side being searched, and with the bloud thereof the heads of theirs being anointed, they presently set sayle. Ditmarus, somewhat ancienter then Dudo, mentioneth a place, called Lederun, where every ninth yeere in January, they all assembled and sacrificed ninetie nine Men, and as many Horses, with Dogs and Cocks, in stead of Haukes, to pacifie their Gods. Hereby wee see that by Danes, in our English stories, are intended not onely those which now we properly so call, but * Norwegians also, Gottes, Vandals, Frieslanders, and the Inhabitants generally of those North-easterne parts; three Ships of whom, in the yeere 787. landed in the West parts, slew the Reeve of Beorhtricke King of the West Saxons, and were by the Countrie people forced backe to their Ships. Ann. 795. a few Ships of them made the like assay in Scotland, and soone after some of them entred Tynemouth

HONDIUS HIS MAP OF NORWEGIA AND SUETIA

Haven, in the North part of England, and returned with the spoyles of the Churches of Hercenes and Tynmouth. This was in the yeere 800. Thirtie three yeeres after, in the reigne of Egbert, they were beaten at Dunmoth, but spoyled Sheepie, with murthers and robberies, entring Thames with thirtie five sayle. The next yeere they prevailed in battell against King Egbert, and after that joyned with the Welshmen to invade and destroy this Kingdome, but were both chased by the victorious power of the King; and An. 836. another hoast of them was beaten. Another Fleet of thirtie foure Ships landed at South-Hamton, An. 838. and slew Duke Æthelhelm: after which they proceeded with continuall incursions (two Hydras heads still succeeding, when any English Hercules had cut off one) that it breeds horror to read or thinke of the spoyles, rapes, fires, murthers, barbarisme, heathenisme, desolation and destruction, which they brought every where with them. And although Alfred, Edward, and Adelstane somewhat healed the Land of that pestilence; yet in Etheldreds time, such a mortall relapse happened, that first he charged the people with an insupportable tribute of Danegelt, arising to 48000. pounds yeerely (even after the account of those times) and buying herewith nothing but perfidie on their part, and beggerly on his, by the advice of one Huna the Generall of his Armie, he wrote Letters to all places, that on Saint Brices day (which is the morrow after Saint Martins night,) the Danes not having digested that drunken solemnitie should be all massacred, which accordingly was effected on man, woman, and child, not sparing those which fled to the Altars. A few in London escaped, and caused Sweyne with a Danish Army and unspeakable crueltie to repay that butcherie. Etheldred fled with his wife and children into Normandie (the seed of a new Conquest) so that Suanus * having made the sheepefold a shambles and shepheardlesse, proclaimed himselfe King of England, which Canutus or Cnuto and his two sonnes, Harold and Hardicanute, held after him some thirtie yeeres space.

Mat. Westminst.

[III.iii.621.]

Danegelt continued till Edward the Confessor. A. 1012.

**This Swanus, or Sueno had killed his father.*

And such was the Danish tyranny, that every Dane was stiled Lord Dane, and had at his commandement the wives, daughters, and the whole houshold where hee became. But after the death of Hardicanutus, that title was turned into the reproachfull terme of Lurdane, and the day of his death * (as the Roman Fugalia) was celebrated with open pastime and feasting in the streets, called Hocktide or Hucktide, as if England (then absolutely freed) made a mocke or scorne of her enemies. Canutus by treason of Eadrike Streona obtained the Kingdome, first as partner with Edmund Ironside, and after his death the whole by other perfidie, slaying Eadwy brother of King Edmund, and sending Edmunds two sonnes, Edward and Edmund, to the King of Sweden to be there made away. But hee hating such crueltie, sent them to Salomon King of Hungary to bring up, where Edmund dyed, and Edward married Agatha daughter of Henry the Emperour, by whom hee had Ædgar Athling, and Margaret married to Malcolm King of Scots (the mother of Maud wife to Henry the first) and Christine a Nun.

*A. 1042.

Hocktide I have seene kept with publike feasting in the street, the women also binding men, or compelling them to some ransome; the Tuesday fortnight after Easter.

Canutus divided the Kingdome into foure parts, of which hee reserved West Saxonie to himselfe, East England he committed to Earle Turkill, Mercia to Duke Edrike, and Northumberland to Earle Erike. Soone after, he caused Duke Edrike (which treacherously had advanced him to the Crowne) to bee slaine, (a just reward of treason) and then banished Earle Turkill and Earle Erike picking quarrell with them (weary of any stalking horses) the former of which was presently after his landing in Denmarke slain. And now did Canutus seeke to win the favour of the English by building and endowing Monasteries, making good Lawes, and marrying Emma the relict of King Ethelred. Thus having Denmarke by inheritance, and England by conquest & treachery, his ambition next aimed at Sweden, where first he had the worse, but after compelled Ulf and Eiglaf the Kings of that Countrie to composition with him, Earle Godwin, the Generall of the English, provoking and animating the

English Conquest in Sweden. A. 1024.

English to recover their pristine glory, and by solid vertue to overcome them, who had overcome their new Lord, whose fortune had subjected the English. Thus Canutus prevailed by Godwines policie and English valour, they by night without the Kings knowledge, or assistance of the Danish Armie, assaulting and overthrowing the Swedens: hee, the next day, missing the English, and fearing they had turned to the Enemy, till giving the onset with his Danes upon the forsaken Campe of the Enemy, he found there nothing but carkasses and spoyle.

Anno 1027. having intelligence that the Norwegians contemned their King Olave for his simplicitie, he sent great summes of Gold and Silver to the Grandes of Norway, to corrupt them, and caused them to reject Olave, and to choose him for their King. For perverted with gifts they sent him word to come to them, whom he should find readie to entertayne him. An. 1028. he went with a fleet of fifty sayle to Norway, and expelled Olave, subjecting that Kingdome to himselfe. Olave which had beene the King, Doctor, Preacher and Apostle of the Norwegians, (as Florilegus stileth him) the sonne of Harald King of Norway, was slayne, Anno 1030. and cruelly butchered by his treacherous Norwegians with an Axe or Hatchet, for disanulling their Pagan superstitions, and hee since is there superstitiously worshipped for a Saint, whom then trayterously they permitted not to reigne or breathe. The same yeere perished at Sea, or (as some say) was slayne in one of the Orcades, Earle Hacun, whom Canutus fearing had banished in colour of sending him Embassadour. *Saint Olave.*

His greatnesse (having to wife his sisters daughter) made him grow suspicious: And according to the devotion of that time, Anno 1031., Canutus or Cnuto went to Rome on Pilgrimage, and there made magnificent Offerings, and obtayned divers Immunities of the Emperour and Pope. After his returne he invaded the Scots, and overcame King Malcolme with two other Kings. He [III.iii.622.] going from Rome to Denmarke, sent a Letter to his

Romish Pilgrimage a protection for tyrannous usurpation of Norway & England, without restitution to the right Heires: as if Peters pretended key were a Pick-locke to open Heaven to whomsoever.

English subjects thus beginning: Canutus Rex totius Angliæ, & Danemerciæ, & Norreganorum, & partis Suanorum, Aethelnotho Metropolitano & Alfrico Eboracensi Archiepiscopo, omnibusque Episcopis & Primatibus & toti Anglorum genti, tam nobilibus quam plebeiis, salutem. Notifico vobis me noviter ivisse Romam, oratum pro redemptione peccaminum meorum & pro salute Regnorum, quique meo subjacent regimini populorum. Hanc quidem profectionem Deo jam olim devoveram: sed pro negotiis Regni & causis impedientibus huc usque perficere non potui. Nunc autem ipsi Deo meo Omnipotenti valdè humiliter gratias ago, qui mihi concessit in vita mea Sanctos Apostolos suos Petrum & Paulum, & omne Sanctuarium quod juxta urbem Romam aut extra addiscere potui expetere, & secundum desiderium meum presentialiter venerari & adorare. Ob id ergo maximè hoc patravi, quia à sapientibus didici sanctum Petrum Apostolum magnam potestatem à Domino accepisse ligandi atque solvendi, clavigerumque esse Regni Celestis, & ideo speciale ejus patrocinium apud Dominum diligenter expetere valdè utile duxi, &c.

Canutus before his death set his Sonne Suanus in possession of Norway, and Hardecanutus his Sonne over the Danes. Harald and Hardecanutus divided England betwixt them after his death, Anno 1035. and Harald dying, Anno 1040. that quarrell was ended; and soone after, by the others death the Danish Empire in England; the small space of King Edward interceding that, and another Conquest of the Normans, descended also of like Northerne, namely of Norwegian Originall. Canutus his Daughter Cunilda was married to Henry the Emperour, and being accused of Adultery, against a Giantly Champion appeared in her defence a childish English Dwarffe which served her, who slue the Giant and presented his head [III.vii.623.] to the Ladie, who thereupon divorced herselfe, and became a Nunne. Sueno King of Norway after five yeeres deceased, and Canutus his ill-gotten English and Norwegian wings were quickly not only pulled, but cut off.

The English had occasion of further invasion to and from Norway. For Suanus decessing, the Norwegians chose Magnus the Sonne of Saint Olave for their King; which when Hardecanutus understood (as the Danish Storie set forth by Erpold Lindenbruch testifieth) hee invaded Norway with his English and Danish forces, where he and Magnus came to composition that the Survivour should enjoy both Kingdomes. When Hardecanute was dead, Sueno the Sonne of Estrid his Sister, succeeded, and Magnus King of Norway fought with Sueno to obtayne his covenanted Kingdome of Denmarke, and overcame him. Sueno fled into Sweden, and there abode till the death of Magnus, after which he recovered his Danish Scepter. Florentius writeth that Suanus sent to King Edward the Confessor, intreating his aide with a Navie against Magnus; Earle Godwine counselled to send fiftie ships, but Earle Leofrike and the people refused; and Magnus with a great Navie fought with Suanus, and expelled him his Kingdome, which hee after recovered.

Historia Danica.

Second English Expedition into Norway.

Harald Harvager the Sonne of Siward King of Norway and Brother by the Mothers side to Saint Olave obtayned Norway after his Nephew Magnus, and sent an Embassage to King Edward, whereby Peace and Amitie was concluded betwixt both the Kings. He (after King Edwards death) invaded England with a great Navie[m] of three hundred ships, and discomfited the Earles Edwine and Morcar neere Yorke; but five dayes after Harald then King (Sonne of Earle Godwin) slue his Brother Tosti and Harvagre at Stamford Bridge, permitting his Sonne Olave to returne upon conditions to Norway. But whiles he converted the spoyle to his owne proper use, he gave such disgust to the English, that a few dayes after in the battayle with William Earle of Normandie, they were lesse zealous of his cause; where a new Norman period beganne: those Northerne quarrels having had no other end but this succession.

[m] *Trecentis coggonibus.*

From 787. to 1065.

I shall not need to adde what followed (the Norman Acts in Italie, Palestina and other places I have handled

else-where) little occurring of Mars, but Mercurie, of which I have by me Letters from King Henry the Third, the first yeere of his Reigne to Hacon or Haquin, then King of Norway, for mutuall Trafficke betwixt both their subjects. It is remarkable that the Northerne humour of spoile, slaughter and bloud continued whiles they were Pagans, and expired in manner with their Paganisme both in Norwegians and Danes: as if God would first by them punish the vices of those times, and withall conquer the Conquerours, with the Religion of the conquered, and by so strange a way bring the Northerne World (by this way of destroying) to salvation. Since that time, the State of Norway, Island and other parts hath decayed in numbers of shipping, courage of men, and other meanes of Earthly greatnesse. Somewhat yet for History and an Historians sake, I will adde of Matthew Paris an Englishman his Voyage to Norway.

Vid. sup. l. 8. c. 6. §. 1.

Note.

Ma. Paris p. 981.

In the yeere 1247. Matthew Paris recordeth, that on the day of Saint Olave, a famous Saint in the Regions and Ilands of Norway, Hacon was crowned King, and solemnely anointed at Bergæ by the Bishop of Sabine then Legate (from the Pope) in those parts. For the honour whereof the said King gave the Pope 15000. Markes sterling, besides invaluable Gifts which the Legate himselfe had; and five hundred Markes by him extorted (saith our Author) from the Church of that Kingdome. The King also receiving the Crosse for the Holy Land Expedition, obtayned of the Pope the third part of the Ecclesiasticall Revenues of that Kingdome towards his charges. Which Lewis the French King knowing, writ in friendly termes to Hacon, to beare him company in the said Expedition, offering him full power (in regard of his Sea-skill) over his Navie, and over the French Army. This Letter was carried by our Authour Matthew Paris, to whom King Hacon answered that he gave great thankes to that devout King: but knew in part the nature of the French, & as saith the Poet, Omnisque potestas Impatiens consortis erit, and I say, Omnique superbus, Impatiens consortis erit. My

The Pope and his Legates deere friends to all Kingdomes.

Saint Lewis his offers.

people is impetuous, indiscreet, and impatient of wrongs, which might occasion irreparable damage; and therefore it is fitter for each to goe by himselfe. But I have written to the King for quiet passage thorow his Countrey, and provisions as need required. The Kings Answere thereto and Letters Patents were also delivered to him by this our Author in this forme.

His Letter.

Ludovicus Dei gratia Francorum Rex, universi amicis & fidelibus suis, Ballivis, Majoribus, & Præpositis, ad quos præsentes literæ pervenerint, salutem. Cum clarissimus noster Illustris Hacon Rex Norwegiæ in subsidium Terræ sanctæ transfretare proponat, sicut nobis per suas literas intimavit, vobis mandamus, quatenus si eundem Regem vel ipsius Navigium per mare contiguum terræ nostræ transire contingat, vel in Terram nostram, vel in feuda nostra alicubi applicare, ipsum & suos benignè & honorifice recipiatis, permittentes eosdem in terra nostra victualia emere, & sibi per forum legitimum de sibi necessariis providere. Actum apud Sanctum Germanum in Laia, A. D. 1248.

When the King of Norway had read this (for hee is a discreet, and modest, and well learned man) hee rejoyced much, and was gratefull to the bearer, respecting him with Royall and bountifull gifts. Thus writeth Matthew Paris of himselfe, and his employment. The cause of his going into Norway he further relateth, that King Cnuto (or Canutus) having founded a famous Monastery of Saint Bennet, of Holm in Norway (of which title and order hee had founded another in England) it happened that the said Abbie, with the appurtenances was almost ruined by an impious Abbat, who forsaking his Order, and stealing away privily the Seale of the Chapiter, either sold, or by forged writings fraudulently engaged almost all the possessions thereof: wherein hee had the Sacrist, the keeper of the Seale, his copartner, both in this fugitive apostacie and treacherie. Heereupon the Archbishop of Nidrosia, in whose Diocesse the said Abbie was situate, seised the same and the appurtenances into his hands,

M. Par. his voyage to Norway. John Abbie. [III.iii.624.]

Monkes ignorant of their owne order. Popes long hands and Lime-fingered Appeales.

alledging that the Monkes had only the habite, but were altogether ignorant of Monastike order, and Saint Bennets rule, some of them also theeves and fugitives. The Monkes appealed to the Pope (which caused the Archbishop to suspend his proceedings) and the Prior recovering somewhat, and gathering together a summe of money, went to the Roman Court, where the Abbat had beene a little before, and intangled by writings the said house in five hundred markes; which caused the Prior to returne frustrate and full of griefe. But in his way, hearing that the said Abbat was dead, in the Abby of Saint Alban in Selio (in Norway) he and the Covent made choice of an Abbat, and this Prior, with another Monke, and three hundred markes in mony, together with the Kings letter, being sent to Matthew Paris to take paines for their freedome, it was procured happily that the temporalties of the said house were freed from the Caursines (the Popes Usurers) then residing at London, within one yeeres space. But their Spiritualities were much maimed, they by bribes purchasing delayes, lest the Archbishop should take possession of the Iland which wholly belonged to the Abby, and of it also, expelling the Monkes.

Now the Cardinall Bishop of Sabine then comming Legate into Norway, the Monkes sought to him for succour, and hee counselled them to go and petition the Pope to provide them of an Instructor and Reformer, and he would write in their behalfe.

The Abbat therefore and Prior went with Letters from the King and Legate to the Pope, who gave them leave to chuse any man of whatsoever Region or Monasterie to be their Instructer. They answered the next day, that all the World had not Monkes of that Order living in more composed order then England, nor England any comparable by report, to Saint Albans: of which House they desired Matthew to be their Reformer, of whose wisdome and faithfulnes they had had experience; a man also almost familiar and friendly to their King, and able by his meanes to order the rebellious and unruly. Here-

HONDIUS HIS MAP OF DENMARKE

upon the Pope gave them this Briefe to the Abbat of Saint Albans.

Innocentius, &c. Dilecto Filio Abbati Sancti Albani in Anglia Ordinis S. Benedicti, &c. Cum sicut ex parte dilecti filii Abbatis Monasterii de Holm, Ordinis S. Benedicti Nistorsiensis Diocesis, fuit propositum coram nobis; idem Monasterium propter Prædecessorum suorum negligentiam, sit in his quæ ad Monasticum Ordinem pertinent deformatum; nec inveniatur in illis partibus aliquis qui statuta & observantias ejusdem Ordinis bene sciat: Nos ad supplicationem ejusdem Abbatis, discretionem tuam rogamus, attentius & hortamur per Apostolica tibi scripta mandantes, quatenus dilectum filium Fratrem Mattheum Monachum tuum, qui dicitur probatæ vitæ ac religionis expertæ, ad idem Monasterium ut dictum Abbatem & Monachos suos in regularibus disciplinis & statutis quæ ad eundem ordinem pertinent, informet & instruat, transmittere pro divina & Apostolicæ sedis ac nostra reverentia non postponas: Datum Lugduni, &c. Hereto the Abbat obeying, and Matthew to his Abbat, the businesse luckily succeeded, and Monkerie both in that of Holm, and other Norwegian Monasteries was reformed.

I might here shew[1] the great stirres which in the first Ages after the Conquest the Norwegians have caused in Ireland, Wales, Man, Anglesey, the Hebrides, and Orcades: as also of Harald (whom the Conquerour slue) his two sonnes and daughter fleeing to Sueno King of Denmarke, who gave the daughter in Marriage to Jeruslaus, or Waldemarus King of Russia: and of Nicolas de Lynna, a Franciscan Frier and Mathematician of Oxford, before mentioned, of whom Jacobus Cnoyen saith in his Journall that he learned of a Priest who had descended of those which King Arthur had left to people the Ilands of Norway, Anno 1364. that in the yeere 1360. the said Frier had comne into those Ilands, and proceeding further by Art Magicke, had described those Artike parts (as the [n] Map presents) with foure Whirl-pooles or In-draughts. Yea (as Master Dee addeth) at the Northerne

[1] *Of these see Hak. tom.* 1.

King Harald's children.

[n] *See pag. seq. Frier of Linne.*

Ilands, the Record whereof at his returne he gave to the King of England, the Booke being called Inventio fortunata or fortunæ, contayning a description from fiftie foure degrees to the Pole. I might also adde out of
Hen. 4. Thomas of Walsingham, the Travels of Henric Earle of Darbie, (afterwards Henrie the Fourth, King of England) into Prussia and Lettow, or Lithuania, where by his helpe especially was taken Vilna the chiefe Citie (Skirgalle the King of Lettow, having fled thither for refuge) his Colours being first advanced on the walls, foure thousand slaine, of which the King of Polands Brother, and three thousand captived. Also I might adde
T. of Woodstock. the Voyage of Thomas of Woodstocke Duke of Glocester, sonne to King Edward the Third, along the Coasts of Denmarke, Norway, and Scotland. Other Letters likewise of King Edward the Second to Haquin or Hacon, King of Norway in behalfe of English Merchants there arrested: with Entercourses betwixt the English and the Dutch Knights in Liefland. But having only briefe mentions of these, and them or the most of them recorded by Master
[III.iii.625.] Hakluyts industrie before, I doe here but Index-wise referre the Reader thither. I rather choose to give new things and rare: and such may seeme these Notes which Anno 1605. I writ from the mouth of Master George Barkeley.

Chap. XX.

A briefe Memoriall of the great Travells by Sea and Land, of Master George Barkley Merchant of London, in Europe, Asia, Africa, and America, and their Ilands.

BEeing a childe, he was transported into the East Countries, and the first place of his landing was Schagen, from thence unto Elsenore, a Towne as bigge as Brentwood, where the Danish Custome is taken; and where he hath seene at one time the Dane making stay of all shipping fourteene dayes, for ostentation to a forreigne Nobleman, seven hundred sayle. From thence to Coppenhagen, thence to Bornholme, thence to Danske, a Towne subject to the Pole, being in continuall buildings, if by any meanes they may fortifie themselves against the Hilles over-looking the Towne, a Rill running betweene, whence they have their fresh water: they spare no time Sunday nor other. There lyeth here in the Sea by casting up of sands a long Iland called Frishnering, where alongst, as on Samaiden, is gathered by the Danske Officers there, and here by the Jewes, that farme it of the Pole, Amber, cast up by the Sea in great abundance, pieces as bigge as a pecke, more or lesse. The Bores that find it and gather, have so many firkins of some other meane commoditie: and if they keepe and sell it, they dye for it. Hee hath seene one piece of Amber taken up, in the middest whereof was to be seene through the transparent Amber a Frog in similitude and full proportion: (Master Vassall, his brother, a friend of mine, told me of a piece of Timber in the keele of a ship, where by occasion of a sliver, one cutting nine inches within the Timber every way, he found a great living tode in the hollow thereof at Wool-

Schagen. *Elsenore.* *Coppenhagen.* *Dantzik.* *Amber.* *Salt.* [III.iii.626.] *A Frogge in a piece of Amber.*

wich); betwixt this Frishmering and the Land is a great water Frishhoff, where at Saint Georges day they begin to fish, of which there is exceeding plentie, and for three halfe pence one may buy a cast as much as they shall draw the next time. One here in his Net drew up a company or heape of Swallowes as bigge as a bushell fastned by the legs and bills in one, which being carried to their stoves, quickned and flew, and comming againe suddenly in the cold Aire dyed.

Strange report of Swallowes.

From Danske he went to Marienberg, a Towne also standing on the Vistle, whereby it runneth in another channell, and betwixt both these makes an Iland wherein stands Nerdeich, which Iland is compassed with a wall to fortifie it against the comming downe of the Vistle in the Spring at the thaw of the snowes, &c. This wall seemeth in some places as high as Paules Steeple, and other-where as high as Paules Church, where yet it hath sometime beene overflowne: full it is of Hoffes and Villages belonging to the Lords of Danske.

The Vistle.

High wall.

Marienberg.

Marienberg is a free Towne for Religion (Danske then professing only Lutheran) save certayne Friers and Nunnes living in Cloysters closely. There a Lutheran when he preacheth must make an end at his houre, and then a Jesuit preacheth to the Rom. Catholikes as long, the former both company, and Preacher being avoyded of himselfe, or by force. It was built by the Kreitzherne (Dei-parini milites) Knights of the Crosse, who having lost their footing in the Holy Land, [m] by consent of the Empire assaulted and conquered Prussia, being in this Conquest sixtie foure yeeres, who after carried themselves so tyrannously, that the people yeelded themselves to the Pole, and destroyed the Kreitzherne, save those that made a head about the North parts, with whom after some doubtfull fights, was made a league, that This Order should cease; Their Captayne should be married, and should have seventie two Townes in Prussia, to him and his Heires Males, and in defect of such Heires to returne to the Pole. His Townes are not adjoyned together, but the

Dutch Knights of our Ladie.

[m] *See Tom.* 1. *lib.* 8. [III.iii.627.]

Poles Townes betwixt. Kinningsburge is the Dukes Court.

Thence he went to Elbing, a faire Towne, where our Trade is now for Flaxe, which was before at Danske, thence removed for their insolencies. Here our men only pay Custome: others are free, and this they did voluntarily, and have in this respect very much authoritie amongst the Lords there: the Towne still flourisheth with buildings, &c.

Thence he went to Bransperg, (the Poles Towne) where *Bransperg.* is a Colledge of Jesuites: From this place to Kinningsberg, and thence to Liba in Curland, thence to Samaiden, and thence to Rica, or Rie in Liefland also (This Rica *Rigato.* is under the Pole); thence to Derpt, and thence to Revel. At Derpt he went to schoole three yeeres: it is under the Pole. Livonia is exceedingly distracted betwixt the Sweden, Russe, and Pole. King Stephen recovered part from the Russe, who before had partly killed, and partly *Russian* carried captive the Handicrafts men, in such desolate *cruelty.* manner, that the Townes are ruinate, the stone walls of Houses and Churches standing with trees of great bignesse growing through their uncovered roofes; the Woods (whereof they have excellent stately) being strowed with bones of dead carkasses; and himselfe did once in one of those Woods eate Honey out of a Mans skull wherein a swarme of Bees were, and bred as it hanged on a Tree. Hee conquered all save Revell: against which he made [III.iii.628.] a Castle with water and straw, the frost binding them *Revell.* together as fast as they were laid. The Countrey is *Straw Castle.* inhabited with the ancient Indigenæ, called Momese, and *Momese &* others of the Dutch called by them Sac's. Who by *Sac's.* occasion of shipwracke being cast on these Countries, did buy of the simple Inhabitants so much ground as a Rose hide, &c. so building in one place Revel, in another farre distant Rie, and so other Townes; by this meane commanding and subduing all the Countrie. Derpt was one Turfe of ground bought as before.

The Momeses are almost Salvadoes, retaining still their *Idolatry.*

old superstitions, as to worship the Sun, or the first Beast they meet with; and especially they have in religious reckoning their Leave.

This which they call Se-leave, or the Groves, is a company of Trees, which it is religious to touch; and he knew a Dutchman, Martin Yekell of Derpt, who breaking a bough was swelled a yeere together as big as his skinne would hold. Heere at Marriages and Burialls they pray, but without Image. Their marriage is thus. The man and his Bride are set stridling on a Horse, and blinded; and so led into Se-leave, there taken downe and married by their Rites; then set up againe, blinded as before, and conveyed with their company, and Musicke to their house, singing Kosoku Kosoku Coniku, seamoha: there taken downe and had to bed, still blinded till the next morrow, in the meane while they rest drinking, &c.

Marriage.

They mourne when one is borne, rejoyce and make merry at death. Their mourning (in Curland) is then, and when they walke alone, or fetch wood, Yerow, yerou yerou, masculine babe: the words themselves understand not, but thinke it to have remained since that Babylonish Towre. When the Momeses die, they are buried in their Leaves, with their knife under their arme, and their coate hanging over the grave. The Momeses are very ignorant, and aske who learne the Hares in the woods their prayers. At Rie the women have a thing of Red velvet on their heads, made like a Ship with the keele upward, at each end a lock of hayre.

The women of the Sacs differ in their fashion of attire each City from other, a pleted Petticote, with a damaske Upper-body, a velvet Square on their heads, and thereon a Cloke, &c. The maid uncovered, if she have had a child and refuse to goe covered, she is brought to the Pillory, her haire cut off, and there nayled, and a Kerchiefe put on. Here and in Norway, and in White Russia, &c. strangers pay nothing for entertainment, but salute, sit downe, and expect the Hosts expences. Their bed they must bring with them, which is commonly a Beares skin,

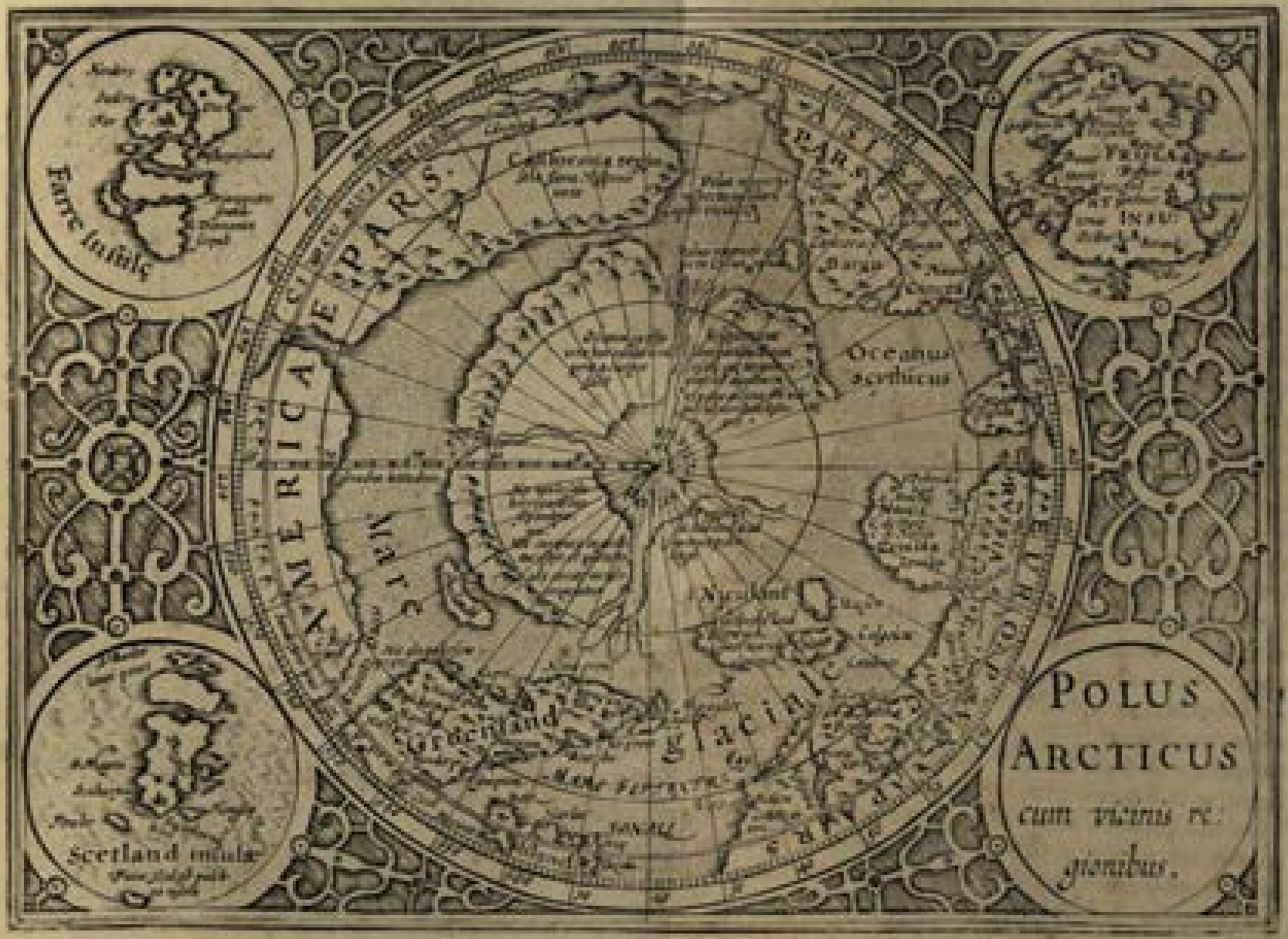
Hospitalitie.

or else they there have a locke of straw. To offer money is a disgrace, which yet might seeme to arise of the basenesse of the coyne. Their houses are all of Timber beames laid square, and others laid on them in notches, so till they come to the roofe, which they cover with straw, divided in two roomes; the inner being the Parlour or stove, where they have as it were one Oven over another: the middle hearth being of stones set grate-wise, the fire is put in on the Back-side or Hal-side, & there also the Sinke issueth. Before that mouth in the Stove is set a vessell of water, which, when they wil have the heat exceeding, they besprinkle on those hot stones. A fire lasteth a day, at night they renew it. Sometimes the old Prusees on the borders of Curland, according to their old heathenish Rites do sacrifice their Priest in fire. *Houses.*

From Derpt hee went to the Peibus, whereinto runne seventie two Rivers making a great Lake full of Fish. In the Peibus betweene Plesko and Narve, the Ships (whereof are many, and some an hundred Tunne, with one Mast) are sowed together with Osiers, having no Iron workes, called Boidacks. They goe to Markets in Sleds, where comming to a walled Towne, and waiting the opening of the Gates, the Sled is drawne in sometime, with his Master sitting as before starke dead with cold. Thence he went to Narve, which runneth out of this Lake, where the River being twice so bigge as the Thames, hath a fall a mile steepe on a Rocke. Here the Sweden (as is reported) made a Bridge over with the bodies of Russes, as the Russe had done before with his owne people about 40000. hence to Ivanogrod. These 40000. were onely bearded men slaine, &c. not women or children; these hee dashed by the heeles, the dryed braines whereof hee hath seene on the wals, &c. these all out of two Townes, Narve and Ivanogrod. The Castle of Ivanogrod is so fortified, that it must bee thrice conquered before conquered, and built in a yeere, of Stone, which none else is in Russia. Hence hee went to Yeraslave, where he and *Peibus.* *Sowed Ships.*

his companion were apprehended by the Russes, for travelling without licence, and as they came at any Towne, blinded, and after some feares sent thence into Letto, or Lithuania: passing through Woods full of Beasts, Beares, &c. none hurtfull but en luxe, a kind of ounce or Cat-a-mountaine, with a tayle a handfull long, spotted, as big as a Dogge, in forme like a Cat, which would from off a tree leap on Travellers and kill them. Here they came to the Weild or Vilna, the chiefe Citie where the old Dutchesse a Calvinist (whom therefore they called the English Queen) kept her Court. Her two sons being summoned to the Parliament in Poland, went garded with 30000. Here they usually steale their wives; a man viewing one to his content comes with his company to the place where she dwels, and lies in ambush till night when she comes forth to make water, and then they catch her, and on a Sled carry her away, &c. her friends not knowing what is become of her perhaps a moneth, and yet know what to suspect because of the custome. Their Churches are thin, and in the Villages they have a Crosse of Wood, with a Pentise, and a Crucifixe, and there say they their prayers once perhaps in a quarter, having a Priest come to them, or they goe to him in their Church twenty miles off. They worship also a Snake, which they keepe up in their houses, saying, they have reason for it, because it keepes their children: these Snakes goe often into the Woods, and thence returne, and before the fire vomit up milke, which the men eate. Here they hunt the Vrochs, and other beasts. When the Lord will hunt, his Tenants or Slaves (as they are heere, and in Sweden, Poland, &c.) doe make fires in the Woods, bringing the beasts into a corner, & there they assault them. From Vilna he went to Grodno in the Mase, where are the best Poles souldiers, & they are Roman Catholikes. From hence to Cracovia. From thence to Warsovia, where is a Bridge (covered over with a Pentice, where toll is paid, twice so long as London Bridge) over Vistula, which soone after he was passed over, brake, and there were drowned many

Letto. *Vilna.* [III.iii.629.] *Hunting.*



HONDIUS HIS MAP OF THE ARCTIKE POLE, OR NORTHERNE WORLD

HONDIUS HIS MAP OF THE ARCTIKE POLE, OR NORTHERNE WORLD

Polonish Gentlemen that came thither to the Parliament at that time there assembled.

To this Parliament came a Tartar to sue for his two daughters, taken captive by the Christians: but not speeding he returned; and with him went our Author Master George Berkley, and stayed with him sixe moneths. This Tartar lived with his hord of about a thousand housholds of a kindred. They sowed a three square graine (Totarke) had cattle, lived at ease, every day hunting; these worshipped Mahomet. Their manner is to make sudden Inrodes on the Christians, and prey on them, who therefore are readie for such assaults: the Polonish Gentleman at dinner having his two Peeces by him, and his Servingmen, which are Souldiers with their Peeces also, when the Christians make head against them, they cannot most what find them. They are resolute, and wil ride with their Bowes in face of a Peece. If this Tartar could have gotten his daughters, he would have bestowed one on him, &c. if he would have lived with him, and he said he never lived in all his life so pleasantly as with these Tartars. Hee returned into Poland againe. In Poland all are Gentlemen and Slaves. Punishable it is not for their Gentlemen to keepe Concubines, whose children they bring up as their other, save that they doe not inherit. There is freedome of religion. So many Cranes feathers as they weare in their Hats, so many Tartars or Turkes are holden to be slaine by them. No Townes very strong but Cammeniecx built within a Rocke, the light let in at holes. The Turke went over it but could not win it.

His going into Tartaria.

[III.iii.630.]

The Polanders had a great murraine of beasts attributed to the Jewes: two Jewes comming to a woman offered her mony for some of her milke, she answered, her child but then sucked, they left their glasse there, promising to fetch it anon and to satisfie her: her husband meane while comming home and seeing so strange a thing as a glasse, asked from whence it came, and why; being answered two Jewes had left it there for milke for a medicine, bid her fleet Cowes milke and fill the glasse:

which the Jewes receiving, and having entertained a Boy, caused him to climbe up one of the Ladders which there stand together with their three square gallowes made of stone, with woodden rafters crosse, and to poure it into the mouth of one of the dead men (which there alway hang after execution) his mouth, who presently cryed like a beast, as the boy revealed, and they thereupon cryed they were cosined: a murren followed which should have been a plague. Many Jewes executed for it; which yet the Jewes said to bee a pretence for their money. The Jewes that farmed the Custome at Samaiden in Curland, killed a Polonish Merchant without punishment, beating out his braines for delaying to open his packe. Hee returned

Torne. out of Poland into Prussia to Torne, the first place obtained by the Kreitzherne, where they built a Castle about an Oake which standeth there still, but is dead. Thence along the Vistle (where the Poles have their Masts, &c. with wares three miles together tyed downe the streame) to Dantzike; thence into Pomerland farre more barren then Prussia, to Cassubia, Cosslin, Colberg. Thence to Statin, every way exceeding pleasant and good. Thence to Rostock in Meckelberg. Thence to Lubeck, a fairer Citie then Danske, so to Oldsloe, to Hamberg, to Breme, to Limenberg, to Mansuelt, to Bamberg, and thence through Bohemia into Silesia, to Bresslaw, where hee went to schoole three yeeres: whence into Polonia againe, and thence to Pruss. Thence home into England.

Norway. Hee went againe into Norway, to Nilus, Bashus, &c. It is a barren soyle, as being nothing but Rockes and Valleyes: the Rockes are covered with grasse, and the ground betweene they digge and sow with Corne, which yet is not able to satisfie the Country. The difference

[III.iii.631.] betweene the Gentlemen and Bore, is in his command, being otherwise, as raggedly apparrelled as hee, with twentie patches on his breech, and barefoot in winter.

Sweden. In Sweden he was, at Stockholm the chiefe Citie. These

**When he was there.* now * under Duke Charles, hold warre with their King, yet all things passing under his name, but so hating the

Poles, that though of another Nation, neither the long attire, neither their Curb, or hooked Sword can passe safely among the Bores for suspition of being Poles: and the rather because they were made beleeve that the Pole was ayded against them by the Tartars that were man-eaters. They are strong in shipping and had given the Dane the overthrow at the battle at Bornaholm, had he not beene assisted by the Lubeckers with money, &c. One also of whose Ships with a shot fired and blew up the Admirall of the Sweden. The Lubeckers therefore pay no custome to the Danes, and for their costs hold Boraholm till they be satisfied out of the Revenewes thereof.

In Sweden (as in Friesland and other those Countries) the Lord holdeth the other his Tenants as Villaines and Slaves, and at his pleasure ships their Horses and Daughters to Revell, and there sells them; a bushell and halfe a Culmet of Salt for a women, which yet is of person and complexion very comely, and very able to doe worke. He came againe to Leefland; and thence to Finland, where hee was with an English Captaine in a Castle: and thence into Livonia, and so into Russia, &c.

His other travells.

Besides those his Easterne travels, he hath bin in our neerer neighbor places, as in Belgia, France, Spaine, Portugall, &c. and passed to the West Indies by the Ilands of Cape Verd: in three of which S.S. Anton., Vincent, Lucie, the Inhabitants cannot prosper nor live long, save in those Ilands which yet are unkind to other forrainers. He hath also beene in Guinea, in Barbary, in the Straits, at Carthage, where the old ruines remaine, and the stones of Marble, &c. worth the bringing home, in Italy, Slavonia, Morea, at Venice often, at Ferrara, Padua, Mat. Angelo, thence to Fermo, to Loretto (where he visited the Ladie of Loretto) it is one street, walled about, the Temple faire, and in the Temple of our Ladies house, inscriptions innumerable of divers languages, affirming it to have fled the Turkes conquests from Jury into Sclavonia, and from thence also hither. Here forsooth it was placed in a piece of ground belonging to two Brethren, which because of

Loretto.

this new quest and request could not agree on the proprietie: and to avoyde further suite, in the night it was found remooved to a vacant place by the high-way, and there this Temple built whither resort Pilgrimes in troopes, as to a Mart from divers Nations. The street on one side all Innes, on the other makers of Images, Beades, and such other holy bables heere sanctified by touch of Madonne.

The Temple is hanged about with Monuments of her exploits, upon vowes conceived in distres of Warres, Diseases, &c. heere hang the old Swords, &c. There are two Vestries of incredible wealth, and Priests of divers Nations for their proper Pilgrimes. The House low and meane builded with white Brickes, such as in Barbarie they burne in the Sun. There are two roomes, in one whereof the Chimney where shee dressed her meate, and her dishes, &c. In the other her selfe, or statue with a Childe, aloft of blacke colour: to whom one whose office it is, on a staffe like a Musket-rest doth lift up Beades, &c. by her touch to bee hallowed. The French Queene sent her a Present to hang about her necke, which present would pull her in peeces by the weight. It is round, two foot in diameter made like a Sunne, in the center a Carbuncle, the rest set with Diamonds, the rayes pointed with orient Pearles, the Brickes (miraculously) cannot bee remooved, to which end they report of a Bishops superstitious steale: who was not able to passe without restitution.

Travelling in divers places of Italy, Rome, &c. hee returned by the Alpes, from Venice to Mestre, thence to Trevise, so to Seravalle, a Towne of Blade-smithes, which with Water-workes grinde and hammer their Mettals: *Alpes.* thence up the Alpes by a passage so narrow cut out of the Rocke, that sometime the Horse hoofe hung over, it beeing a steepe mile high, a River running under. Thus to Basill, thence backe to Tiroll.

After all these travels in these parts of Europe better knowne, and those others in the more unknowne, and in Africa and America, hee much affecting the Virginia busi-

nesse and especially that of Bermuda, went thither to order publike affaires. And after all this (as you have heard) went in place of Cape Merchant to the East Indies, and being Captaine of the English House at Bantam, there and thence travelled to his long home. This I thought good to adde to the former relations, which I received many yeeres since from his owne mouth, beeing my loving and familiar friend, and for a generall Traveller by Sea and Land, in hote and cold Countries of the old and new world, not easily matchable. Had hee lived, I would have better perfected these short Notes; but Death it selfe hath not taken from mee his love, shall not from the world his memory; I rather chusing to give the world these unpolished Notes, as his, then either to burie them with him, or by refining and illustrating to make them mine. The best illustration seemes that of Mappes, some of which out of Hondius I have added.

Chap. XXI. [III.iii.632.]

Collections out of Martin Broniovius de Biezerfedea sent Ambassadour from Stephen King of Poland, to the Crim Tartar: Contayning a Description of Tartaria, or Chersonesus Taurica, and the Regions subject to the Perecop or Crim Tartars, with their Customes private and publike in Peace and Warre.

BRaslaw is a Towne in Podolia with a Castle, numbreth above five hundred Inhabitants, good Gunners, and well exercised in Tartarian skirmishes. They are good Guides in the Playnes to avoyde the Tartars and Kozackes. From thence thorow Woods not very thicke, after some miles journey to the small River Silnica, where the Braslawens keepe good guard alwayes against the Excursions of the Tartars and Walachians. Downe the River

The fields Savramenses and Oczacovienses, betwixt the Rivers Bogus and Nester.

Bogus or Hipanis, you may goe almost to Oczacow. In the way are the Rivers Tristenet, Bersad, Olsank, Sauran (whence they are called the Fields of Sauran) a stone Bridge and Bathe sometimes belonging to Vitoldus, Great Duke of Lithuania, ruines and graves, Sinawod Riveret, the strong rockie Ile Probite, a good refuge for ours against the Tartars (the Braslawens in May and June, use there and in the other many Ilands of Bogus to fish, armed with their Pieces) Certelna River the greater and the lesse, and that of Capcacley, and Hancocricus (the Tartars call it Cham) and the Lake Berezania. That Field is fiftie miles, or as they call it seven dayes journey to a speedie traveller, from Braslaw to Oczacow. There are wilde Beasts, Bisonts, Elkes, Horses, Harts, Rammes with one horne, Goates, Swine, Beares: which ten yeeres since were sayd to bee killed with the sharpnesse of the Winter, and huge heapes of their bones are found in the fields. They had also innumerable herds of Horses, Turkish and Tartarian; Kine and Sheepe which fedde there, by the borderers of Russia, Volsinia, Kiow, Podolia, and Moldavia, not long since destroyed. The hills called Mogili, are testimonies of Burials and Warres. The Field is fertile, rich of pasture and pleasure.

Long miles in those parts: and so understand in the rest of this storie.

Sharpe winter.

[III.iii.633.] Passing over Prut or Hieras, a River of Moldavia, you come to Stepanovetia or Jassi, chiefe Towne of Valachia; or righter to Prutum Technia, a Towne and Fort of the Turkes, not long since fortified on the Nester; and there are found some Moldavian passages in the Nester, right into the champaines. It diffuseth it selfe into the Lake Vidovo or Obidovo (so called, as some fabulously conceive of Ovidius) and soone after disembokes into the Euxine Sea, over against Bialogrod (named by the antients Moncastrum) not long since taken by the Turkes, from the Valachian or Moldavian Princes, & holden by them. In the very mouth of Tyras or Nester, bearing name of Neoptolemus as may seeme by Strabo, who there-awayes placeth Nicovia on the right hand, and Ophiusa on the left hand of the River.

Part of Moldavia or the lower Valachia, called sometimes Bessarabia.

Lake Vidovo in Nester.

Bialogrod.

After followeth Beriboneum with deepe and large ditches neere the Sea, washed by the Lake where sometimes was a good Port. Adzigoli hath three Ditches, many salt Lakes nigh the Sea, where many Cozaks resort and often kill each other in mutuall warres and quarrels, which makes it terrible to Travellers. Then follow Domnina Dolnia, and the Lake Berezania, and the Bay Carcinitus. Strabo placeth five hundred furlongs in the Sea, from the mouth of Tyras the Iland Leuca sacred to Achilles.

Beriboneum.

Adzigola.

Domnina Berezania, Carcinitus, Leuca.

Oczacovia called antiently Olbia, Olbis, and Olbiopolis, is seated on Boristhenes or the Carcenite Bay; sometimes builded by the Meletians: the Tower is of Stone, the Towne but meane, is subject to the Turkes. Boristhenes or Neper, a deepe, wide and swift streame, runneth from the North into the Bay, and neere to Oczacovia into the Euxine. Foure miles higher Bogus empties it selfe into Boristhenes. There the Turkes exact Customes. The Isthmus betwixt Boristhenes and the Sea, is a dayes journey over sandie plaines, with Hills, Lakes, Salt-pits; with Deeres, Beares, Goates, wilde Swine well stored. It is extended to Perecopia above thirtie miles in length, containing Medowes, Rivers, and Tartarian Cottages (which they call ulnsi) made of small pieces of wood, daubed with mud or myre and dung of beasts, and thatched with reed. The Tartars live not in them in Summer and Autumne, but in April begin their progresse, with their wives, children, slaves, and houses which are round, covered with clothes, scarsly commodious for foure or five men, carried on two-wheeled carts, with one or two Camels or Oxen, together with their houshold. They carry with them Camels, Horses, Flockes, and Herds innumerable, leaving others in commodious pastures. They goe towards Perecopia, and sometimes into Taurica, or over against Perecopia, to Ossow or Azaph, as the Turkes call it, a Towne by the Don (Tanais, a great and swift River) sometimes fortified by the Greekes, and since by the Genuois; where the Turkes now have a Garrison, and a

Oczacovia.

Boresthenes or Neper.

Bogus.

The Isthmus.

Their houses and pasture-progress.

Tanais or Don.

Commander. They alway travell into the Isthmus, or the large Plaines which are betwixt Boristhenes, and the Lake Meotis, and the Pontike Sea, where they find best pastures. In October the raines, colds, and perpetuall windes force them to returne to their Cottages. For they are afraide of our Nizovian Cozaks, which passe downe the streame in Boats, and the Gunners, which then make incursions on them. Neper is frozen over in Winter. Ptolemey calls that Isthmus, Zenos Chersonesus, and Strabo writes that the Roxans and Roxolans (whom we call Russians) pastured those Fields twixt Tanais and Boristhenes (describing their life like that of these later Tartars).

Perecopia. Perecopia (antiently called Eupatoria, Pompeiopolis, Holy Grove, Achilles Race, Græcida, Heraclea) is seated in the confines of Taurica, or the Scythian Chersonesus, the Towne obscure and small, the Tower of stone, not well fortified; in which the Tartar Chans have their perpetuall Palatine or Beg, which keepeth the Marches and passages of Boristhenes and Don, with all the borders, and is Generall Lieutenant over all the Tartars in the Playnes adjoyning. Strabo writes that there was a deepe Ditch made, whence the Towne had, and still in the Tartarian and Turkish language hath the name. When Sachinbgierei raigned there (hee overthrew the Nagay Tartars at Perecopia with a memorable victory) there were seventeene stone Forts raised in that Ditch, some of them of the Skuls of the slayne, and the ditch repayred. Heere the Tartars keepe continuall Guard, permitting no Stranger thence to passe without the Chans Letters. And there in occasions of Warres is their principall assembling.

Cosslow. Coslow is seven miles distant on the right hand, on the shore, where the Chan hath a perpetuall garrison.

Ingermanum. Ingermenum is hence twelve miles or more: it hath a stone Fort, a Temple, and Vaults under the Castle and over against it, with wonderfull Art cut in the stone, being situate in a great and high Mountaine; and there-

HONDIUS HIS MAP OF BORUSSIA OR PRUSSIA

HONDIUS HIS MAP OF BORUSSIA OR PRUSSIA

fore the Turkes give it the name of the Vaults. It hath beene a wealthy Towne. Over against it the Promontorie trendeth some furlongs broad, and three or foure miles long. There appeare evident signes in the stonie Mountaines, that the ancient Greekes thence cut huge stones and carried them by Ships to build Chersona a Citie in *Cherrona.* those times famous, as the Greeke Christians still report. The Heraclians of Pontus sent thither a Colony. The Fort of Ingermenum was also built by the Greekes, as appeareth by Greeke Inscriptions and Scutcheons therein: and thorow all the Isthmus to the walls were sumptuous buildings, and innumerable Wells digged. There were also two great High-wayes or Causies of stone. There were many good Vineyards and Gardens, now called Belbec, and possessed by Greeke Christians, or Italians, and Jewes, and a few Turkes. Of the ruines the Turkes and Tartars make great Stalls and Enclosures for their beasts. This Cheronesus, Corsunum, or Chersona the Turkes called Sari Germenum, or Yellow Tower of the [III.iii.634.] colour of that Tract; whereof admirable ruines remaine to testifie the quondam splendor. There are channells or conduits of hewen stone under ground foure miles to the Citie walls, still containing cleere water. From a place where is a Village of note, and not farre off, neere the Sea is a Greeke Monastery of Saint George, with anniversarie devotion frequented of the Greekes remaining in Taurica with great concourse. The Citie hath not beene inhabited these many ages; the Walls and Towers sumptuously built are yet seene entire. But the Turks carry thence excellent Marble, and Serpentine Columnes and great stones by Sea, for the use of their publike and private buildings. Of the Temples the very ruines are utterly ruined, and the houses lye buried in that Monument and Selfe-sepulchre.

The walls of a Greeke Monasterie remayne very large, but without roofe, and the ornaments spoyled. The Russian and Polonian Chronicles relate that Volodomir, great Duke of the Russians or Kiov, carried thence two *Kiov.*

doores of Corinthian Brasse, and some artificiall Greeke Images which Broleslaus the second King of Poland translated from Kiov to Gnesna, there yet in the great Church to be seene. Volodimir tooke that Citie from John Zemisca the Constantinopolitan Emperour: but after, marrying Anna the sister of Emperour Basilius, and being baptized in that Monastery after the Greeke Rites by a certayne Patriarch, hee restored it, as is still related by the Christian remainders in those parts. Before the Citie was the Promontorie Parthenium with a Temple and Image of that Goddesse, and other Antiquities by Strabo related.

Parthenium.

The Citie Balachei, or Jamboli.

That which the Greekes called Jamboli, the Turkes have stiled Balachei, as the Towre of fishes, in regard of the plentie in that Sea. It was fortified in a high, great and stonie Mountayne by the Genuois, whiles the proud cowardly Grecians which held that part of Taurica quarrelling amongst themselves, lost it to them. There they had a notable Port, a strong and sumptuous Fortresse; and there the Towres, houses and walls with the Genuois Ensignes and Inscriptions, lye ruined. It is now inhabited of a few Greekes, Jewes and Turkes, and frequented by fewer Merchants and strangers by Sea.

Marcopia, or Mangat a City.

Marcopia stretcheth further to the Mountaynes, and Woods, and is not so neere the Sea: it hath had two Castles, Greeke Temples and Houses sumptuous, with many cleere Rils running out of the stone: but eighteene yeeres after that the Turkes had taken it (as the Greeke Christians affirme) it was destroyed by a sudden and horrible fire. Neither had any thing remayned of note but the higher Fort, in which is a goodly Gate, adorned with Greeke writing and store of Marble, and a high house of stone. Into that house the Messengers of the Muscovites are by the barbarous Chans sometimes thrust, and there endure hard keeping. There remaynes the Greeke Church of Saint Constantine, and another meane one of Saint George. One Greeke Priest and some Jewes and Turkes dwell there; Oblivion and Ruine hath

devoured the rest; nor are there men or Stories of the quondam Inhabitants, which I with great care and diligence every-where sought in vaine. An old Priest which I saw there, said that a little before the Turkes besieged it, two Greeke Dukes of the Imperiall bloud of Constantinople or Trapezond, there resided, which were after carried alive into Constantinople, and by Selim the Turkish Emperour slaine. In the Greeke Churches on the walls are painted Imperiall Images and Habits. The Tower and Citie Marcopia is nigh to Cercessigermenum a new Turkish Fort taking name from Cercessium; but the Turkes, and Tartars, and Greekes also have now lost the name. The Greeke Dukes are said to have there committed much wickednesse. And in that stony Hill whereon it is seated, it hath houses cut with admirable Artifice in the Rocke, which still for the most part remayne entire, although the place be become wooddie. A Temple adorned with Marble and Serpentine Pillars, now laid prostrate on the ground, testifie the quondam glorie.

Cercessigermenum.

Admirable Vaults.

The Palaces or Houses of the Chans reach unto the Mediterranean Taurica (as Strabo cals it.) It hath a famous Towne, and a principall Store-house, called Baccasaray, wherein he perpetually resideth. That Towne is situated betweene two Mountaynes, and a little River flowes betweene, whereof the Towne is named. There is a stone Mosche, and the Chans Sepulchres built within the Townes Liberty of the Christians ruines. Not farre also from that Towne there is a Mahometan Monasterie, and very many Tartarian Graves curiously raysed out of the Grecian ruines. In the further end of that Towne, there is another Towne called Salaticum, adorned with faire buildings by the Turkes there inhabiting. The Royall Seate or Mansion of the Chans is sumptuously garnished by the ancient Tartarian Princes with Houses, Temples, Sepulchres, and exquisite Baths. When the Princes with their Wives, oft give themselves to ease, pastimes, pleasures, and recreation, they go thither. For

Baccasaray.

Salaticum.

that place or Region is commodious for huntings, it hath Orchards, Vineyards, Gardens, and many store of good grounds, and it is watered with Chrystaline streames. There are Mountaynes and store of Woods, wherein are seene very many ruines of Houses, and large Forts and Cities, yet they remayne desert, and are of few or none inhabited.

Almassarai. Almassaray at the meeting of the River Alma, is a house of the Kings, where he is woont not often to reside, because he lives not there so commodiously, as in other places, and cannot lodge there with his Court: for there is only one base Village. There are some more obscure bordering Townes and Fortresses, where they are woont [III.iii.635.] to maintayne their Wives. Also not a few Castles where the Sultans, the Chans brothers, or their sonnes and wives perpetually dwell. That part of Chersonesus, which the *Perecopia.* Chan with his Tartars possesse from Perecopia, toward the *Cremum.* Fenne or Lake to the Citie Cremum, is cultivated, plaine, champian, fertile, and plentifull of grasse; but toward the Sea and the Palace of the Chan, and his Townes, Castles, and Villages, the Countrey is Mountaynous, woodie, well husbanded, and very fruitfull. The Mountaynes in that Coast are huge and remarkable. But the greatest is the highest of all, and hath in the top a Lake of no small quantitie. And although I did not ascend it, yet it is well discerned many miles off, and demonstrates no ordinary height and greatnesse. Plentie of Rivers and no small ones runne from those Mountaynes. Also they have much fish, but not of any greatnesse (for the River is shallow) yet very savourie and daintie. But because the Tartars doe not often feed on fish, the Christians only and our strangers when they come thither take paines to catch them. There is also abundance of delicious Fowles, which sometimes Christian or Turkish Gunners are woont to seeke after, seldome our strangers. There is much game of Harts, Goates, Boares, and Hares neere the Sea under the Tartars and Turkes. Oftentimes also the Chan himselfe is wont to hunt some dayes there, but more often

he goes into the champion with Turkish and Tartarian hunting Dogges.

Sortassus is a Tartarian Village adjoyning to the Chans Regall Mansion, wherein the Lettow and Muscovie Ambassadors doe often lodge; it is spacious and delightsome. But when Taurica or the Peninsula beganne subject to the Chans Dominion, divers Italian Gentlemen Genuois after Capha was taken by the Turkes, or Tartar Princes, having their Charters written and sealed of their right and proprietie (which I have seene among them) they held that Village with speciall Priviledges, or purchased it with that Gold which they carried with them out of their Countrey, or with their service to the Chans. In going Ambassador to Christian Princes, it was permitted them to build a Catholike Temple in that Village, wherein I sometimes entred while I abode there. There was in that Temple one Priest a Franciscan Fryer, whom those Christians had then redeemed with their money from Turkish slaverie. *Sortassus.*

Cremum, or as the Tartars call it Crimum, is a Citie and a Castle much unlike in the antiquitie, magnitude, and height of the wall, amplenesse and renowme, to the other Cities of Taurica; It is unlike the Mediterranean (for so Ptolomie cals it) perhaps this was called by Ptolomie Taphros, but by Plinie Taphræ. Now in these latter times before the comming of the Genoes into Taurica, it seemes to have beene husbanded and inhabited by a great Mahometan Nation, who remooved thither out of Asia. For there are seene ancient Mosches or Mahometan Temples not only in the Citie it selfe, but also beyond the Citie very many with Chaldaicke Characters engraven in great stones. There are very few Turkish or Tartar Inhabitants, yet the Greekes are fewer, who report this, that their Ancestors have constantly delivered, that that Citie was whilome dwelt in by the Persian Nation, and that it was a quondam noble and excellent Store-house of Mechanick Mysteries. A man may certainly conjecture by the ruines and largenesse of the place that it hath beene *Cremum.*

a famous Citie and a great Colonie of people. The
Crim Tartars why so called. Tartars are now vulgarly nominated from that place Crims. They have a Mint in that Citie. In the Towre which is the greatest in the Citie, the Chans wives are alway kept and spend their lives.

Sidagios or Sudacum. Sidagios of the Greekes, but Sudacum of the Genoes, was called a Castle and Citie. The Tartars are utterly ignorant of it. In a loftie rockie and spacious Mountaine standing neere the Sea in the top of it, it hath a higher Towre, a second indifferent, and a third of baser esteeme. The Greekes or Italian Genoes founded their Castles environed and fortified with Walls and Towres. There are seene innumerable Grecian Churches, and seene but few, as though they were Chappels, not a few undemolished, but very many are ruinated, and lye overturned in the dust. The haughtie dissentious and idle Greekes being overthrowne and weakened by the Italian Genoes, lost that Citie. There are seene no contemptible signes of the Genoes much more illustrious then those of the Greekes.

But it is evident by the ruines, that it was once a famous place, & so it is reported by the Greek Christians, of whom there are a very few Relikes. Moreover, many Christians have erected a multitude of Temples which they report to have beene some hundreds. There are three great Catholike Churches, Houses, Walls, Gates, and faire Towres with Arrace and Ensignes of the Genoes, are seene in the lower Castle. I heard from a certayne Metropolitane a Greeke and an honest man, who then came thither from the Grecian Iles to visit their Priests, and entertayned mee, That when the most barbarous Nation of the Turks had besieged that Citie with a great Armada, it was valiantly and manfully defended by the Genoes: but when the Genoes could no more hold out the daily siege and famine, neither could longer sustaine the violence of such a great Armie of Turkes, some hundreds, or, as hee avouched, about a thousand stout-hearted men conveyed themselves into the greatest Church which yet

abides entire, and some dayes hardly and couragiously preserving themselves in the lower Towre, into which the Turkes forceably entred, having made a notorious and memorable slaughter of the Turkes, at the length they were all slaine in that Temple. The doores and windowes of that Temple being stopt up with a wall by the Turkes, the slaine bodies lye unburied to this day. I was prohibited by the Saniak of Capha sometimes a Turke, that [III.iii.636.] I should not enter into that Temple. The Custome of the Citie is not meane: it hath very fruitfull Vineyards and Orchards, which doe extend above two miles, now manured by Caphaes, Turkes, Jewes, and Christians: For the best Wine of all Taurica growes there; all that tract abounds with pleasant Rivers, which runne downe from the highest and middle Mountaynes and Woods, which are there very frequent.

Having now passed over those upper Cities, and at the last Sudaco, also as farre as Theodosia, which the Italian Genoes call Capha, the banke of Taurica is in Longitude a thousand furlongs, craggie, mountaynous, and tempestuous with North windes. Before the Citie the Promontorie that is there seene, doth hang out into the Sea on the South-side toward Paphlagonia, and the Citie Amastrum, and Strabo relates, that it is called of the Greekes, Orium and Oxon, the Rammes forehead. And *Orium and Oxon.* there is another Promontorie Carambis of the Paphlagonians opposite to it, whereby the Euxine Sea is divided into the double Sea, and Euripus straightens them both. Strabo sayth, that Carambis is distant from the Citie of the Cherenesitay, two thousand five hundred furlongs, but from the Rammes forehead, a farre lesser quantitie. Behind that hilly Countrey, as Strabo calls it, hee affirmes the Citiẽ Theodosia to bee founded, and that it hath large Fields notable for fertilitie, and a Haven able to receive a hundred Ships, and that that Limit was assigned to the territorie of the Bosphorines and Taurikes.

Capha or Theodosia, is the excellentest and best *Theodosia, nowe Capha.* defensed Citie of all Taurica. It was built by the Italian

Genoes, and is placed by the Sea. It hath a Haven alway frequented. It is perspicuous, that in the times of the Genoes, it was a wealthy and populous Citie. But after it was taken from the Genoes by the Turkes above a hundred yeeres since, the Italian Christians were brought into such a straight, that there are but a very few and obscure remaines of them left. The Citie hath in a manner lost her pristine splendour. The Romish Churches of Christians are demolished, the Houses cast downe, the Walls and Towers, wherein are seene many tokens of honour of the Genoes and Latine inscriptions, are fallen. Onely two Catholicke Temples and two Armenian remayne whole, in which it is granted them of the Turke, after their owne custome to maintaine their proper Priests, and to bee present at their publike devotions. It is replenished with Turkes, Armenians, Jewes, but very few Italian and Greeke Christian Inhabitants: Now also it is famous over all that part of Taurica for Navigation and the Haven. It hath almost innumerable Vineyards, Orchards and Gardens. Men sayle often to Capha, from all the bordering and remote Ilands of Greece, but oftner from the Citie Constantinople; for with a prosperous winde they come thither by Ship, in the space of two dayes or little more.

Petigorenses or Colchis.

The Petigoren Province, or Colchis is inlarged, as farre as the Caspian or Hircan Sea, and is much subject to Mountaines and very large Woods, which are now seene in these Confines. It is a very free people, and hath many brave Commanders, to whom all the Nations and Families obey. Moreover they professe themselves Christians, and it is manifest in the time of the Genoes very many of them were Christians, but now wanting Priests and Churches, they onely retayne the opinion of Religion.

Idolaters.

Most and the greatest part of them are Idolaters, amongst themselves rapacious and cruell, but to Strangers hospitall and free-hearted. The Parents, although they bee of the more Noble or of the Rustickes, sell their owne Children, their Sonnes for Slaves, their Daughters

HONDIUS HIS MAP OF LIVONIA OR LIEFLAND

for Wives to the Turkes and Tartars, also to many Christians, and those which they are wont to steale secretly among themselves, they sell closely beyond the Sea to barbarous strangers after a more then barbarous manner.

Betweene Perecopia, Cremum, and Customa, are Townes on the North. Taurica or the Peninsula is exceeding plaine, not very hilly, and altogether champaine. It hath a very fertile soyle, in great part stonie, but great scarcitie of good water. Yet there are found in divers places very many extraordinarie deepe Fountaynes or Wells of a wonderfull profunditie and difficultie, in times past digged and made by the elder Greekes, or those great and antique Nations, who inhabited the Peninsula before the Greekes. *Deepe Wells.*

From Perecopia the space of a mile, there is a great Lake congealed naturally of admirable Salt, from whence the purest and best Salt is continually gathered, as if it were frozen; it hath many other Salt lakes. In certayne commodious and in very many places, in Mountaynes and Groves are found in great number, ancient huge Grecian ruines of Castles, Cities, Temples and Monasteries, which while they have many ages beene destitute of inhabitants, by reason of their antiquitie, have lost their names. All Taurica or that Peninsula, from the West and North is plaine and champaine, and hath few Townes, many Villages; extends in length the summe of fiftie miles. But from the South and East, it is mountaynous and wooddie, and hath every where marvellous high, large, stony Mountaynes. In which, betweene Cremum and Capha, it is reported that veynes of Gold and Silver, and the best Iron, were whilom found by the Inhabitants. It hath a very fruitfull ground, Floods, delightsome Rivers, Fishes, Meadowes, Pastures, abundance of wilde Beasts, Harts, Goates, Boares, Beares, Vineyards, Orchards, Territories, Champaines, Townes, Villages, Hamlets, many and large Granges. Taurica or the Peninsula, is spread in Latitude after a sort into a circle; in some places, the *Salt Lake.*

distance of one or two dayes journey, but in most places about the quantitie of one.

[III.iii.637.] The Castles and Sea-cities, and the rest of all the Peninsula, which are described in their order, with many Villages and Hamlets of Greeke Christians, except the Holds and Sea-townes, and many lesse suspected walled Townes in Perecopia and Casslovia, and a few Villages of Greeke Christians, are subject to the Turkish Emperour, and all obey his behests, and are kept with a sure Garrison. The Peninsula, which lyes in the middle from the East and South against Perecopia, hath a milde winter and temperate ayre. For in the end of December is the beginning of winter, but in the midst of Februarie the sharpenesse of winter, which is more snowie then cold, or subject to Ice, neither yet doth that endure above three dayes together, neither continues it any longer then to the beginning of March. Therefore about the beginning of the Spring, and alway in a hot Autumne the ayre is very contagious.

In Bratislavia, the Sauranen, Oczacovien, and Bialodogroden, Plaines are situate betweene Hipanis or Bogus, Tyra or Nester. From the North toward Neper or Boristhenes and Bogas, are somewhat plaine and champion grounds, but from the West towardes the River Nester and Pruth or Hierasus, more wooddie and hilly. Podolia, Camenecia and Moldavia betweene the streames Nester and Pruth, every where border on the middle Tachnia and Bialogrod, which is by the Lake Vidovo or Obidovo, and the Euxine Sea, on the West confine on the Plaines, and on the Euxine Sea, on the South Bralogrod, Kibia, and the River Danubius. Oczacovia hath on the North Boristhenes, (into which Bogus there dischargeth it selfe) and spatious Plaines, on the South the Euxine Sea, and the overflowing Salt meere Berezania, from the West the adjoyning River Nester.

Further, that Continent which is betweene Oczacovia and Boristhenes in the fashion of an Ile, hath into the West Boristhenes, as though it were betweene Boristhenes,

the Fen Meotis, and the Euxine Sea; on the North the Rivers Tanais or Donum, on the South the Euxine Sea, and that Isthmus or Continent, but beyond Oczacovia and Boristhenes, as far as Perecopia, that Continent is verie narrow in many places: but beyond Perecopia to the Castle Ossonum, a ranke soyle, and all champion and plaine: For in that neck of Land almost all the Perecopian and Ossoven Tartars feed their Flockes and Cattle, and live there all Summer and Autumne. That Continent or Isthmus from Oczacovia, as farre as Ossonum, for there it is limitted, is stretched out in Longitude, as is manifest out of the Tartars Diaries more then a hundred miles, but in Latitude not after an equall manner. For it is larger, as well beyond Perecopia, as toward Oczacovia, or Boristhenes.

The Taurican or Chersonesen Tartars, who are now called Perecopen or Crims, doe certainely seeme by the ancient Writers of the Schythians to have been the Javolgenses, and to have had their originall and appellation from Rha, or the River Volga. Moreover between the famous, deepe, and great Rivers of the North Tanais, or Don and Boristhenes, it manifestly appeare that they passed by little and little into the Plaines, and a hundred and sixtie yeares since, or very little more to have come into Taurica or the Peninsula.

The stocke of the Chans, or of their Tartar Princes was anciently called Cyngis race, from whom was Lochtonus a certaine Chan, of whom all the Chans take their originall. Hee was the first Emperour of Taurica or Chersonesus in Taurica, or the Peninsula. They have procreated the Sirinen, Bachinien, Manguten, and other Kiuazii or Dukes, from whom are the Caiacei, who are the Chans Counsellours and chiefe Officers, who also marry the Chans daughters and sisters. The Vlani, which are anciently descended of the Chans bloud, and (if the lawfull posteritie faile) succeed in the Regall Throne. It is very true that the Mursies are the noblest of each, now also their posteritie remaine & other warlike Tartars; of whom

Cyngis.
Lochton.

it is certaine he had divers Hords, of some ten thousand a piece in his company passed into Taurica, or the Peninsula with him.

The Chans predecessors sincerely and constantly much esteemed the Grecian Chiefetaines, who inhabited at Mancopia, and Ingermene, and the Italian Genoes, who dwelt at Jambold and Capha, as also the other people they found in the Peninsula, with whom they had friendship, peace, and league, untill they were overcome by the Turkes, and consumed in warre: they had also many yeeres common mony which I have seene there.

Selim. *Gerey Chan.* But Selim, Emperour of the Turkes, compelled and subjugated Mechmet Gererius Chan to his Empire. Those Nations being weakned, almost all the Castles and Cities of the Maritime Peninsula, being taken and *Sachmates.* possessed: Sachmates the Prince of the Javolgan Tartars put him to flight, with a singular and memorable slaughter having destroyed his Armie of a hundred thousand. Since which time the Chans acknowledge, as chiefe, the Empire of the Turkes. The Viceroyes, or Princes of the Tartars of Taurica, or the Peninsula are constituted by them, they receive thence a Banner, and give their sonnes and brothers Soldans for perpetuall pledges to the Turkes.

Notwithstanding, after the ancient custome of their *The Galba or heyre apparant.* Nation, they make a Galga or successor to the Empire (as the French doe their Dolphines) the brother or eldest sonne and more sufficient, who hath the greatest sway in peace and warre, but the Chans themselves perpetually depute and elect them, but with the approbation of the Tartar Nobles. And if also any dissention or war be raised betweene the Soldans or the Chan about the Empire, [III.iii.638.] the Turkish Emperour neglects not to dispatch the Soldans pledge, with an Armie and Standard into Taurica or the Peninsula: and it is sufficient for him to be Prince, the Chan and Sultan being appeased or forced to goe away by warre, for which cause he hath alwaies many Janizaries in *Election of the Chan.* Taurica, or the Peninsula.

The election of the Chans, after the ancient custome of

the Nation, did whilelome consist in the free suffrages of the Dukes, Mursies, and noblest Tartars. Furthermore, for their frequent discord and hidious warres which were occasioned by the Nogaien Tartars bordering on Taurica, or the Peninsula about the Empire, Sachibgiereius and *Sachibgiereius.* Dealetigereius, being Chans over the Tartars, having by subtilty destroyed the more noble and potent Tartars, and cast them into fetters, began absolutely to domineere over the Tartars, and by force to draw the election to their posteritie, the Emperour of the Turkes ayding them.

But if the Chan will not constitute his brother Galga, but his owne sonne, as it often fortunes, by reason of those discords and reciprocall butcheries among themselves, hee circumvents craftily and subtilly all the Soldans brothers, and covertly makes them away. Yet most of them flye to the Turke, of whom they are bountifully entertained and comforted, and receive a perpetuall stipend of him.

The Soldans younger sonnes of the Chans are educated and tutered by the Tartars, or more noble Mursies, lest that when they are at mans estate, by reason of their pluralitie, dissentions, or warres might arise: for each Chan acknowledges a supreme Dominion, and when they are growne up, those that are fit are set over certaine Tartar troupes, and allure many voluntary Tartars unto them, notwithstanding they make leaders of the Nogaien Tartars, and remunerate with moneys and horses most of their parents, whom they esteeme more speciall and substantiall. Very often also through feare of treacheries or seditions among themselves, being ayded by their Gardians favour, they flye unto the Christian or bordering Princes of their people.

The Chan hath Attalike Councellours, whom they so *Attalici.* terme from the care of their women, parents, or their wives, by whom those Sultans also are continually from their youth educated and provided for: hee hath Hamiatts, who are the Agents for exotick Princes affaires *Hamiati.* with him, and also perpetuall Court Officers. But especially hee convocates to him the Dukes, Coracei, Vlani,

and the nobler Mursi, and alwayes useth to consult with them in weightie affaires. Hee hath principall and meet men Ministers of his Court, whose service hee useth in his Ambassages, and in his divers other necessary businesses and imployments, who also are exalted to Counsellours and Court Officers. He alwayes maintaines those who are chosen out of the more renowned and illustrious Tartarian youth, who are conversant in his Court by moneths interchangeably, and when they are made fit, are honoured with those dignities. Yet hee is chiefly and most delighted with the Cercesins, Nogaiens and Petogorens, who are very industrious, valiant, bold, and warlike. On the principall hee bestowes honourable gifts and annuall pensions, and of these his Court is alwayes replenished. In the Princes Court, the better reputed and nobler Tartars, are very richly and civilly decked, not to pride or superfluous luxurie, but for necessitie and decencie. For they are so inriched by the lazie cowardise, and especially by the irreligious impiety of the neighbouring Christians, through making often inrodes, and getting rich booties, that the greater nobler of them in private wealth and domestick splendor, are little inferiour to the Turkes. They may have as many women by the Mahometicall Law as they will, and for the most part, they buy wives of the Petigorens, which although they sustaine and maintaine, not proudly, but very comely and civilly according to the countrey guise, but those by whom they have issue very honourably and gorgeously. They deliver their sonnes in their infancie to be instructed in the Arabike Letters, but they keepe not their daughters at home, but commit them to the neerest in bloud to be provided for. They place their sonnes growne to mans age in the Chans or Sultans service, their mariageable daughters in wedlock to the more honourable and nobler Tartars or Turkes.

Wives and children.

Arabike letters.

Mahumetan Religion.

Those Tartars are Mahometans, and have Priests and Mosches, they use the Chaldaick or Arabike Letters, which they have received somewhat corrupted from the

Turks, although before they came into Taurica or the Peninsula, they seeme to have beene a savage and brutish Nation, and of very savage conditions, which now also is very perspicuous by the rusticks: for they wanted then altogether those Lawes, Rites, Letters, and Manners. But the Tartars being taught by the Turks humanitie, and that false worship, the more nobler now generally practise hospitality.

Government and Lawes. The Cadi and Begs.

Law or Justice, is administred in the Towns or Cities of the Chan & other Sultans among the Tartars after the Mahometane Law. There are alwayes presbiterall Cadi or Judges in the Villages. Begi or Justices, who heare and decide particular injuries: but causes of life, bloud, theft, which we call Criminall, or of Land, which we call Civill or Officiall; the Chan himselfe decideth with his Counsellours. In resolving of which they need no Lawyer, nor use tricks of law, calumnies, excusations nor procrastinations. The Tartars or Strangers, of meane condition, lay open themselves very freely their wrongs before the Judges and Chan, of whom they are alwayes heard and speedily discharged, for at any time any may have accesse to him. When hee comes in publike, men of the basest degree are not excluded, but being seene of the Chan are examined, to wit, if they have any suit, that they relate it. For they doe not onely performe great obedience to the Lawes: they adore and venerate their Princes in Gods steed. All spirituall Judges (after Mahomets Law) are accounted among them for Saints, men of all equitie and integritie, fidelitie and opinion. The Princes and Magistrates execute and dispatch whatsoever is bidden or commanded suddenly and faithfully, with alacritie, promptnesse, and great feare. They are far from controversies, criminations, justices, unnecessary and personall brawlings, envy, hatred, filthy excesse, luxury, and ambition in their victualls and array. I abode there nine moneths, neither heard I Criminall or Civill Act to have happened among them, or any composition by reason of enmitie.

No Atturnies nor Lawyers: they plead their owne cause.

Great peaceablenesse to the shame of alway lawing Gospellers.

[III.iii.639.]

No daily use of weapons. In the Princes Court they weare not, nor at home Swords, neither Bowes nor any other weapon; except Wayfarers and Travellers, to whom they are very courteous and friendly. They are alwayes secure from Spoylers; but except they keepe perpetuall watch, they are lesse safe from High-way-theeves, and Night-robbers, who steale nothing from them but their Horses.

Although they have a rich soyle, yet very few Gentlemen, or Plebeians provide for the houshold estate, for many neither till nor sow their ground: they abound with Horses, Camels, Oxen, Kine, Sheepe and Flockes of all Cattle, and thereof live. Yet the Gentlemen have bread, flesh, meate, distilled * wine and Metheglin; but the rusticks want bread, but use stampt Millet, and macerated with milke and water, which they vulgarly call Cassa, for meate (and for drinke they use Mares milke) and cheese. They feed on Camels, Horses, and Oxen unprofitable for burthen, and kill them when they are about to dye, sometimes eate sheeps flesh. The Gentlemen dwell not in the Plaines, but in the Villages of Taurica or the Peninsula. They which are neere Woods live in them, although many doe not possesse proper Villages; yet they have peculiar Lands and Manors. They use the Ungarian, Russian, Moschovian, Valachian, or Moldavian slaves, which they keepe, and whereof they have great plentie, as beasts to every worke. Their houses are of Timber, much after the Turkish fashion: but the Greeke Christians, who are in a few Townes, labour and till their grounds as beasts. The Tartars serve the Chan or Tartarian Nobles, being hired at no price, but onely that they may have meate and apparell: but the rest, and the greatest part of them are alwayes idle. In the Cities or Townes are very few Merchants: but some few practise Mechanick crafts, and some Merchants or Artificers are found there, either Christian Slaves or Turkes, Armenians, Jewes, Cercessians, Petigorens, (which are Christians) Phylistins, or Cyngans, men of obscure and lowest degree. Those Tartars, which live in the Plaines beyond Perecopia, or in the Peninsula

* *Aquavita. Meat and drinke.*

Slaves.

Merchants.

HONDIUS HIS MAP OF LITHUANIA

have no woods, every where digge Wells. They use in stead of Wood Beasts dung, which their Bond-men gather in the Fields, and dry in the Sunne, and houses of the same forme, whereof mention is made in the former description. Those Tartars, which are Slaves and Subjects of the Chans, Sultans, and other Noble-men, are drudges, and alwayes keepe and pasture their Lords innumerable Herds of Cattle; and although they goe from place to place, into the Plaines and Pastures, in severall Streets, Hamlets, Townes, or Villages, by separated troupes (or hords) whereof they beare the Names, and of their Masters, so that men may easily find there, those Tartars Slaves which they seeke to buy. *Tartar slaves.*

The Chan hath alwayes by the leagues and agreements, an annuall Donative of the King of Polonia, the great Dukedome of Lituania, the Palatine of Moldavia, and Cercasian, and Nogaien Tartars. The Legats, Orators, Messengers, Truchmen of those Princes come to him yeerely, whom sometimes he entertaines benignely and bountifully, but sometimes receives, misuses, and detaynes a great while after a more then brutish manner. When therefore they come into Perecopia, one of the Chans men meets them in the Summer, in the Medow or Plaine, where they rest under a Tent: in the Winter they are opportunely and commodiously convayed into the Village of Alma, or Bacchasanium more safely bordering on the Towne of the Kings Palace. But after they are lodged there, they are saluted by the Counsellours or Servants of the Court in the Chans name, which procure them refreshing or victuals, two oxen, or one, some sheep, bread, wine, and barley, not liberally, but in a kind of hospitalitie, and moderately sufficient for once. But when they are called to the Chan, hee heares them, the Soldans, Tuians, Ulans, Marzies, chiefe Counsellours, and many other Ministers of his Court and principall Tartars being present, they are conducted onely by one man to the Chans gate, but are brought in by two Counsellours. When as therefore they are entred in, they reverence the Chan, after the *Tribute.* *Embassadors.* *Alma.* *Bacchasanium.* *Audience.*

ancient custome of the Nation, and having saluted him on bended knees declare their message, and are admitted to eate with him. They are honoured with cups and goblets gilded and embossed with gems, filled with Mead or Methegline reached from the Chans hand, after the order of that people, in signe of clemencie and benevolence, which they drinke on bended knees. And when they are dispatched, the Chan invites them againe to a Feast. The Feast being ended, they goe backe a little from the Palace doores, and are rewarded with Silke Vests woven with Gold as low as the anckles, prepared after the guise of the Nation, with one Horse or two, not seldome with Captives of their owne people. And so attired with those Vests they returne againe to the Chan, and render thankes to him for his hospitalitie and liberalitie, and having saluted him, depart from the Banket. Sometimes a small provision is procured for them by one of the Chans men in his Dominions when he takes his journey, and he is convayed by him as farre as Boristhenes.

[III.iii.640.]

Bassa of Capha.

The Turkish Emperours have made that authoritie constant to the Chan, in Taurica, or the Peninsula, so that when the Bassa of Capha, or the Saniak dye, he rules all the Signiories in the Peninsula, untill the Turke hath sent thither another Saniak, or whom he will preferre over Capha. The Chan hath a common Custome-house with the Turke, at Perecopia, Casslovia, Capha, and other Cities of Taurica, or the Peninsula, which are of the Turkish Empire. Hee demands annually a contribution of the Tartars, Armenians, Jewes, Cercasians, Petigorens, and Grecian Christians, of whom he hath very few in his Dominion; the Turkes are only excepted: every day are paid for a perpetuall stipend out of the Turkes Exchequer twentie five Dollers to the Chan, twelve Dollers and a halfe to the Galga, to the Soltan pledge two and a halfe, and to the same Hostage, Villages, and ample Farmes neere Adrianople, called Janbolu, are given by the Turke. To the Dukes, Caiaks, Ulans, and Murzies, and many others which take pay, are given constant wages accord-

ing to each of their estates. Notwithstanding the Chan alwayes payes every yeere to the Turkish Emperour Captives taken in warre of both sexes, the most excellent and precious Furs, and also baser, Butter and Salt, wherewith Taurica or the Peninsula abounds. And into whatsoever warre he shall bee sent or called, he may refuse; neither may hee wage warre with any, but the Duke of Moscho, without the Emperour of the Turkes leave or knowledge. *Warres.* The Chan exacts annuall pecuniarie Rents from the better sort of Captives taken in warre, three pieces of Gold; of the raskalitie one Doller, and a tenth of them; but from each of the Fountaines, which are many in his Dominions, in the Plaines of Taurica, or the Peninsula, one Horse of the Tartars; but any necessitie enforcing the Chan, all the Tartars decree a certaine contribution to him. The Tartars Nobles, alwayes at home, and in warre also, yeeld him sustenance of divers sorts; for hee neither tills nor sowes. Hee hath alwayes proper Herds of Horses, Camels, Oxen, and infinite Flockes of Sheepe. Hee hath a peculiar money of base Copper, which is coyned in Crimum, a Towne of his Dominion, round money, whereof tenne are esteemed at a Turkish Silver Asper, which makes one Polonian Groat or lesse. *Money.* But I being present, there were stamped greater Copper money silvered over, which was valued at five Aspers. In coyning it he hath a great and plentifull gaine; for in three or foure yeeres, of the same money, which is carried by all the Tartars or Strangers into the Mint, new invented money is alway stamped. For in all Taurica, or the Peninsula, it is lawfull for none (Tartar or stranger) even in the Cities of the Turkes Dominion, under a capitoll punishment and confiscation of goods, of what estate soever hee bee, to exchange Turkish pieces of Gold, or the Doller of Strangers, or the Turkes Silver Asper into Tartar coyne of the other value. Neither is it lawfull to buy with Gold or Silver coyne, but Tartarian, which all strangers (none excepted) perpetually receive by the Chans Edict.

Provision for warre.

When the Chan is about to go to any war, he first signifies to all the Tartars of his Dominions by the Servitors of his Court, and commands them that they prepare themselves for war, within three (or at the most) in foure weekes, and that they provide for themselves victualls for three or foure moneths. That sustenance is carried in Leather-bags, and those Bags among the Gentlemen are carried on Horses. And they carrie with them food of Millet parched in the fire, or stamped, or ground; for they have Mills, and thereof steeped in water, the most make meate or drinke. They carry Cheese and Flesh, and Mares-flesh dried in the Sun: they cut them in pieces boyled or drie, and taking out the bones put them in Sackes. They live with Mares-milke and Cheese, and sowre milke, which they tempering with a certaine Art, hold an excellent food. The Chan hath only one Chariot with him for any danger of sicknesse; also a few Camels, wheron is carried for his owne person Aquavitæ, or some other provision wherewith he is easily satisfied. But the Tartars severally set meat before him and his Courtiers, the gentlemen (yet very few of them) not seldome carry a little drie bread, and a little Aquavitæ on Camels, or in lighter Carts.

But after the Chan hath determined any warlike Expedition, he prepares very speedily some exercised men in an indifferent number, and chooseth them sometimes Tartars, but more frequently Cercesians, Petigorens, and those which are accounted spies of Regions and Provinces of other Princes, and expert Way-leaders, they verie well know each particular passage of Places and Borders, and Fords of Rivers. And when they come into the Marches, they goe into the neere confining circuits, and each in sundrie places view all things, and diligently seeke for Captives, which when they have intercepted, they returne with them speedily to the Chan, of whom, using interrogatories, the Chan quickly is acquainted with the estate of those Provinces where his skouts have beene. Forthwith therefore hee assignes the day of progression to the

Manner and Art of warre.

Tartars, wherein hee stirres alone, and premiseth speedily some servants of his Court, through all that Hord or Province. They constraine and inforce to goe to warre and follow the Chan all Tartars and Christians of his government, men and youth, if they can but sit on horses (besides impotent old men and children) who although they want Armes and Horses, yet are accommodated by the welthier in hope of spoyle. But in eight, or at the utmost in ten dayes after the Chans departure, al of them follow him into certain new defined places, which are beyond Perecopia toward Boristhenes; the Galga, Soltans, Dukes, Murzies, & the most approved valiant and chiefe Warriours and Souldiers, being gathered and convocated [III.iii.641.] together: and they being called to his Councell, first the later Captives and privie Searchers also are examined, at length they suddenly consult of the seasonablenesse of time, places, occasion of well ordering the matter, and whether the warre be then commodiously to be prosecuted. And mutuall consent and counsell being made and determined; yet none of these things is confusedly divulged to the multitude.

From the same place therefore the Ministers of the Court of the Chan, Galga, and Soltans going before the companies of the Dukes, Murzons and other Tartarian Nobles (which they lead and rule according to the ancient claime of their kindred, and call them by various appellations in their Language) the Chan moves the Armie under the Ensignes, following in a meane order after the ancient custome of the Nation: but after they have set foot in their enemies Land, againe he sends before a certaine number of the most experienced and skilfullest Espials. They goe before the Armie, and send backe to the Chan whatsoever Countreymen or others they shall take and meet with; from whom hee may bee certified of the condition and armie of the enemies. But when the Chan is certainly informed that no armie of enemies comes out against him, he againe makes a Campe-councell with his Nobles and Peeres, how farre and wide he ought to

endamage his enemies Dominions. Then at length he goeth slowly forward in a perfect order with all his Hoast, and commands upon penaltie of their heads to kill all the obvious Rustickes, lest after they should be taken by the Tartars, they should peradventure make an escape, and certifie his enemies of his bands to the hurt of his men. Moreover, they kill not women nor children, nor lay hold on them, nor dare lay hands of any of the prey, lest his armie should be surcharged with it, and cause some stay in his proceeding.

But when the Chan comes with his armie to the Castles, Townes, Villages, Hamlets and manured places, he elects ten, or at the most fifteene thousand Souldiers with their Dukes, Murzons, and chiefe of his Court, and most notable, best tryed, and principall men of Armes of all his Hoast, and leaves them in his owne jurisdiction in his standing Campes, or in the siege of some Fortresse; then he makes ready the Galga, other Soltans, Dukes, Murzons, and the rest of the Armie, which then is mustred some thousands. And that Armie being spread abroad in divers bands, over each of which the best esteemed and ablest men are made Captaynes, is extended in longitude more then ten miles, and in latitude as much. And as they assemble among themselves at the farthest in seven or eight dayes, but at the soonest in three or foure running about in troupes through divers places, and leading straying preyes, and wasting with fire and Sword whatsoever they meet with, returne to the Campe: but if they come not backe at the prefixed day to the fortified Campe, they waite not for them, but all the Armie with wonderfull celeritie move in their arrayes, out of the standing Campe.

And when as then also the Chan is truly signified that no Armie pursues him, he provides for places not medled with by his troupes, an Armie of some thousands of selected Horsemen, and as yet unwearied. He employes as many more also in ambushes in divers places neere the Townes and Castles obvious to the Tartars, lest that Armie might without delay fall into the lying in waite on any

of their companies. But if he bee certified by his Scouts of any numerous hoast of Enemies, he never commits the matter to an universall fight, but goes forward slowly and cautelously with his bands: but if the Chan be certainly assured that the Troups of his Adversaries are many and valiant, he retires a little, and seekes for the better husbanded and peaceabler places, and with wonderfull agilitie in his precipitious flight, spoyles them with fire and sword, and intends to returne home with the bootie that hee had hastily driven away. But if then hee hopes his enemies cannot overtake him, he marcheth with his Armie, yet not too securely, almost in the order to his confines.

The Chans tenth.

But assoone as the Chan is entred into his Borders, he takes the tenth of the principall Captives throughout all the Armie. But the Captaynes of companies, and they which have brought a greater number of captives, cull out of each Band the principall for themselves. The other Tartars of the promiscuous multitude divide the Prisoners among their troupes. Notwithstanding before they come to that partition, they first satisfie all those which running about by Bands have lost Horses, Garments, or any thing else. They sell to the Tartars both Noble and Ignoble captives, if they shall appoint no price whereby they may free themselves, because the Chan being vitiated with the Merchants gifts hath set a great value on them.

Misery of Captives.

The condition of captives is very miserable among the Tartars, for they are grievously oppressed by them with hunger and nakednesse, and the Husbandmen with stripes, so that they rather desire to dye then to live. Many of them moved with the present calamitie, and follie, tell the Tartars that they are Gentlemen, and have wealthy and rich parents and friends. They promise of their owne accord a great and almost inestimable ransome, which the barbarous, impious, covetous, hungry, and cruell Nation seekes almost daily to increase with all kind of subtilties and Examinations, tyes them in fetters, useth them therefore more hardly. But when they understand that an

Agent of their people is come to the Chan, they meete him with their captives, of whom sometimes they require the [III.iii.642.] price falsly nominated by themselves, or sometimes promised by the Prisoners: but the Agent who wel knowes the craft and deceitfulnesse of the Tartars, finds fault with the captives foolishnesse, and tell the Tartars that they are neither noble nor rich, and that they knew not, nor will ever be able to pay the price, and as though they were neither moved with Pietie nor Religion reject them. Yet the Agent is diligent that they be inscribed in the Catalogue, and if they have a purpose to ransome any with their own mony, they hold it expedient to suborne Jewes or Tartars, and other Merchants being corrupted with mony: by whom, being as it were neglected and rejected by the Agent, they are released at a far easier rate. Nothing therefore is more frequent to the captives, then to promise and offer to the Tartars this price, for which they are sold to the Turkes, Jewes, and stranger Merchants, and others beyond the Sea, or a little more, or twice so much, if they bee able to performe it: but if they cannot learne of the Rustickes or others what they are, as the Tartars are for the most part wont often to enquire of their captives, they are content with little. Neither doe they sell them to strangers, but rather to the Agent of their Nation: but if they are not redeemed by the Agent, they command them to write to their Parents or Kinsfolke. Also many captives are delivered with the exchange of Tartar captives, in providing for and freeing of whom, the Tartars exhibite and shew farre greater pietie, friendlinesse and care, then our Christians. For disrespecting all price, they first demand their Tartar captives in exchange of ours, which often promising the same and not able to performe it, use to bring upon themselves a farre greater discommoditie. For they aske of them almost an unvaluable summe, wherewith they prize their Tartars, which when they are not able to pay, they sell them to barbarous Nations over the Sea for perpetuall slaves, for as great a price as they can, and very often at

Manner of redemption.

Ars deluditur arte.

HONDIUS HIS MAP OF POLONIA

an excessive rate, or if the Tartars are wealthy, they condemne them to perpetuall slavery.

The Chan hath all his Tartar Armie gathered of Horsemen, except some hundred Gunners Janizaries, Footmen, which are either Turkish Auxiliaries, or some of his owne which he maintaynes. He is accustomed to carrie with him some smaller Ordnance to warre. From Taurica or the Peninsula the Perecopens, and Crims, Ossoviens, Nogariens, Cercessians, are Tributaries and Souldiers for aide, the Duke of the Cercessians, Petigorens are Stipendaries and Mercenaries, and are wont to goo voluntaries to the Chans warres. The Oczacoviens and Bialogrodens, also they who by the continuall covenants which they have with the Turkish Emperour, sometimes also the Dobrucen Tartars and Inhabitants of Danubius, by the command of the Emperour of the Turkes follow him to warre. All that Hoast collected out of those Tartars, is wont to make the number of a hundred and twentie thousand, sometimes also thirtie thousand more, but not seldome to exceed that Summe. I have bin truly informed by many credible Christians, which often follow the Chans warres, and by some captived Gentlemen of our Nation, who have many times seene his Armie.

Their Horses.

All have according to their use Tartarian Horses, neat, excellent, stomackfull, swift, and indifferent good and commodious to undergoe great labours. The Chan, most of the Soltans, and Tartar Nobles use in warre Turkish, Caramanian, Arabian, and other Asian, Tartarian, and the best Out-landish Horses. The swiftest Horses are accounted among them at a great and almost inestimable price. They alwayes feed them Summer and Winter in the Plaines of Taurica or the Peninsula, but very often as farre as the Rivers Boristhenes and Tanais: the Gentlemen nourish at home very few Horses, only for their urgent occasions, not for any arrogancie or luxurie. They seldome put their Jades and unprofitable Horses for riding in the Waggon, for they doe all their businesse with Camels and Oxen.

Their Armes. The Tartars use their ancient weapons, a two-edged Sword, or Tartarian Cymiter somewhat long, and a Turkish Dart, or a Persian, shorter and broader of the best Iron, and well wrought; a peculiar Tartarian Bow, a long Arrow, and swift, a Quiver, sometimes a short Speare after the old guize of their people. They goe with Brest-plates and Helmets, and in Persian or Moscovian Armes, wherewith they abound being enriched by the spoyle of Christians. They have ancient Saddles and Bridles after the custome of the Nation, very fitting, not for pride or superfluitie: the Nobles have them prepared very elegantly, strongly and compendiously for their use. But most in the Tartar Armie are altogether unarmed and cowards, and they carrie with them to warre by reason of *Store of Horses.* their great Hoast, almost an infinite number of Horses. For a Tartar even of the basest condition will scarcely be content with one or two Horses, but three, foure, and more, which he may have alwayes readie with him at his hand. Therefore the Armie of the Tartars is made so numerous, great and terrible, which when it is seene afarre off, is deemed by our men almost an infinite and innumerable Hoast.

Now when the Tartarian Armie is come into their enemies Country, the Tartars ranke not themselves in bands or troupes, but all set forward and proceed leisurely. They dispose many Watchmen in all parts throughout their companies, which they make greater or lesser for their supply, but after that the foremost of them have *Flight fayned.* descryed their enemy, they counterfeit a flight, that they may more easily allure them into those troupes, which they [III.iii.643.] have laid in ambushments, and so over charge him. But when they espie an Armie of enemies, they make a retraite quickly and speedily to their Armie, Rankes, and Banners.

There is great celeritie in constituting and governing their troupes, seeing that they are not ruled onely by the *Their Discipline.* advertisements of the Generals and Præfects of their Regiments, but also by the shew of Whips, as is the long continued practice of the Nation: and they are subject

so to a becke, that they are very easily brought into their Ranges, whensoever it is necessary.

His strength.

The Chan is alwayes fortified in warre, with a band of some thousands of noble and couragious Tartars in number, some hundreds of Janizaries, Footmen, and some small Ordnance. In the Chans Regiment a very great white Mares tayle, and a piece of Greene and Red Silke of the Turkish Emperour is carryed before on a great Pike for a Standard. There appeare in the troupes of the other Tartars, many Ancients and Ensignes of various colours.

The principall Ensigne a Mares tayle.

The more famous Souldiers, and they which are notable in reputation, dexteritie and warlike Prowes, and have atchieved in warre some Noble-Service and Enterprize, are greatly honoured by the Chan, Soldans, Kiuiazons, and Murzons. And that respect is had to them, that the Chan doth not only reward them with certayne great benefits and such liberalitie, as he can shew them, but also is so mindfull of their deserts and merits, that he assignes them and their successors in the Assembly, and as the fashion is, at his Table a perpetuall place of honour among his more noble Murzons. That dignitie among the Tartars is the greatest, and Hereditary, for they going to warre able and experienced men which possesse that place, are dignified by the Chan, with the glorie of leading the Troupes. The Chan also frees some Tartar captives with the permutation of captives, and in ransoming others he largely powres out his owne Treasure, and willingly comforts them as he is able.

Chap. XXII.

Dithmar Blefkens his Voyages, and Historie of Island and Groenland.

[m] *He published this Book Anno* 1607.

IN the yeere 1563.[m] two Hamburg Merchants ships determined to sayle to Island, the Mariners, by an ancient custome, desirous to have a Minister of Gods Word with them, commend this care to the Ministers of the Church of Hamburg, and intreat them to provide them a Minister. One Doctor Paulus ab Etzen was then Superintendent of the Church of Hamburg. While therefore I stayd at Hamburg, expecting my Library from Rostoch, I entred into same familiaritie with Paulus, and the rest of the Ministers. This Office was bestowed upon me, which I undertooke the more willingly, because I had a longing desire to know strange things, and divers Countries, yeelding to their perswasion. Taking ship therefore the tenth of Aprill, wee sayled upon the Coast of England and Scotland, and passing beyond the Ilands Orcades, in number fifteene, whereof the most part lye unmanured for the barrenesse; Ferow and Hitland are inhabited: Here wee saw a very high Rocke, which in the top representeth the head of a cooled Monke, where also there is a safe Harbour against all winds, and this Monke delivereth many from present dangers. The fourteenth of June we descryed Island, which seemes afarre off, like winter clouds. The next day we attayned the Land and Haven of Haffenefordt toward the South.

Iseland is a rough, hilly and snowie Land, which is supposed to bee twice bigger then Sicilia: it is thought to be a hundred leagues in length, which also Olaus Magnus testifieth in his eleventh Booke. It hath the name of the perpetuall Ice, and coldnesse of the Ayre, which is there most sharpe: for eight whole moneths it

is troubled with Ice: It burneth notwithstanding with heat and inward fire in many places. The extremitie of cold increaseth this heate in the bowels of the earth, which cold continueth the greater part of the yeere (a few Summer moneths excepted) and so bindeth the pores in the upper part of the Earth, that it can have no free vent. And this Iland hath so great a Latitude from the Æquator, that the Arctick Circle divides it in the middest, that is to say, sixtie five degrees and a halfe. The Ilands called Ebudae, are object to the North part of this Iland. But whether that be of these, which Ptolemie, and ancient Writers call Thule, or rather Iseland, that great Iland, I dare neither affirme, nor altogether denie, because there is no Iland found where Ptolemie set Thule. Now, the later Writers make another manner of longitude about Scotland, and the bordering Ilands, then Ptolemie ever thought.

I will draw the Descent of this Nation from their first originall, following the truth of the Iseland Chronicles. In the yeere of Christ 900. in the time of Alebrand Bishop of Breme, certayne of the Nobilitie of East Frisia, and of the Countrey of Breme, desirous to discover strange Countries toward the North, set sayle from Weser, and passing beyond the Orcades, found this Iland almost in the utmost skirts of Europe, yet habitable, but full of Snow: which they called Iseland, for the coldnesse and roughnesse thereof. And when they had sayled further towards the North about two hundred leagues, they found another Iland, which (by contraries) they named Groneland. Endeavouring to sayle further towards the North, through the frozen or congealed Sea, being long hindred by the Ice, at length with great labour getting out, they fell into whirle-pooles of the Sea, and thicke darkenesse. [III.iii.644.] *Groneland. Most ordinary in those Seas. See of Island originall the next Chapter.*

In these whirle-pooles and darknesse, this Fleet (one onely ship excepted) perished. They that were preserved, after many long labours and perils, sayling through the Tartarian Sea, came into a very hote Countrey, and entring into a large Bay, they went on shoare upon the next Land. *Antiquities are often mystical, or mythical & fabulous.*

And when the Inhabitants had hid themselves in secret places, by reason of the great heate and scorching of the Sunne, they saw Gold, and other precious things set heere and there, without a guard. And when they had carryed away as much as they would, and hasted to the Ship, they saw some pursue them with Dogs of strange bignesse. One, who was hindred and laden with a prey that he could not escape, was torne in pieces of the Dogges. The rest, after long sayling, shunning these Whirle-pooles, arrived in Muscovia, thence by the Balticke Sea returning unto Breme, they brought backe these tidings to Alebrand the Bishop, with part of the prey.

Much about this time, the Noruegians, by example of the Helvetians in Julius Cæsars time, are supposed to have come out of Norway, who then long time possessed that part of France, which now also is called Normandie. And when they had performed great attempts by Sea and Land against the Britaines, they did not onely scoure the Sea by hostile incursions, but also expelled the Saracens, who at that time came into Italy, and sought to seat themselves in Calabria and Apulia. After they brought Colonies Northward into Hitland, Ferow and Island: which way, they learned of the Bremians, by meanes of the Nobilitie of Frisia aforesaid. And even the very proprietie of their speech doth testifie, that they came out of Norway: for the pronunciation of the Iselanders doth agree with the antient Inhabitants of Norway. For upon the Sea coast of Norway, especially where the famous Haven and Citie of Bergen is, by reason of the resort and familiaritie with the Germaines and Danes, the Language is changed.

Of the Iselanders Religion.

[III.iii.645.] IN the yere of Christ 1398. Woldemarus, the second of that name governed the Danish Kingdome, whereunto Norway was added, whose posteritie held it, untill Ericus Duke of Pomerania, and Christopher Banar. Unto this

Waldemarus all the Arctoian Colonies obeyed, so that now, under that Woldemarus, the Iselanders were first instructed in the Christian Religion, when before they had worshipped strange Gods. And when almost all Christian people, in that lamentable darkenesse and title of a Church, as it were by Witchcraft deceived, were detayned in most deepe bonds of superstition; it could not bee but they, who were furthest removed from the societie of Learned men, and dwelling under an uncivill and barbarous Climate, should fall into most foule Idolatrie, when sometimes (as hereafter shall bee declared) they had Devils to serve them, as familiar as domesticall servants. But after Luther began to bee knowne, Christianus the King of Denmarke procured purer Doctrine to himselfe, and purged the Churches in the Kingdome of Denmarke, Norway, and all the Ilands subject unto him; sending Ministers into Iseland, to sow the seede of the Gospell there. Hee sent a Printer also out of Denmarke, to set forth the Bible, the common places of Philip Melancthon, the Workes of Urbanus Regius and others, in the vulgar Tongue, to the Pastors who were ignorant of the Latine, as at that time almost all of them were. And also sent for fit and apt young men out of Iseland, whom hee maintayned in the Haffnian Universitie at his owne costs, and gave them charge over Churches and Schooles.

The Christian care of King Christian.

King Woldemare, as soone as they should professe Christian Religion in Iseland, ordayned them two Bishops, one in Scalholden in the East part, and another in Hollen in the West, whose Successours at this day retayne nothing but a shadow, and a bare Title, for they have no other revenues but Butter and Fish. But when that reformation (whereof I spake) was made by King Christian in the Churches of Iseland, one of the Bishops in Scalholden, conspiring with the people, rejects the Doctrine of the Gospell, and making a rebellion they kill the Kings Lieutenant. The yeere following, which was 1535. the King sent a Noble man of the Order of Knighthood, one Paul Hitfelt (whom I saw an old man in Denmarke)

Two Bishops in Iseland.

furnished with a Fleet, Souldiers, and Munition into the Iland. The seditious being slaine, hee renueth the reformation of the Doctrine of the Gospell, and returneth into Denmarke, leaving a certayne Noble man to take charge of the Church and Iland.

Tadde Bonde. The greatest man in Iseland at that time was one Tadde Bonde. Hee, after the Kings Armie was departed, conspiring with the principall men (whom by his Authoritie hee drew to take his part) revolted from his Allegiance, and perswaded the rest of the Ilanders to follow. They *Waloe.* meete together in a place called Waloe, and conspiring to rebell, and cast off the Kings subjection, they impart their counsels together, and Tadde had his possessions not in one place, and many retayners, and for these causes hee thought they could not easily bee suppressed. The Bishop who dwelt in the East, had a special care to acquaint the Kings Lieutenant with all that was done (for the Lieutenant was absent in the West part of that Iland) and the Bishop hated Tadde a long time. For in that first Rebellion, hee had falsly accused him to the Lieutenant as guiltie, and author of the Rebellion. This accusation onely brought great and extreame calamitie upon him.

The Lieutenant being certified what was done, hee perswadeth by fit instruments, some of the Complices of the faction, to continue in their Allegiance, propounding rewards and punishments. Then many of them when they saw the greatnesse of the danger, leaving him, came humbly to the Lieutenant, and begge pardon, and obtayne it. Tadde therefore is adjudged an Enemie, both of the King, and of his Countrey, they promise therefore by an Oath and giving of their Faith, that they will pursue him.

Then hee, through feare of the danger, with a few of his Domestickes which hee had gathered together, kept himselfe at the foote of Hekelveld, but being circumvented they were all slaine, and hee taken. They that tooke him, brought him to the Bishop, to commit him to Prison, but he refused to receive him. Therefore they draw him to another certaine man, of those who had the

HONDIUS HIS MAP OF TAURICA CHERSONESUS

chiefe place in Justice, neither would hee receive him, fearing the hatred of the people. There was at that time there a certayne Iselander, Jonas by name, a man of courage. I know (sayth hee) to whom I will commit him, that will diligently keepe him, and foorthwith hee slew him and buryed him. And so the Sedition was appeased. And from that time untill this day, the Word of God is taught amongst Barbarous men, after the manner of the Confession of Augusta.

The Life and Manners of the Iselanders.

IN the whole Iland, there are three sorts of men, who are held in any reckoning and account: for the common people, by reason of the scarcitie of Ships wherewith they fish, make themselves slaves to the richer. Of those three sorts, the first is of them whom they call Loshmaders, that is to say, Men of Justice: for Loch in their language, signifieth Law. These men administer Justice, and there are many of them, but twelve of them onely have the yeerely charge of Justice. All men obey their Judgment and Decrees. Another sort is of them, who are called Bonden: They are in the place of Nobles, and as every one of them is richest in Shipping, and Cattle, so he hath most Fishers, and followers. This onely power they know. The third sort is of Bishops and Ministers of the word of God, of the which many are found every where throughout the whole Iland.

Three sorts of people.

[III.iii.646.]

Twelve Justices each yeere.

There are many of the Iselanders very proud and high minded, especially by reason of the strength of body which they have. I saw an Iselander, who easily put an Hamburg Tunne full of Ale to his mouth, drinking off it as if hee had had but one small measure.

Strength.

Both Sexes in Iseland have the same habite, so that by the garments you shall not easily discerne whether it bee Man or Woman. They want Flaxe, except it bee brought unto them by our Countrey-men. The Womenkinde there are very beautifull, but ornaments are wanting.

Habite.

Superstition and Witchcraft.

The whole Nation of the Islanders is much given to Superstitions, and they have Spirits familiarly serving them. For they onely are fortunate in Fishing, who are raised up by night of the Devill to goe a fishing.

Night Ravens.

And although the Ministers of the Gospell use all diligence in disswading them from this impietie; yet this wickednesse hath taken roote, and sticketh so deepely in their mindes, and they are so bewitched of Sathan, that they can admit no sound Doctrine and Dehortation. Yea, by the Devils meanes, if you offer them money, they promise a prosperous wind and performe it, which I know, as hereafter shall be spoken. The like Olaus Magnus writeth of the Finlanders in his thirde Booke. They hold Ships also by inchantment almost immoveable, and that in a prosperous wind. And truely it is a wonder that Sathan so sporteth with them. For hee hath shewed them a remedie in staying of their Ships, to wit, the Excrements of a Maide being a Virgin: if they annoynt the Prow, and certaine planckes of the Ship, hee hath taught them that the Spirit is put to flight, and driven away with this stinke.

Sweet sacrifice for the Devill, letice suitable his lips.

Le

910.4
Pur1Hak
35488

the rest of the carriage of their life, they thus behave ves. The Parents teach their male Children (even ir child-hood) letters and the Law of that Iland, very few men are found throughout the whole ut they know Letters, and many Women use our ; and have also other characters, with the which they ess some whole words of theirs, which words can hardly bee written with our letters. They give themselves to hardnesse, and fishing from their Infancie; for all their life consists in Fishing. They exercise not Husbandrie, because they have no Fields, and the greatest part of their foode consisteth in Fish, unsaverie Butter, Milke and Cheese. In stead of Bread they have Fish bruised with a Stone. Their Drinke is Water or Whay. So they live many yeeres, without medicine or Physitian. Many of them live till they bee one hundred and fiftie yeeres old. And I saw an old man who sayd he had then lived

Fishing & Fish.

Drinke.

An old man or a loud lie.

two hundred yeeres. Nay, Olaus Magnus in his twentieth Booke sayth, that the Iselanders live three hundred yeeres.

The greater part of Iselanders hath never seene Bread, much lesse tasted it. If our men at any time sell them Meale or Corne, they mingle it with Milke, and lay it up for a long time, as delicates for Nobles. They call this sauce or mixture, Drabbell. *Bread.*

The Germaines that trade in Iseland have a place in the Haven of Haffenefordt fenced by Nature, where under Tents they set their Merchandise to sale, as Shooes, Garments, Glasses, Knives, and such kinde of Merchandise of no price. The Iselanders have Oyle molten out of the bowels of Fishes, knowne to our Tanners and Shoomakers: they have Fish, Brimstone, white Foxe skinnes, Butter and other things. They barter all these for our Commodities, nor is the bargaine ratified, before they bee well stuffed with our Meat, Wine or Beere, together with their Wives and Children whom they bring with them, how many soever they have. *Commodities.*

Comming into the Haven, they have their Daughters with them which are marriage-able: they after they have inquired of our companie, whether they have Wives at home, or not, they promise a nights lodging for Bread, Bisket, or any other trifling things. Sometimes the Parents yeeld their Daughters freely, even for a whole moneth, or as long as they stay. If shee proove with Child by that lying with her, the parents love their Daughter better then before, and the Child being borne, they bring it up some yeeres, while either the Father returne, or they give it to their Sonne in law that shall bee, for a Dowrie with their Daughter, who doth not despise it, because it is borne of the Germaine blood. If any Virgin have familiaritie with a Germaine, shee is honoured among them, and therefore shee is sought of many Suiters. And the time was before this, that Whoordome, which was without the degrees of Consanguinitie and Affinite had no Infamie. And although Preachers *Whoores.*

crie out against it, and the offenders are severely punished, yet they hardly abstaine.

Drinking and singing. They lay not up Wine and Beere which they buy of our Countrey-men, but quaffe it up house by house by course one with another, and that freely or for nothing. While they drinke, they sing the heroicall acts of their ancestors, not with any certaine composed order or melodie, but as it commeth in every mans head. Neither is it law-
[III.iii.647.] full for any one to rise from the Table to make water, but for this purpose the daughter of the house, or another maid or woman attendeth alwayes at the Table, watchfull if any becken; to him that beckeneth shee gives the chamber-pot under the Table with her owne hands; the rest in the meane while grunt like Swine, least any noise bee heard. The water being powred out, hee washeth the Bason, and offereth his service to him that is willing, and he is accounted uncivill who abhorreth this fashion. They

Loving wormes. entertaine them that come unto them with a kisse, and they behold and looke each on other, if paradventure

Lousie love. they may see Lice creeping on their garments, which greatly trouble them for want of linnen: if they see any, each taketh them from the other, and as often as he taketh away one, so often doth he thanke him, with his head discovered, and this they doe one to the other, as long as they see one.

Lodging. By night the Master of the house, with all his family, his wife and children lye in one room, covered with a cloth made of Wooll which they make. And the like clothes they lap under them, without straw or hay put under. All of them make water in one chamber-pot, with the which in the morning they wash their face, mouth, teeth, and hands; they allege many reasons thereof, to wit, that this makes a faire face, maintaineth the strength, confirmeth the sinewes in the hands, and preserveth the teeth from putrifaction. If Cattle perish in the waters or snow (which often commeth to passe) they say, they are killed of God, and are accounted among the delicates. And it happened in the yeere 1564. in a place called

Ackermisse, that in the month of January some Kine strayed in the darke, and the fogge was so great, and the depth of snow, that they could not be found. In the moneth of April they were first found untainted, and without any evill smell, and being distributed among the neighbours, some part was brought to the Governour, with whom I lived at that time, which was not lawfull for him to despise, yet he commanded it to be given to the poore.

In the Winter time, before and after the Solstitium, when the Sunne declineth, and being in Sagitarius, Capricornus, and Aquarius, it departeth from them, neither doth it ascend above the Horizon, while it touch Pisces, therefore they have no light but of the Moone and Starres. In like manner about the Summer Solstitium, when the Sunne ascendeth to Gemini, Cancer, and Leo, it never goeth downe under the Horizon, therefore at that time they have no Night. In the Winter time, they keep their Beds many dayes, and exercise themselves in the game of Chesse, the invention whereof is due to Xerxes the Philosopher: the meane while the servants bring them their meate dressed to their beds. They keepe Lampes of the oyle of Fish continually burning, others burn Tallow candles.

Long night.

Chesse.

In the moneth of Februarie, as soone as the Sunne ascends above the Horizon, by little and little the dayes grow longer, then they begin to Fish, whereof there is so great plentie, that it is scarce credible; for the Fishes which for three whole moneths swamme in the darke, as soone as they see a Fish of Tinne fastened to an Iron, they ranne to it in schoales, that they are not onely drawne up by the jawes, but wheresoever the Iron toucheth them. Having taken them, they plucke out the bones, and lay up their bowels, and make Fat or Oyle of them. They heape up their Fish in the open ayre, and the puritie of the ayre is such there, that they are hardened onely with the winde and Sunne, without Salt, better surely then if they were corned with salt. And if they kill any

Dryed Fish.

Beasts, they preserve the flesh without stinke or putrifaction, without salt, hardened onely with the winde.

Of the wonderfull standing Pooles, Lakes and Fountaynes in Iseland.

Hot Bathes. IN divers places almost throughout the whole Iland, are Bathes and scalding Fountaynes, which flow out in great abundance. This water as soone as it begins to coole, hath a Sulphurie substance in the top thereof. In these scalding waters, wherein I could scarce dippe my finger, red Dive-doppers are seene afarre off, if you come neerer, they vanish, if you depart, they appeare againe, so all day long (if any please) they play boe-peepe with *Dive-doppers.* men. Whether they bee Dive-doppers indeed, I leave it to others to decide.

At the West of this Island, there is a huge smoakie Lake, and very cold, which turneth all things that are *Stone-making water.* cast into it into stones, and that in few dayes, and (which is worthy of great admiration) if you put a sticke upright into the bottome, the lower part which is stucke into the earth, hath the resemblance and hardnesse of Iron after two dayes, that which was in the water hath the hardnesse and shew of a Stone, the upper part which remayned *Note.* above the water, keepeth his wonted forme: And I twice proved the truth of this thing, but when I put the lower part (which represented Iron) to the fire that it might melt, it burned like a Coale.

There are two Fountaynes of most different qualitie, in a place upon the Sea coast, which is called Turlocks Haven, the one cold, the other hot; these Fountaynes by pipes are drawne into one place, and tempered for bathing, they make a most wholesome Bath. Nor farre from these Fountaynes, there is a certaine other Fountayne, which bubbles foorth liquor like Wax, which notably cureth the *French Disease.* French disease, which is very common there.

Not farre from the Haven Haffnefordt, there is a cleft [III.iii.648.] in a Rocke like to a Fountayne of unmeasurable depth.

If you looke into it, you cannot see the water, but if you cast in a stone, halfe an houre after you shall heare it falling, as if it fell into brazen Vessels, and forthwith the water ariseth, and it is filled to the top of the Wels brimme, and it is a most cleere water, which notwithstanding no man dare touch, nor taste, neither doth it flow out, but so long after, as the stone which is cast in, sinketh to the bottome. There is another Lake in the middle of the Iland, which casteth forth a pestiferous fume, insomuch as it killeth Birds flying over it with the poyson thereof.

Of the wonderfull Mountaynes in Island.

THere are three Mountaynes in Island very admirable, the one is called the Mountayne of the Crosse, the other Snenelsiockell. These two pierce the cloudes with their heigth, whose heads, or tops no man ever saw, nor are they ever seene without Ice and Snow; in those, Lightnings and horrible Thunders are daily heard, when neverthelesse, in the neighbouring Valleyes the Aire is faire and cleere, as in Summer time. The third Mountayne lyeth on the North of the Iland, and not very high, but it hath burned very many yeeres; with what fire or matter, it is unknowne; but seeing Brimstone is digged out of the Earth throughout the whole Land, it seemeth, that the Sulphurie matter is sometime inflamed. This Mountayne is not farre from the Sea, and the Sea on one side beats upon it: it is called Hecla, sometimes it casteth forth flame, sometimes fierie water, then blacke ashes and Pumis stones, in so great abundance, that it darkeneth the Sunne. No man also can dwell neere it by sixe mile, neither are there any pastures about it. Sometimes bold men, and such as regard not their lives, cast stones into the hollow places; for sometimes there is a wonderfull calme in the Mountayne; especially when the Westerne wind blowes, it casteth backe the stones flung into it with an horrible noyse and sound: the common people thinke

Hecla a burning Hill.

Conceit of Purgatorie.

the soules of the damned to be tormented heere: it is certayne that divers and horrible spirits are observed in this Mountayne and about it; for if a Battaile be fought in any place, the Islanders, especially they that sayle and fish in the Sea neere to Hecla, know the day of the Battaile fought, although they know not where it be done: for they see (as they report) wicked spirits going forth, and returning, and bringing soules with them. And such a storie is reported all Island over.

Collusions of men, or Illusions of Devills. Arngim Jonas an Islander scoffes at it as fabulous.

A Fisherman sayling by Hecla, met with another ship, both had a prosperous wind, and when (after the manner of Saylers) he was demanded who hee was and of what place, hee answered, that hee had the Bishop of Breme in his ship; whom hee would convay to Hecla: and it was knowne that the Bishop dyed the same day, which notwithstanding, I would not set downe for truth. If any perish by Sea, or otherwise dye, sometimes leaving their Friends and Acquaintance, they appeare very heavie, being demanded whither they goe, and from whence, they answere they are brought to Hecla, under a cruell Master the Devill, and so vanish. And they are so bewitched of Satan, that they thinke them the soules of the departed.

But because no man that is well in his wits, will thinke that Hell is in this Mountayne, yet it may be demanded, whence the Hill hath this matter, whereby it should bring forth so many yeeres flames, so many ashes, and such abundance of Pumis stones. For wee see the most sollid and firme bodies, and all things to be consumed by fire: and for that cause some thinke, that it shall come to passe that these flames shall once be extinguished: for the cause fayling, they deny that any effects can follow. But heere (what I thinke) I will freely speake, yet saving other mens judgements. It is manifest by watry Meteors, that there is a continuall generation of water, by the vapours gathered together in the cavities of the Earth; which issueth forth by Fountayns: but the efficient and materiall causes abiding perpetually, the effects also continually remayne: so also in the bowels of the Earth, there are certayne places,

which by their owne nature draw unto them a hote and dry exhalation, and that it resolves it into flames, ashes, and Pumis stones, which may easily be done in this Mountayne, by reason of the Sulphur matter, which is found in Island throughout the whole Land. And as Fountaynes send forth more abundance of water in the Winter time, then in the Summer, nay, some of them are dry, because matter failes; so is it with this Mountayne: for sometimes matter failing, it hath neither flames, nor smoke, and all is quiet, whereby it appeareth that the matter and efficient cause faile. However it bee, I know this, that no man may come to the foot of the Mountayne without danger and feare, as hereafter shall be declared.

Strange Story.

The same yeere I was in Island, the nine and twentieth of November, about midnight in the Sea, neere Hecla, there appeared a flame, which gave light to the whole Iland, so that all of us astonished, wondred, and carefully expected the issue thereof: the elder sort and such as were skilfull in this matter, said, that this light came from Hecla: an houre after, the whole Iland trembled, as it should have beene moved out of the place: after the Earthquake followed a horrible cracke, that if all warlike Ordnance had beene discharged, it had been nothing to this terrour. It cannot be thought, much lesse expressed by word, how horrible it was. Wee thought that the whole frame of the World would fall, and that the last Day was at hand: but it was knowne afterwards that the [III.iii.649.] Sea went back two leagues in that place, and remayned dry.

Another wonder.

About the beginning of July, at a certayn time of the yeere great store of Ice suddenly floteth to the Iland about Hecla, and there goes a rumour through the whole Iland, nay it is beleeved, that the damned soules are tormented in this Ice by course, in the Flame, in the Mountayne, and after in the Ice. This Ice for three whole moneths swimmeth only about Hecla. If you take any part of this Ice out of the Sea, and wrap it in a linnen cloth, and lay it up in a Chest, it remayneth so long

unmelted, as it swimmeth in the Sea; but if the Ice in the Sea vanish, which suddenly in one night happeneth, this appeareth not, nor leaveth any signe of moysture in the linnen cloth, which is not a hard thing for Satan to doe, to take away the Ice without moysture, to increase their incredulitie. Olaus Magnus maketh mention of this Ice in his eleventh Booke. But because I determined to search out all things diligently, I sayled not without great feare unto this Ice, and I observed, that this Ice was violently cast against the Rockes by force of the winds, and so made a mournfull sound afarre off, as if miserable howlings were heard there. Hereupon the Islanders thinke the soules of the damned are tormented in this Ice.

Of the Riches of the Islanders.

I Have said that Island was a rough and snowie Countrey, and besides, it is full of Rockes and stones; and so truly, that there is not a field in the whole Iland: they have not so much as Gardens, wherein they may have Pot-herbes or Pulse: they know no kinde of Corne nor Apples, Peares, nor Cheries, nor any fruit of Trees. And, which is almost incredible, they neither use Bread nor Salt, yet they are well liking, and strong. There is no Citie in the whole Iland: they seldome have two or three dwellings together. They have their Cottages on the Sea side for fishing, and under ground by reason of the fierce windes.

No fruits.

Bartar.

Brimstones.

There is no love of money among them, for wares are changed for wares. Brimstone groweth on the South part, and almost throughout the whole Iland, which is digged out in great abundance: they sell this stuffe purged for a small price. Mines of Gold or Silver, nor of any other mettall they have none. They use Iron, but such as is brought unto them. You shall scarce finde a man, who hath not Iron Nayles in a Bagge, wherewith Horse-shooes are fastened.

All their houses are under ground, for they have no

matter for building. There is not a tree in the whole Iland, except the Birch-tree, and that in one place, which also exceedeth not the stature of a man in length, and that by reason of the vehemencie of the winds, that it cannot grow higher. This Birch-tree after the Summer Solstitium beginnes first to bud, the leaves have a most sweet smell, and of so fragrant a savour that the Germanes put them in their Tents, and upon their meats for a singular delight. Yet sometimes great abundance of Firre-trees from Tartaria, or else-where carried by force of the waves and the Ice, arrived in Island. The chiefe use of them is in building Cabbins under the ground: you shall scarsly find a house out of the earth, by reason of the strong winds, which sometimes overthrow Horses and their Riders. They have great plentie of Butter, for the fatnes of the grasse: for the Island grasse is so fat, that Oxen after a certaine time are to be driven from the Pastures, lest they burst. And it is of so pleasing a sent, that our men lay it up in their Chests with singular care for their garments. The most part (for scarcitie of Vessels) lay their Butter aside in the corners of their Houses, (as we doe Lime or other matter) and that without Salt. They have domesticall cattle, as kine; but many of them are without hornes. Al their Horses are amblers & very fit for carrying of burdens. They have very great sheepe, they keepe not a Hogge nor a Hen, for want of grâine, if fodder or hay faile them in the Winter, they feed their cattle with fish. They have rough Dogs bred without tayle and eares for their pleasure, which they sell deere and greatly esteeme, when notwithstanding they offer their children to any that will aske them, and that freely. Besides, this Iland hath white Foxes, and huge Beares of the same colour. They have no Birds but water-fowle, whereof there are divers kinds and sorts found there, unknowne unto us. Crowes sometimes are changed white; and excellent Falcons, and some among them white, which being taken and gotten, with the great cost of the Spaniards and Portugals, are also carried away in great

Birch-tree.

Great windes.

Fat grasse.

Their kine, horses, and sheepe.

Dogs of more price then children.

Beares and Foxes.

White Crowes.

number, which thing was done, while I was in Island, to my great profit. Island also hath white Partridges. There are also every where through the whole Iland most *Rivers.* pleasant Rivers, which yeeld the Inhabitants fish in great plentie, Salmon Trowts, and Sturgeons. There is one *Whale-bone bridge.* only bridge in all the Iland, made of the bones of a Whale. They that goe from one part of the Iland to another by the Continent, have no way which they may follow, for the solitarinesse thereof: but as Saylers in the Sea, so *Travell by compasse.* they by the helpe of the Load-stone performe their journeyes. The depth of the Sea neere Island is very *Whales.* exceeding. In these gulfs there are Whales of wonderful bignes, and many Sea-monsters which cannot bee killed or taken of men, the Ice only through the force of the winds dasheth them against the Rockes, and killeth them. *Huge Whale.* I saw such a Monster cast upon the shoare dead, whose length was thirty ells, his heigth more then a very long Warlike Pike.

A Whale being dead or killed, the Inhabitants make Buildings and Dwellings of the bones thereof with great dexteritie and skill, they make also seates, benches, tables, [III.iii.650.] and other utensils, smoothing them so that they seeme like Ivory. They that sleepe in these houses, are said *Note.* alwayes to dreame of shipwrack. And although it bee a huge and fearfull creature, and have great strength, yet notwithstanding oftentimes he is not onely withstood, but overcome of his capitall enemie (not so great) which is *Orca.* called Orca; this fish hath the shape of a ship turned upside-downe, and upon his backe very sharpe and long finnes, wherewith hee woundeth the soft of the belly of the Whale, and killeth him, and the Whale so feareth this fish, that in shunning him, he often dasheth himselfe against the shoare.

A Sea-monster. The Iseland Sea hath a Monster also, whose name is unknowne. They judge it a kinde of Whale at the first sight, when he shewes his head out of the Sea, he so scarreth men that they fall downe almost dead. His square head hath flaming eyes, on both sides fenced with

long hornes, his body is blacke, and beset with black quills; if he be seene by night, his eyes are fiery, which lighten his whole head, which he putteth out of the Sea, nothing can either bee painted or imagined more fearfull. Olaus Magnus maketh mention of this Monster in his twentieth Booke, and saith, that it is twelve cubits long. Such a Monster at that time tore in pieces with his teeth a Fisher-boate, wherein there were three Fisher-men, so that they were drowned, one of them, who held in his hand a little cord, wherewith he used to draw the hooke, and the fishes, laid hold of the boord which floted in the Sea; so he was saved getting out of the bottom upon the planke and swam foorth, and declared this to the Kings Governour in my presence, adding moreover that he was saved from heaven, that he might get maintenance for his children, who otherwise were readie to perish with hunger, when the other two though married, yet were without children.

Hacfal another Monster.

Another Monster also is often there seene and taken, of ten or twelve elles long, it is called Hacfal, it is all fat; it is taken after a wonderfull manner: they have a very long pike whereunto they fasten an Iron with a forked point, that it cannot goe backe, unto the staffe a cord of a marvailous length is fastned; they sticke this speare in the Monster, which swimmeth unto it for prey, perceiving a man in the little boates; as soone as the Monster feeles himselfe strooken and wounded, forthwith he hides himselfe in the Deepe, and there (his bloud being powred out) dyes, afterward the Fishers draw him to the land by the long cords fastned to the speare.

Dog-fish.

Besides, it hath divers Sea Monsters: a Dogge fish, which putting his head out of the Sea barketh, and receiveth his whelps sporting in the Sea againe into his belly, while they come to more growth. It hath Horses and Kine, and what not: and it is a marvell, how skilfull Nature sports, in expressing the shape of all earthly Creatures and Fowles in the Sea. Neither should any man perswade me that these things are true, although

Note.

ten Aristotles should affirme them unto me, unlesse I had seene most of them with mine eyes. Let no man therefore presently cry out, that what he knowes not is fabulous.

The men of Lubeck, Hamburg, and Breme, were often wont to goe to this Iland, and leave their servants in the winter lodgings; but now it is provided by the Kings authoritie, that no Germaine, either by reason of trading or learning of the language, leave his servants there in the winter; but upon what occasion this came to passe, the matter standeth thus. In the yeere of Christ 1561. there was a Citizen of Hamburg, one Conradus Bloem, left by another in Iseland in the winter lodgings with the Bishop in Scalholden, for trading and learning of the tongue: the Bishops fishers find a whole Unicornes horne in the Ice, brought out of Groneland (as it is thought) where yet at this day Unicorns are said to be, & thinking it to be a Whales tooth, nor did the Bishop beleeve otherwise, they bring it to their Master, who gave it to Conradus begging it; he being somewhat craftie, sold it after at Antwerp for some thousands of Florins. When this thing came to the King of Denmarks eares, he forbad that no Germaine should winter in Iseland in any cause.

Horne of a Sea-fish. See Jonas Poole and Baffin, l. 4.

Of the judgement of the Iselanders.

THere is a most pleasant place almost in the midst of the Iland, you would say it were a Paradise in the Spring time, where sometimes there was a high Mountaine, which burned with inward fire, as Hecla doth at this day; which matter after it was consumed, made a Plaine, but the Rocks which were erected about the Mountaine, stand yet, therefore this place is so fenced by Nature, that they that enter it, must goe one by one. This place is famous for two great falls of water, where two Rivers from the highest Rocks cast themselves steepe downe one against the other, with an astonishing and horrible dashing of the waters against the Rocks. These Rivers meete

together in the middle of the field, and by a great whirlepoole are swallowed up into the ground.

Islanders terme.

Heere yeerely the nine and twentieth of June, the Inhabitants who have any controversie, meete together: for in no other place or time Justice is administered: after they are entred, standings are placed by the Governours guard, who admit all that desire to come in, no man hath libertie to goe out, without the consent and authoritie of the Governour. When they are come thither, the Governour offreth his Charter to bee publikely read, whereby hee procureth credit to his Office, and having spoken before somewhat of the Kings goodwill, and his owne towards the Ilanders, he exhorteth them to communicate Justice unto all, without respect of persons, hee after departeth, and keepes himselfe in his Tent, having heard a godly Sermon, the twelve men, whom they call Lochmaders, as it were men of Justice, sit downe on the ground, each of them hath a Booke in his hand, contayning the Law of that Iland, written in the vulgar tongue. Accusation and answer being made, they goe apart into severall places, every one reades over his Booke diligently, going afterwards againe to his place, without Scribe, without replication or doubling, and juglings of such brabling Lawyers, they conferre of the sentence and pronounce it: If any thing bee worthy of deliberation, it is brought to the Governour for consultation and for his honours sake, when notwithstanding they leave no power of deciding it to him. [III.iii.651.]

Manner of trials and suites.

There are many accusations of Theft and Adulteries, they make no question of their Bonds, of their Fees, their Hereditarie fields, or any summe of money: there are no controversies there. These twelve men, over which one is chiefe, are greatly honoured amongst them. These doe determine, and diligently inquire of all publike Controversies. If there bee any wicked Act committed that yeere, if Murther bee committed any where, if Theft, if Adulterie, if Cattle be stolen away (which useth oft to bee done) then these men set downe the punishment. They

Sentence and execution.

that are condemned to dye, are beheaded: the rest, who are any way to bee punished, they burne with a marke, this punishment with them is most grievous: for they are marked in the forehead: they that are so marked are accounted in the number of wicked men: others are beaten with roddes: and I saw when the Father and the Sonne for theft (for they were Cattell stealers) were held Captives, that the Father was compelled to beate his Sonne with roddes, and hee afterwards beheaded.

Of Groneland.

ISeland by Nature is somewhat long, it hath Norway on the East, the Orcades and Scotland on the South, Groneland on the West, and the Hyperborean or Congealed Sea upon the North. Although I purposed to passe over Groneland with silence, yet seeing I touched upon the Land, and saw some few things, I thought it was to bee added. There was in a certaine Monasterie in Iseland called Helgafiel, a certayne blinde Monke left (for the Abbot of the Monasterie had converted the Revenues to the Kings use) who lived miserably there: hee was borne in Groneland, of a darke complexion and broad face. The Governour commanded him to bee brought unto him, that hee might knowe some certaintie of the state of Groneland. Hee sayd, there was a Monasterie of Saint Thomas in Groneland, into the which his Parents thrust him when he was but young, and after that, hee was taken out by the Bishop of Groneland, when hee was thirtie yeeres of age, to saile with him into Norway, to the Archbishop to Nidrosia (or Dronten) to whom the Iseland Bishops are subject: in his returne hee was left in a Monasterie by the Bishop, whose Countrey Groneland was: this was done (as hee sayd) 1546. Hee said, that Iland was called Groneland, Antiphrastically. For that it seldome or never waxeth greene, and that there is so great cold there throughout the whole yeere, except June, July and August, that being clothed and covered

HONDIUS HIS MAP OF ISLAND

with Furres, they could scarse bee warme; and that they had at home certayne round peeces of wood, which being continually mooved with the feete, kept their feet warme. Hee sayd, it aboundeth as Iseland doth with Fishes, and that they had Beares and white Foxes, nay Pigmies, and Unicornes, and that day did not appeare, till the Sunne had runne through Pisces.

Their Pigmies are Beasts and Unicornes. Fishes.

This Monke told us marvellous strange things: that there was in the Monasterie of Saint Thomas (where hee lived) a Fountayne, which sent forth burning and flaming water, that this water was conveyed through pipes of stone, to the severall Cells of the Monkes, and that it made them warme, as Stoaves doe with us; and that all kinde of meates might bee boyled in this Fountayne and fierie water, no otherwise, then if it had beene fire indeed. Hee added moreover, that the walls of the Monasterie were made of Pumice stones, out of a certayne Mountayne (not farre from the Monasterie) like to Hecla: for if yee powre these burning Waters upon the Pumice stones, there will follow a slimie matter, which instead of Lime, they use for Morter.

After the Governours conference with the Monke, I came privatly unto him, to demand certayne particular things touching the Pigmies and other things; hee had little skill in the Latine tongue, hee understood mee speaking Latine, but answered by an Interpreter. Hee sayd, the Pigmies represent the most perfect shape of Man, that they are hairy to the uttermost joynts of the fingers, and that the Males have beards downe to the knees. But although they have the shape of men, yet they have little sense or understanding, nor distinct speech, but make shew of a kinde of hissing, after the manner of Geese; that his Abbot kept two of them in his Monasterie, male and female, but they lived not long, and that they were unreasonable Creatures, and live in perpetuall darknesse. That some say, they have warre with the Cranes, that hee knew not.

Pigmies, our men have not seene such.

Of this the English discoveries in this and the next Booke will give better light.

He affirmed, that the same maner of food was in Grone-

land, as in Island, to wit, of fish but not of cattle, because they have no cattle, and that the country is not populous. Forthwith from Island begins the Hyperborean Sea, which beats upon Groneland, and the Country of the Pigmies, which at this day is called Nova Zembla, & there the [III.iii.652.] frozen Sea hath a Bay which is called the White Sea, or Mare Album, and there are there certayne passages whereby they sayle into the Schythian Ocean, if they can for Ice. And the Governour had the King of Denmarkes Ship, furnished with all necessaries: but when hee heard (by the Monke) of these passages, and short cut into the Kingdome of China, hee affected this commendation, that hee might open these passages and Ice unto the Kingdome of China by the Tartarian Sea, which had often beene attempted by others, but in vaine.

The Authors Voyage for Discoverie.

The last day therefore of March, in the yeere 1564. hee commanded that Ship to sayle to those places, and mee also together with them, being willing of mine owne accord: and enjoyned me to marke diligently the scituation of the places, and whatsoever wee met with worthy of sight or report. Wee were in the Ship threescore and foure men, as well Danes as Iselanders, and the twentieth day of Aprill wee arrived at a certayne Promontorie of Groneland, and when wee found no Haven, to the which wee might safely commit our selves, and letting downe the lead, wee had sounded the depth of the Sea, it was such as wee could not anchor there, and the abundance of Ice was so great, that it was neither safe nor possible to sayle neerer to the Rocks; foure and twentie therefore of us armed, with great labour and danger went on shoare in our Skiffes (among whom I also was) to tric whether wee could finde a harbour, and what kinde of men Groneland had. In the meane time, the great Ship floated in the Sea and Ice, in a great calme, halfe of our companie abode in the shoare to keepe the Skiffe; another part (and I with them) ranne abroad to discover: they that were left on shoare to keepe the Skiffe, going hither and thither, found a little man dead with a long beard, with a little

Boate, and a crooked Hooke of the bone of a Fish, and a leather cord: foure fish Bladders were bound unto the Boate (as is supposed) that it should not bee drowned, whereof three were sunke and fallen flat: This Boat (because it was very unlike ours) the Governour sent to the King of Denmarke.

Olaus Magnus in his first Booke writeth, that there is a Rocke in the middest of Iseland and Groneland, called Hutisocke, which wee sayled by, and that there they have Ships of leather, which hee testifieth hee saw, but it was not such an one: but Petrus Bembus in his seventh Booke, in the Venetian Historie, describeth a Ship, which was like unto this, where hee writeth thus: While a French Ship kept her course not farre from Britaine, shee tooke a Boate built of Osiers the middest beeing cut out, and the solid barke of Trees joyned together, wherein there were seven men of a middle stature, somewhat darke coloured, of a large and broad face, marked with strange scarres and violet colour; these had their garments of Fishes skinnes, full of spots, they bore a painted Crowne of reede woven in, as it were with seven eares; they did eate raw Flesh, and drunke Blood, as wee doe Wine; their speech could not bee understood, sixe of them dyed, one young man was brought alive to the Aulercos, where the King was.

In Sir Thomas Smiths Hall in London is a kinde of Boate somwhat like, of Barke sowed. Seales skins.

It is not unlikely to bee true, that this Ship with these seven men, were driven out of Groneland, into the Britaine Ocean: seeing the description of Bembus his Ship agreeth with that found in Groneland.

Wee wandred in the meane season, in a Land unknowne unto us, which was covered with Snow and Ice, wee found neither footing of men, not any habitation, nor fit Port, but the Sea was closed and fenced on every side with craggie Rockes. Yet we met with a great white Beare, which neither feared us, nor could bee driven away with our cryes, but came full upon us, as to his certaine prey, and when hee came neere unto us, being twice shot through with a Gunne, he stood bolt upright with his fore-feet as a man standeth, till hee was shot through the third time,

A Beare.

and so fell downe dead: his Skinne was sent to the King of Denmarke. We agreed amongst ourselves before wee went on shoare, if wee found a fit Harbour, or else had need of their helpe, that we should plucke up our standerd, which wee carried out with us for that purpose, and that they, if they would call us backe, should signifie the same with their Ordnance. A tempest arising in the meane while, the Master of the Ship gives us a signe to returne, by the discharging of a piece of Ordnance, and calls us backe unto the Ship: all of us therefore returned with great labour after three dayes unto the Ship with the Beares skinne; wee sayled therefore to the other side of the Iland toward the North, to the Countrey of the Pigmies or Nova Zembla that by the mouth of the White Sea, wee might come into the Scythian, or Tartarian Sea, from whence (they say) there is a passage to the Kingdome of China, and Cathay; but beeing hindred by the Ice, wee could not passe the mouth of that Sea: therefore without doing any thing, wee returned into Iseland the sixteenth of June.

The Authors journey to Mount Hecla.

I sayd before, that the Iselanders the nine and twentieth of June yeerely came together almost in the middle of the Iland to Judgement, and after our returne, the Governour went thither, and I with him. Some of the next inhabitants of Hecla then came to Judgement, whom the Governour invited twice or thrice to dinner and supper. These men while they were at supper, reported wonderfull things of the Mountayne Hecla, and other things: I was foorthwith inflamed with a desire to see and heare all. Wherefore the Governour commended mee to these men, that they should bring mee thither, and commanded all things should bee shewed me, which they knew there worthy to bee seene. This Governour was a Dane, a Noble man, and excellently well learned: to this man surely I am much bound for his great liberalitie [III.iii.653.] towards mee, in that he caused me to be conveighed at his charge to divers places of the Iland, where any notable thing was to bee seene. I accompanied with two Islanders,

and a certaine Dane, who carried provision, and a Tent on Horse-backe, spent foure whole dayes, while we go through rough places, Hilly and desolate unto this Mountayne. For some Miles about Hecla, all was full of blacke ashes and Pumis stones. The Islanders advised me that I should goe no neerer, leading away the Horse, which they had lent me.

I, because I purposed to see, and search out all things diligently; accompanied with the Dane, came neerer, as though I went to climbe the Hill, and although at the first sight we were afraid, yet I would not leave off my purpose, and by reason of my young yeeres, not understanding the danger, I went through the ashes and Pumis stones alone to Hecla, leaving the Dane. There was at that time a wonderfull calme, so that I saw neither fire nor smoke. But behold, suddenly in the bowels of the Earth, a great noyse was heard, after this, followed flames of a greene colour, which had almost killed me with their Sulphurie and filthy stinke, so that I scarse escaped to my forsaken horses and companions. Upon that sudden astonishment I fell into a sicknesse, and vehement cogitation, seeing these horrible flames were always present before mine eyes: insomuch that my Island companions were compelled to carry me away unto their house, with whom I lay sicke two whole monethes: while in the meane time the Dane returned to the Governour, and to the Hamburghers, and acquainted them with my state. I lived miserably amongst the Barbarians, sicke and unknowne; they had Bisket which I steeped in Milke, and so for that time, I indured hunger, while (being stronger) I might returne to the Governour.

The Hamburgers, by reason of the time of the yeere, least they should loose the opportunitie of sayling, despairing now of my returne, set sayle (for they depart before the foure and twentieth of August, lest being hindred after by the Ice, they cannot get out) yet with speciall care commended me to the Governour (if at any time I did returne) leaving Bisket, Wine, and Beere. The

Governour hath a dwelling fit enough for the manner and fashion of this Countrey, on the South of this Iland, not farre from the Haven of Hafnefordt, the place is called Bestede. I was brought hither of the Islanders, to the Governour, who, for our common studies, entertayned me willingly and honorably. But although wee were plentifully furnished with all necessaries, yet being very wearie of that life in such darknesse, I expected the ships out of Germany the next yeere with great desire.

Hafnefordt. His abiding there two winters.

There grew then warre between Ericus of Suetia, and Fredericke the Second King of Denmarke; which was continued with great courage for ten yeeres after. The Lubekers were Consorts and Confederates of Warre unto the Dane. So most part of the Cities on the Sea-coast, upon the Balthicke Sea, hindred or intangled with this Warre, intermitted their sayling into Island this yeere, therefore wayting in vaine, I must stay. The yeere following, when I had wayted till the end of June, all hope of returning into Germany that yeere was taken away, and which was worse, the yeerely ship came not from Denmarke: and bread and Wine failed us almost foure monethes.

There lay Portugals at anchor at that time in Island in a small ship: who came thither to fowle, they carried away excellent Falcons, and white ones among them, in great number. I thought good rather to crosse over into Portugall with them, then to wayte another yeere, either for Danes or Germans. And when they gave the Governour his Custome, he dealt with them in my behalfe concerning the charge, that I might passe with them, and he liberally paid the charges, and honourably sent me away with a worthy Present. Not far from the Kings house, there was a certayn Minister, Jonas by name, he familiarly saluted me before I departed: for the time I was in Island, I had some familiaritie with him, to whom also I left my Bookes when I departed: he for friendships sake, knit three knots in a handkerchiefe, and promised me a prosperous wind, saying, if by chance the winds at any

time grow contrary at Sea, open these knots, and then remember me. When therfore about the twentieth of September we had sayled, and now Spaine was in our view, there was so great a calme, that we felt not a breath of wind, and that for three whole dayes. In this calme my friends promise came into my minde, and I desired to prove it. I loosed the first knot, by and by, after one houre, there arose a very prosperous winde, but blowing very gently, I untye the second and the third, forthwith a Tempest beganne more and more to grow, so truly that after two dayes we ridde in the River Tagus, which beateth upon Lisbone.

His Navigations on the Coast of Africa &c. hee mentions in his Preface, which I have for brevitie omitted.

[III.iii.654.]

Chap. XXIII.

Extracts of Arngrim Jonas* an Islander, his Chrymogaea or Historie of Island: published Anno Dom. 1609.

**This learned Islander published A. 1593. one Booke of Island, which M. Hak. translated and set forth in the first Tome of his Voyages. This worke is larger in three Books out of which I have taken some things which I held conducent to our purpose. In the former works he confuteth the errours of divers Authors which write falsly many things of his Countrey.*

Of Island, the Situation, Discoverie, Plantation and Language.

ISland is an Iland of the North, compassed about with the huge Ocean: whose Cosmographicall latitude towards the North, to wit, at Hola, the Episcopall Seat of North Island, is 65. degrees, and 44. minutes: and the longitude 13. degrees and 30. minutes, or thereabouts: for I will not precisely affirme the same, by reason of that scruple, arising from the Paralaxis of the Moone in the observation of the Eclipses to be doubted: which only way of finding out the longitude, that most famous man, Gudbrandus Thorlacius, now Bishop of North Island, hath hitherto shewed: who hath imparted unto us this longitude and latitude of his Sea: and was the first, that I know, among our Countreymen, who hath delivered any certaintie in Writing, concerning this matter.

Hola in 65. degrees 44. minutes.

And surely, that which at this day, and so from the

first entrance of Inhabitants, beareth the name of Island, (while as yet it remayned barren and desolate) had divers names allotted or given unto it from divers Discoverers: whereof three are mentioned.

Divers names of Island,

Snæland.

Naddoc first Discoverer.

Farre Ilands.

For first of all it was called Snœlandia. For a certaine Pyrate called Naddocus, going towards the Farensian Ilands (commonly called Færenar, for the multitude of Eggs) was brought unto the shoares of East Island, through a Tempest, not farre from the Mountayne Reidarfiall, (so called afterward) to the Bay Reidarfiard: who ascending the Mountayne, and beholding the bordering Countrey farre and neere, found it all Desert. And departing from the Coast about Autumne, he perceived the higher tops of the Mountaynes to bee covered with exceeding much Snow; and therefore, as the present case required, he called the Iland Snœlandia, that is to say, The Snowie Countrey.

Gardar second Discoverer.

Another following him, one Gardarus the sonne of Suanarus a Suecian borne, perswaded through the report which Naddocus had brought concerning Snœlande, went to seeke it: he found it, who arrived also neere the Easterne Shoare, and from thence being carried about the Iland, he abode in the Bay of North Island called Skialfanda, and wintered there in the yeere of Christ 864. and called the name of the Haven, Husawich, from the wintering places, or houses built there. But the Spring beginning, Gardarus being about to depart into Norway, the ship Boat was driven away by a tempest, into an Haven neere unto the former, and in the same Boat there was a certayne Mariner called Natrare: from whom also this haven had the name of Narsarawicke. Moreover, Gardarus returning to his friends, called that new Countrey Gardarsholme, as it were, the Iland of Gardarus, neglecting the name of Snœlande.

A.D. 864.

Gardars-holme.

Moreover, the desire also of visiting a Countrey newly discovered, possessed many. For the third also, one Floco, and he a most famous Pirate purposing to visit Gardarsholme, set sayle out of an Haven of Norway, which

Floco third Discoverer.

lyeth neere the watch towre or rather Pharus Flokawarda, situate in the limits of the Provinces of Hordaslandia and Rogaelandia: and passing by Hietlandia, (misnamed by some Schetlandia) called a certayne Haven by the name of Flokawogur, and there the deepest part of the Sea (where Geirhilda the daughter of Floco by chance was drowned) was caled Geirhildarwata, from her: no otherwise then that Sea was called Hellespontus, wherein by misfortune Phryxus lost his sister Helle. There was yet no use of the Mariners Compasse: wherefore Floco leaving Hietlandia, tooke certayne Ravens unto him: and when hee thought hee had sayled a great way, he sent forth one Raven, which flying aloft, went backe againe to Hietlande, which she saw behind. Whereupon Floco perceiving that he was yet neerer to Hietland then other Countryes, and therefore couragiously going forward, he sent forth another Raven: which because she could see no Land, neither before nor behind, light into the ship againe. But lastly, the third Raven was sent forth by Floco, and having for the most part performed his Voyage, through the sharpnesse of her quick sight attayning the Land, which the Mariners desired, she speedily flew thither: whose direction Floco following, beheld first the Easterne side of the Iland, as his Predecessors did: and from thence directing his course to the South, found a very wide and open Bay twelve Islandish miles broad, betweene the two Promontories or high Lands, afterwards called Renkanes, and Snœfelsnes. And hearing by a certayne Mariner (whom he had with him) a Scot borne, named Faxa, that the Bay they now met with, was the huge mouth of a River or Floud; Floco to reprove the folly of Faxa, supposing so huge a Bay of the Sea to be the mouth of a River, called the name of the Bay inclosed betweene the foresaid Promontories, Faxaos, which signifieth the mouth of Faxa. This Bay, by reason of the multitude of Havens, was afterwards called Hafnafiordur: which name Hafnafiordur at this day is more specially used of a most safe Haven of the same Bay.

Raven Guides.

[III.iii.655.]

After this, Floco sayling along the West side of the Iland, entred somewhat within the Bay Breidafiord, remaining in a certaine Haven of the Province Bardestraund called Watnsfiordur (for I use the names given them afterwards) and there preparing wintering places, he lived very commodiously and well with fish of divers kindes, wherewith that Bay doth abound. But having the Spring time here very untemperate through cold, hee found a Bay (which entreth this part of the Land on the North) to be filled with Ice of the Sea, which wee call Gronelandish Ice. From which Ice, Floco devised the third name for the Iland, and called it Island. Moreover also Floco turning to the South side, passed another Winter in Island: and returning into Norway (from the Ravens, which hee used instead of the Mariners Compasse) he allotted it the surname of Rafnastoke.

The name Island of Ice.

And Island surely obtained these names consequently from the finders, or discoverers thereof. For as touching the fourth, Thule, imposed upon this Land by some, I cannot bee perswaded to beleeve, it is true; chiefly by this argument; That Thyle, or Thule among the ancient Writers, was often in the mouth and writings not onely of Pliny in his second booke of Naturall Histories 75. Chapter and fourth booke, and sixteenth Chapter (and Pliny flourished about the eightieth yeere of Christ) and of him who was more ancient then Pliny, Pythias Massiliensis: but also of Pub. Virgilius, who lived not above fourteene yeeres after Christ: but Island, till the yeere of Christ 874. remained altogether desert, as hereafter I shall speake. Thule therefore, which Virgil said should serve Augustus (Geor. i. tibi serviat ultima Thule: where even every child knoweth that Thule is Synecdochically spoken, for the Inhabitants of Thule) not onely inhabited in the times of Augustus and Virgil, but also knowne to the Romanes, is not Island, which many ages after began first to be inhabited. Besides, Plinie himselfe seemeth in the later place recited to reckon Thule with the Ilands of Britaine: for, saith hee, Ultima omnium

Island is not Thule.

Thule furthest of the Brittish Iles.

quae memorantur est Thule: to wit, of the Brittish Ilands, for hee speaketh of them. It is likely also that Virgil meant the same, who said Thule was the last, in the place before recited: and likewise, Penitus toto divisos orbe Britannos: that is to say the last. Let me yet urge the same argument further, from the age of Claudianus Alexandrinus, and Pub. Papinius Statius, farre more ancient then he. For Claudianus about the yeere of Christ 390. writeth thus concerning the successe of the Getick Wars atchieved by Theodosius.

Famaque ingrantes succincta panoribus alas,
Secum cuncta trahens, a Gadibus usque Britannum
Terruit Oceanum: & nostro procul axe remotam
Insolito Belli, tremefecit murmure Thulen.

Then blackwing'd Fame Feare girt, frights all the World with Warre.
From Cades to Britaine, from Our World shakes Thule farre.

The Author proceedeth in this disputation, further then our Reader perhaps would permitus. The learned and curious may there find enough: and more yet in Ortelius his both, Thesaurus and Theatrum, who proveth out of Pompenius, Ptolemeus, and Procopius, that Island is not Thule but (as the name sounds) Tylemarke, a Region in Norway, or all Scandia, of which that is a part, still retaining the name.

But did Report and Fame cause Island not inhabited, and desert to tremble: And Statius more ancient by three hundred yeeres then Claudian, in his third Booke Sylva, writeth thus.

Quanquam etsi gelidas irem mansurus ad Arctos,
Velsuper Hesperiæ vada caligantia Thules.

Though I should dwell in Artike frosts
Or mystie shelves of Thules West coasts.

You heare, not onely a slight report of Thule came to Statius eares, but that the shallow places, quicke sand, or shelves found in approching to the Iland were sufficiently knowne unto him, by the often relation of Navigators: of which sort in the circuit of Island, there are none that I know, which experience speaketh: but in comming to the Ilands of Britaine they are very ordinarie and common, as they say.

The Longitude thereof from the East unto the West,

hath not hitherto beene expressed by any certaine or assured measure that I know, nor yet the Latitude from North to South; save that in an ancient Codicall or Writing I found that the Longitude was twentie dayes journey: and the Latitude (where it is broadest) foure dayes, but the journeys, as elsewhere, so also with us are not alike, (yet here I understand Pyngmanualeid twentie, in the Authors owne hand-writing it is Dagleider) nor is it expressed whether of Horse-men or Foot-men. But the Latitude itselfe is not every where the same; by reason of Bayes on both sides, to wit, from the South and North entring the Land it selfe with unequall distances. The Easterly bound is Austurhorn: the Westerne Raudesandur [III.iii.656.] (for the Promontory Suæ-felloues lyeth more toward the South-west) but the North bound is Langanes, and the South Reikranes. The Iland also from the foure quarters of the World, is divided into North, South, East and West, and the Promontorie Langanes divideth North Island from East Island; from West Island, the Bay Rutafiordur: from South Island, the vast and huge deserts of rough, and inaccessable places extended the whole length of the Iland. But South Island, opposite to the North, through these rough and inaccessable places lying betweene the River Joculsu, running through the deserts of Solseimasande, divideth from East Island: from West Island also, a famous River, named Albis, emptying it selfe into the Bay Borgarfiord: So that, if it pleased me to represent the Iland in humane shape, East Island should have the proportion of the head. The two more famous Promontories Langanes and Reikranes, or bounds; the one Northerly, the other Southerly (as hath been said) should serve instead of armes. And the deserts extended the whole length of the Iland should make the backe, or backe bone: then North and South Island, the shoulders with the sides; the two opposite Bayes Borgarfiords, and Ratafiordar, the one on the South, and the other on the North, should divide the forepart about the short ribs, from both the thighes or hips. But West Island should resemble the

rest of the parts of a mans bodie, from the forepart about the short ribbes: which the Bay Breidifiordur comming in from the West, should contract and straighten into the right and left foot.

The circuit also of the Iland, is no more certainely knowne; yet an ancient rumour and opinion (as in another place where it is noted) reckoneth one hundred and fortie foure Norwegian miles (as I thinke) that is to say, two hundred eightie eight Germane miles, Chytræus accounting the Norwegian mile, to equall two Germane miles, sayling from one Promontorie to the other, not by the Bayes: whereof North Island is esteemed to have eleven, East Island twentie one, South Island sixe, and West Island seventie. *Circuit.*

Haraldus Pulcricomus* swaying the Scepter in Norway, much neglected the chiefe Nobilitie of Norway: which the Noruegian Historie setteth downe at large, yet particular Histories of noble Families expulsed by Pulcricomus, more largely prosecute the same, as hereafter wee purpose to write. For Pulcricomus not contented with Kingly authoritie, or chiefe soveraignetie, that is to say, with the right of Lawes, Magistracie, and appeale of Warre and Peace, challenged all unto himselfe, by the right of a proprietarie. Insomuch, as very many chose, rather to leave their Countrey and rich inheritances, then to exchange their Generositie for slaverie and tributes: for they thought it altogether unworthy and ill beseeming their owne valour and their ancestours. Hence, for the most part arose mutuall injuries against the King, or the Kings partakers; as murdering of the Kings friends, allyes, or faction; then the exercises both at Sea and Land were rapines and robberies. From these noble Families therefore, refusing the violence of Harald, this our Island, with the neighbouring Ilands began first to be inhabited, and that almost by these steps and voyages. **Harald Harefagre finding many pettie Princes made an absolute Monarchy of Norway, whereupon some sought to free themselves by new discoveries: and hence arose the plantation of Island.*

In the yeere of our Redemption 874. a certaine Inhabitant of Norway, one Ingulfus, going out of this Countrey, following the steps of Naddocus, Gardarus, and *A.D.* 874. *Ingulfus.*

Floco mentioned before, was made Standard-bearer of the Inhabitants which were to bee conveyed into Island, and that upon this occasion. Ingulfus was famous for his parentage and riches, whose father, called Orne, which signifieth an Eagle, was Duke of Fyrdafylce in Norway; the sister of Ingulfus was Helga, a Virgin indued with all womanly ornaments, and his cousin germaine Leifus; who for a notable sword, which through his singular warlike prowesse he got in Ireland, was named Hiorleifus. For Hir is a Sword. Moreover, at that time among the Nobilitie of Norway, there were three naturall brothers, Hallstenn, Holmsten and Herstenn; the sonnes of Atlas, or Atlantes, a certaine Baron of Norway: who bore certaine privie grudges to the foresaid Ingulfus and Hiorleifus; which presently after brake forth into cruell and bloudie slaughters. For when they chance they feasted together, after the manner of that age, they injoyned every one to make some solemne Vow. Herstenus therefore first vowed, that he would take Helga, Ingulfus sister to wife, or marrie none. Then presently Ingulfus vowed, that hee would admit none into his Fathers Inheritance with him, save only Hiorleifus: meaning thereby that his sister Helga, by his consent should marrie none but Hiorleifus (contrary to the vow of Herstenus for the marrying of her only). After that Helmstenus vowed, that if he were chosen Arbitrator betweene the adverse parties, he would by no means be compelled, to suffer an unjust sentence. And so the rest after them. Not long after succeeded the Vow of Ingulfus, for Hiorleifus tooke his cousin Germane Helga to wife. For at that time the Marriages of Cousin Germanes were lawfull. From hence arose the extreame hatred, and enmitie of Herstenus, against the foresaid Hiorleifus, and Ingulfus: who therefore joyning with his Brother Holmstenus, with sixe ships filled with Souldiers, set upon Hiorleifus unawares, having but three ships only, preparing his Voyage into forreine Countreyes. Whose violence Hiorleifus a long time, and stoutly sustayning, holpen by a

Rash vowes and bloudie quarrells ensuing.

A.D. 1609.

certayne friend comming in the meane-while, having slaine Herstenus got the upper hand. But Holmstenus providing for himselfe by flight, and not a little exasperated and grieved through the violent death of his Brother, after some few monethes, came with an armed power to Ingulfus and Hiorleifus to surprize them suddenly at home. Whereof they being certified by Spies, receive him with an armed force, and kill him. Halstenus the third brother, wiser then the rest, who consorted not with the [III.iii.657.] unjust routes of his Brethren, remayned yet alive; to whose arbitrement Ingulfus with Hiorleifus commit the whole matter to be determined, holding him mindfull of his Vow, concerning equitie not to be violated. Halstenus therefore pronounceth his brother Herstenus to be justly slaine: But not Holmstenus who compelled through bitter griefe, desired to revenge the death of his brother, by any slaughter whatsoever. For killing therefore of him, he commanded them both to be banished out of the province of Fyrdafilse. They readily obey his award, to whom they willingly committed the censure, & with a purpose to leave their Countrey, they sell their Lands and Possessions for mony and Merchandizes, and conceive in their minds a worthy attempt of planting a strange people in a strange Countrey: and that not to gratifie Halstenus (with whom through this agreement they returned into favour; with whom they might otherwise easily have contended in strength) but also for feare of Pulcricomus himselfe, raging against his Monarchie, but Pampesia, of all their Possessions: nor was that to be doubted, concerning the violence and oppression of Harald: for in the Historie of Haquinns Adalstenius his succeeding Sonne it is expresly read, that he was contented with Kingly authoritie, and restored to every one their owne, which his Father unjustly challenged unto himselfe.

Island first inhabited, A. 874.

It was the yeere of Christ 870. wherein Ingulfus with Hiorleifus first visit Island, but they inhabit it not presently, but foure yeeres after, in the yeere 874. as hath beene said: bringing many Families thither.

Superstitions. Moreover Ingulfus comming within view of the Iland, casteth the postes of the houses which he had in Norway into the water, after the manner of Ethnickes accounting for it for an Oracle, that that place was fatally chosen for his Habitation, which the postes cast out upon the shoare should note or signifie. That custome many of the Norwegians retayned by turning up the ground. But Ingulfus arrived not where he cast in the postes, but at the Promontorie of the South shoare (else-where erroniously, the West shoare) called by his name Ingulfhofde. Yet notwithstanding wanting the postes of the houses three whole yeeres, at length he found them in that place, which is named Reychiarwich, and there he erected his Habitation. But Hiorleifus more estranged from Ethnick superstition, seated himselfe in the Promontorie Hirleifhofda; so called likewise from his name. There he built great houses: one of one hundred twentie six, and another of one hundred thirtie five feet long: who, the first yeere being ended, began to till the ground and sow seed. In which worke, when he had exercised ten servants or slaves, which he brought with him out of Island, they fayned that Hiorleifus his labouring beast was slaine by a wilde Beare (for it was afterwards manifestly knowne, that Island hath no Beares, but such as came thither by chance) which when Hiorleifus (with a purpose of revenge) sought in the next neighbouring Wood, he was deceitfully slaine by these slaves lying in ambush: together with some other companions which he tooke with him: the Servants aswell ravishing the Wives as spoyling the goods of the slaine; and flying into the Ilands not very farre distant from the shoare: which after of the same slaves, were called Westmafyar, because they were of Ireland. The Norwegians call the Irish, English, and Scots Westmen, that is, men of the West; seeing those Countries are distant from Norway, to the West. Ingulfus pursuing these Murtherers, set upon them suddenly, and destroyed them every man in the same Ilands, being much grieved in minde for the untimely and cruell death of his deere friend and allyes.

First houses. Island had anciently fairer houses then now (having timber from Norway, &c.) likewise Tillage was then in use. Hiorleifus slain.

Westmafyar and Westmen.

But Ingulfus found and possessed Island altogether barren and desolate; on every side beset with very thicke Woods, and scarsly fertile of any but Birches, so that hee was faine everywhere to open the Woods with the Axe, for journeyes and habitation. Yet in the meane space, we might gather by certayne signes, I know not what Mariners had sometimes touched upon certayne shoares of the Countrey, but not inhabited them. For Ingulfus found little sacring Bels and wooden Crosses, and other things made by the workmanship and arte of the Irish and Britaynes: but no tokens of culture, or habitation. Whereupon it is likely, that Irish or Scottish Fishermen (as also the English at this day) accustomed to fish neere Island, as sometimes it commeth to passe, went ashoare, and so by chance left sacring Bells and Crosses, the Utensils of Christian Religion. For at that time the Irish were instructed in Christianisme as they say. And those whosoever were the ancient Islanders, they called Papa, or Papas: from whom, as seemeth probable to me, the Iland of East Island called Papey, derived the name; because they were often wont to touch there: or their Monuments (such as I sayd) were chiefly found there.

Woods.

Bels and Crosses.

This side of Island, to such as sayle from England, Ireland, and Scotland, is most exposed towards the North-west. Moreover, what and from whence these Papae, or Pappae came, I cannot sufficiently speake: unlesse peradventure from the Ilands of Scotland, whereof one is named Pappa, and another Westrapappa, as we may see in the Mappes: unto which conjecture let every one give what credit he pleaseth. Furthermore, very many of the Norwegians, afterwards boldly following the steps of Ingulfus going into Island, with their wives and children, and great multitudes of their Kindred and friends, restored themselves to libertie. Whose names and large Families are recited in the Chronicles: as by the second Booke is understood. Besides, it is there recounted what coasts, what shoares, what middle-land places every one possessed: and at what time: and also how the first Inhabitants [III.iii.658.]

gave name to Straights, Bayes, Havens, narrow straights of Land, Ferryes, Clyffes, Rockes, Mountaines, Hills, Vallies, rough and inaccessible Places, Fountaines, Flouds, Rivers, Villages, Farmes or Habitations: whereof at this day many are yet retained and in use. Which Topography, supposing it would bee tedious, especially to a forraine Reader, I have here omitted; applying my selfe rather to the description of the Inhabitants, who in sixtie yeeres space so replenished with their multitudes, the habitable parts of Island now possessed.

Chap. 3. Of the language of the Nation.

Islanders only retaine the ancient Gottish.

Concerning the language of the Islanders, the matter it selfe speaketh, that it is the Noruegian; I say, that old and naturall speech, derived from the ancient Gothish, which onely the Islanders now use uncorrupted: and therefore we call it Islandish. Of the letters of which tongue we will first speake somewhat: and afterwards in the Chapter following there shall be a short discourse of the originall thereof.

Two kindes of letters.

And surely that language seemeth to have double letters: to wit, the Old, and New. The New, which commonly wee use at this day, are common almost to all Europe together with us. Which, when they first began to bee used is not certainely knowne. Surely as yet, some crosses, written in ancient letters, are yet seene among our Country-men, which letters also many yet know, and both reade, and write: and this naturall language it selfe is contained in the same, nothing at all changed. Moreover it seemed good to mee, thus to present the name and shape of the ancient Characters, such surely as was offered unto mee, placing the New or Common over against them, expressing the validitie thereof, adding also the agreement and discrepancie of ours, with those of Ulphila, the Bishop of the Gothes: whom Johannes Theodorus, and Johannes Israel, brethren and Citizens of Francofurt, report to have invented these letters: by whose relation hee agreeth with us in all things, save where the disagreement shall bee noted here. Moreover also, I thought it not amisse to set downe in writing the letters of certaine other Nations, to

some of our Country letters, out of the same Francofurt copie, which the Types or Figure subscribed will demonstrate.

a	*Ar*	ᛅ
b	*Biarkan*	ᛒ
z	*Kneſol*	ᛦ
d	*Stunginntyr*	ᛏ or ᛐ and *Vlphila* thus ᚹ.
e	*Stunginn Is*	ᛖ
f	*Fe*	ᚠ
g	*Stunginn kaun*	ᚵ
h	*Hagall*	ᚼ
i	*Is*	ᛁ
k	*Kaun*	ᚴ
l	*Langur*	ᛚ or ᚳ : *Vlphila* thus ᛦ : it is alſo ᚳ, the *Moſcouit* L.
m	*Madur*	ᛘ
n	*Nand*	ᚾ *Vlphila* thus ᚿ
o	*Os*	ᚬ
p	*Plaſtur*	ᛕ *Vlphila* thus ᛓ
r	*Reid*	ᚱ
s	*Sol*	ᛋ *Vlphila* thus ᛎ
t	*Tyr*	ᛏ *Vlphila* thus ᛏ
u	*Ur*	ᚢ *Vlphila* thus ᚤ
y	*Yr*	ᛦ *Vlphila* thus ᚸᚹᛊ*th.* ᛊ*tha.* ᛊ of the *Arabians.*
þ	*Puſs*	ᚦ ᛐ the *æthiopian* ᚦ ᛊ*d.* ᛊ ᛊ*dha.* ᛊ

Here wee see twentie one Characters, but the ancient numbred onely sixteene. And the third ᛦ, they would not acknowledge for theirs: because z of the Greekes, that is to say ts or ds (as they would have it) they might write it in their language with distinct letters. But the fourth ᛐ from the eighteenth, they distinguish with some point, or an overthwart line, almost thus ᛏ: otherwise it is altogether the same in shape and name, Tyr, but d. Stunginn tyr, that is to say, pointed Tyr, as ᚹ and pointed Kaun ᚵ. g. So Is pointed for l. but Plastur [III.iii.659.] resembleth B. with both the bellies open above and beneath. Besides these, the rest are numbred sixteene, as I said. For they reckoned the Diphthongs to the Syllables.

Moreover, it retained the last new Consonant of the old Alphabet, changed in name, but not in shape: which is p. This being set after a vowell in the same syllable, hath the sound of d. as Blap for Blab, which is a leafe: which kind of writing was more usuall with the ancient, but at this day is almost growne out of use: but being set before a vowell, it hath a peculiar force and pronunciation, not altogether Th. but sounding somewhat more grosly, as it were Tzh putting forth the tongue almost between the fore-teeth: as þa, that is to say, then. In times past it had the name of Puss: at this day it is called Porn, or Thorn, if you put þ. for th: and therefore it cannot be written or pronounced at all, but by it selfe.

They also of later time write the Consonant f. after this manner β. The Moderne Writers also doe sometimes aspirate L.N.R. the ancient very seldome, and almost never: as Hlutur in old time Lutur, that is, a thing. Hnijfur in times past (as also sometimes at this day) Knijfur; that is to say, a Knife. Hrutur, in old times Rutur, that is to say a Ram. In like manner sometimes Iod, and Vaf, or I and V Consonants: as Hiel, that is, a Wheele: Hualur, that is, a Whale: which also I thinke the ancient did concerning Iod and Vaf.

In Vowells and Diphthongs, as also abbreviations proper to this language, the varietie is farre greater, which I purpose not to touch. Moreover also, the due handling of the letters, as of the rest of the Etymologie and Syntaxis of this tongue, would bee the copious matter of a peculiar worke, especially if any would adde the Poetrie, purposing to write the Grammer of the Islandish tongue, which would bee no more difficult, then that wee have seene done, concerning the Germane and French tongue, besides others.

Island Grammarian. About the yeere of the Lord 1216. one of our Countrymen wrote in his Countrey language, concerning the letters of the proper, or mother tongue: where hee affirmeth these ancient Characters to be peculiar to this language, and handleth them both, as well as new as old

after a legitimate and due manner of tractation, by his definitions and divisions of the letters into Vowels and Consonants, and of the five Latine Vowels, maketh eighteene of his language, distinguished in sound and pronunciation: He divideth the Consonants naturally into halfe Vowels, and Mutes, and those into Liquids and Firmes, these into open and shut; performing the part of a pretie Logician. And in delivering the force and pronunciation of the letters, hee artificially assumeth for every definition all the Instruments of framing the voyce, as well as the lungs and throat, as the auxiliary parts of the mouth and tongue. The letter p. also, he calleth the, peradventure in imitation of the Greeke Theta (which almost, as we said, although not altogether it expresseth) or Tau of the Hebrewes, which Hebrew letter, if th. or t. of the Latines rightly expresse, as is reported by some, Thau shall come nothing neerer to our p. then Theta. The same Country-man of ours, from absolute letters, proceedeth to set downe in writing, the figures of the word and sentence in the Mother tongue, and illustrate them with examples of our language, retaining the Greeke titles of the Figures, or names of Epizeusis, Anadiplosis, &c.

And from this Writer of our Countrey, we received the Types of the old Alphabet: for there are Historicall fragments yet extant, concerning Norus the Name-giver of Norway, and founder of the Kingdome, and those Toparchi, or little Kings, whom he vanquished before he obtained the Monarchie.

Norus of whom Norway is named.

§. II.

A Discourse of the first Inhabitants of the Northerne World, supposed to be Giants expelled from Canaan. Of the Islanders Houses, Fewell, Victuall.

Chap. 4. Of the first Inhabitants of the North parts of the world.

MOreover concerning some of the ancestors of Norus: among whom his father Porre (whom they call Thorro) King of Gotland, Finland, and Kuenland: an

excellent Prince of his age, from whom the moneth of the old Noruegians, and now Islanders hath the name of *Thorro.* Thorre, which in the Julian Calender beginneth the 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. or 16. of January: for it hath a moveable beginning after the manner of their Calender. And seeing King Thorro this month accustomed to sacrifice unto his gods; the Kuenones instituted yerely sacrifices in the same month to him, being dead, as to a certaine god, in token of an happy yeere, which they began with the winter, after the maner of the old Lacedemonians; & called the same month Porre, of Thorro; no otherwise then the Lacedemonians gave divine honor to Lycurgus being dead, building a Temple in memory of him, where hee was honoured for a god; to whom his familiar friends instituted set Feasting-dayes, and solemne assemblies which remained a long time, and the daies wherein the assemblies were celebrated, they called Lycurgidœ: concerning which matter looke Cragius in his third booke of the Commonwealth of the Lacedemonians.

[III.iii.660.] Of the Ancestors also of Norus, all are mentioned even *Fermotus.* to his Great-grandfather, who was Fermotus King of Finland: Moreover, one of the three sonnes of Fermotus, and therefore Great uncle of Norus, called Logie, which signifieth a flame; who for the excellencie of his beautie was called Halogie, that is to say, an high or excellent flame. Hee was Monarch of the Halongiensian Province, bordering upon the Province of Nidrosia.

Goe. Goe also the daughter of Thorro, by the sister of Norus, is there recorded, for recoverie of whom, being stolne away (as Cadmus was sent by his father Agenor to seeke his daughter Europa) Norus was sent by his father Thorro: which, that it might more happily succeed, Thorro instituted new sacrifices to the Gods, in the moneth next following the former (afterwards called Thorra) and intituled the same moneth with the name of Goa, after the name of his daughter Goe: which name of the moneth likewise the Islanders that now live doe yet retaine.

I thought good to exhibit these things in a Table.

FERMOTUS King of Finland.

Hlar.	Kare.	Logie.
The same also is Agier, which other-wise signifieth the Sea; hee is supposed another Neptune, to have dominion over the Sea.	That is to say, the Winde, for in the number of the Gods, after death, he is thought to be another Æolus, to rule the Windes.	Signifieth a Flame, honoured instead of Vulcan, after death (as having power over the Fire), and for the excellency of his beautie was called Halogie, so named of the Province of Halogalande in Norway.

Froste.
Otherwise called Jokul, both from the Frost and Cold.

Snœr.
That is to say, Snowe; surnamed the Ancient, because hee is reported to have lived three hundred years; he left one sonne and three daughters:

Dryfa,	Porre,	Faunn,	Miol,
A snowy-shower.	King of Gothland, Kuenland, and Finland.	Signifieth Snowe gathered together in thick heapes by a Tempest.	Is thin Snowe descending without winde.

Goe,	Nor,	Gor.
A daughter.	Of whom Norway is named, and the first Monarch.	Beiter—Geiter Gylui.

From this Norus; Haraldus Pulcricomus is the twelfth of them that descended from the right Line, whom some make the first monarch of Norway, but amisse, being ignorant of Antiquitie; seeing hee was the third Restorer of the Monarchy of Norway; for betweene him and Norus, Hemngus the sonne of Odinus* obtayned the Monarchy also.

The said Asian immigration happened in the time of this Gylui.

** This Odinus is said to have made his plantation with his Asian followers, about four and twenty yeeres before Christ was borne.*

Gorus. Furthermore, ancient Histories make mention of Gorus, the naturall brother of Norus: as also the nephew of Gorus, named Gyluus, having the soveraigne authoritie in Suecia, in whose name Odinus happened to come (others call him Othinus) Standerd-bearer of the Asian Immigration, made in the foure and twentieth yeere before Christ was born, which we mentioned before: and Gyluus had a father called Geiterus, and an Uncle Beiterus, the sonnes of Gorus; from Beiterus, the Haven neere the Citie Nidrosia, is named Beitstod.

These (I say) besides many other things, are the manifest tokens of the Inhabitants of the Northerne World, farre more ancient then the immigration of Odinus: of whose originall notwithstanding, there is not one word. But because it is most repugnant to a Christian man, knowing the Bookes of Moses concerning Originals, to affirme themselves to be Autochtonoe, as both others, but especially the Greekes did concerning their Ancestors (yet with better leave then the rest of the people of Europe: who next to the Chaldees, Egyptians, and Jewes, might worthily boast of Antiquitie in comparison of other people). It were better truly to confesse the unknown originall of Ancestors, then to be carried away with the opinion and error of Earth-bred men: lest surely wee should heare some such thing, as sometimes one wittily upbraided the Grecians with, so much boasting by reason of their pretended selfe-originall, to wit, that Moses the Law giver of the Jewes, was more ancient then the Gods of the Grecians.

Earth-bred or Land-sprung men, which had their originall in that Land.

In the meane space, because through the onely confession of ignorance or doubt, truth doth not so soone appeare; somewhat is to be alleaged touching the proposed question: that the historicall Reader may have some thing here which hee may either confute or confirme. Wee are therefore by probable reasons to inquire, who were the first inhabitants of the Northerne World, and from whence they came: then, when they began to inhabit this our World: that from hence some conjecture may

[III.iii.661.]

arise concerning the originall of the language. And that I may here acquit my selfe without circumstances: I thinke the first inhabitants of the Northerne World, were of the number of Giants, nay, mere Giants; men that inhabited the mountaines of an huge and sometimes a monstrous body, and of monstrous and exceeding strength: and that they were the posteritie and remnant of the Canaanites, expulsed from the Territories of Palestina, about the yeere of the World 2500. by Josua and Caleb remooving into Palestina through Gods pleasure and direction: and that this Countrey of the World even untill those times, or peradventure longer, remayned altogether not inhabited.

Giants first inhabiters of the Northerne parts of the World. Their originall from the Cananites.

For thus Saxo Grammaticus argueth in the Preface of his Dania. But (sayth he) the stones of exceeding bignesse fastened to the Tombes and Caves of the ancient, testifie that the Countrey of Denmarke was sometimes troubled with the inhabiting of Giants. But if any doubt, that it was done by monstrous strength; let him looke up to the high tops of certayne Mountaynes, and say, if he know it well, who hath brought Rockes of such huge greatnesse to the tops thereof? For every one that considereth this Miracle, shall perceive that it is beyond common opinion, that the simple labour of mortalitie, or usual force of humane strength, should rayse so huge a weight (hardly, or not at all moveable upon the plaine ground) to so high a top of mountaynous sublimitie.

A long discourse of the Authour to prove that there have bin Giants, is omitted.

This Saxo writeth, who shall be a sufficient Author unto us concerning the first Inhabitants of Denmarke, that is to say, his owne Countrey. So concerning Norway and Suecia, and the bordering Countreyes, as whatsoever is most ancient; so it most resembleth a Giant-like disposition and nature. Whereof examples are to be taken out of Histories, which would bee tedious here. For that I may omit ancient examples, those things are knowne of late memory to have beene done: Concerning the Giant Doffro, inhabitant of the Mountayne Doffroefial in Norway; and Foster-father of Haraldus Pulcricomus King of

Giants in the time of Haraldus Harefayre and since.

Norway. Also concerning Dunubo who lived in the time of Droffon: from whom the Bay Boddick or Bothnicke: in time past was called Dumbshaff, who in a Sea-fight, encountring eighteene Giants alone, sent twelve of them first to Hell before he himselfe was slaine. Of thirtie Giants at once destroyed by fire, by Dumbos Sonnes left, in revenge of their Fathers death. There is yet a later example of certayne Giants of Norway, destroyed by authoritie of Olaus Triggo King of Norway, about the yeere of Christ 995. But the latest in the yeere 1338. Magnus the Sonne of Ericus, being King of Norway, that a Giant of fifteene Cubits was slaine by foure men: as it is found recorded in the Chronicles. Hereunto adde, that a certayne Province of Norway, or bordering upon Finmauchia, in ancient time was called Risalande, that is to say, the Land of Giants (for En Rise, and Rese, signifie a Giant) from whence Jotum Heimar, that is, the habitation of Giants is not farre dissonant (whereupon as yet, En Iœt, is said to be a Giant) that I may speake nothing heere of Jotumland: by which name, that which at this day is called Jijtland, was sometimes called by our Countrey-men, and very many other also, the Land of the Cimbri, or Chersonesus: the same name also being given it of Kemper, that is, fighting Giants of Nephilheimar, and Karnephill, else-where, and peradventure by others shall be spoken, as also of the Gotthes, and Getts (peradventure also Ietts) and such like others. Moreover, the remnant of the Giants came into Island, whose Names, Habitations, worthy Acts and Enterprizes, are sufficiently knowne, and before our eyes. Seeing therefore Giants first inhabited this our World; it is demanded, when, or whence they came?

1338., a Giant reported of 15. Cubits.

Jutland.

Gilb. Genebrand. Chronol. Lib. I. The first Age, sayth hee, (from the Creation of the World unto the Floud) seemeth to have beene passed and spent within the mid-lands of the World, and that they came not to the borders of Asia, Africa, and Europe. Bodinus sayth, that Moses wrote the Historie of the whole World (he meaneth

inhabited) even to the yeere of the World, 2450. And Genebrand againe, Lib. I. Chronol. pag. ii. As the first Originall of Mankind was in Armenia, Mesopotamia, Chaldaea, and Syria: and men before the Floud dwelt only there: so other Countreyes themselves, were first inhabited after the Floud. Also Genebrand sayth yet further, ibid pag. 35. Before three thousand yeeres (for hee wrote in the yeere of Christ 1597.) almost all Europe was emptie, that is, about the yeere of the World 2541. which is chiefly to be understood of the Northerne World, if of the rest of Europe. But hee said, almost, not altogether, that hee might not take away the migrations of the Nations then presently beginning after the yeere of the World 2500. wee doe not therefore tye the time (wherein this further Europe began to bee inhabited) to the yeere of the World 2500. But wee say, that that troublesome time wherein the Nations (and among them the Giants of Canaan) were cast out of their places and dwellings, and compelled to seek new habitations, even in Europe, happened in this yeere; as was proposed by us in the beginning. And that Europe received her Inhabitants from hence, among the Ancient, Procopius is my Author, a Writer borne at Cæsaria of Palæstina, Collector of the worthy Acts of Justinianus, about the yeere of the Lord 530. who to prove this very thing, alleageth divers [III.iii.662.] Writers of the Historie of the Phoenicians. The words of Procopius are these, in his fourth Booke of the Warres of the Vandalls, not in one place only, cited by D. Cythrœus: out of the which among other things, I gather mine opinion. The Hebrewes (saith Procopius) after they returned out of Egypt, and remayned still in the borders of Palaestina, Moses, (who led them in their journey) dieth: whom Josua the sonne of Nun succeeded, who also brought the people into Palaestina, and shewing strength and courage far beyond the nature of man, obtayned the Country; whereby destroying Nations, he easily vanquished many Cities, seeming inexpugnable unto all. Then therefore all the Countrey upon the Sea-

coast, from Sidon even to the borders of Egypt, was called Phoenicia: over which one long since raigned; as all witnesse, who writ the ancient History of the Phoenicians; here great multitudes of people dwelt: the Gergasites, Jebusites, and others named in the Hebrew Volumes, who when they saw the Armie of the strangers to be inexpugnable, leaving their Country bounds went into Egypt next adjoyning, and there increasing in number and posteritie, when they found not sufficient, and convenient place for so great a multitude, they entred into Africa, where inhabiting very many Cities, they possessed all that Coast, even unto the Pillers of Hercules, using the halfe Phoenician Tongue and Dialect, and built the Towne Tingen in Numidia, most strongly fortified in the situation thereof: where two Pillers of white stone are erected neere the great Fountayne, whereon in the Phoenician Language these Letters are ingraven. Nos sumus Cananei, quos fugavit Jesus Latro. For Josua in the Hebrew is Jesus. This Procopius writeth, to which purpose the Historians of the Hebrewes are cited by Genebrand: Josua (saith he) partly expelled the Canaanites; and partly slue them. The remnant of these are reported to have gone into Germany, Sclavonia, and the next adjoyning Countreyes, &c. Into Seder Olam, &c. Also: And surely in that Age, that the whole West was emptie and unpeopled, save that the Nations of the East came by little and little into the Countreyes thereof, it appeareth by the often infusions. This Genebrand writeth. And Bodinus Method. Hist. chap. 9. The Canaanites being cast out of the Land of Palaestina, by the Hebrewes, went into Illyricum and Pannonia (to wit, by those migrations and removes, which out of the place before alleadged by Procopius, wee understand) as Rabbi David Kimchi witnesseth at the end of Abdias.

Chap. 5. Of their Customes and manner of life.

The ancient Islander seeme to have beene ordayned for great frugalitie, wherein first their habitations or buildings are briefly to be touched, next their food and manner

of apparell; and lastly, the rest of the exercises of their common life.

For first as touching their habitations, the Islanders have followed the first and most ancient manner of dwelling. To wit, not by Cities and Townes; but as Tacitus speaketh of the Germanes of his time, they dwelt asunder, as a Field, as a Fountayne, as a Wood, as an Hill, or Valley, Shoare, or Bay of the Sea pleased them: Not only imitating here the example of the first Age of the World, but also of the latter Age: as the people of Athens and Laconia, in the beginning dwelt by Villages (as they write) not together or by Cities: and as in the time of Tacitus, about the yeere of Christ 120. with the Germanes there was no use of Mortar nor Tyles: (whereupon any man may rather judge the like concerning the Northerne World) so, nor after, with the Islanders, but they built their houses with Timber and Turffe. Nor surely was it momentary worke which lasted but a while, not yet deformed in shew, the walls were sometimes made only of Turffe, sometimes of rough Stones, adding Turffe in stead of Mortar: which afterwards they covered with workmanship of plankes, as also the raftering it selfe; especially in more notable buildings. And so you might see the Roofe with the walls before mature old age overgrowne with greene grasse every yeere, for you must understand, that the Roofe and walls were covered with greene Turfe. Windowes were made in the Roofe, seldome in the walls, and certayne Roofes not very high, such as is reported the building of houses with the Easterne people was wont to be. The Inhabitants had store of Timber, cast upon the shoare by the swelling of the waves of the Sea; through the miraculous testimonie of Gods Providence, considering their Woods at home yeelding plentie, as I thinke only of Birches, were not sufficient for their huge houses: which yet were a great helpe also: with those which the Inhabitants, as oft as they would, fetched out of bordering Norway, and peradventure also out of Groneland: for the Islanders sayled

Separate Dwellings.

Houses.

yeerely to both a long time. Every one therefore had the houses of their Villages almost joyning together on their ground: besides the stalls of their Herds, seated some distance from the houses themselves. Also certayne piles of fuell, not altogether joyning together, to avoid the danger of fire: peradventure also certayne store-houses, which being solitary, might better receive the Ayre and drying winds.

Fewell.

Turfes of two sorts, both used in England; the one in fennie, the other in heath grounds. Einarus the Inventer of Turfe-fewel in the Orcades.

Some maintayned their fires with home-growing Wood: others with clammie Turfe (as I thinke H. Junius aptly calleth it) whereof there are two kindes with us: the one soft and spongie, growing under the superficies of the Earth; which wee call Suordur: Another more thicke, and therefore more weightie; which peradventure wee may very well call digged Turfe, by the opinion of the same Junius: because it is taken out of the deepe Quarries or Mines, digged a great depth out of the Earth. And both kindes of Turfe (but this much more) must bee first baked with the Sunne and winde, before it be fit to burne. This latter kind we, as also some of the Germanes call it Torff: the inventor whereof in the Orchades a certayne Orchadensian Duke is said to be: one Einarus the Sonne of Raugnualdus a Norwegian Duke [III.iii.663.] of Mære, in the time of Pulcricomus King of Norway, who was therefore called Torffeinarus. He had a brother called Rolfuo, whom Crantzius nameth Rollo, who possessed part of France, afterwards called Normandie of the Normans, or Norwegians. The Inhabitants chiefly wanted fewell to expell the distemper of cold, besides other uses sufficiently knowne: especially in the Winter time, when Hot-houses and Chimneyes are in use, heaped together of Rocks and stone, through which the flame might easily breake forth; which as soone as through the force of the fire they were throughly heat, and when the Hot-house began now to leave smoking, the cold parts of the chimney were besprinkled with hote glowing stones: by which meanes heate useth effectually to disperse it selfe throughout the whole house, which also is very

Stoves.

well so preserved by the wall, and Roofe covered with Turfe.

Yet lest the Islanders might seeme through meere povertie or want of knowledge, to have used rude buildings and poore houses; I can cal to remembrance certayne houses of an hundred and twentie sixe foot long, and some of one hundred thirtie five, as I have before declared concerning the buildings of Ingulfus: and some of one hundred and twentie feet in length, and sixtie feet broad: whereof we shall hereafter speake; some also, whose hollowed rafters, and boarded feeling of the walls carved by art, report the ancient Histories, of worthy and memorable Acts. They therefore inclosed their habitations built after this manner, with certayne spaces of fruitfull fields ordayned for tillage, which spaces through toylesome labour they afterwards compassed about with a banke cast up, to keepe out the Heards of cattle. Moreover, sufficient huge pastures were assigned to every Farme or plot of ground, divided by certayne limits, or inclosures from others, whereof we shall speake in the eight Chapter. And every Farme or Habitation for the most part, and in like manner every plot of ground received the name from the first Founders: sometimes also from some other: so Mountaynes and Rivers as hath beene advertised before; so that by this meanes the places themselves, even by their names only declared to all posteritie their first Inhabitants, and ἐπωνομοι.

Greater houses in Island in old times.

I proceede from buildings to their victuals, and tillage of the field and ground, which partly succeeded well to the first Inhabitants, to procure Corne and fruit from thence: but I know not whether every where alike. Yet in the meane space, that Hiorleifus mentioned before, exercised his slaves in tillage of the ground: and one Gunnerus of Lidarenda, sowing his Seed, was wounded by the enemie on the ball of the cheeke: and likewise Hoschuldus Huitarnesgode busily imployed in sowing the Seed, was slaine. Hence from the fields there are proper names of certayne places. Hence came that Law concerning the

Victuals and Husbandry.

Tillage anciently in use.

gathering together, and carrying of Corne after Harvest (where they speake of the services which the Lawyers call prædiall). All which are manifest tokens of the tillage of the ground, amongst the first Islanders: which also, even unto this day, I heare, is practised by some Inhabitants of South Island, but with lesse increase: the ground and temper of the Ayre degenerating from the first goodnesse thereof after so many Ages: peradventure also the care of the Husbandmen beeing lesse diligent, may bee the cause; since Corne comming from forreigne parts began more to be in use. And because that tillage of the ground seemed in the beginning either not used of all, or lesse fruitfull for Corne, and all manner of graine; a peculiar manner of tillage of the ground presently began: whereby they compassed with dunge those fields or spaces, which I said they inclosed within their owne circuit, especially with kowes dunge, at the mowing of the best hay, to the intent they may the better feed the Heards; and especially the Kine, that they might yeeld the more plentie of Milke. Which tillage of the ground is yet retayned: and they only exercise the same for the most part, almost by mid-land Inhabitants: seeing such as dwel upon the Sea-coast live most by fishing: whither also those more remote or mid-land people yeerely send their Servants to fish. Both Plaines, that is to say, the ground and the Sea, was to bee ploughed after a sort by the Islanders, for the comforts of life. To whom besides insteed of victuals, Sheep, Oxen, Swine and Kiddes, sufficiently abounded: and also fishes of divers kindes, besides Sea-fish out of the Flouds, Lakes and Rivers, they met with every where: so that they might take them as it were out of a certayne weele, especially in that Age: also Milke and White-meate, with goodly plentie of Butter from the Heards of cattle. Besides Fowle in great number, some tame, as Hennes and Domesticall Geese, or Fowle of another kind living in the open Ayre, wandring also solitarily in Mountaynous places: which the possessors marked in the feet, that every one might more easily demand his owne. They had

Beasts.

Fish.

Fowle.

others also not tame, which they tooke by certayne ginnes: as Geese and Duckes of the Medow, Partridges, and Swannes: and very many Sea-fowle, whose names and properties I doe not know. But Fowle of either kind tame or wilde, they either presented their Egges or themselves, or both, for the use of men. Besides the naturall Drinke or pressed Whay of Milke (whereof the great plentie is so much the better, as the Milke is more excellent: so that halfe an ounce of water mixed with an ounce of Whay, doth not wholly diminish the taste thereof; but that it relisheth more of the Whay then of the water) they also boyled Barley Flowre, sometimes adding thereto the Honey Combe, or Water mingled with Honey: sometimes also a Liquour made of certayne Berries growing heere. Moreover, the ancient Islanders brought in drinke made of Corne, from forreigne parts, as also all manner of graine, and other things: for they were furnished with ships of their owne, wherewith they yeerely visited at their pleasure, Denmarke, Norway, Suecia, Scotland, Saxonie, England, and Ireland.

Drinke. Whay.

Mead.

Ale.

[III.iii.664.]

Our ancient Islanders wanted not honest Banquetings and meetings: and that surely without miserable sparing, whether we respect the number of the guests, or the time of the Banquets exhibited. For Theodorus and Thorualdus, brethren, and Citizens of Hialtædat of North Island, solemnizing the Funerals of their Father Hialta, made a Banquet for fourteene dayes together, of twelve hundred persons, presenting the men of better note with some gift. And an Inhabitant of West Island, surnamed Ólaus Pa, with his two brethren, were at the charge to banquet nine hundred men, even for fourteene dayes space; not sending the chiefe men away without reward.

I find money was not usual with the Islanders, I meane, those of ancient time: but silver was weighed by the ballance: and bartering of Merchandizes was very commonly used. Moreover, Rings of Gold, and Bracelets, were both often sent for tokens of remembrance from Superiours to private men, or from one friend to another.

§. III.

Of their Politie, and Religion in old times.

Chap. 6. Of their Common wealth and Religion.

THe Islanders going about to establish an Aristocratie, or State of Nobilitie (considering they dwelt scattered in the Countrey, and not together) first divided their Citie into Fourths or Tetrades, named from the foure principall quarters of the World, and distinguished besides by setting of bounds (such also as was the Geographicall partition of the Iland it selfe, mentioned before at the end of the first Chapter) divided into North, East, South, and West quarter. And againe, they divided the Fourths into Thirds, except the North quarter: For this, as it was larger then the rest, was parted into Fourths. But these Thirds they subdivided againe into their parts: some Tenths and others somewhat otherwise. For the which not finding a fit name, I have retayned the proper name of the Countrey, that which with them is Hreppar, wee may counterfeitly call Reppæ: unto the which also we may imagine no unapt Etymon, from the word Repo. From here was the first ἀῤῥενψία or ἰσοῤῥοπία of them that executed any publike Office, for equitie either of opinion and judgement, and the equall ballancing of mindes, to be preserved in the rest of the Magistrates, worthily ought to begin there, unlesse any would rather thinke they had respect heere unto Reeb, that is to say, Coards, with the which the division was made, after the most ancient manner of the Hebrewes themselves. Every Reppa regularly contayned twentie Inhabitants at the least (for oftentimes it contayned more) limited by a certayne increase of the wealth of their Family, under which they might not be reckoned to the poorer Reppes; to the richer they might.

Moreover in every Third, as also in the Fourths of the North Tetrade, (which jurisdictions in times past they called Pyng, at this day also Syslu herad) they appointed

three more famous places consecrated to the Seat of Justice and Judgements; besides also dedicated to Ethnicke Sacrifices, which they call Hoff: we call them Holy Places, and Temples. Every Chappell after the manner of this Countrey was sumptuously built: whereof wee reade of two, of one hundred and twentie foot long. One in the Jurisdiction of Washdall of North Island: the other in Rialarnes of South Island: and this surely sixtie foot broad. Moreover, every such holy place had a kind of Chappell adjoyning. This place was most holy. Heere stood the Idols and Gods made with hands, upon a low stoole or a certayne Altar; about which the cattle which were to be sacrificed unto them, were orderly placed. But the chiefe and middlemost of the Gods was Jupiter, by them called Por, from whom these Northerne Kingdomes yet call Thors day Thorsdagh. The rest of the Gods were collateral unto it; whose certayne number, and names I have not heard. Yet in the ancient forme of oath (whereof mention shall be made hereafter) three besides Thorus, are specially noted by name: Freyr, Niordur and As: whereof the third, to wit As, I thinke to be that famous Odinus, not accounted the last among those Ethnicke Gods (of whom I made mention before) Synecdochically called As: because hee was the chiefe of the people of Asia, who came hither into the North: for in the singular number they called him As, which in the plurall they called Æsar, or Æser. This Odinus, as aforesaid, for his notable knowledge in Devillish Magicke; whereby like another Mahomet, hee affected a Divinitie after his death, was reckoned among the number of the Gods: from whom at this day, Wednesday, is called Odens Dagur, the day of Odinus: whereupon peradventure, I shall not unaptly call Odin Mercurie, as Thor Jupiter. Yet the ancients honoured Odin in the place of Mars: and such as were slaine in the warres, they say were sacrificed to Odin. And the companions, or Sonnes of Odin were Freyr, and Niordur: who through the same artes which their Father or Prince Odinus practised,

Seats of Justice and Religion.

Idols.

Por and Thors day.

Freyr Niordur and As.

Odinus the same that Woden in our Saxon storie.

Odinus, Odin, or Oden by his Sorcery (which made him a Devill) made a God.

Wodnesday or Wednesday.

[III.iii.665.]

obtayned an opinion of Divinitie. I have before advertised you, that chiefly in the North Countrey, Kings, after their death, are honoured for Gods. But the worshipping of them hath not yet come unto the Islanders: wherefore we will speake nothing of them in this place.

The Altar. Before that seate of the Gods placed in the foresaid Temples, stood an Altar erected, covered above with Iron, that it might not be hurt with fire, which must bee continually there. A Caldron also or brasen vessell was set upon the Altar, to receive the bloud of the sacrifices, with *Holy water sprinkle.* an holy water sticke or sprinkle, to bedew the standers by with the bloud of the sacrifices.

Holy Ring. Besides, on the Altar a silver Ring was kept (or of copper) of twentie ounces, which being anointed with the bloud of the sacrifices, they who executed any office pertayning to Justice, being now readie to take their oath, religiously handled while they were sworne. Foure-footed *Sacrifices.* beasts, for the most part, were appointed for sacrifices; to bee converted to the food of the Sacrificers. Although in the meane space, I finde (a lamentable matter) that the blinde Ethnicks in the foresaid place of Rialarnes used also humane sacrifices: where at the door of the Temple, *Humane-inhumane sacrifices.* was a very deepe Pit, wherein the humane sacrifices were drowned; which Pit was called Blotkellda, from the Sacrifice.

Also in West Island, in the Province of Thornsthing: in the middle of the Market place there was a *Devill-circle.* round circle, into the which, men appointed to be sacrificed to the Gods, were gathered: who being violently smitten against an exceeding great stone set there, were cruelly slaine. The indignitie whereof, that stone is reported to have declared many ages after, by the bloudy colour, which no shower of raine, or water, could ever wash away. An abominable crueltie surely, yet not wanting examples, derived even from the most ancient times. I omit those of later time, and found in the neare bordering Countries, as the humane sacrifices of the French, whereof Cicero pro Fonteio, speaketh: and also the custome of nearer border-

ing Countries. I doe not mention the Roman sacrifices: among which, Luperca Valeria, appointed to be sacrificed, was delivered from present death by an Eagle. Let the παρθενοκθόνια, and sacrificing of noble Virgins of the Greekes, not be remembred: with whom Helena was likewise freed from imminent perill of sacrificing, by the benefit of an Eagle. But who is it, that can be ignorant of Benhennon or Gehennon of the Hebrewes, and their crueltie farre greater then this, exercised not upon slaves or guiltie persons, but even upon their dearest children. Concerning which matter I thought good to set downe the words of Christoph-Adricomus Delphus. Gehennon, saith he, was a place in the suburbs of Jerusalem over against the East, under the Mountayne of Offence, neare the Fish poole of the Fuller, most pleasant, like Tempe. In this Valley stood a Pavilion, and the brasen Idol of Moloch, cunningly wrought in the shape of a King, hollow within: whose head resembling a Calfe, the other parts a man, had armes stretched forth to sacrifice children: who through the vehement heat of the Idol, were burned amidst these cursed embracements: For when by the fire put under in the concavity of the Idoll, it became all fiery, then the most wicked parents, with incredible crueltie, delivered their dearest children, to wit, their Sonnes and Daughters to be burned within these detestable embracements. And least the miserable cry of the children in horrible torment being heard, might moove the bowels of the parents, the Priests of Moloch filled the ayre and skie on every side with the harsh sound of Trumpets, and striking up of Drummes, so long as the sacrifice continued. Whereupon also the place was named Tophet, which signifieth a Drumme. This Adricomus writeth. And least any might thinke, that the common people onely of the Jewes became thus blinde; behold Kings: Ahaz, 2. King. 16. 2. Paralip, 28. Manasses there in the 21. and 33. where also the ancient custome of the Nations may bee alleaged.

On this place and these cries of the children confused with sounds of instruments and the unnaturall horror, Hell was called Gehenna and Tophet.

But that crueltie, and those sacrifices of Saturne seeme not to have continued long with the Islanders: and surely,

they were used no where else, save in the two places assigned. Nor yet of all the Inhabitants of that Province, where it was exercised. For it is reported of Hiorleifus, the companion of Ingulfus before mentioned, that he altogether abhorred the worshipping of Idols. And Helgo also surnamed Biola, descended from the Barons of Norway, an inhabitant of the Province of Rialarues favoured the Ethnick Religion but a little: for he received an Irish man, a banished Christian, into his neighbourhood; one named Ornulfus, with his families (which came with him): and did not onely receive him, but also permitted him to build a Church consecrated to Saint Columbe, in the Village of Escuberg. A yong man also of the same Province, called Buo, destroied that most accursed Temple of humane sacrifices with fire, and burned all the Gods, although afterward it was repaired by the Proprietors.

Moreover, Torchillus surnamed Mane (it may bee because hee honoured the Moone, called Mane, and the rest of the Starres, with more Religion then the rest) a man of a very upright life, and famous among the Nobilitie of Island, a little before the agonie of death, caused himselfe to bee set forth over against the Sunne, and openly admiring the workmanship of Heaven, and the whole World, commended his soule departing when he was readie to die, to that God who created the Sunne, and the rest of the Starres. He lived about the yeere of Christ 970. The same, or the like may be reported of very many others, while Ethnicisme yet continued. As of Hallerus a certaine inhabitant of South Island: who, [III.iii.666.] because hee followed not the worship of Idols, was called Godlaus, that is to say, ἄθεος, as was also his Sonne Helgo.

Chap. 7. Of Magistrates and Courts.

The publike Offices, some of them are distinguished from hence; others have their originall from some other place. Those which are taken from hence, are a Reppagogie (that I may devise a word) and the administration of Provinces, to wit, as that partition into Reppes, and

Provinces, ended as it were in sundrie species, but both had some kinde of government joyned with it. For aswell the Reppagogi (for so I may call the Masters of Reppes) as the provinciall Governours, proclaimed Assemblies, established Judgements (every one in their Court) and punished the guiltie: whereby it is evident that they also used the Law of Appeale in forren causes (for in their own, even private men had libertie of Appeale) so that I need not doubt that the Reppagogi also were comprehended under the Title of a Magistrate. Who is defined by Bodinus to bee Hee, that hath part of a publique government. Metho. Hist. cap. 16. I added, saith he, the word publique, that it might be distinguished from the government of a Master, or a Father. If therefore any would desire a more perfect distinction of a Magistrate, it should be such: A Magistrate is inferior, or superior. The inferior is a Reppagogie or Governour of five men, which five inhabitants chosen for government of the Reppes, used in every Reppe, whom we are here compelled to call Reppagogie, and The five men, they call them Hreppstior ar, appointed first for their wisedome and integritie, next for the possession of immoveable goods; unlesse concerning this latter, it seeme good to doe otherwise, by the common opinion.

A Magistrate who.

Moreover, the Office of the Reppagogi, is limited by the care of the Poore. But that which the care of the Poore required, every one within the bounds of their Reppe, endevored to attaine by these two meanes. First, that they should provide, that none should bee suddenly brought to extreme povertie: as much surely as consisteth in mans pollicy. Secondly, how they might provide for such as were become Beggars, to be maintayned by the common aide.

Care of the Poore.

And surely, they attempted the first part of their office three manner of wayes: first, by making Lawes against such as through their owne fault (speaking after the manner of men) became beggars: of which sort are those, titul. de exhæredandis, cap. 3. Parentibus mendicis natus

Lawes against Beggars.

et ipse hostiatim victum quærendo educatus (nisi morbo affectus) hæreditatem nullam adito, &c. that is to say, So long as he liveth from doore to doore: The 18. chapter of the same; and the first three yeere, next from the time of begging, cap. 20. Least any under a feigned shew of vertue, should deceive and abuse the Lawes. Also, Altera lex de ejusmodi mendicis impune castrandis, etiamsi cum eorundem nece conjunctum foret, titul. de pupillis, cap. 33. to wit, Lest living from doore to doore, they might beget children like unto the parents, which afterwards should be a burden to the Commonwealth. Also, a third Law, De iisdem mendicis non alendis, titul. de mendicis cap. 39. 63. (not repugnant to the commandement of the Apostle, Hee that laboureth not, let him not eate, 2. Thes. 3.) and of not receiving them, so much as into their house, cap. 45. of the same: a grievous penaltie being inflicted, if any offended against this Law; in the same place.

By which Decree, what other thing I pray you is meant, then the custome of the Athenians in times past? among whom the Areopagitæ inquired of the particular Citizens, by what art every one lived; and provided to have them called in question, who gave themselves to filthy and slothfull idlenesse? What other thing, I say, then what was meant by the Decree of the Massilienses, who forbad them to enter their Citie, who knew no arte whereby to sustaine their life? and lest any should practise either unprofitable or dishonest artes: they gave no place to Players, counterfeit Jesters, laughing Companions, sawcy Scoffers and Jugglers. To conclude, What other thing, then what the Decree of Solon meant, who ordayned a Law, that the children should owe no thanks nor favour to their parents, by whom they had beene instructed in no honest arte to get their living? The ancient World had so great and vehement provocations unto Vertue, even with our Countrimen, which in this last age (ah, too degenerate) you may finde wanting with griefe; all these Constitutions being taken away. Wherefore the number (that I may use the word of Paul) is more abundantly

increased, that is to say, of them who being void of all discipline, live infamous to themselves, and grievous and troublesome to their common Countrey, in slothfull and filthy idlenesse, inverting and changing that order instituted by God himselfe. The care of which thing, if the Magistrate would yet undertake, surely many should fare the better. *Inordinate men.*

The second meanes and way of preventing povertie, was a Law or Edict, concerning those who desired to be admitted into a Reppe, or become Citizens of Reppes. For none was to be received into a Reppe, unlesse hee had first gone unto the solemne assembly of that Reppe, and desired that he might be admitted; which they might not justly denie, unlesse to one convicted of theft, or otherwise of some other crime, or so poore, that therefore hee was unfit for the Reppes, and that hee could not sustaine himselfe and his family without the common almes of the beggars. But if any could not be present at this assembly, hee was bound to intreat leave of cohabitation of five inhabitants, having lands of their owne, and next unto him, whom hee was about to goe unto. If any of honest fame and rich in abilitie, would notwithstanding goe into the Reppes without demanding leave, he retayned his habitation, but yet was excluded from the Law and priviledges of the Reppes. But if any wicked and dishonest person has thrust himselfe in without leave (although he had lawfully hired void and emptie land from the Lord and Owner thereof) the same was to be expelled by force: Titulus de Reppis cap. 48. To the same purpose appertaineth that Edict concerning servants taken out of the Rep. cap. 47. of the same. *Our tithings and hundreds in their originall, had some resemblance thereof.* [III.iii.667.]

The third Statute against povertie was, concerning the restitution of private losse in the title recited before cap. 47. whereof an example shall bee given, first in houses by chance consumed by fire: and those of foure sorts. For if a Store-house, Kitchin, Bed-chamber, or Bed, and Chappel had been burned; the losse received was to be valued within fourteene dayes, by five of the next neigh-

bours, as well as of the house itselfe, as of the most necessary things contained therein: as of the provision of victuals, apparell, and houshold-stuffe daily used onely, properly belonging to the Master of the family, excluding other mens goods, as treasures, and other things more precious; because a man might bee a sufficient Citizen of Reppes without these. Then the halfe part of the losse valued by the whole Reppe, was to bee restored within an appointed time, by Subsidies contributed in common, according to the abilitie of every Inhabitant. Another example of this liberalitie enjoyned by the Lawes, is, concerning Cattle destroyed by the Murren or Rot: for if the fourth part of any mans Cattle, or more dyed, the losse likewise being valued within fourteene dayes after the Murren ceased, was to bee releeved by common supplies for the halfe part, as the former was. But concerning both, there was a caution added, that this benefit should not be performed the fourth time; least any thing through too much carelesnesse, and retchlesse negligence, should procure damage to himselfe, De Reppis cap. 47. & 48.

The other part of the Office of the Reppagogi was imployed about the care of the poore, concerning the maintaining of such with certaine contribution of almes as were now become beggers, either through sicknesse or age, or other casualties not in their owne power: and also concerning the excluding of others, who should not appertaine unto the almes, and divers cases thereunto belonging. This almes was either private or publike. Private, for the which a law was made concerning the receiving of the beggers, into the number of their family by their kindred, or cousins, one or more, inabled by a certaine increase of wealth limitted by law, and to bee maintained by certaine lawes, according to the degree of hereditarie succession: For as any was next to the inheritance of the begger, if hee possessed goods, so was hee accounted the first that should sustaine him. But the next degree failing, or the same being poore, or not having wherewith to maintaine

Lawes of Almes.

himselfe and his, besides that begger, that necessitie was imposed upon the second, or third degree of kindred, &c. to be releeved.

Publike almes was, as often as the kindred or cousins of the beggar failed, they lived by the helpe and reliefe of the Reppes: every one was to bee maintained in his Repp; whereof there are prescript constitutions of lawes, to wit, what beggars should belong to what Repp, and what not; and concerning the driving away and expelling of them by processe of law, who appertaine not thereunto. Therefore the Reppagogi partakers of a publike Office limited with these bounds, proclaimed assemblies: Some surely both in time and place, standing, or ordinary: others not standing, or extraordinary; that is to say, as often as any new matter came pertaining to their charge to bee determined. Also private men might call extraordinary assemblies, to wit, they who had any cause worthy of an assembly and judgement. But the signe and token of having an assembly (after the thousand yeere, when they had now sworne to the Christian Faith, peradventure before Jupiters Hammer and battle Axe, Hamor pors) was according to the religion of that time, a woodden Crosse, which every Inhabitant carryed to his neighbour at the day, place, and occasion of the assembly proclaimed, of which signe intermitted or neglected, a certaine penaltie was inflicted. There therefore the Reppagogi, concerning the matters appertaining to their charge, consulted according to equitie and right, determined them, and punished the guiltie: There the guiltie person, if the injury were private, was cited into the Court of Justice by him that was injured, even without publike authoritie (which also wee reade was used by the Spartanes:) but if the injury were publike (or if the partie injured in a private offence would not cite the guilty person, or could not) then was hee cited by some of the Reppagogi. Private men also had libertie and power to sue the Reppagogi negligent in their Office, or otherwise injurious: where a penaltie of money fell to the Citizens of the Reppes: all which, and

other things here belonging are handled, in codice legum de Reppagogiis, cap. 43. And concerning the inferiour Magistrates, that is to say, the Reppagogi onely, to wit, the first species of the Civill Magistrate.

Now followeth the superiour Magistracie, which is distinguished into Governours of Provinces, and Justices. They were each of them Governours in every Province (which before I called Thirds, to wit, of every Tetrade) executing as well the publike Offices of the Courts of Justice, as of holy mysteries: or they were Interpreters of the Law, and matters of Religion: (although afterward the interpretation of the Law belonged more to the Justices.) As with the Romanes, the Ædiles also usurped part of the Prætorian Jurisdiction. Among the ancient Hebrewes also the High Priests: also among the Romanes the High Priests were sacrificers. Whereupon Horatius carm. lib. 3. Ode. 23. Victima Pentificum secures cervice tingit.

These Governours therefore, in that they had the charge of holy Mysteries, were Priests: in that they had to doe with the Court of Justice and Judgement, they were
[III.iii.668.] Judges: we call them Noble-men in this place, and the state of the Common-wealth governed by their oversight, an Aristocratie. The same are called by our Countrymen Godar, and Hoffsgodar; from the Church or Temple (which is Hoff) as it were Over-seers of the Church, and their Office or Dignitie was called Godord; to wit, their name being next derived from their Ethnick gods, which they called God: that even by the name itselfe, they (who almost represented the Name and Office of the Gods) might bee put in minde of the Vertues, Wisdome, and Justice, &c. requisite in such a Governour.

And that they might shew themselves such, I suppose the same place was appointed to judgements of the seate of Justice, which was ordained for Sacred Mysteries: to wit, at the foresaid Temples. And also therefore, because the place of holy Mysteries, was religiously thought fitter for εὐβυλεία, or the taking of good counsell, whereof there

is especiall use in the Court of Justice. Moreover, the Provinciall Governours had their two-fold assemblies as the Reppagogi had; yeerely or ordinary meetings, and proclaimed: or extraordinary, any necessitie requiring (those former assemblies, containing many dayes: vid. Kauph cap. 8. Torn. Log) and that, as it is likely, assembled by some signe of holding a meeting: as we have already said of Reppagogies: which surely, what it was in times past, is not well knowne; unlesse it were that, which afterwards, and yet remaineth in use; the forme of a Norwegian axe of Wood, carried about after the same manner, among the provinciall Citizens: as we said a little before, of the woodden crosse. This token of the Judiciall Court, is called Bod in our language, which signifieth a message.

Moreover, every one paid some yearely tribute or revenue to the Temples: whereof the Guardian or Overseer of the Church was the Collector: for speaking of holy mysteries pertaining to the Church, I call every Noble man so. To him also came the penaltie of the Temple, and Court of Justice prophaned: who likewise ought to maintaine the Temple, or keepe it in reparations, at his owne charge. Lastly, the necessity, and specially care to amend and make good whatsoever damage done unto the Province, or to foresee and prevent it being imminent, using the helpe of the Provincials, lay wholly upon him: so that, for the destroying of Theeves and publique Robbers, you may finde some who were prodigall of their owne life. Contrarily, it is a lamentable case, how at this day we see it every where comes to passe, where they make a great conscience to condemne a notorious Theefe by the Law, or any other convicted once or twice of any capitall crime, much more to put him to death. These are the Governours of Provinces: The Nomophylaces or Justices follow. The Nomophylax was the other kinde of the superiour Magistrate, somewhat later then these: of which sort, in the whole auncient Citie of Island (for we yet describe it) at one and the same time, there was onely one: who of pronouncing or

delivering the Law, was called Logmann and Logfogumann. For the Commonwealth began not suddenly, but by little and little to be framed: therefore the Provinciall Lawes were first, of the like meaning, though peradventure not every where the same, before they had them compact, and gathered into one body: which when they attained, for the custody and preservation of the same, they admitted trustie and wise men, whom I call Nomophylaces; and whose Office I shall very well describe in the Words of D. Nicolaus Cragius, declaring the Office of the Spartan Nomophylaces. The Office of the Nomophylaces (saith D. Cragius Li. 2. cap. 6. de Repub. Lacedæm.) was, as we perceive by the matter itselfe, to have charge of the custody and preservation of Lawes, for the benefit of the Commonwealth; and that they should not suffer them to be abolished, changed, or taken away by any. Moreover, they indevoured that the force of the Lawes might not grow out of use, or the memory thereof be forgotten; but they compelled the Magistrates to the often observation of them, and execution of their dutie. And further, we may thinke these very men were the interpreters of Lawes, if peradventure anything doubtfully set downe, or hardly understood, should come in disputation. This Cragius writeth: the same which I doe of ours: adding this, that they had some manner of authority in their power, together with the rest of the Nobility, of changing, or renewing Lawes, and also inlarging them, as it were Orators and Counsellours; the consent of the people being added. Therefore the Nomophylaces or chief Justices, tooke nothing away from the forme of an Aristocratie: but were, as hath beene said before, Interpreters, and preservers of the Law, armed with publique authority for this purpose, in whose power also the custody of the Booke of the Lawes remained.

But I dare proceede no further with our Author in his Law Suites and Courts, lest I be therein detained with Demurs and tedious delaies. I am a Traveller, and howsoever I have (not so much for Island, as for the

knowledge of the Arctoan antiquities) waded thus farre: I will not tire the Reader further, but remit the more curious to the Author himselfe, who hath added much of their Lawes, and a whole Booke of their auncient Grands, and another of their Kings, both here omitted. The Kings of Norway began to have dominion in Island A. 1261 divers immunities reserved: which Kingdome descending upon Margaret, by her was linked with that of Denmarke, and so hath continued above 200. yeares.

END OF VOLUME XIII.

1906

00085488

Digitized with financial assistance from
Hermès India
oject facilitated by the Rotary Club of Bom
on 10 August, 2018